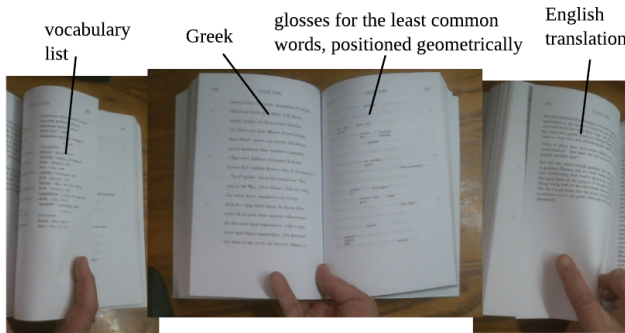


This book is a presentation of a bilingual text with student aids, built using open-source software. For information about how the book is intended to be used and why it's designed the way it is, go to lightandmatter.com/ransom. To read this book on a computer screen, you should set up your PDF viewer so that it displays a two-page layout, with an even page on the left and an odd one on the right.



Text and aids are presented in a four-page spread.

rev. December 31, 2025

The Greek text is from the 1920 edition by Godley, via Wikisource. My additional proofreading and editorial work on the Greek text are released here under the CC0 license.

The English translation is by Macaulay, 1890, via Project Gutenberg.

Text I've written, such as notes and glosses, is CC-BY-SA 4.0. Glosses taken verbatim from Cunliffe or White and Morgan are in the public domain, as are the LSJ dictionary entries. Glosses taken verbatim from Wiktionary are CC-BY-SA 3.0. US law does not allow copyrighting of grammatical facts such as part-of-speech tagging and does not give any additional protection to databases beyond the normal protection of copyright.

Copyright info. Text I've written, such as notes and glosses, is (c) 2025 Benjamin Crowell and CC-BY-SA 4.0. Glosses taken verbatim from Cunliffe or White and Morgan are in the public domain, as are the LSJ dictionary entries. Glosses taken verbatim from Wiktionary are CC-BY-SA 3.0. US law does not allow copyrighting of grammatical facts such as part-of-speech tagging and does not give any additional protection to databases beyond the normal protection of copyright.

*vocabulary***ἄγγελία** message, news ~angel**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise
~angel**δονέω** shake, agitate**δουλόω** enslave**εἰσβολή** -ωβόλης invasion, an entrance
~ballistic**ἐνθαῦτα** there, here**ἐπιτάσσω** enjoin; place near**ἐτοιμάζω** get ready**καταλέγω** relate in detail, choose;
enroll ~legion**περιαγγέλλω** send orders, messages
around**Πέρσης** Persian**στρατιά** army ~strategy**τέταρτος** fourth ~trapezoid

7

7.1

ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀγγελίῃ ἀπίκετο περὶ τῆς μάχης τῆς ἐν Μαραθῶνι
γενομένης παρὰ βασιλέα Δαρεῖον τὸν Ὑστάσπεος, καὶ
πρὶν μεγάλως κεχαραγμένον τοῖσι Ἀθηναίοισι διὰ τὴν ἐς
Σάρδεις ἐσβολήν, καὶ δὴ καὶ τότε πολλῶ τε δεινότερα
ἐποίεε καὶ μᾶλλον ὄρητο στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα.
καὶ αὐτίκα μὲν ἐπηγγέλλετο πέμπων ἀγγέλους κατὰ πόλεις
ἐτοιμάζειν στρατιήν, πολλῶ πλέω ἐπιτάσσων ἐκάστοισι
ἢ πρότερον παρέχειν, καὶ νέας τε καὶ ἵππους καὶ σῖτον
καὶ πλοῖα. τούτων δὲ περιαγγελλομένων ἡ Ἀσίη ἐδονέετο
ἐπὶ τρία ἔτεα, καταλεγομένων τε τῶν ἀρίστων ὥς
ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα στρατευομένων καὶ παρασκευαζομένων.
τετάρτῳ δὲ ἔτει Αἰγύπτιοι ὑπὸ Καμβύσῳ δουλωθέντες
ἀπέστησαν ἀπὸ Περσέων. ἐνθαῦτα δὴ καὶ μᾶλλον ὄρητο
καὶ ἐπ' ἀμφοτέρους στρατεύεσθαι.

7

7.1

ἐπεὶ δὲ |message, news| εἶτο περὶ τῆς μάχης τῆς ἐν Μαραθῶνι
γενομένης παρὰ βασιλέα Δαρεῖον τὸν Ὑστάσπεος, καὶ
πρὶν μεγάλως κεχαραγμένον τοῖσι Ἀθηναίοισι διὰ τὴν ἐς
Σάρδεις |invasion, an| καὶ δὴ καὶ τότε πολλῶ τε δεινότερα
|entrance|
ἐποίεε καὶ μᾶλλον ὄρμητο στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα.
καὶ αὐτίκα μὲν ἐπηγγέλλετο πέμπων ἀγγέλους κατὰ πόλεις
|get ready| στρατιήν, πολλῶ πλέω |enjoin; place| ἐκάστοισι
|near|
ἢ πρότερον παρέχειν, καὶ νέας τε καὶ ἵππους καὶ σῖτον
καὶ πλοῖα. τούτων δὲ |send orders, messages| ἢ Ἀσίῃ |shake,
|around| |agitate|
ἐπὶ τρία ἔτεα, |relate in detail,| τε τῶν ἀρίστων ὥς
|choose; enroll|
ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα στρατευομένων καὶ παρασκευαζομένων.
|fourth| δὲ ἔτι Αἰγύπτιοι ὑπὸ Καμβύσῳ |enslave|
ἀπέστησαν ἀπὸ Περσέων. |there, here| ἢ καὶ μᾶλλον ὄρμητο
καὶ ἐπ' ἀμφοτέρους στρατεύεσθαι.

7

7.1

Now when the report came to Dareios the son of Hystaspes of the battle which was fought at Marathon, the king, who even before this had been greatly exasperated with the Athenians on account of the attack made upon Sardis, then far more than before displayed indignation, and was far more desirous of making a march against Hellas. Accordingly at once he sent messengers to the various cities and ordered that they should get ready a force, appointing to each people to supply much more than at the former time, and not only ships of war, but also horses and provisions and transport vessels; and when these commands were carried round, all Asia was moved for three years, for all the best men were being enlisted for the expedition against Hellas, and were making preparations. In the fourth year however the Egyptians, who had been reduced to subjection by Cambyses, revolted from the Persians; and then he was even more desirous of marching against both these nations.

vocabulary

ἀποδείκνυμι (ō) show, point out;
 appoint; (mid) declare
ἀποδέχομαι accept ~doctrine
βασιλεύω be king
γόνος offspring ~genus
ἐλευθερία freedom
ἐπιγίγνομαι succeed, come after
 ~genus

ἡγεμονία authority, rule
κτάομαι acquire, possess
μίν him, her, it
Πέρσης Persian
πρεσβεύω be the elder, be an
 ambassador
στασιάζω revolt, be divided
στάσις -εως (f) placing; faction
στέλλω prepare, send, furl ~apostle

7.2

στελλομένου δὲ Δαρείου ἐπ' Αἴγυπτον καὶ Ἀθήνας, τῶν παίδων αὐτοῦ στάσις ἐγένετο μεγάλη περὶ τῆς ἡγεμονίης, ὥς δει μιν ἀποδέξαντα βασιλέα κατὰ τὸν Περσέων νόμον οὕτω στρατεύεσθαι. ἦσαν γὰρ Δαρεΐω καὶ πρότερον ἢ βασιλεῦσαι γεγονότες τρεῖς παῖδες ἐκ τῆς προτέρης γυναικός, Γοβρύεω θυγατρός, καὶ βασιλεύσαντι ἐξ Ἀτόσσης τῆς Κύρου ἕτεροι τέσσερες. τῶν μὲν δὴ προτέρων ἐπρέσβευε Ἀρτοβαζάνης, τῶν δὲ ἐπιγενομένων Ξέρξης. ἐόντες δὲ μητρὸς οὐ τῆς αὐτῆς ἐστασίαζον, ὁ μὲν Ἀρτοβαζάνης κατότι πρεσβύτατός τε εἶη παντὸς τοῦ γόνου καὶ ὅτι νομιζόμενον εἶη πρὸς πάντων ἀνθρώπων τὸν πρεσβύτατον τὴν ἀρχὴν ἔχειν, Ξέρξης δὲ ὡς Ἀτόσσης τε παῖς εἶη τῆς Κύρου θυγατρὸς καὶ ὅτι Κῦρος εἶη ὁ κτησάμενος τοῖσι Πέρσησι τὴν ἐλευθερίην.

7.3

Δαρείου δὲ οὐκ ἀποδεικνυμένου κω γνώμην, ἐτύγχανε

7.2

|prepare, send, fulfil Δαρείου ἐπ' Αἴγυπτον καὶ Ἀθήνας, τῶν
 παιδῶν αὐτοῦ |placing; ἐγένετο μεγάλη περὶ τῆς |authority, rule
 |faction
 ὥς δεῖ μιν ἀποδέξαντα βασιλέα κατὰ τὸν Περσέων
 νόμον οὕτω στρατεύεσθαι. ἦσαν γὰρ Δαρείῳ καὶ
 πρότερον ἢ |be king γεγονότες τρεῖς παῖδες ἐκ τῆς
 προτέρης γυναικός, Γοβρύεω θυγατρός, καὶ |be king
 ἐξ Ἀτόσσης τῆς Κύρου ἕτεροι τέσσερες. τῶν μὲν δὴ
 προτέρων |be the elder, be |be τοβαζάνης, τῶν δὲ |succeed
 |an ambassador
 Ξέρξης. ἐόντες δὲ μητρὸς οὐ τῆς αὐτῆς |revolt, be divided
 μὲν Ἀρτοβαζάνης κατότι πρεσβυτάτος τε εἷη παντὸς τοῦ
 |offspring καὶ ὅτι νομιζόμενον εἶη πρὸς πάντων ἀνθρώπων
 τὸν πρεσβύτατον τὴν ἀρχὴν ἔχειν, Ξέρξης δὲ ὥς Ἀτόσσης
 τε παῖς εἶη τῆς Κύρου θυγατρός καὶ ὅτι Κῦρος εἶη ὁ
 κτησάμενος τοῖσι Πέρσησι τὴν ἐλευθερίην.

7.3

Δαρείου δὲ οὐκ |show, point out; ap- |show γνώμην, ἐτύγχανε
 |point; (mid) declare

7.2

While Dareios was thus preparing to set out against Egypt and against Athens, there arose a great strife among his sons about the supreme power; and they said that he must not make his expeditions until he had designated one of them to be king, according to the custom of the Persians. For to Dareios already before he became king three sons had been born of his former wife the daughter of Gobryas, and after he became king four other sons of Atossa the daughter of Cyrus: of the first the eldest was Artobazanes, and of those who had been born later, Xerxes. These being not of the same mother were at strife with one another, Artobazanes contending that he was the eldest of all the sons, and that it was a custom maintained by all men that the eldest should have the rule, and Xerxes arguing that he was the son of Atossa the daughter of Cyrus, and that Cyrus was he who had won for the Persians their freedom.

7.3

Now while Dareios did not as yet declare his judgment, it chanced

vocabulary

ἄνευ away from; not having; not
 needing ~Sp. sin
ἀνίημι urge, impel; release ~jet
ἀποδείκνυμι (ὅ) show, point out;
 appoint; (mid) declare
ἀποδέχομαι accept ~doctrine
βασιλεύω be king
γέρας -ως (n, 3) reward, honor
διαφορά disagreement
ἐπιβάλλω throw upon, head for
 ~ballistic
ἐπιγίγνομαι succeed, come after
 ~genus
ιδιώτης -ου (m, 1) private; a layman

μίν him, her, it
οὔκω no longer
ὀψίγονος posterity; late-born ~epitaph
Πέρσης Persian
προγίγνομαι precede, preexist ~genus
προσδοκάω expect
σοῦσον lily
στερέω steal, take
συμβουλευώ give advice; (mid) consult
 ~volunteer
ὑποθήκη advice, warning; deposit
ὑποτίθημι suggest, advise ~hypothesis
φάτις -τος (f) report, rumor ~fame
φυγή flight, means of escape ~fugitive

κατὰ τὰντὸ τούτοις καὶ Δημάρητος ὁ Ἀρίστωνος
 ἀναβεβηκὼς ἐς Σοῦσα, ἐστερημένος τε τῆς ἐν Σπάρτῃ
 βασιληΐας καὶ φυγὴν ἐπιβαλὼν ἐωυτῷ ἐκ Λακεδαιμόνος.
 οὗτος ὠνήρ πυθόμενος τῶν Δαρείου παίδων τὴν διαφορὴν,
 ἐλθὼν, ὥς ἢ φάτις μιν ἔχει, Ξέρξῃ συνεβούλευε λέγειν
 πρὸς τοῖσι ἔλεγε ἔπεισι, ὥς αὐτὸς μὲν γένοιτο Δαρείῳ ἤδη
 βασιλεύοντι καὶ ἔχοντι τὸ Περσέων κράτος, Ἄρτοβαζάνης
 δὲ ἔτι ἰδιώτῃ ἐόντι Δαρείῳ· οὐκὼν οὔτε οἶκος εἴη οὔτε
 δίκαιον ἄλλον τινὰ τὸ γέρας ἔχειν πρὸ ἐωυτοῦ· ἐπεὶ γε
 καὶ ἐν Σπάρτῃ ἔφη ὁ Δημάρητος ὑποτιθέμενος οὕτω
 νομίζεσθαι, ἣν οἱ μὲν προγεγονότες ἔωσι πρὶν ἢ τὸν
 πατέρα σφέων βασιλεῦσαι, ὁ δὲ βασιλεύοντι ὀψίγονος
 ἐπιγένηται, τοῦ ἐπιγενομένου τὴν ἔκδεξιν τῆς βασιληΐας
 γίνεσθαι. χρησαμένου δὲ Ξέρξεω τῇ Δημαρήτου ὑποθήκῃ,
 γνοὺς ὁ Δαρείος ὥς λέγοι δίκαια βασιλέα μιν ἀπέδεξε.
 δοκέειν δέ μοι, καὶ ἄνευ ταύτης τῆς ὑποθήκης βασιλεῦσαι
 ἂν Ξέρξης· ἡ γὰρ Ἄτοσσα εἶχε τὸ πᾶν κράτος.

κατὰ τῶντὸ τούτοις καὶ Δημάρητος ὁ Ἀρίστωνος
 ἀναβεβηκὼς ἐς |lily , |steal, take τε τῆς ἐν Σπάρτῃ
 βασιλῆος καὶ |flight, |throw upon ἑωυτῷ ἐκ Λακεδαιμόνος.
 οὗτος ὡνὴρ |means of escape τῶν Δαρείου παίδων τὴν |disagreement
 ἐλθὼν, ὡς ἡ |report, |rumor μιν ἔχει, Ξέρξῃ |give advice; (mid) consult λέγειν
 πρὸς τοῖσι ἔλεγε ἔπεσι, ὡς αὐτὸς μὲν γένοιτο Δαρείῳ ἤδη
 |be king καὶ ἔχοντι τὸ Περσέων κράτος, Ἄρτοβαζάνης
 δὲ ἔτι |private; a layman* ρείῳ* |no longer ἵτε οἶκός εἴη οὔτε
 δίκαιον ἄλλον τινὰ τὸ |reward, |honor ἔχειν πρὸ ἑωυτοῦ* ἐπεὶ γε
 καὶ ἐν Σπάρτῃ ἔφη ὁ Δημάρητος |suggest οὕτω
 νομίζεσθαι, ἣν οἱ μὲν |precede, preexist ἔωσι πρὶν ἢ τὸν
 πατέρα σφέων |be king , ὁ δὲ |be king |posterity; late-born
 |succeed , τοῦ |succeed τὴν ἑκδεξίν τῆς βασιλείας
 γίνεσθαι. χρησαμένου δὲ Ξέρξεω τῇ Δημαρήτου ὑποθήκῃ,
 γνοὺς ὁ Δαρείος ὡς λέγοι δίκαια βασιλέα μιν ἀπέδεξε.
 δοκέειν δέ μοι, καὶ ἄνευ ταύτης τῆς |advice, |be king
 ἂν Ξέρξης* ἡ γὰρ Ἄτοσσα εἶχε τὸ πᾶν κράτος.
 |warning; deposit

that Demaratos also, the son of Ariston, had come up to Susa at this very same time, having been deprived of the kingdom in Sparta and having laid upon himself a sentence of exile from Lacedemon. This man, hearing of the difference between the sons of Dareios, came (as it is reported of him) and counselled Xerxes to say in addition to those things which he was wont to say, that he had been born to Dareios at the time when he was already reigning as king and was holding the supreme power over the Persians, while Artobazanes had been born while Dareios was still in a private station: it was not fitting therefore nor just that another should have the honour before him; for even in Sparta, suggested Demaratos, this was the custom, that is to say, if some of the sons had been born first, before their father began to reign, and another came after, born later while he was reigning, the succession of the kingdom belonged to him who had been born later. Xerxes accordingly made use of the suggestion of Demaratos; and Dareios perceiving that he spoke that which was just, designated him to be king. It is my opinion however that even without this suggestion Xerxes would have become king, for Atossa was all-powerful.

*vocabulary***ἄγερσις** gathering, mustering**ἀδελφεή** sister**ἀναχωρέω** return, retreat ~heir**ἀνεψιός** cousin ~nepotism**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ὁ) show, point out;
appoint; (mid) declare**ἀποδέχομαι** accept ~doctrine**βασιλεύω** be king**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot**ἐγγίγνομαι** live in ~genus**ἐκγίγνομαι** be born; be by birth

~genus

ἕξ six ~hexagon**οὐδαμὸς** not anyone**Πέρσης** Persian**πρόθυμος** (ὁ) willing, eager ~fume**στρατιά** army ~strategy**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient;
agree; (mp) happen ~bear**τιμωρέω** (ἰ) (+dat) take vengeance,

punish; aid one who has been attacked

7.4

ἀποδέξας δὲ βασιλέα Πέρσῃσι Ξέρξεα Δαρείος ὀρμάτο στρατεύεσθαι. ἀλλὰ γὰρ μετὰ ταῦτά τε καὶ Αἰγύπτου ἀπόστασιν τῷ ὑστέρω ἔτει παρασκευαζόμενον συνήνεκε αὐτὸν Δαρεῖον, βασιλεύσαντα τὰ πάντα ἕξ τε καὶ τριήκοντα ἔτεα, ἀποθανεῖν, οὐδέ οἱ ἐξεγένετο οὔτε τοὺς ἀπεστεῶτας Αἰγυπτίους οὔτε Ἀθηναίους τιμωρήσασθαι.

7.5

ἀποθανόντος δὲ Δαρείου ἡ βασιληίῃ ἀνεχώρησε εἰς τὸν παῖδα τὸν ἐκείνου Ξέρξην. ὁ τοῖνυν Ξέρξης ἐπὶ μὲν τὴν Ἑλλάδα οὐδαμῶς πρόθυμος ἦν κατ' ἀρχὰς στρατεύεσθαι, ἐπὶ δὲ Αἴγυπτον ἐποιέετο στρατιῆς ἄγερσιν. παρεὼν δὲ καὶ δυνάμενος παρ' αὐτῷ μέγιστον Περσέων Μαρδόνιος ὁ Γοβρυέω, ὃς ἦν Ξέρξη μὲν ἀνεψιὸς Δαρείου δὲ ἀδελφεῆς παῖς, τοιούτου λόγου εἶχετο, λέγων «δέσποτα, οὐκ οἰκός ἐστι Ἀθηναίους ἐργασαμένους πολλὰ δὴ κακὰ Πέρσας μὴ οὐ δοῦναι δίκην τῶν ἐποίησαν. ἀλλ' εἰ τὸ μὲν νῦν

7.4

ἀποδέξας δὲ βασιλέα Πέρσησι Ξέρξεα Δαρείος ὀρμᾶτο
στρατεύεσθαι. ἀλλὰ γὰρ μετὰ ταῦτά τε καὶ Αἰγύπτου
ἀπόστασιν τῷ ὑστέρω ἔτεϊ παρασκευαζόμενον συνήνεικε
αὐτὸν Δαρεῖον, |be king τὰ πάντα ἔξ τε καὶ
τριήκοντα ἔτεα, ἀποθανεῖν, οὐδέ οἱ ἐξεγένετο οὔτε τοὺς
ἀπεστεῶτας Αἰγυπτίους οὔτε Ἀθηναίους |take vengeance,
|punish, aid

7.5

ἀποθανόντος δὲ Δαρείου ἡ βασιληίῃ |return, ἐς τὸν
|retreat
παῖδα τὸν ἐκείνου Ξέρξην. ὁ τοῖνυν Ξέρξης ἐπὶ μὲν τὴν
Ἑλλάδα |not anyone|willing, ἦν κατ' ἀρχὰς στρατεύεσθαι,
|eager
ἐπὶ δὲ Αἰγύπτου ἐποίεετο στρατιῆς |gathering, παρεὼν δὲ
|mustering
καὶ δυνάμενος παρ' αὐτῷ μέγιστον Περσέων Μαρδόνιος
ὁ Γοβρύεω, ὃς ἦν Ξέρξῃ μὲν |cousin Δαρείου δὲ |sister
παῖς, τοιούτου λόγου εἶχετο, λέγων «|master, οὐκ οἰκός
|despot
ἐστὶ Ἀθηναίους ἐργασαμένους πολλὰ δὴ κακὰ Πέρσας μὴ
οὐ δοῦναι δίκην τῶν ἐποίησαν. ἀλλ' εἰ τὸ μὲν νῦν

7.4

Then having designated Xerxes to the Persians as their king, Dareios wished to go on his expeditions. However in the next year after this and after the revolt of Egypt, it came to pass that Dareios himself died, having been king in all six and thirty years; and thus he did not succeed in taking vengeance either upon the revolted Egyptians or upon the Athenians.

7.5

Dareios being dead the kingdom passed to his son Xerxes. Now Xerxes at the first was by no means anxious to make a march against Hellas, but against Egypt he continued to gather a force. Mardonios however, the son of Gobryas, who was a cousin of Xerxes, being sister's son to Dareios, was ever at his side, and having power with him more than any other of the Persians, he kept continually to such discourse as this which follows, saying: "Master, it is not fitting that the Athenians, after having done to the Persians very great evil, should

vocabulary

ἄκρα at the edge, extreme ~acute
ἄκρη at the edge, extreme
ἄκρις -ός (f) hilltop ~acute
ἀναπείθω (aor, plupf) seduce,
 persuade; (mp, pf, aor ppl) trust, obey,
 be confident in
δένδρεον -οῦ tree
δένδρον tree
δένδρος tree
ἐξυβρίζω have a violent breakout
ἐπικαλέω call upon
ἥμερος gentle; (animals) domesticated
ἡμερόω tame

κατεργάζομαι achieve; cultivate; get;
 kill
κτάομαι acquire, possess
παντοῖος all kinds of
παρενθήκη an aside, addition
 ~parentheses
περικαλλής very beautiful
προθυμία (ῶ) zeal, alacrity ~fume
σοῦσον lily
στρατηλατέω lead an army
συλλαμβάνω seize, capture;
 understand ~epilepsy
τιμωρός (ι) avenging
ὑπαρχος subordinate

ταῦτα πρήσσοις τά περ ἐν χερσὶ ἔχεις· ἡμερώσας δὲ Αἴγυπτον τὴν ἐξυβρίσασαν στρατηλάτее ἐπὶ τὰς Ἀθήνας, ἵνα λόγος τέ σε ἔχῃ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων ἀγαθός, καὶ τις ὕστερον φυλάσσεται ἐπὶ γῆν τὴν σὴν στρατεύεσθαι.» οὗτος μὲν οἱ ὁ λόγος ἦν τιμωρός· τοῦδε δὲ τοῦ λόγου παρενθήκην ποιέεσκετο τήνδε, ὡς ἡ Εὐρώπη περικαλλὴς εἶη χώρα, καὶ δένδρεα παντοῖα φέρει τὰ ἥμερα, ἀρετὴν τε ἄκρη, βασιλεί τε μούνῳ θνητῶν ἀξίη ἐκτῆσθαι.

7.6

ταῦτα ἔλεγε οἷα νεωτέρων ἔργων ἐπιθυμητὴς ἐὼν καὶ θέλων αὐτὸς τῆς Ἑλλάδος ὑπαρχος εἶναι. χρόνῳ δὲ κατεργάσατό τε καὶ ἀνέπεισε ὥστε ποιέειν ταῦτα Ξέρξην· συνέλαβε γὰρ καὶ ἄλλα οἱ σύμμαχα γενόμενα ἐς τὸ πείθεσθαι Ξέρξην. τοῦτο μὲν ἀπὸ τῆς Θεσσαλίας παρὰ τῶν Ἀλευαδέων ἀπιγμένοι ἄγγελοι ἐπεκαλέοντο βασιλέα πᾶσαν προθυμίην παρεχόμενοι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα· οἱ δὲ Ἀλευάδαι οὗτοι ἦσαν Θεσσαλίας βασιλεῖς. τοῦτο δὲ Πεισιστρατιδέων οἱ ἀναβεβηκότες ἐς Σοῦσα, τῶν τε

ταῦτα πρήσσοις τά περ ἐν χερσὶ ἔχεις· |tame δὲ

Αἴγυπτον τὴν |have a violent|lead an army ἐπὶ τὰς Ἀθήνας,
|breakout

ἵνα λόγος τέ σε ἔχῃ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων ἀγαθός, καὶ τις

ὕστερον φυλάσσεται ἐπὶ γῆν τὴν σὴν στρατεύεσθαι.»

οὗτος μὲν οἱ ὁ λόγος ἦν |avenging τοῦδε δὲ τοῦ λόγου

|an aside, addition. ἔσκετο τήνδε, ὡς ἡ Εὐρώπη |very beautiful

εἷη χώρα, καὶ δένδρεα |all kinds of ἔρει τὰ |gentle; , (animals) .τε
|domesticated

ἄκρη, βασιλεί τε μούνω θνητῶν ἀξίη ἐκτῆσθαι.

7.6

ταῦτα ἔλεγε οἷα νεωτέρων ἔργων ἐπιθυμητὴς εἶναι καὶ

θέλων αὐτὸς τῆς Ἑλλάδος |subordinate εἶναι. χρόνῳ δὲ

|achieve; culti- τε καὶ |(aor, plupf) seduce, persuade; (mp, pf, aor ppl) trust,
|vate; get; kill |obey, be confident in

|seize, capture; ρ καὶ ἄλλα οἱ σύμμαχα γενόμενα ἐς τὸ
|understand

πείθεσθαι Ξέρξην. τοῦτο μὲν ἀπὸ τῆς Θεσσαλίας παρὰ

τῶν Ἀλευαδέων ἀπιγμένοι ἄγγελοι |call upon βασιλέα

πᾶσαν προθυμίην παρεχόμενοι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα· οἱ δὲ

Ἀλευάδαι οὗτοι ἦσαν Θεσσαλίας βασιλεῖς. τοῦτο δὲ

Πεισιστρατιδέων οἱ ἀναβεβηκότες ἐς |lily , τῶν τε

not pay the penalty for that which they have done. What if thou shouldest at this present time do that which thou hast in thy hands to do; and when thou hast tamed the land of Egypt, which has broken out insolently against us, then do thou march an army against Athens, that a good report may be made of thee by men, and that in future every one may beware of making expeditions against thy land.” Thus far his speech had to do with vengeance, and to this he would make addition as follows, saying that Europe was a very fair land and bore all kinds of trees that are cultivated for fruit, and was of excellent fertility, and such that the king alone of all mortals was worthy to possess it.

7.6

These things he was wont to say, since he was one who had a desire for perilous enterprise and wished to be himself the governor of Hellas under the king. So in time he prevailed upon Xerxes and persuaded him to do this; for other things also assisted him and proved helpful to him in persuading Xerxes. In the first place there had come from Thessaly messengers sent by the Aleuadai, who were inviting the king to come against Hellas and were showing great zeal in his cause, (now these Aleuadai were kings of Thessaly): and then secondly those of the sons of Peisistratos who had come up to Susa were inviting him also, holding to the same arguments as the Aleuadai;

vocabulary

ἀλίσκομαι be captured ~helix
αὐτόφωρος notoriously, manifestly
ἀφανίζω do away with, make off with;
 (pass) disappear
ἐκλέγω pick, single out
ἐλασις -εως (f) driving out
ἐμποιέω make inside of ~poet
ἐνιμι be in ~ion
ἐξελαύνω drive out, exile ~elastic
ἐξηγέομαι lead forth; set out, describe
 ~hegemony
ἐπίκειμαι impose; shut a door

εὐτυχής fortunate
ἐχθρη hate
καταλέγω relate in detail, choose;
 enroll ~legion
μίν him, her, it
ὄψις ὄψεως (f) sight, view
 ~thanatopsis
Πέρσης Persian
σεμνός revered, holy
συναναβαίνω go up with ~basis
σφάλμα stumble
χρησμολόγος prophesying
χρησμός oracular response

αὐτῶν λόγων ἐχόμενοι τῶν καὶ οἱ Ἀλευάδαι, καὶ δὴ
 τι πρὸς τούτοισι ἔτι πλέον προσωρέγοντό οἱ· ἔχοντες
 Ὀνομάκριτον ἄνδρα Ἀθηναῖον, χρησμολόγον τε καὶ
 διαθέτην χρησμῶν τῶν Μουσαίου, ἀναβεβήκεσαν, τὴν
 ἔχθρην προκαταλυσάμενοι. ἐξηλάσθη γὰρ ὑπὸ Ἰππάρχου
 τοῦ Πεισιστράτου ὁ Ὀνομάκριτος ἐξ Ἀθηνέων, ἐπ'
 αὐτοφώρῳ ἀλούς ὑπὸ Λάσου τοῦ Ἑρμιονέος ἐμποιέων
 ἐς τὰ Μουσαίου χρησμόν, ὡς αἱ ἐπὶ Λήμνῳ ἐπικείμεναι
 νῆσοι ἀφανιζοίαιτο κατὰ τῆς θαλάσσης. διὸ ἐξήλασέ μιν
 ὁ Ἰππαρχος, πρότερον χρεώμενος τὰ μάλιστα. τότε
 δὲ συναναβὰς ὅκως ἀπίκοιτο ἐς ὄψιν τὴν βασιλέως,
 λεγόντων τῶν Πεισιστρατιδέων περὶ αὐτοῦ σεμνοὺς
 λόγους, κατέλεγε τῶν χρησμῶν· εἰ μὲν τι ἐνέοι σφάλμα
 φέρον τῷ βαρβάρῳ, τῶν μὲν ἔλεγε οὐδέν, ὁ δὲ τὰ
 εὐτυχέστατα ἐκλεγόμενος ἔλεγε τόν τε Ἑλλήσποντον ὡς
 ζευχθῆναι χρεὸν εἶη ὑπ' ἀνδρὸς Πέρσεω, τὴν τε ἔλασιν
 ἐξηγεόμενος. οὗτός τε δὴ χρησμοδέων προσεφέρετο καὶ
 οἱ τε Πεισιστρατίδαι καὶ οἱ Ἀλευάδαι γνώμας

αὐτῶν λόγων ἐχόμενοι τῶν καὶ οἱ Ἀλευάδαι, καὶ δὴ
 τι πρὸς τούτοισι ἔτι πλέον προσωρέγοντό οἱ· ἔχοντες
 Ὀνομάκριτον ἄνδρα Ἀθηναῖον, |prophesying τε καὶ
 διαθέτην |oracular response τῶν Μουσαίου, ἀναβεβήκεσαν, τὴν
 |hate προκαταλυσάμενοι. ἐξηλάσθη γὰρ ὑπὸ Ἰππάρχου
 τοῦ Πεισιστράτου ὁ Ὀνομάκριτος ἐξ Ἀθηνέων, ἐπ'
 |notoriously, |be captured Ἀλάσου τοῦ Ἑρμιονέος |make inside of
 |manifestly
 ἐς τὰ Μουσαίου |oracular response, ὥς αἱ ἐπὶ Λήμνῳ |impose; shut a door
 νῆσοι |do away with, make off ἧς θαλάσσης. διὸ |drive out μιν
 |with; (pass) disappear
 ὁ Ἰππαρχος, πρότερον χρεώμενος τὰ μάλιστα. τότε
 δὲ |go up with ὅκως ἀπίκοιτο ἐς |sight τὴν βασιλέως,
 λεγόντων τῶν Πεισιστρατιδέων περὶ αὐτοῦ |revered, holy
 λόγους, |relate in detail, |oracular response εἰ μὲν τι ἐνέοι σφάλμα
 |choose; enroll
 φέρον τῷ βαρβάρῳ, τῶν μὲν ἔλεγε οὐδέν, ὁ δὲ τὰ
 |fortunate |pick, out single ἔλεγε τόν τε Ἑλλήσποντον ὥς
 |ζευχθῆναι χρεὸν εἶη ὑπ' ἀνδρὸς |Persian, τὴν τε |driving out
 |lead forth; set out, describe οὗτός τε δὴ χρησµωδέων προσεφέρετο καὶ
 οἱ τε Πεισιστρατίδαι καὶ οἱ Ἀλευάδαι γνώμας

and moreover they offered him yet more inducement in addition to these; for there was one Onomacritos an Athenian, who both uttered oracles and also had collected and arranged the oracles of Musaios; and with this man they had come up, after they had first reconciled the enmity between them. For Onomacritos had been driven forth from Athens by Hipparchos the son of Peisistratos, having been caught by Lasos of Hermion interpolating in the works of Musaios an oracle to the effect that the islands which lie off Lemnos should disappear under the sea. For this reason Hipparchos drove him forth, having before this time been very much wont to consult him. Now however he had gone up with them; and when he had come into the presence of the king, the sons of Peisistratos spoke of him in magnificent terms, and he repeated some of the oracles; and if there was in them anything which imported disaster to the Barbarians, of this he said nothing; but choosing out of them the most fortunate things he told how it was destined that the Hellespont should be yoked with a bridge by a Persian, and he set forth the manner of the march. He then thus urged Xerxes with oracles, while the sons of Peisistratos and the Aleuadai pressed him with their

vocabulary

ἁλίσκομαι be captured ~helix
ἄλλομαι to jump ~sally
ἄλωσις -τος (f) being conquered
ἀναγιγνώσκω recognize, read,
 understand, persuade
ἀποδείκνυμι (ῶ) show, point out;
 appoint; (mid) declare
ἐνθαῦτα there, here
ἐπιτρέπω entrust, decide, allow
 ~trophy
ἐπιτροπεύω administrate

ἐφικνέομαι reach, bear on
καθηγέομαι lead
καταστρέφω overturn, subdue
 ~catastrophe
μετέπειτα afterward, next
Πέρσης Persian
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
στρατηγή expedition, campaign
συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion
σύλλογος meeting
φονεύω kill

ἀποδεικνύμενοι.

7.7

ὥς δὲ ἀνεγνώσθη Ξέρξης στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ἐνθαῦτα δευτέρῳ μὲν ἔτει μετὰ τὸν θάνατον τὸν Δαρείου πρῶτα στρατηγὴν ποιέεται ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀπεστεῶτας. τούτους μὲν νυν καταστρεψάμενος καὶ Αἴγυπτον πᾶσαν πολλὸν δουλοτέρην ποιήσας ἢ ἐπὶ Δαρείου ἦν, ἐπιτράπει Ἀχαιμένει ἀδελφεῷ μὲν ἑωυτοῦ, Δαρείου δὲ παιδί. Ἀχαιμένεα μὲν νυν ἐπιτροπεύοντα Αἰγύπτου χρόνῳ μετέπειτα ἐφόνευσε Ἰνάρως ὁ Ψαμμητίχου ἀνὴρ Λίβυς.

7.8

Ξέρξης δὲ μετὰ Αἰγύπτου ἄλωσιν ὥς ἔμελλε εἰς χεῖρας ἄξεσθαι τὸ στράτευμα τὸ ἐπὶ τὰς Ἀθήνας, σύλλογον ἐπίκητον Περσέων τῶν ἀρίστων ἐποιέετο, ἵνα γνώμας τε πύθηται σφέων καὶ αὐτὸς ἐν πᾶσι εἴπῃ τὰ θέλει. ὥς δὲ συνελέχθησαν, ἔλεξεν Ξέρξης τάδε.

«ἄνδρες Πέρσαι, οὗτ' αὐτὸς κατηγοήσομαι νόμον τόνδε

|show, point out; ap-
|point; (mid) declare

7.7

ὥς δὲ |read Ξέρξης στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα,
|there, here δευτέρῳ μὲν ἔτει μετὰ τὸν θάνατον τὸν
Δαρείου πρῶτα |expedition, ποιέεται ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀπεστεῶτας.
|campaign
τούτους μὲν νυν |overturn, subdue καὶ Αἴγυπτον πᾶσαν
πολλὸν δουλοτέρην ποιήσας ἢ ἐπὶ Δαρείου ἦν, ἐπιτράπει
Ἀχαιμένει ἀδελφεῷ μὲν ἐωυτοῦ, Δαρείου δὲ παιδί.
Ἀχαιμένεα μὲν νυν |administrate Αἰγύπτου χρόνῳ
|afterward, |kill Ἰνάρῳς ὁ Ψαμμητίχου ἀνὴρ Λίβυς.
|next

7.8

Ξέρξης δὲ μετὰ Αἰγύπτου ἄλωσιν ὥς ἔμελλε ἐς χεῖρας
ἄξεσθαι τὸ |army τὸ ἐπὶ τὰς Ἀθήνας, |meeting
|reach, bear ὄν, σέων τῶν ἀρίστων ἐποιέετο, ἵνα γνώμας τε
πύθῃται σφέων καὶ αὐτὸς ἐν πᾶσι εἴπῃ τὰ θέλει. ὥς δὲ
|collect, assemble, ἔλεξεν Ξέρξης τάδε.
«ἄνδρες Πέρσαι, οὐτ' αὐτὸς |lead νόμον τόνδε

advice.

7.7

So when Xerxes had been persuaded to make an expedition against Hellas, then in the next year after the death of Dareios he made a march first against those who had revolted. Having subdued these and having reduced all Egypt to slavery much greater than it had suffered in the reign of Dareios, he entrusted the government of it to Achaimenes his own brother, a son of Dareios. Now this Achaimenes being a governor of Egypt was slain afterwards by Inaros the son of Psammetichos, a Libyan.

7.8

Xerxes then after the conquest of Egypt, being about to take in hand the expedition against Athens, summoned a chosen assembly of the best men among the Persians, that he might both learn their opinions and himself in the presence of all declare that which he intended to do; and when they were assembled, Xerxes spoke to them as follows: (a) “Persians, I shall not be the first to

vocabulary

ἀτρεμίζω not be restless
ἔφεπω drive, meet, follow ~sequel
ζεύγνυμι (ῥ) yoke, join ~zygote
ἡγεμονία authority, rule
καθαιρέω take down, close ~heresy
κατεργάζομαι achieve; cultivate; get;
 kill
κῦδος -εος (n, 3) glory, renown
 ~kudos
οὐδαμός not anyone
παραδείκνυμι (ῥ) receive, admit
Πέρσης Persian

προσγίγνομαι become ally to
προσκτάομαι get, win as well
στρατός common people/soldiers
 ~strategy
συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion
συμφέρω bring together; be expedient;
 agree; (mp) happen ~bear
τιμωρέω (ι) (+dat) take vengeance,
 punish; aid one who has been attacked
τιμωρία (ιι) vengeance, punishment
ὑπερτίθηναι hand over; excel; defer
φλαῦρος trifling
φροντίζω consider, ponder

ἐν ὑμῖν τιθείς, παραδεξάμενός τε αὐτῷ χρήσομαι. ὥς γὰρ ἐγὼ πυνθάνομαι τῶν πρεσβυτέρων, οὐδαμὰ κω ἡτρεμίσαμεν, ἐπεῖτε παρελάβομεν τὴν ἡγεμονίην τήνδε παρὰ Μήδων, Κύρου κατελόντος Ἀστυάγεα· ἀλλὰ θεός τε οὕτω ἄγει καὶ αὐτοῖσι ἡμῖν πολλὰ ἐπέπουσι συμφέρεται ἐπὶ τὸ ἄμεινον. τὰ μὲν νυν Κῦρός τε καὶ Καμβύσης πατήρ τε ἐμὸς Δαρείος κατεργάσαντο καὶ προσεκτήσαντο ἔθνεα, ἐπισταμένοισι εὖ οὐκ ἂν τις λέγοι. ἐγὼ δὲ ἐπεῖτε παρέλαβον τὸν θρόνον τοῦτον, ἐφρόντιζον ὅκως μὴ λείψομαι τῶν πρότερον γενομένων ἐν τιμῇ τῇδε μηδὲ ἐλάσσω προσκτῆσομαι δύναμιν Πέρσῃσι· φροντίζων δὲ εὐρίσκω ἅμα μὲν κῦδος τε ἡμῖν προσγινόμενον χώραν τε τῆς νῦν ἐκτήμεθα οὐκ ἐλάσσονα οὐδὲ φλαυροτέρην παμφορωτέρην τε, ἅμα δὲ τιμωρίην τε καὶ τίσιν γινομένην. διὸ ὑμέας νῦν ἐγὼ συνέλεξα, ἵνα τὸ νοέω πρήσσειν ὑπερθέωμαι ὑμῖν·

Μέλλω ζεύξας τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον ἐλαῖν στρατὸν διὰ τῆς Εὐρώπης ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ἵνα Ἀθηναίους τιμωρήσωμαι

ἐν ὑμῖν τιθείς, παραδεξάμενός τε αὐτῷ χρήσομαι. ὥς
 γὰρ ἐγὼ πυνθάνομαι τῶν πρεσβυτέρων, οὐδαμὰ καὶ
 |not be restless , ἐπεῖτε παρελάβομεν τὴν |authority, rule ἵνδ᾽
 παρὰ Μήδων, Κύρου |take down, close τυάγα· ἀλλὰ θεός τε
 οὕτω ἄγει καὶ αὐτοῖσι ἡμῖν πολλὰ |drive, meet, |bring together; be expedi-
 |follow |ent; agree; (mp) happen
 ἐπὶ τὸ ἄμεινον. τὰ μὲν νυν Κῦρός τε καὶ Καμβύσης
 πατήρ τε ἐμὸς Δαρείος |achieve; cultivate; get; |get, win as well
 |kill
 ἔθνεα, ἐπισταμένοισι εὖ οὐκ ἂν τις λέγοι. ἐγὼ δὲ
 ἐπεῖτε παρέλαβον τὸν θρόνον τοῦτον, |consider, ὅκως
 |ponder
 μὴ λείβομαι τῶν πρότερον γενομένων ἐν τιμῇ τῇδε μηδὲ
 ἐλάσσω |get, win as well δύναμιν Πέρσῃσι· |consider, δὲ
 |ponder
 εὐρίσκω ἅμα μὲν |glory, |τῇ ἡμῖν προσγινόμενον χώραν
 |renown
 τε τῆς νῦν ἐκτῆμεθα οὐκ ἐλάσσονα οὐδὲ |trifling
 παμφορωτέραν τε, ἅμα δὲ τιμωρίην τε καὶ τίσιν
 γινομένην. διὸ ὑμέας νῦν ἐγὼ |collect, |, ἵνα τὸ νοέω
 |assemble
 πρήσσειν |hand over; ὑμῖν·
 |excel; defer
 Μέλλω |yoke, join ἔν Ἑλλήσποντον ἑλᾶν |army διὰ τῆς
 Εὐρώπης ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ἵνα Ἀθηναίους |take vengeance,
 |punish, aid

establish this custom in your nation, but having received it from others I shall follow it: for as I am informed by those who are older than myself, we never yet have kept quiet since we received this supremacy in succession to the Medes, when Cyrus overthrew Astyages; but God thus leads us, and for ourselves tends to good that we are busied about many things. Now about the nations which Cyrus and Cambyzes and my father Dareios subdued and added to their possessions there is no need for me to speak, since ye know well: and as for me, from the day when I received by inheritance this throne upon which I sit I carefully considered always how in this honourable place I might not fall short of those who have been before me, nor add less power to the dominion of the Persians: and thus carefully considering I find a way by which not only glory may be won by us, together with a land not less in extent nor worse than that which we now possess, (and indeed more varied in its productions), but also vengeance and retribution may be brought about. Wherefore I have assembled you together now, in order that I may communicate to you that which I have it in my mind to do. (b) I design to yoke the Hellespont with a bridge, and to march an army through Europe against Hellas, in order that I

*vocabulary***αιθήρ** ether, air, sky ~ether**ἄλσος** -εος (n, 3) grove, sacred place**ἀνάρτημαι** attach to, make dependent upon**ἀνευρίσκω** discover**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ῶ) show, point out; appoint; (mid) declare**ἐγγίγνομαι** live in ~genus**ἐκγίγνομαι** be born; be by birth

~genus

ἐμπύμπρημι burn up ~pyre**ἐμπρήθω** burn up**ιθύω** (ι) charge at, head for ~justice**καταστρέφω** overturn, subdue
~catastrophe**λογίζομαι** reckon, consider**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis**ὁμουρέω** be next to**Πέρσης** Persian**Περσίς** Persian (language)**πλησιόχωρος** adjacent**πυρόω** burn something**στρατηγέω** be a general**σφέτερος** their**τιμωρέω** (ι) (+dat) take vengeance, punish; aid one who has been attacked**τοσόσδε** this much

ὅσα δὴ πεποιήκασι Πέρσας τε καὶ πατέρα τὸν ἐμόν.
 ὠρᾶτε μὲν νυν καὶ πατέρα τὸν ἐμόν Δαρεῖον ἰθύνοντα
 στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας τούτους. ἀλλ' ὁ μὲν
 τετελεύτηκε καὶ οὐκ ἐξεγένετο αὐτῷ τιμωρήσασθαι· ἐγὼ
 δὲ ὑπὲρ τε ἐκείνου καὶ τῶν ἄλλων Περσέων οὐ πρότερον
 παύσομαι πρὶν ἢ ἔλω τε καὶ πυρώσω τὰς Ἀθήνας, οἳ γε
 ἐμὲ καὶ πατέρα τὸν ἐμόν ὑπῆρξαν ἄδικα ποιεῦντες. πρῶτα
 μὲν ἐς Σάρδεις ἐλθόντες, ἅμα Ἀρισταγόρῃ τῷ Μιλησίῳ
 δούλῳ δὲ ἡμετέρῳ ἀπικόμενοι, ἐνέπρησαν τά τε ἄλσεα
 καὶ τὰ ἱρά· δεύτερα δὲ ἡμέας οἷα ἔρξαν ἐς τὴν σφετέρην
 ἀποβάντας, ὅτε Δαίτις τε καὶ Ἄρταφρένης ἐστρατήγεον,
 τὰ ἐπίστασθέ κου πάντες.

Τούτων μὲν τοίνυν εἵνεκα ἀνάρτημαι ἐπ' αὐτοὺς
 στρατεύεσθαι, ἀγαθὰ δὲ ἐν αὐτοῖσι τοσάδε ἀνευρίσκω
 λογιζόμενος· εἰ τούτους τε καὶ τοὺς τούτοισι
 πλησιοχώρους καταστρεψόμεθα, οἳ Πέλοπος τοῦ Φρυγὸς
 νέμονται χώραν, γῆν τὴν Περσίδα ἀποδέξομεν τῷ Διὸς
 αἰθέρι ὁμουρέουσιν. οὐ γὰρ δὴ χώραν γε οὐδεμίαν

ὅσα δὴ πεποιήκασι Πέρσας τε καὶ πατέρα τὸν ἐμόν.

ὥρᾱτε μὲν νυν καὶ πατέρα τὸν ἐμόν Δαρεῖον |charge at, head for

στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας τούτους. ἀλλ' ὁ μὲν

τετελεύτηκε καὶ οὐκ ἐξεγένετο αὐτῷ |take vengeance, ἐγὼ
|punish, aid

δὲ ὑπέρ τε ἐκείνου καὶ τῶν ἄλλων Περσέων οὐ πρότερον

παύσομαι πρὶν ἢ ἔλω τε καὶ |burn something ᾧ θήνας, οἱ γε

ἐμὲ καὶ πατέρα τὸν ἐμόν ὑπῆρξαν ἄδικα ποιεῦντες. πρῶτα

μὲν ἐς Σάρδεις ἐλθόντες, ἅμα Ἀρισταγόρῃ τῷ Μιλησίῳ

δούλῳ δὲ ἡμετέρῳ ἀπικόμενοι, ἐνέπρησαν τά τε |grove,
|sacred
|place
καὶ τὰ ἱρά· δεῦτερα δὲ ἡμέας οἷα ἔρξαν ἐς τὴν |their

ἀποβάντας, ὅτε Δατὶς τε καὶ Ἀρταφρένης |be a general ,

τὰ ἐπίστασθέ κου πάντες.

Τούτων μὲν τοίνυν εἵνεκα |attach to, make
|dependent upon αὐτοὺς

στρατεύεσθαι, ἀγαθὰ δὲ ἐν αὐτοῖσι |this much|discover

|reckon, εἰ τούτους τε καὶ τοὺς τούτοις
|consider

|adjacent |overturn, subdue , οἱ Πέλοπος τοῦ Φρυγὸς

|distribute χώρην, γῆν τὴν |Persian
(language) |show, point out; ᾗ ἀπ' ὧς
|point; (mid) declare

|ether |be next to . οὐ γὰρ δὴ χώρην γε οὐδεμίαν

may take vengeance on the Athenians for all the things which they have done both to the Persians and to my father. Ye saw how my father Dareios also was purposing to make an expedition against these men; but he has ended his life and did not succeed in taking vengeance upon them. I however, on behalf of him and also of the other Persians, will not cease until I have conquered Athens and burnt it with fire; seeing that they did wrong unprovoked to me and to my father. First they went to Sardis, having come with Aristagoras the Milesian our slave, and they set fire to the sacred groves and the temples; and then secondly, what things they did to us when we disembarked in their land, at the time when Datis and Artaphrenes were commanders of our army, ye all know well, as I think. (c) For these reasons I have resolved to make an expedition against them, and reckoning I find in the matter so many good things as ye shall hear:—if we shall subdue these and the neighbours of these, who dwell in the land of Pelops the Phrygian, we shall cause the Persian land to have the same boundaries as the heaven of Zeus; since in truth upon no land will the sun look down which borders ours, but

*vocabulary***ἀναίτιος** blameless ~etiology**ἀποφαίνω** display, declare**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot**διεξέρχομαι** go through**δούλιος** of a slave**ζυγόν** yoke, a joined pair ~zygote**ζυγός** yoke, a joined pair ~zygote**καθοράω** look down ~panorama**καταλέγω** relate in detail, choose;

enroll ~legion

ὄμουρος bordering**πρόθυμος** (ὁ) willing, eager ~fume**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark

~semaphore

στρατός common people/soldiers

~strategy

τίμιος honored, precious**ὑπολείπω** leave as a leftover; leave a person behind ~eclipse

κατόψεται ἥλιος ὅμουρον εὐῶσαν τῇ ἡμετέρῃ, ἀλλὰ σφέας
 πάσας ἐγὼ ἄμα ὑμῖν χώραν θήσω, διὰ πάσης διεξελθὼν
 τῆς Εὐρώπης. πυνθάνομαι γὰρ ὧδε ἔχειν, οὔτε τινὰ
 πόλιν ἀνδρῶν οὐδεμίαν οὔτε ἔθνος οὐδὲν ἀνθρώπων
 ὑπολείπεσθαι, τὸ ἡμῖν οἶόν τε ἔσται ἐλθεῖν ἐς μάχην,
 τούτων τῶν κατέλεξα ὑπεξαραιρημένων. οὕτω οἱ τε ἡμῖν
 αἵτιοι ἔξουσι δούλιον ζυγὸν οἱ τε ἀναίτιοι.

Ἔμεις δ' ἂν μοι τάδε ποιέοντες χαρίζοισθε· ἐπεὰν ὑμῖν
 σημήνω τὸν χρόνον ἐς τὸν ἥκειν δεῖ, προθύμως πάντα
 τινὰ ὑμέων χρήσει παρεῖναι. ὅς ἂν δὲ ἔχων ἥκη
 παρεσκευασμένον στρατὸν κάλλιστα, δώσω οἱ δῶρα τὰ
 τιμιώτατα νομίζεται εἶναι ἐν ἡμετέρου. ποιητέα μὲν νυν
 ταῦτα ἐστὶ οὕτω· ἵνα δὲ μὴ ἰδιοβουλεύειν ὑμῖν δοκέω,
 τίθημι τὸ πρῆγμα ἐς μέσον, γνώμην κελεύων ὑμέων τὸν
 βουλόμενον ἀποφαίνεσθαι.» ταῦτα εἶπας ἐπαύετο.

7.9

μετ' αὐτὸν δὲ Μαρδόνιος ἔλεγε «ὦ δέσποτα, οὐ μούνον εἰς

|look down ἥλιος |bordering ἰούσαν τῇ ἡμετέρῃ, ἀλλὰ σφέας
 πάσας ἐγὼ ἅμα ὑμῖν χώραν θήσω, διὰ πάσης |go through
 τῆς Εὐρώπης. πυνθάνομαι γὰρ ὧδε ἔχειν, οὔτε τινὰ
 πόλιν ἀνδρῶν οὐδεμίαν οὔτε ἔθνος οὐδὲν ἀνθρώπων
 |leave (food, person) ἡμῖν οἷόν τε ἔσται ἐλθεῖν ἐς μάχην,
 τούτων τῶν |relate in detail, ξαραιρημένων. οὕτω οἱ τε ἡμῖν
 |choose; enroll
 αἵτιοι ἔξουσιν |of a slave ζυγὸν οἱ τε |blameless.

Ὑμεῖς δ' ἂν μοι τάδε ποιέοντες χαρίζοισθε· ἐπεὰν ὑμῖν
 |give orders to; χρόνον ἐς τὸν ἥκειν δεῖ, |willing, πάντα
 |show; mark |eager
 τινὰ ὑμέων χρήσει παρῆναι. ὃς ἂν δὲ ἔχων ἥκη
 παρεσκευασμένον |army κάλλιστα, δώσω οἱ δῶρα τὰ
 |honored, νομίζεται εἶναι ἐν ἡμετέρου. ποιητέα μὲν νυν
 |precious
 ταῦτα ἐστὶ οὕτω· ἵνα δὲ μὴ ἰδιοβουλεύειν ὑμῖν δοκέω,
 τίθημι τὸ πρῆγμα ἐς μέσον, γνώμην κελεύων ὑμέων τὸν
 βουλόμενον |display, declare .» ταῦτα εἶπας ἐπαύετο.

7.9

μετ' αὐτὸν δὲ Μαρδόνιος ἔλεγε «ὦ |master, , οὐ μόνον εἰς
 |despot

I with your help shall make all the lands into one land, having passed through the whole extent of Europe. For I am informed that things are so, namely that there is no city of men nor any race of human beings remaining, which will be able to come to a contest with us, when those whom I just now mentioned have been removed out of the way. Thus both those who have committed wrong against us will have the yoke of slavery, and also those who have not committed wrong. (d) And ye will please me best if ye do this:—whensoever I shall signify to you the time at which ye ought to come, ye must appear every one of you with zeal for the service; and whosoever shall come with a force best equipped, to him I will give gifts such as are accounted in our land to be the most honourable. Thus must these things be done: but that I may not seem to you to be following my own counsel alone, I propose the matter for discussion, bidding any one of you who desires it, declare his opinion.”

7.9

Having thus spoken he ceased; and after him Mardonios said: “Master, thou dost surpass not only all the

vocabulary

ἀδικία injustice, offence

ἀνάξιος unworthy, undeserved

ἀντιόω meet, fight, join

ἀσθενής weak

Ἑλλήν Greek

ἐπελαύνω beat out ~elastic

ἐφίημι (τι) send at, let fly; mp: rush at, spring upon ~jet

ἐφικνέομαι reach, bear on

καταγελάω laugh at, deride

καταστρέφω overturn, subdue
~catastrophe

Πέρσης Persian

προσκτάομαι get, win as well

τιμωρέω (ι) (+dat) take vengeance,
punish; aid one who has been attacked

τῶν γενομένων Περσέων ἄριστος ἀλλὰ καὶ τῶν ἐσομένων,
 ὃς τά τε ἄλλα λέγων ἐπὶ κεο ἄριστα καὶ ἀληθέστατα,
 καὶ Ἴωνας τοὺς ἐν τῇ Εὐρώπῃ κατοικημένους οὐκ ἐάσεις
 καταγελάσαι ἡμῖν ἐόντας ἀναξίους. καὶ γὰρ δεινὸν ἂν
 εἴη πρῆγμα, εἰ Σάκας μὲν καὶ Ἰνδοὺς καὶ Αἰθιοπίας
 τε καὶ Ἀσσυρίους ἄλλα τε ἔθνεα πολλὰ καὶ μεγάλα
 ἀδικήσαντα Πέρσας οὐδέν, ἀλλὰ δύναμιν προσκτᾶσθαι
 βουλόμενοι, καταστρεψάμενοι δούλους ἔχομεν, Ἕλληνας
 δὲ ὑπάρξαντας ἀδικίης οὐ τιμωρησόμεθα·

Τί δείσαντες; κοίην πλήθους συστροφὴν; κοίην δὲ
 χρημάτων δύναμιν; τῶν ἐπιστάμεθα μὲν τὴν μάχην,
 ἐπιστάμεθα δὲ τὴν δύναμιν ἐοῦσαν ἀσθενέα· ἔχομεν
 δὲ αὐτῶν παῖδας καταστρεψάμενοι, τούτους οἳ ἐν τῇ
 ἡμετέρῃ κατοικημένοι Ἴωνές τε καὶ Αἰολέες καὶ Δωριέες
 καλέονται. ἐπειρήθην δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ἤδη ἐπελαύνων ἐπὶ
 τοὺς ἄνδρας τούτους ὑπὸ πατρὸς τοῦ σοῦ κελευσθεῖς, καί
 μοι μέχρι Μακεδονίης ἐλάσαντι καὶ ὀλίγον ἀπολιπόντι
 ἐς αὐτὰς Ἀθήνας ἀπικέσθαι οὐδεὶς ἠντιώθη ἐς μάχην.

τῶν γενομένων Περσέων ἄριστος ἀλλὰ καὶ τῶν ἐσομένων,
ὃς τά τε ἄλλα λέγων ἐπείκεο ἄριστα καὶ ἀληθέστατα,
καὶ Ἴωνας τοὺς ἐν τῇ Εὐρώπῃ κατοικημένους οὐκ ἑάσεις

|laugh at, deride ἡμῖν ἑόντας |unworthy, καὶ γὰρ δεινὸν ἂν
|undeserved

εἷη πρῆγμα, εἰ Σάκας μὲν καὶ Ἰνδοὺς καὶ Αἰθίοπας
τε καὶ Ἀσσυρίους ἄλλα τε ἔθνεα πολλὰ καὶ μεγάλα
ἀδικήσαντα Πέρσας οὐδέν, ἀλλὰ δύναμιν |get, win as well

βουλόμενοι, |overturn, subdue δούλους ἔχομεν, |Greek

δὲ ὑπάρξαντας ἀδικίης οὐ |take vengeance,
|punish, aid

Τί δείσαντες; κοίην πλήθους συστροφὴν; κοίην δὲ
 χρημάτων δύναμιν; τῶν ἐπιστάμεθα μὲν τὴν μάχην,
ἐπιστάμεθα δὲ τὴν δύναμιν ἐοῦσαν |weak ἔχομεν

δὲ αὐτῶν παῖδας |overturn, subdue , τούτους οἳ ἐν τῇ
ἡμετέρῃ κατοικημένοι Ἴωνές τε καὶ Αἰολέες καὶ Δωριέες
καλέονται. ἐπειρήθην δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ἤδη |beat out ἐπὶ
τοὺς ἄνδρας τούτους ὑπὸ πατρὸς τοῦ σοῦ κελευσθείς, καί
μοι μέχρι Μακεδονίης ἐλάσαντι καὶ ὀλίγον ἀπολιπόντι

εἰς αὐτὰς Ἀθήνας ἀπικέσθαι οὐδεὶς |ἀντιώω?: ἴmeet, fight, join; or
|ἀντιώω?: meet, fight, join

Persians who were before thee, but also those who shall come after, since thou didst not only attain in thy words to that which is best and truest as regards other matters, but also thou wilt not permit the Ionians who dwell in Europe to make a mock of us, having no just right to do so: for a strange thing it would be if, when we have subdued and kept as our servants Sacans, Indians, Ethiopians, Assyrians, and other nations many in number and great, who have done no wrong to the Persians, because we desired to add to our dominions, we should not take vengeance on the Hellenes who committed wrong against us unprovoked. (a) Of what should we be afraid?—what gathering of numbers, or what resources of money? for their manner of fight we know, and as for their resources, we know that they are feeble; and we have moreover subdued already their sons, those I mean who are settled in our land and are called Ionians, Aiolians, and Dorians. Moreover I myself formerly made trial of marching against these men, being commanded thereto by thy father; and although I marched as far as Macedonia, and fell but little short of coming to Athens itself, no man came to oppose me in

*vocabulary***ἄβουλος** ill-advised**ἄγνωμοσύνη** senselessness, ignorance, folly**ἀνήκω** reach up to; belong**ἀντιόω** meet, fight, join**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be freed, depart**διαφορά** disagreement**διαχρέομαι** use habitually; lend out; reveal**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἐξευρίσκω** find; discover ~eureka**ἐσσόομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat**ἔωθα** be accustomed, in the habit**θράσος** -ους (n, 3) boldness, over-boldness**καίτοι** and yet; and in fact; although**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy**κάτειμι** go down, disembark ~ion**λεῖος** smooth**ὁμόγλωσσος** speaking the same language**πάντως** by all means**προεῖπον** foretell, proclaim, order before**προφέρω** bring forth ~bear**σκαιότης** -τος (f, 3) awkwardness

Καίτοι γε ἐώθασι Ἕλληνες, ὥς πυνθάνομαι, ἀβουλότατα πολέμους ἵστασθαι ὑπὸ τε ἀγνωμοσύνης καὶ σκαιότητος. ἐπεὰν γὰρ ἀλλήλοισι πόλεμον προείπωσι, ἐξευρόντες τὸ κάλλιστον χωρίον καὶ λειότατον, ἐς τοῦτο κατιόντες μάχονται, ὥστε σὺν κακῷ μεγάλῳ οἱ νικῶντες ἀπαλλάσσονται· περὶ δὲ τῶν ἐσσομένων οὐδὲ λέγω ἀρχήν· ἐξώλεες γὰρ δὴ γίνονται· τοὺς χρήν ἐόντας ὁμογλώσσους κήρυξί τε διαχρεωμένους καὶ ἀγγέλοισι καταλαμβάνειν τὰς διαφορὰς καὶ παντὶ μᾶλλον ἢ μάχησι· εἰ δὲ πάντως ἔδεε πολεμέειν πρὸς ἀλλήλους, ἐξευρίσκειν χρήν τῇ ἐκάτεροι εἰσὶ δυσχειρωτότατοι καὶ ταύτῃ πειρᾶν. τρόπῳ τοίνυν οὐ χρηστῷ Ἕλληνες διαχρεώμενοι, ἐμέο ἐλάσαντος μέχρι Μακεδονίης γῆς, οὐκ ἦλθον ἐς τούτου λόγον ὥστε μάχεσθαι.

Σοὶ δὲ δὴ μέλλει τίς ὦ βασιλεῦ ἀντιώσεσθαι πόλεμον προφέρων, ἄγοντι καὶ πλῆθος τὸ ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας καὶ νέας τὰς ἀπάσας· ὥς μὲν ἐγὼ δοκέω, οὐκ ἐς τοῦτο θράσεος ἀνήκει τὰ Ἑλλήνων πρήγματα· εἰ δὲ ἄρα ἔγωγε

and yet; and|be accus-|Greek , ὥς πυνθάνομαι, |ill-advised
in fact; al-|tomed,
though in the
πολέμους ἵστασθαι ὑπὸ τε |senselessness, igno-|awkwardness
|habit |rance, folly

ἐπεὰν γὰρ ἀλλήλοισι πόλεμον |foretell, pro-|find; τὸ
|claim, order|discover
|before
κάλλιστον χωρίον καὶ |smooth , ἐς τοῦτο |go down, disembark

μάχονται, ὥστε σὺν κακῷ μεγάλῳ οἱ νικῶντες

|free from, remove; περὶ δὲ τῶν |(pass) be weaker, be over-, ω
|be freed, depart |come; (active) defeat

ἀρχήν· ἐξώλεες γὰρ δὴ γίνονται· τοὺς χρῆν ἐόντας

|speaking the κήρυξί τε |use habitually; καὶ ἀγγέλοισι
|same language |lend out; reveal

|seize, understand, catch|disagreement ..ὶ παντὶ μᾶλλον ἢ μάχῃσι·
|overtake; (mp) happen

εἰ δὲ |by all means .. πολεμέειν πρὸς ἀλλήλους, |find;
|discover

chr̃h̃n t̃h̃ ēkátēroi eĩsì d̃uscheir̃wtótatoi kaì taút̃h̃ p̃eir̃ān.

tr̃óp̃w toĩnuñ oũ chr̃h̃st̃w |Greek |use habitually; ἐμέο
|lend out; reveal

ēlásañtos méchr̃i Mak̃edoñh̃s g̃h̃s, oũk ἦλθον ἐς τοῦτου

lógoñ ὥστε máchẽst̃hai.

Soĩ d̃ē d̃h̃ méll̃lei t̃is̃ ō̃ basileũ |meet, fight, join πόλεμον

|bring forth , ágoñti kaì pl̃h̃thos̃ tõ ēk̃ t̃h̃s̃ Ásí̃hs̃ kaì néas̃

tãs̃ ap̃ásãs; ὥς μὲν ἐγὼ δοκέω, οὐκ ἐς τοῦτο θράσεος

|reach up to;|Greek πρήγματα· εἰ δὲ ἄρα ἔγωγε
|belong

fight. (b) And yet it is true that the Hellenes make wars, but (as I am informed) very much without wise consideration, by reason of obstinacy and want of skill: for when they have proclaimed war upon one another, they find out first the fairest and smoothest place, and to this they come down and fight; so that even the victors depart from the fight with great loss, and as to the vanquished, of them I make no mention at all, for they are utterly destroyed. They ought however, being men who speak the same language, to make use of heralds and messengers and so to take up their differences and settle them in any way rather than by battles; but if they must absolutely war with one another, they ought to find out each of them that place in which they themselves are hardest to overcome, and here to make their trial. Therefore the Hellenes, since they use no good way, when I had marched as far as the land of Macedonia, did not come to the resolution of fighting with me. (c) Who then is likely to set himself against thee, O king, offering war, when thou art leading both all the multitudes of Asia and the whole number of the ships? I for my part am of opinion that the power of the Hellenes has not attained to such a pitch of boldness: but if after all I should prove to be deceived in my

*vocabulary***ἄβουλία** ill-advisedness**ἄκήρατος** unharmed, pure**ἄπειρητος** untried, unattempted,
unskilled ~pierce**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ῶ) show, point out;
appoint; (mid) declare**αὐτόματος** self-willed, accidental
~after**διαγινώσκω** discern, decide**ἐπαίρω** raise, place on ~aorta**ἐύς** good, brave, noble**ὄον** ὄν type of fruit**παρατρίβω** (ῖ) rub beside, against**πάτρων** -ος (m, 3) patron**πεῖρα** an attempt**πείρω** pierce, run through ~pierce**Πέρσης** Persian**πίσυνος** trusting in, relying on (+dat)**πρόκειμαι** be placed by; be devoted to**σιωπάω** be silent**χρυσός** (ῶ) gold**χρυσόω** (ῶ) make golden, gild**ψεύδω** be false, deceive; (mid) to lie

~pseudo-

ψευσθείην γνώμη καὶ ἐκεῖνοι ἐπαερθέντες ἀβουλίῃ ἔλθοιεν
 ἡμῖν ἐς μάχην, μάθοιεν ἂν ὡς εἰμὲν ἀνθρώπων ἄριστοι
 τὰ πολέμια. ἔστω δ' ὦν μηδὲν ἀπείρητον· αὐτόματον
 γὰρ οὐδέν, ἀλλ' ἀπὸ πείρης πάντα ἀνθρώποισι φιλέει
 γίνεσθαι.»

7.10

Μαρδόνιος μὲν τοσαῦτα ἐπιλέγων τὴν Ξέρξεω γνώμην
 ἐπέπαντο· σιωπώντων δὲ τῶν ἄλλων Περσέων καὶ οὐ
 τολμώντων γνώμην ἀποδείκνυσθαι ἀντίην τῇ προκειμένῃ,
 Ἀρτάβανος ὁ Ὑστάσπεος, πάτρως ἐὼν Ξέρξη, τῷ δὴ καὶ
 πίσυνος ἐὼν ἔλεγε τάδε.

«ὦ βασιλεῦ, μὴ λεχθισέων μὲν γνωμέων ἀντιέων
 ἀλλήλησι οὐκ ἔστι τὴν ἀμείνω αἰρεόμενον ἐλέσθαι, ἀλλὰ
 δεῖ τῇ εἰρημένῃ χρᾶσθαι, λεχθισέων δὲ ἔστι, ὥσπερ
 τὸν χρυσὸν τὸν ἀκήρατον αὐτὸν μὲν ἐπ' ἑωυτοῦ οὐ
 διαγινώσκομεν, ἐπεὰν δὲ παρατρίψωμεν ἄλλῳ χρυσῷ,
 διαγινώσκομεν τὸν ἀμείνω. ἐγὼ δὲ καὶ πατρὶ τῷ σῷ,

|be false, deceive; |μη καὶ ἐκείνοι |raise, place on |jill-advisedness ΕΝ
|(mid) to lie

ἡμῖν ἐς μάχην, μάθοιεν ἂν ὡς εἰμὲν ἀνθρώπων ἄριστοι

τὰ πολέμια. ἔστω δ' ὦν μηδὲν |untried |self-willed,
|accidental

γὰρ οὐδέν, ἀλλ' ἀπὸ πείρης πάντα ἀνθρώποισι φιλέει

γίνεσθαι.»

7.10

Μαρδόνιος μὲν τοσαῦτα ἐπιλεήνας τὴν Ξέρξῃ γνῶμην

ἐπέπαντο· |be silent δὲ τῶν ἄλλων Περσέων καὶ οὐ

τολμώντων γνῶμην |show, point out; |appoint; |be placed by;
|(mid) declare |be devoted to

Ἀρτάβανος ὁ Ὑστάσπεος, |patron ἐὼν Ξέρξῃ, τῷ δὲ καὶ

|trusting ἐὼν ἔλεγε τάδε.

«ὦ βασιλεῦ, μὴ λεχθισέων μὲν γνωμέων ἀντιέων

ἀλλήλησι οὐκ ἔστι τὴν ἀμείνω αἰρεόμενον ἐλέσθαι, ἀλλὰ

δεῖ τῇ εἰρημένῃ χρᾶσθαι, λεχθισέων δὲ ἔστι, ὥσπερ

τὸν |gold τὸν |unharmmed, pure ὃν μὲν ἐπ' ἑωυτοῦ οὐ

|discern, decide , ἐπεὰν δὲ |rub beside, against ἄλλῳ χρυσῷ,

|discern, decide τὸν ἀμείνω. ἐγὼ δὲ καὶ πατρὶ τῷ σῷ,

judgment, and they stirred up by inconsiderate folly should come to battle with us, they would learn that we are the best of all men in the matters of war. However that may be, let not anything be left untried; for nothing comes of itself, but from trial all things are wont to come to men.”

7.10

Mardonios having thus smoothed over the resolution expressed by Xerxes had ceased speaking: and when the other Persians were silent and did not venture to declare an opinion contrary to that which had been proposed, then Artabanos the son of Hystaspes, being father’s brother to Xerxes and having reliance upon that, spoke as follows: (a) “O king, if opinions opposed to one another be not spoken, it is not possible to select the better in making the choice, but one must accept that which has been spoken; if however opposite opinions be uttered, this is possible; just as we do not distinguish the gold which is free from alloy when it is alone by itself, but when we rub it on the touchstone in comparison with other gold, then we distinguish that which is the better. Now I gave advice to thy father Dareios

*vocabulary***ἄλκιμος** brave; sturdily made

~Alexander

ἀποβάλλω throw away, lose**γέφυρα** (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge**ἔνειμι** be in ~ion**ζεύγνυμι** (ῥ) yoke, join ~zygote**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat**ἥτοι** truly; either, or**καταστρέφω** overturn, subdue

~catastrophe

ναυμαχία naval warfare**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis**νομᾶς** -δος (m, 3) roaming, grazing**οὐκω** no longer**σταθμόομαι** judge, conclude**στρατιά** army ~strategy**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

συμφέρω bring together; be expedient;

agree; (mp) happen ~bear

χωρέω withdraw, give way to (+dat)

~heir

ἀδελφεῷ δὲ ἐμῷ Δαρείῳ ἡγόρευον μὴ στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ Σκύθας, ἄνδρας οὐδαμόθι γῆς ἄστει νέμοντας. ὁ δὲ ἐλπίζων Σκύθας τοὺς νομάδας καταστρέψεσθαι ἐμοί τε οὐκ ἐπέιθετο, στρατευσάμενός τε πολλοὺς καὶ ἀγαθοὺς τῆς στρατιῆς ἀποβαλὼν ἀπῆλθε. σὺν δὲ ᾧ βασιλεῦ μέλλεις ἐπ' ἄνδρας στρατεύεσθαι πολλὸν ἀμείνονας ἢ Σκύθας, οἱ κατὰ θάλασσάν τε ἄριστοι καὶ κατὰ γῆν λέγονται εἶναι. τὸ δὲ αὐτοῖσι ἔνεστι δεινόν, ἐμὲ σοὶ δίκαιον ἐστὶ φράζειν.

Ζεύξας φῆς τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον ἐλᾶν στρατὸν διὰ τῆς Εὐρώπης εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. καὶ δὴ καὶ συνήνικέ σε ἦτοι κατὰ γῆν ἢ καὶ κατὰ θάλασσαν ἐσσωθῆναι, ἢ καὶ κατ' ἀμφοτέρω· οἱ γὰρ ἄνδρες λέγονται εἶναι ἄλκιμοι, πάρεστι δὲ καὶ σταθμώσασθαι, εἰ στρατιήν γε τοσαύτην σὺν Δάτι καὶ Ἀρταφρένει ἐλθοῦσαν εἰς τὴν Ἀττικὴν χώραν μῦνοι Ἀθηναῖοι διέφθειραν. οὐκὼν ἀμφοτέρῃ σφι ἐχώρησε. ἀλλ' ἦν τῇσι νηυσὶ ἐμβάλωσι καὶ νικήσαντες ναυμαχίῃ πλέωσι εἰς τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον καὶ ἔπειτα λύσωσι τὴν γέφυραν, τοῦτο δὴ βασιλεῦ γίνεται δεινόν.

ἀδελφεῷ δὲ ἐμῷ Δαρείῳ ἡγόρευον μὴ στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ
 Σκύθας, ἄνδρας οὐδαμόθι γῆς ἄστν |distribute . ὁ δὲ
 ἐλπίζων Σκύθας τοὺς |roaming, |overtake, subdue ἐμοί τε
 |grazing
 οὐκ ἐπέιθετο, στρατευσάμενός τε πολλοὺς καὶ ἀγαθοὺς
 τῆς στρατιῆς |throw away, lose ᾤλθε. σὺν δὲ ᾧ βασιλεῦ μέλλεις
 ἐπ' ἄνδρας στρατεύεσθαι πολλὸν ἀμείνονας ἢ Σκύθας, οἱ
 κατὰ θάλασσαν τε ἄριστοι καὶ κατὰ γῆν λέγονται εἶναι.
 τὸ δὲ αὐτοῖσι |be in δεινόν, ἐμὲ σοὶ δίκαιον ἐστὶ φράζειν.

|yoke, join ῥῆς τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον ἔλᾱν |army διὰ τῆς
 Εὐρώπης ἐς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. καὶ δὴ καὶ συνήνικέ σε
 |truly; κατὰ γῆν ἢ καὶ κατὰ θάλασσαν |(pass) be weaker, -be overcome;
 |either, |(active) defeat
 |or
 κατ' ἀμφοτέρω· οἱ γὰρ ἄνδρες λέγονται εἶναι |brave;
 |sturdily
 |made
 πάρεστι δὲ καὶ |judge, conclude , εἰ στρατιὴν γε τῶσαντην
 σὺν Δάτι καὶ Ἀρταφρένῃ ἐλθοῦσαν ἐς τὴν Ἀττικὴν
 χώραν μούνοι Ἀθηναῖοι διέφθειραν. |no longer ἡφοτέρῃ σφι
 |withdraw, give ᾗ ἢ τῇσι νηυσὶ ἐμβάλωσι καὶ νικήσαντες
 |way to (+dat)
 ναυμαχίῃ πλέωσι ἐς τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον καὶ ἔπειτα
 λύσωσι τὴν |dam, dike; bridge- δὴ βασιλεῦ γίνεται δεινόν.

also, who was my brother, not to march against the Scythians, men who occupied no abiding city in any part of the earth. He however, expecting that he would subdue the Scythians who were nomads, did not listen to me; but he made a march and came back from it with the loss of many good men of his army. But thou, O king, art intending to march against men who are much better than the Scythians, men who are reported to be excellent both by sea and on land: and the thing which is to be feared in this matter it is right that I should declare to thee. (b) Thou sayest that thou wilt yoke the Hellespont with a bridge and march an army through Europe to Hellas. Now supposing it chance that we are worsted either by land or by sea, or even both, for the men are reported to be valiant in fight, (and we may judge for ourselves that it is so, since the Athenians by themselves destroyed that great army which came with Datis and Artaphrenes to the Attic land),—suppose however that they do not succeed in both, yet if they shall attack with their ships and conquer in a sea-fight, and then sail to the Hellespont and break up the bridge, this of itself, O king, will prove to be a great peril. (c) Not however by

vocabulary

αἰσχρός shameful
βούλευμα -τος (n, 3) resolution, purpose
γέφυρα (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge
γεφυρώ (ῥ) dam, move earth
διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis
διαλύω break up; relax, weaken
διεργάζομαι cultivate; kill, end
ἐναντιόομαι oppose, contradict
ἐπιτρέπω entrust, decide, allow
 ~trophy
εὖς good, brave, noble
ἐφέπω drive, meet, follow ~sequel
ζεύγνυμι (ῥ) yoke, join ~zygote
ἡσάομαι (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat
καίτοι and yet; and in fact; although

καταλαμβάνω seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy
κέρδος -ους (n, 3) advantage, cunning
ὄον οὖ type of fruit
πάθος -ους (n, 3) an experience, passion, condition
παντοῖος all kinds of
Πέρσης Persian
πόρος way, bridge ~fare
πόρω aor. give, pf. be fated
προαγορεύω declare, predict, order
σοφία skill; wisdom ~sophistry
σύλλογος meeting
συμβάλλω pit against; compare; mp: meet, fall in with ~ballistic
τύραννος tyrant
τύχη fortune, act of a god

Ἐγὼ δὲ οὐδεμιῇ σοφίῃ οἰκῆιῃ αὐτὸς ταῦτα συμβάλλομαι, ἀλλ' οἶον κοτὲ ἡμέας ὀλίγου ἐδέησε καταλαβεῖν πάθος, ὅτε πατὴρ σὸς ζεύξας Βόσπορον τὸν Θρηήκιον, γεφυρώσας δὲ ποταμὸν Ἰστρον διέβη ἐπὶ Σκύθας. τότε παντοῖοι ἐγένοντο Σκύθαι δεόμενοι Ἰώνων λῦσαι τὸν πόρον, τοῖσι ἐπετέτραπτο ἡ φυλακὴ τῶν γεφυρέων τοῦ Ἰστρου. καὶ τότε γε Ἰστιαῖος ὁ Μιλήτου τύραννος εἰ ἐπέσπετο τῶν ἄλλων τυράννων τῇ γνώμῃ μηδὲ ἡναντιώθῃ, διέργαστο ἂν τὰ Περσέων πρήγματα. καίτοι καὶ λόγῳ ἀκοῦσαι δεινόν, ἐπ' ἀνδρί γε ἐνὶ πάντα τὰ βασιλέος πρήγματα γεγενῆσθαι.

Σὺ ὦν μὴ βούλευε εἰς κίνδυνον μηδένα τοιοῦτον ἀπικέσθαι μηδεμιῆς ἀνάγκης ἐούσης, ἀλλὰ ἐμοὶ πείθειν. νῦν μὲν τὸν σύλλογον τόνδε διάλυσον· αὗτις δέ, ὅταν τοι δοκῇ, προσκεψάμενος ἐπὶ σεωυτοῦ προαγόρευε τά τοι δοκῇ εἶναι ἄριστα. τὸ γὰρ εὖ βουλευέσθαι κέρδος μέγιστον εὐρίσκω ἐόν· εἰ γὰρ καὶ ἐναντιωθῆναί τι θέλει, βεβούλευται μὲν οὐδὲν ἦσσαν εὖ, ἔσσωται δὲ ὑπὸ τῆς τύχης τὸ βούλευμα· ὁ δὲ βουλευσάμενος αἰσχροῶς, εἴ οἱ ἡ τύχη

Ἐγὼ δὲ οὐδεμιῇ σοφίῃ οἰκίῃ αὐτὸς ταῦτα |pit against; compare; mp:
|meet, fall in with

ἀλλ' οἶον κοτὲ ἡμέας ὀλίγου ἐδέησε |seize, under-an experience, passion,
|stand, catch, condition

πατὴρ σὸς |yoke, join ὅσπορον τὸν |overtake;
|(mp) happen |dam

δὲ ποταμὸν Ἰστρον |pass over, cross ἴθας. τότε |all kinds of

ἐγένοντο Σκύθαι δεόμενοι Ἰώνων λῦσαι τὸν πόρον, τοῖσι

|entrust, decide, ἡ φυλακὴ τῶν γεφυρέων τοῦ Ἰστρον. καὶ
|allow

τότε γε Ἰστιαῖος ὁ Μιλήτου |tyrant εἰ |ἐφρέπω?: drive, meet, follow;
|or ἐφρέπω?: drive, meet, fol-

ἄλλων |tyrant τῇ γνώμῃ μηδὲ |oppose, |low
|contradict |cultivate; kill, end

τὰ Περσέων πρήγματα. |and yet; and in, /ω ἀκοῦσαι δεινόν,
|fact; although

ἐπ' ἀνδρί γε ἐνὶ πάντα τὰ βασιλέος πρήγματα γεγενῆσθαι.

Σὺ δ' ὦν μὴ βούλευ ἐς κίνδυνον μηδένα τοιοῦτον ἀπικέσθαι

μηδεμιῆς ἀνάγκης εὐσύνης, ἀλλὰ ἐμοὶ πείθου. νῦν μὲν

τὸν |meeting τόνδε διάλυσον· αὐτίς δέ, ὅταν τοι δοκέῃ,

προσκειψάμενος ἐπὶ σεωντοῦ |declare, pre- τά τοι δοκέει
|dict, order

εἶναι ἄριστα. τὸ γὰρ εὖ βουλευέσθαι |advantage, ἵγιστον
|cunning

εὐρίσκω ἑόν· εἰ γὰρ καὶ |oppose, τι θέλει, βεβούλευται
|contradict

μὲν οὐδὲν ἦσσαν εὖ, |(pass) be weaker, be over- |fortune, act
|come; (active) defeat |of a god

|resolution, ὁ δὲ βουλευσάμενος |shameful, εἴ οἱ ἡ |fortune, act
|purpose |of a god

any native wisdom of my own do I conjecture that this might happen: I am conjecturing only such a misfortune as all but came upon us at the former time, when thy father, having yoked the Bosphorus of Thracia and made a bridge over the river Ister, had crossed over to go against the Scythians. At that time the Scythians used every means of entreaty to persuade the Ionians to break up the passage, to whom it had been entrusted to guard the bridges of the Ister. At that time, if Histiaios the despot of Miletos had followed the opinion of the other despots and had not made opposition to them, the power of the Persians would have been brought to an end. Yet it is a fearful thing even to hear it reported that the whole power of the king had come to depend upon one human creature. (d) Do not thou therefore propose to go into any such danger when there is no need, but do as I say: — at the present time dissolve this assembly; and afterwards at whatever time it shall seem good to thee, when thou hast considered prudently with thyself, proclaim that which seems to thee best: for good counsel I hold to be a very great gain; since even if anything shall prove adverse, the counsel which has been taken is no less good, though it has been defeated by fortune; while he who took counsel badly at first, if good fortune should go with him has lighted on a prize by chance, but none

vocabulary

ἀνάξιος unworthy, undeserved

ἀποσκήπτω hurl from above; fall suddenly

βέλος -εος (n, 3) missile ~ballistic

βροντή thunder ~brontosaurus

δένδρεον -οῦ tree

δένδρον tree

δένδρος tree

Ἑλλήν Greek

ἔνιμι be in ~ion

ἐξευρίσκω find; discover ~eureka

ἐπείγω weigh upon, drive; (mid) hurry

ἐπέχω hold, cover; offer; assail

ἐπίσχω aim; restrain

εὕρημα invention; windfall

εὖς good, brave, noble

ἐφέπω drive, meet, follow ~sequel

ζημία loss, penalty ~zeal

ζῶον being, animal; picture

κνίζω scratch, gash; tickle

κολούω skimp, fail

μάταιος vain, empty

μίν him, her, it

οἶκημα -τος (n, 3) room

ὄον οὐ type of fruit

παραυτίκα immediately

στρατός common people/soldiers

~strategy

συμβουλευώ give advice; (mid) consult

~volunteer

σφάλμα stumble

τοιόσδε such

ὑπερέχω be over; protect

φαντάζω make visible; imagine

φθείρω destroy, ruin

φθονέω envy

φλαῦρος trifling

ἐπίσποιτο, εὖρημα εὖρηκε, ἦσσαν δὲ οὐδέν οἱ κακῶς
βεβούλευται.

Ὅρᾱς τὰ ὑπερέχοντα ζῶα ὡς κεραυνοῖ ὁ θεὸς οὐδὲ ἐᾷ
φαντάζεσθαι, τὰ δὲ σμικρὰ οὐδέν μιν κνίζει· ὁρᾱς δὲ ὡς
ἐς οἰκήματα τὰ μέγιστα αἰεὶ καὶ δένδρεα τὰ τοιαῦτα
ἀποσκήπτει τὰ βέλεα· φιλέει γὰρ ὁ θεὸς τὰ ὑπερέχοντα
πάντα κολοῦειν. οὕτω δὲ καὶ στρατὸς πολλὸς ὑπὸ ὀλίγου
διαφθείρεται κατὰ τοιόνδε· ἐπεὰν σφι ὁ θεὸς φθονήσας
φόβον ἐμβάλῃ ἢ βροντήν, δι' ὧν ἐφθάρησαν ἀναξίως
έωυτῶν. οὐ γὰρ ἐᾷ φρονέειν μέγα ὁ θεὸς ἄλλον ἢ έωυτόν.

Ἐπειχθῆναι μέν νυν πᾶν πρῆγμα τίκτει σφάλματα, ἐκ τῶν
ζημίαι μεγάλαι φιλέουσι γίνεσθαι· ἐν δὲ τῷ ἐπισχεῖν ἔνεστι
ἀγαθὰ, εἰ μὴ παραυτίκα δοκέοντα εἶναι, ἀλλ' ἀνὰ χρόνον
ἐξεύροι τις ἄν.

Σοὶ μὲν δὴ ταῦτα ὦ βασιλεῦ συμβουλεύω· σὺν δέ, ὦ παῖ
Γοβρύεω Μαρδόνιε, παῦσαι λέγων λόγους ματαίους περὶ
Ἑλλήνων οὐκ έόντων ἀξίων φλαύρως ἀκούειν. Ἕλληνας

|drive, meet, invention; ὕρηκε, ἦσσαν δὲ οὐδέν οἱ |bad
|follow |windfall

βεβούλευται.

Ὅρᾱς τὰ |be over; protect, ὧς κεραυνοὶ ὁ θεὸς οὐδὲ ἐᾷ

|make visible; τὰ δὲ σμικρὰ οὐδέν μιν |scratch, ἔ-τ-ε-δὲ ὧς
|imagine |gash; tickle

ἐς |room τὰ μέγιστα αἰεὶ καὶ δένδρεα τὰ τοιαῦτα

|hurl from above; |missile φιλέει γὰρ ὁ θεὸς τὰ |be over; protect
|fall suddenly

πάντα |skip, fail οὕτω δὲ καὶ |army πολλὸς ὑπὸ ὀλίγου

διαφθείρεται κατὰ |such ἐπεάν σφι ὁ θεὸς |envy

φόβον ἐμβάλλῃ ἢ |thunder , δι' ὧν |destroy, ruin |unworthy,
|undeserved

έωυτῶν. οὐ γὰρ ἐᾷ φρονέειν μέγα ὁ θεὸς ἄλλον ἢ έωυτόν.

|weigh upon, drive; υν πᾶν πρῆγμα τίκτει |stumble , ἐκ τῶν
|(mid) hurry

|loss, , μεγάλοι φιλέουσι γίνεσθαι· ἐν δὲ τῷ ἐπισχεῖν |be in
|penalty

ἀγαθὰ, εἰ μὴ |immediately δοκέοντα εἶναι, ἀλλ' ἀνὰ χρόνον

|find; τις ἄν.
|discover

Σοὶ μὲν δὴ ταῦτα ὦ βασιλεῦ |give advice; σὺ δέ, ὦ παῖ
|(mid) consult

Γοβρυέω Μαρδόνιε, παῦσαι λέγων λόγους ματαίους περὶ

|Greek οὐκ έόντων ἀξίων |trifling ἀκούειν. |Greek

the less for that his counsel was bad. (e) Thou seest how God strikes with thunderbolts the creatures which stand above the rest and suffers them not to make a proud show; while those which are small do not provoke him to jealousy: thou seest also how he hurls his darts ever at those buildings which are the highest and those trees likewise; for God is wont to cut short all those things which stand out above the rest. Thus also a numerous army is destroyed by one of few men in some such manner as this, namely when God having become jealous of them casts upon them panic or thundering from heaven, then they are destroyed utterly and not as their worth deserves; for God suffers not any other to have high thoughts save only himself. (f) Moreover the hastening of any matter breeds disasters, whence great losses are wont to be produced; but in waiting there are many good things contained, as to which, if they do not appear to be good at first, yet one will find them to be so in course of time. (g) To thee, O king, I give this counsel: but thou son of Gobryas, Mardonios, cease speaking foolish words about the Hellenes, since they in no way deserve to be spoken of with slight; for by

vocabulary

ἀναπείθω (aor, plupf) seduce,
persuade; (mp, pf, aor ppl) trust, obey,
be confident in
ἀπονοστέω go home
ἀτρεκής precise, certain
διαβάλλω throw across; slander
~ballistic
διαβολή slander
ἐκμανθάνω know by heart
ἐκτείνω stretch out ~tend
ἐπαίρω raise, place on ~aorta
ἐπιλέγω say re, say also; choose; (mid)
think over

ἦθος ἦθος (n, 3) habit, habitat ~ethos
ὅπόσος as many as, how many, how
great
πάντως by all means
παραβάλλω put at risk ~ballistic
Πέρσης Persian
προθυμία (ῶ) zeal, alacrity ~fume
προλέγω prophecy, proclaim; preselect
~legion
στρατηλατέω lead an army
στρατιά army ~strategy
ὑποδύνω (mp) get under; play a
character

γὰρ διαβάλλων ἐπαίρεις αὐτὸν βασιλέα στρατεύεσθαι· αὐτοῦ δὲ τούτου εἵνεκα δοκέεις μοι πᾶσαν προθυμίην ἐκτείνειν. μή νυν οὕτω γένηται. διαβολὴ γὰρ ἐστὶ δεινότατον· ἐν τῇ δύο μὲν εἰσὶ οἱ ἀδικέοντες, εἷς δὲ ὁ ἀδικεόμενος. ὁ μὲν γὰρ διαβάλλων ἀδικεῖ οὐ παρεόντι κατηγορέων, ὁ δὲ ἀδικεῖ ἀναπειθόμενος πρὶν ἢ ἀτρεκέως ἐκμάθῃ· ὁ δὲ δὴ ἀπεὼν τοῦ λόγου τάδε ἐν αὐτοῖσι ἀδικέεται, διαβληθεὶς τε ὑπὸ τοῦ ἐτέρου καὶ νομισθεὶς πρὸς τοῦ ἐτέρου κακὸς εἶναι.

Ἄλλ' εἰ δὴ δεῖ γε πάντως ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας τούτους στρατεύεσθαι, φέρε, βασιλεὺς μὲν αὐτὸς ἐν ἡθεσι τοῖσι Περσέων μενέτω, ἡμέων δὲ ἀμφοτέρων παραβαλλομένων τὰ τέκνα, στρατηλάτῃ αὐτὸς σὺ ἐπιλεξάμενός τε ἄνδρας τοὺς ἐθέλεις καὶ λαβὼν στρατιὴν ὁκόσῃν τινὰ βούλει. καὶ ἦν μὲν τῇ σὺ λέγεις ἀναβαίνειν βασιλεί τὰ πρήγματα, κτεινέσθων οἱ ἐμοὶ παῖδες, πρὸς δὲ αὐτοῖσι καὶ ἐγώ· ἦν δὲ τῇ ἐγὼ προλέγω, οἱ σοὶ ταῦτα πασχόντων, σὺν δέ σφι καὶ σύ, ἦν ἀπονοστήσης. εἰ δὲ ταῦτα μὲν ὑποδύνειν

γὰρ |throw across; raise, place |aὐτὸν βασιλέα στρατεύεσθαι·
 |slander |on
 αὐτοῦ δὲ τούτου εἵνεκα δοκέεις μοι πᾶσαν προθυμίην
 |stretch out μή νυν οὕτω γένηται. |slander γὰρ ἐστὶ
 δεινότατον· ἐν τῇ δύο μὲν εἰσὶ οἱ ἀδικέοντες, εἷς δὲ ὁ
 ἀδικεόμενος. ὁ μὲν γὰρ |throw across; |ιδικέει οὐ παρεόντι
 |slander
 κατηγορέων, ὁ δὲ ἀδικέει |aor, plupf) seduce, ἡ-precise,
 |suade; (mp, pf, aor ppl)|certain
 |know by heart |δὴ ἀπεὼν τοῦ λόγου τάδε ἐν αὐτοῖσι
 ἀδικέεται, |throw across; ἔ ὑπὸ τοῦ ἑτέρου καὶ νομισθεὶς
 |slander
 πρὸς τοῦ ἑτέρου κακὸς εἶναι.

Ἄλλ' εἰ δὴ δεῖ γε |by all means ἵ τοὺς ἄνδρας τούτους
 στρατεύεσθαι, φέρε, βασιλεὺς μὲν αὐτὸς ἐν |habit, τοῖσι
 |habitat
 Περσέων μενέτω, ἡμέων δὲ ἀμφοτέρων |put at risk
 τὰ τέκνα, |lead an army αὐτὸς σὺ |say, choose, τε ἄνδρας
 |think over
 τοὺς ἐθέλεις καὶ λαβὼν στρατιὴν |as/how many/great ἵλειαι.
 καὶ ἦν μὲν τῇ σὺ λέγεις ἀναβαίνῃ βασιλεί τὰ πρήγματα,
 κτεινέσθων οἱ ἐμοὶ παῖδες, πρὸς δὲ αὐτοῖσι καὶ ἐγώ· ἦν δὲ
 τῇ ἐγὼ |prophecy, |pro- ἵ ταῦτα πασχόντων, σὺν δέ σφι καὶ
 |claim; preselect
 σύ, ἦν |go home . εἰ δὲ ταῦτα μὲν |(mp) get under;
 |play a character

uttering slander against the Hellenes thou art stirring the king himself to make an expedition, and it is to this very end that I think thou art straining all thy endeavour. Let not this be so; for slander is a most grievous thing: in it the wrongdoers are two, and the person who suffers wrong is one. The slanderer does a wrong in that he speaks against one who is not present, the other in that he is persuaded of the thing before he gets certain knowledge of it, and he who is not present when the words are spoken suffers wrong in the matter thus,—both because he has been slandered by the one and because he has been believed to be bad by the other. (h) However, if it be absolutely needful to make an expedition against these men, come, let the king himself remain behind in the abodes of the Persians, and let us both set to the wage our sons; and then do thou lead an army by thyself, choosing for thyself the men whom thou desirest, and taking an army as large as thou thinkest good: and if matters turn out for the king as thou sayest, let my sons be slain and let me also be slain in addition to them; but if in the way which I predict, let thy sons suffer this, and with them thyself also, if thou shalt return back. But if thou art not willing to

vocabulary

ἄθυμος (ῥ) having low morale ~fume
ἀναγιγνώσκω recognize, read,
 understand, persuade
ἄνευ away from; not having; not
 needing ~Sp. sin
ἀνίημι urge, impel; release ~jet
ἀτιμία (ι) dishonor
ἐξεργάζομαι accomplish; undo;
 destroy someone
ἐπιτελής accomplished
θυμῶ (ῥ) anger

μάταιος vain, empty
μισθός reward, wages
ὄρνις -θος (ι, f) bird ~ornithology
πάντως by all means
Πέρσης Persian
προσδοκάω expect
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
συστρατεύω join in an expedition
τιμωρέω (ι) (+dat) take vengeance,
 punish; aid one who has been attacked
ὑπολείπω leave as a leftover; leave a
 person behind ~eclipse

οὐκ ἐθελήσεις, σὺ δὲ πάντως στράτευμα ἀνάξεις ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ἀκούσεσθαι τινὰ φημὶ τῶν αὐτοῦ τῆδε ὑπολειπομένων Μαρδόνιον, μέγα τι κακὸν ἐξεργασάμενον Πέρσας, ὑπὸ κυνῶν τε καὶ ὀρνίθων διαφορεύμενον ἢ κου ἐν γῇ τῇ Ἀθηναίων ἢ σέ γε ἐν τῇ Λακεδαιμονίων, εἰ μὴ ἄρα καὶ πρότερον κατ' ὁδόν, γνόντα ἐπ' οἴους ἄνδρας ἀναγινώσκεις στρατεύεσθαι βασιλέα.»

7.11

Ἀρτάβανος μὲν ταῦτα ἔλεξε, Ξέρξης δὲ θυμωθεὶς ἀμείβεται τοῖσιδε. «Ἀρτάβανε, πατρὸς εἰς τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφεός· τοῦτό σε ῥύσεται μηδένα ἄξιον μισθὸν λαβεῖν ἐπέων ματαίων. καί τοι ταύτην τὴν ἀτιμίην προστίθιμι ἐόντι κακῷ καὶ ἀθύμῳ, μήτε συστρατεύεσθαι ἔμοιγε ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα αὐτοῦ τε μένειν ἅμα τῇσι γυναιξί· ἐγὼ δὲ καὶ ἄνευ σέο ὅσα περ εἶπα ἐπιτελέα ποιήσω. μὴ γὰρ εἶην ἐκ Δαρείου τοῦ Ὑστάσπεος τοῦ Ἀρσάμεος τοῦ Ἀριαράμνεω τοῦ Τεΐσπεος τοῦ Κύρου τοῦ Καμβύσεω τοῦ Τεΐσπεος τοῦ Ἀχαιμένεος γεγονώς, μὴ τιμωρησάμενος Ἀθηναίους,

οὐκ ἐθελήσεις, σὺ δὲ ^{|by all|}army ^{|means} ἀνάξεις ἐπὶ
 τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ἀκούσεσθαι τινὰ φημὶ τῶν αὐτοῦ τῇδε
 |leave (food, person) ἱερδόνιον, μέγα τι κακὸν ^{|accomplish; undo;}
^{|destroy someone}
 Πέρσας, ὑπὸ κυνῶν τε καὶ ^{|bird} διαφορεύμενον ἢ κου
 ἐν γῇ τῇ Ἀθηναίων ἢ σέ γε ἐν τῇ Λακεδαιμονίων, εἰ μὴ
 ἄρα καὶ πρότερον κατ' ὁδόν, γνόντα ἐπ' οἴους ἄνδρας
 ἀναγνώσκεις στρατεύεσθαι βασιλέα.»

7.11

Ἀρτάβανος μὲν ταῦτα ἔλεξε, Ξέρξης δὲ ^{|anger}
 ἀμείβεται τοῖσιδε. «Ἀρτάβανε, πατὴρς εἰς τοῦ ἐμοῦ
 ἀδελφεός· τοῦτό σε ρύσεται μηδένα ἄξιον ^{|reward, λαβεῖν}
^{|wages}
 ἐπέων ^{|vain, empty} . καί τοι ταύτην τὴν ἀτιμίην προστίθιμι
 ἐόντι κακῷ καὶ ^{|having low|}join in an expedi- ^{|morale} ^{|tion} ἔμοιγε ἐπὶ
 τὴν Ἑλλάδα αὐτοῦ τε μένειν ἅμα τῇσι γυναιξί· ἐγὼ δὲ καὶ
 ἄνευ σέο ὅσα περ εἶπα ^{|accomplished} ἤσω. μὴ γὰρ εἶην ἐκ
 Δαρείου τοῦ Ὑστάσπεος τοῦ Ἀρσάμεος τοῦ Ἀριαράμνεω
 τοῦ Τεΐσπεος τοῦ Κύρου τοῦ Καμβύσεω τοῦ Τεΐσπεος τοῦ
 Ἀχαιμένεος γεγονώς, μὴ ^{|take vengeance, Ἀθηναίους,}
^{|punish, aid}

undergo this proof, but wilt by all means lead an army against Hellas, then I say that those who are left behind in this land will hear that Mardonios, after having done a great mischief to the Persians, is torn by dogs and birds, either in the land of the Athenians, or else perchance thou wilt be in the land of the Lacedemonians (unless indeed this should have come to pass even before that upon the way), and that thou hast at length been made aware against what kind of men thou art persuading the king to march.”

7.11

Artabanos thus spoke; and Xerxes enraged by it made answer as follows: “Artabanos, thou art my father’s brother, and this shall save thee from receiving any recompense such as thy foolish words deserve. Yet I attach to thee this dishonour, seeing that thou art a coward and spiritless, namely that thou do not march with me against Hellas, but remain here together with the women; and I, even without thy help, will accomplish all the things which I said: for I would I might not be descended from Dareios, the son of Hystaspes, the son of Arsames, the son of Ariaramnes, the son of Teispes, or from Cyrus, the son of Cambyses, the son of Teispes, the son of Achaimenes, if I take not vengeance on the Athenians; since I know

vocabulary

Ἑλλήν Greek

ἐμπίμπρημι burn up ~pyre

ἐμπρήθω burn up

ἐξαναχωρέω retreat, withdraw

ἐπώνυμος named for a reason ~name

εὖς good, brave, noble

εὐφρόνη euphemism for night

ἔχθρη hate

ἡσυχία peace and quiet

καταστρέφω overturn, subdue

~catastrophe

κνίζω scratch, gash; tickle

ὄον οὖ type of fruit

οὐδέτερος neither

οὐκω no longer

πάγῃ entirely

Πέρσης Persian

πρόκειμαι be placed by; be devoted to

σταθμόομαι judge, conclude

τιμωρέω (ι) (+dat) take vengeance,

punish; aid one who has been attacked

εὖ ἐπιστάμενος ὅτι εἰ ἡμεῖς ἡσυχίην ἄξομεν, ἀλλ' οὐκ ἐκεῖνοι, ἀλλὰ καὶ μάλα στρατεύσονται ἐπὶ τὴν ἡμετέραν, εἰ χρὴ σταθμώσασθαι τοῖσι ὑπαργμένοισι ἐξ ἐκείνων, οἳ Σάρδεις τε ἐνέπρησαν καὶ ἤλασαν ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην. οὐκὼν ἐξαναχωρέειν οὐδετέροισι δυνατῶς ἔχει, ἀλλὰ ποιέειν ἢ παθεῖν πρόκειται ἀγών, ἵνα ἢ τάδε πάντα ὑπὸ Ἑλλήσι ἢ ἐκεῖνα πάντα ὑπὸ Πέρσησι γένηται· τὸ γὰρ μέσον οὐδὲν τῆς ἔχθρης ἐστί. καλὸν ὦν προπεπονθότας ἡμέας τιμωρέειν ἤδη γίνεται, ἵνα καὶ τὸ δεινὸν τὸ πείσομαι τοῦτο μάθω, ἐλάσας ἐπ' ἄνδρας τούτους, τοὺς γε καὶ Πέλοψ ὁ Φρύξ, ἐὼν πατέρων τῶν ἐμῶν δοῦλος, κατεστρέψατο οὕτω ὥς καὶ ἐς τόδε αὐτοί τε ὠνθρωποι καὶ ἡ γῆ αὐτῶν ἐπώνυμοι τοῦ καταστρεψαμένου καλέονται.»

7.12

ταῦτα μὲν ἐπὶ τοσοῦτο ἐλέγετο. μετὰ δὲ εὐφρόνη τε ἐγίνετο καὶ Ξέρξην ἔκνιζε ἡ Ἀρταβάνου γνώμη· νυκτὶ δὲ βουλὴν διδοὺς πάγχυ εὕρισκέ οἱ οὐ πρῆγμα εἶναι στρατεῦσθαι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα. δεδογμένων δέ οἱ αὖτις

εὖ ἐπιστάμενος ὅτι εἰ ἡμεῖς |peace and q̣uiet ν, ἀλλ' οὐκ
 ἐκεῖνοι, ἀλλὰ καὶ μάλα στρατεύσονται ἐπὶ τὴν ἡμετέρην,
 εἰ χρὴ |judge, conclude τοῖσι ὑπαργμένοισι ἐξ ἐκείνων, οἱ
 Σάρδεις τε ἐνέπρησαν καὶ ἤλασαν ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην. |no longer
 |retreat, |neither δυνατῶς ἔχει, ἀλλὰ ποιέειν ἢ
 |withdraw
 παθεῖν |be placed by; γών, ἵνα ἢ τάδε πάντα ὑπὸ |Greek
 |be devoted to
 ἢ ἐκεῖνα πάντα ὑπὸ Πέρσῃσι γένηται· τὸ γὰρ μέσον
 οὐδὲν τῆς |hate ἐστί. καλὸν ὦν προπεπονθότας ἡμέας
 |take vengeance, γίνεταί, ἵνα καὶ τὸ δεινὸν τὸ πείσομαι τοῦτο
 |punish, aid
 μάθω, ἐλάσας ἐπ' ἄνδρας τούτους, τοὺς γε καὶ Πέλοψ
 ὁ Φρύξ, ἐὼν πατέρων τῶν ἐμῶν δοῦλος, |overturn, subdue
 οὕτω ὥς καὶ ἐς τόδε αὐτοὶ τε ὄνθρωποι καὶ ἡ γῆ αὐτῶν
 |named for a reā-|overturn, subdue καλέονται.»
 |son

7.12

ταῦτα μὲν ἐπὶ τοσοῦτο ἐλέγετο. μετὰ δὲ |euphemism for night
 ἐγίνετο καὶ Ξέρξην |scratch, ἵ, ἄρταβάνου γνώμη· νυκτὶ
 |gash; tickle
 δὲ βουλὴν διδοὺς |entirely εὗρισκέ οἱ οὐ πρῆγμα εἶναι
 στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα. δεδογμένων δέ οἱ αὖτις

well that if we shall keep quiet, yet they will not do so, but will again march against our land, if we may judge by the deeds which have been done by them to begin with, since they both set fire to Sardis and marched upon Asia. It is not possible therefore that either side should retire from the quarrel, but the question before us is whether we shall do or whether we shall suffer; whether all these regions shall come to be under the Hellenes or all those under the Persians: for in our hostility there is no middle course. It follows then now that it is well for us, having suffered wrong first, to take revenge, that I may find out also what is this terrible thing which I shall suffer if I lead an army against these men,—men whom Pelops the Phrygian, who was the slave of my forefathers, so subdued that even to the present day both the men themselves and their land are called after the name of him who subdued them.”

7.12

Thus far was it spoken then; but afterwards when darkness came on, the opinion of Artabanos tormented Xerxes continually; and making night his counsellor he found that it was by no means to his advantage to make the march against Hellas. So when he had thus made a new resolve, he fell asleep, and

vocabulary

ἀεικής shameful, unseemly ~icon
ἀλίζω gather, assemble
ἀνήκω reach up to; belong
ἀνίημι urge, impel; release ~jet
ἀπέχω ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance
ἀποπέτομαι fly away ~petal
ἀπορρίπτω cast away
ἐμεωυτοῦ myself
ἐπιλάμπω shine in response to ~lamp
εὐειδής good-looking ~wit
εὖς good, brave, noble
καθυπνόω fall asleep
μεταβουλεύω change one's mind ~volunteer
νεότης -τος (f, 3) youth ~neon
ὄνειρον dream

ὄνειρος dream
ὄον οὐ type of fruit
οὐκω no longer
ὄψις ὄψεως (f) sight, view ~thanatopsis
παραυτίκα immediately
παρηγορέω console, advise
Πέρσης Persian
προεῖπον foretell, proclaim, order before
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
στρατός common people/soldiers ~strategy
συγγιγνώσκω acknowledge; pardon
συγγνώμη sympathy, leniency
συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion
συναλίζω collect; eat with
τοιόσδε such

τούτων κατύπνωσε, καὶ δὴ κου ἐν τῇ νυκτὶ εἶδε ὄψιν τοιήνδε, ὡς λέγεται ὑπὸ Περσέων· ἐδόκεε ὁ Ξέρξης ἄνδρα οἱ ἐπιστάντα μέγαν τε καὶ εὐειδέα εἰπεῖν «μετὰ δὴ βουλεύει, ὦ Πέρσα, στράτευμα μὴ ἄγειν ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, προείπας ἀλίζειν Πέρσας στρατόν; οὔτε ὦν μεταβουλευόμενος ποίεις εὖ οὔτε ὁ συγγνωσόμενός τοι πάρα· ἀλλ' ὥσπερ τῆς ἡμέρης ἐβουλεύσαιο ποίειν, ταύτην ἴθι τῶν ὁδῶν.»

7.13

τὸν μὲν ταῦτα εἰπόντα ἐδόκεε ὁ Ξέρξης ἀποπτάσθαι, ἡμέρης δὲ ἐπιλαμψάσης ὀνείρου μὲν τούτου λόγον οὐδένα ἐποιέετο, ὁ δὲ Περσέων συναλίσας τοὺς καὶ πρότερον συνέλεξε, ἔλεξέ σφι τάδε. «ἄνδρες Πέρσαι, συγγνώμην μοι ἔχετε ὅτι ἀγχίστροφα βουλεύομαι· φρενῶν τε γὰρ ἐς τὰ ἐμευτοῦ πρῶτα οὐκῶ ἀνήκω, καὶ οἱ παρηγορεόμενοι ἐκεῖνα ποίειν οὐδένα χρόνον μεν ἀπέχονται. ἀκούσαντι μέντοι μοι τῆς Ἀρταβάνου γνώμης παραντίκα μὲν ἢ νεότης ἐπέζεσε, ὥστε ἀεικέστερα ἀπορρῦσαι ἔπεα ἐς ἄνδρα

τούτων |fall asleep , καὶ δὴ κου ἐν τῇ νυκτὶ εἶδε |sight
 |such , ὥς λέγεται ὑπὸ Περσέων· ἐδόκεε ὁ Ξέρξης
 ἄνδρα οἱ ἐπιστάντα μέγαν τε καὶ |good-lookingεῖν «μετὰ
 δὴ βουλεύει, ὦ Πέρσα, |army μὴ ἄγειν ἐπὶ τὴν
 Ἑλλάδα, |foretell, pro-gather, Πέρσας |army , οὔτε ὦν
 |claim, order|assemble
 |change one's mind before ποιέεις εὖ οὔτε ὁ συγγνωσόμενός τοι
 πάρα· ἀλλ' ὥσπερ τῆς ἡμέρης ἐβουλεύσαο ποιέειν, ταύτην
 ἴθι τῶν ὁδῶν.»

7.13

τὸν μὲν ταῦτα εἰπόντα ἐδόκεε ὁ Ξέρξης |fly away ,
 ἡμέρης δὲ |shine in response to...ου μὲν τούτου λόγον οὐδένα
 ἐποιέετο, ὁ δὲ Περσέων |collect; eat with ἵς καὶ πρότερον
 |collect, assemble , ἔλεξέ σφι τάδε. «ἄνδρες Πέρσαι, συγγνώμην
 μοι ἔχετε ὅτι ἀγχίστροφα βουλεύομαι· φρενῶν τε γὰρ ἐς
 τὰ |myself πρῶτα |no longer ἴκω, καὶ οἱ |console, advise
 ἐκεῖνα ποιέειν οὐδένα χρόνον μεν |ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some
 |distance
 μέντοι μοι τῆς Ἀρταβάνου γνώμης |immediately μὲν ἡ
 |youth ἐπέζεσε, ὥστε |shameful, |cast away ἔπεα ἐς ἄνδρα
 |unseemly

in the night he saw, as is reported by the Persians, a vision as follows: —Xerxes thought that a man tall and comely of shape came and stood by him and said: “Art thou indeed changing thy counsel, O Persian, of leading an expedition against Hellas, now that thou hast made proclamation that the Persians shall collect an army? Thou dost not well in changing thy counsel, nor will he who is here present with thee excuse thee from it; but as thou didst take counsel in the day to do, by that way go.”

7.13

After he had said this, Xerxes thought that he who had spoken flew away; and when day had dawned he made no account of this dream, but gathered together the Persians whom he had assembled also the former time and said to them these words: “Persians, pardon me that I make quick changes in my counsel; for in judgment not yet am I come to my prime, and they who advise me to do the things which I said, do not for any long time leave me to myself. However, although at first when I heard the opinion of Artabanos my youthful impulses burst out, so that I cast out unseemly words against a man

*vocabulary***ἀπεῖπον** refuse, renounce, declare**εὖς** good, brave, noble**ἥσυχος** quiet**κοίτη** rest, resting place, sleepiness**μεταδοκέω** change one's mind**ὄνειρον** dream**ὄνειρος** dream**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**ὄψις** ὄψεως (f) sight, view

~thanatopsis

πέρθω sack, ravage, plunder**περιδεής** very timid**Πέρσης** Persian**προσκυνέω** kow tow to; kiss**στρατηλασίη** expedition, campaign**στρατηλατέω** lead an army**συγγιγνώσκω** acknowledge; pardon**ταπεινός** low**τάχος** -ους (n, 3) speed ~tachometer**τρέχω** run, spin

πρεσβύτερον ἢ χρεόν· νῦν μέντοι συγγνοὺς χρήσομαι
τῇ ἐκείνου γνώμῃ. ὥς ὦν μεταδεδογμένον μοι μὴ
στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ἥσυχοι ἔστε.»

7.14

Πέρσαι μὲν ὥς ἤκουσαν ταῦτα, κεχαρηκότες προσεκύνεον.
νυκτὸς δὲ γενομένης αὖτις τῶντὸ ὄνειρον τῷ Ξέρξῃ
κατυπνωμένῳ ἔλεγε ἐπιστάν «ὦ παῖ Δαρείου, καὶ δὴ
φαίνεται ἐν Πέρσῃσί τε ἀπειπάμενος τὴν στρατηλασίην
καὶ τὰ ἐμὰ ἔπεα ἐν οὐδενὶ ποιησάμενος λόγῳ ὥς παρ'
οὐδενὸς ἀκούσας; εἶ νυν τόδ' ἴσθι· ἦν περ μὴ αὐτίκα
στρατηλατέης, τάδε τοι ἐξ αὐτῶν ἀνασχήσει· ὥς καὶ
μέγας καὶ πολλὸς ἐγένεο ἐν ὀλίγῳ χρόνῳ, οὕτω καὶ
ταπεινὸς ὀπίσω κατὰ τάχος ἔσσει.»

7.15

Ξέρξης μὲν περιδεὴς γενόμενος τῇ ὄψι ἀνά τε ἔδραμε ἐκ
τῆς κοίτης καὶ πέμπει ἄγγελον ἐπὶ Ἀρτάβανον καλέοντα·
ἀπικομένῳ δέ οἱ ἔλεγε Ξέρξης τάδε. «Ἀρτάβανε, ἐγὼ

πρεσβύτερον ἢ χρεόν· νῦν μέντοι συγγνοῦς χρήσομαι
 τῇ ἐκείνου γνώμῃ. ὥς ὦν |change one's mind μοι μὴ
 στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, |quiet ἔστω.»

7.14

Πέρσαι μὲν ὥς ἤκουσαν ταῦτα, κεχαρηκότες |kow tow to; kiss
 νυκτὸς δὲ γενομένης αὐτὶς τῶντὸ ὄνειρον τῷ Ξέρξῃ
 κατυπνωμένῳ ἔλεγε ἐπιστάν «ὦ παῖ Δαρείου, καὶ δὴ
 φαίνεαι ἐν Πέρσῃσί τε |refuse, re- τὴν |expedition,
 |nounce, declare |campaign
 καὶ τὰ ἐμὰ ἔπεα ἐν οὐδενὶ ποιησάμενος λόγῳ ὥς παρ'
 οὐδενὸς ἀκούσας; εὖ νυν τόδ' ἴσθι· ἦν περ μὴ αὐτίκα
 |lead an army , τάδε τοι ἐξ αὐτῶν ἀνασχήσει· ὥς καὶ
 μέγας καὶ πολλὸς ἐγένεο ἐν ὀλίγῳ χρόνῳ, οὕτω καὶ
 |low ὀπίσω κατὰ |speed ἔσσει.»

7.15

Ξέρξης μὲν |very timid |γενομένος τῇ |sight ἵνά τε |run, spin ἔκ
 τῆς |rest, resting |place, sleepiness πει ἄγγελον ἐπὶ Ἀρτάβανον καλέοντα·
 ἀπικομένῳ δέ οἱ ἔλεγε Ξέρξης τάδε. «Ἀρτάβανε, ἐγὼ

older than myself; yet now I acknowledge that he is right, and I shall follow his opinion. Consider then I have changed my resolve to march against Hellas, and do ye remain still.”

7.14

The Persians accordingly when they heard this were rejoiced and made obeisance: but when night had come on, the same dream again came and stood by Xerxes as he lay asleep and said: “Son of Dareios, it is manifest then that thou hast resigned this expedition before the assembly of the Persians, and that thou hast made no account of my words, as if thou hadst heard them from no one at all. Now therefore be well assured of this: — if thou do not make thy march forthwith, there shall thence spring up for thee this result, namely that, as thou didst in short time become great and mighty, so also thou shalt speedily be again brought low.”

7.15

Xerxes then, being very greatly disturbed by fear of the vision, started up from his bed and sent a messenger to summon Artabanos; to whom when he came Xerxes spoke thus: “Artabanos, at the first I was

vocabulary

βασίλειος kingly

βασιλήιος kingly

διαπειλέω threaten violently

ἐνδύω go into, put on

ἐντέλλω (mp) command

ἐπιπέμπω send after, again, to, besides

ἐπιπέτομαι fly at ~petal

ἐπιφοιτέω come habitually

εὖς good, brave, noble

ἡδονή pleasure

ἵζω to seat ~sit

καθυπνύω fall asleep

κέλευθος (f) way, path

κοίτη rest, resting place, sleepiness

μάταιος vain, empty

μεταγινώσκω change one's mind

~gnostic

ὄνειρον dream

ὄνειρος dream

ὄον οὖ type of fruit

οὐδαμὸς not anyone

οὐκω no longer

πάντως by all means

παραυτίκα immediately

σκευή equipment

στρατηλασίη expedition, campaign

συμβουλίη advice; consultation

ὑποτίθημι suggest, advise ~hypothesis

φαντάζω make visible; imagine

χρηστός useful; brave, worthy

τὸ παραντίκα μὲν οὐκ ἔσωφρόνεον εἶπας ἐς σὲ μάταια
 ἔπεα χρηστῆς εἵνεκα συμβουλίας· μετὰ μέντοι οὐ πολλὸν
 χρόνον μετέγνων, ἔγνων δὲ ταῦτα μοι ποιητέα ἔοντα τὰ
 σὺν ὑπεθήκαο. οὐκων δυνατός τοι εἰμὶ ταῦτα βουλόμενος
 ποίειν· τετραμμένῳ γὰρ δὴ καὶ μετεγνώκоти ἐπιφοιτέον
 ὄνειρον φαντάζεται μοι οὐδαμῶς συνεπαινέον ποίειν με
 ταῦτα· νῦν δὲ καὶ διαπειλῆσαν οἴχεται. εἰ ὦν θεός
 ἐστι ὁ ἐπιπέμπων καὶ οἱ πάντως ἐν ἡδονῇ ἐστι γενέσθαι
 στρατηλασίην ἐπὶ Ἑλλάδα, ἐπιπτήσεται καὶ σοὶ τὸντο
 τοῦτο ὄνειρον, ὁμοίως καὶ ἐμοὶ ἐντελλόμενον. εὐρίσκω δὲ
 ὧδ' ἂν γινόμενα ταῦτα, εἰ λάβοις τὴν ἐμὴν σκευὴν πᾶσαν
 καὶ ἐνδὺς μετὰ τοῦτο ἴζοιο ἐς τὸν ἐμὸν θρόνον, καὶ ἔπειτα
 ἐν κοίτῃ τῇ ἐμῇ κατυπνώσειας.»

7.16

Ξέρξης μὲν ταῦτά οἱ ἔλεγε· Ἀρτάβανος δὲ οὐ
 πρώτῳ κελεύσματι πειθόμενος, οἶα οὐκ ἀξιεύμενος
 ἐς τὸν βασιλῆιον θρόνον ἴζεσθαι, τέλος ὥς
 ἡναγκάζετο εἶπας τάδε ἐποίεε τὸ κελευόμενον.

τὸ |immediately μὲν οὐκ ἐσωφρόνεον εἶπας ἐς σὲ |vain,
 |empty
 ἔπεα |useful; brave, κα |advice; consultation. μέντοι οὐ πολλὸν
 |worthy
 χρόνον |change one's mind δὲ ταῦτα μοι ποιητέα ἔοντα τὰ
 σὺ |suggest |no longer νατός τοι εἰμὶ ταῦτα βουλόμενος
 ποιέειν· τετραμμένῳ γὰρ δὴ καὶ |change one's|come habitually
 |mind
 ὄνειρον |make visible; μοι |not anyone νυπεπαινέον ποιέειν με
 |imagine
 ταῦτα· νῦν δὲ καὶ |threaten οὔχεται. εἰ ὦν θεός
 |violently
 ἐστι ὁ |send after, again, τό,|by all means |pleasure ἵτι γενέσθαι
 |besides
 |expedition, ἐπὶ Ἑλλάδα, ἐπιπτήσεται καὶ σοὶ τῶντὸ
 |campaign
 τοῦτο ὄνειρον, ὁμοίως καὶ ἐμοὶ ἐντελλόμενον. εὐρίσκω δὲ
 ὧδ' ἂν γινόμενα ταῦτα, εἰ λάβοις τὴν ἐμὴν |equipment ἵσαν
 καὶ |go into, put on ἵτο |to seat ἵς τὸν ἐμὸν θρόνον, καὶ ἔπειτα
 ἐν |rest, |resting|fall asleep .»
 |place, sleepiness

7.16

Ξέρξης μὲν ταῦτά οἱ ἔλεγε· Ἀρτάβανος δὲ οὐ
 πρώτῳ κελεύσματι πειθόμενος, οἷα οὐκ ἀξιεύμενος
 ἐς τὸν βασιλῆιον θρόνον |to seat , τέλος ὡς
 ἡναγκάζετο εἶπας τάδε ἐποίεε τὸ κελευόμενον.

not discreet, when I spoke to thee foolish words on account of thy good counsel; but after no long time I changed my mind and perceived that I ought to do these things which thou didst suggest to me. I am not able however to do them, although I desire it; for indeed, now that I have turned about and changed my mind, a dream appears haunting me and by no means approving that I should do so; and just now it has left me even with a threat. If therefore it is God who sends it to me, and it is his absolute will and pleasure that an army should go against Hellas, this same dream will fly to thee also, laying upon thee a charge such as it has laid upon me; and it occurs to my mind that this might happen thus, namely if thou shouldst take all my attire and put it on, and then seat thyself on my throne, and after that lie down to sleep in my bed.”

7.16

Xerxes spoke to him thus; and Artabanos was not willing to obey the command at first, since he did not think himself worthy to sit upon the royal throne; but at last being urged further he did that which was commanded, first having spoken these words: (a) “It is equally good in

*vocabulary***δάκνω** bite**δίζημαι** seek ~zeal**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἐμπίπτω** fall into; attack ~petal**ἐνύπνιος** seen in dreams**ἐπιφοιτάω** come habitually**εὖς** good, brave, noble**καταπαύω** stop, restrain ~pause**λύπη** distress**μεθίημι** let go, cease; (mid) speed off

~jet

ὁμιλία (τι) intercourse, company**ὄνειρον** dream**ὄνειρος** dream**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**περιοράω** look around; watch; permit**Πέρσης** Persian**πλανάω** lead astray; (mp) wander

~plankton

πομπή a sending, expedition ~pomp**πρόκειμαι** be placed by; be devoted to**σφαλερός** slippery; tottering**σφάλω** overthrow, balk, stagger**ὕβρις** -εως (f) pride, insolence, outrage**φύσις** -εως (f) nature (of a thing)

~physics

φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics**χρήσιμος** useful**χρηστός** useful; brave, worthy

<ἴσον ἐκείνο ὧ βασιλεῦ παρ' ἐμοὶ κέκριται, φρονέειν
 τε εἶ καὶ τῷ λέγοντι χρηστὰ ἐθέλειν πείθεσθαι· τά σε
 καὶ ἀμφοτέρα περιήκοντα ἀνθρώπων κακῶν ὁμιλίας
 σφάλλουσι, κατὰ περ τὴν πάντων χρησιμωτάτην
 ἀνθρώποισι θάλασσαν πνεύματα φασὶ ἀνέμων
 ἐμπίπτοντα οὐ περιορᾶν φύσι τῇ ἐωυτῆς χρᾶσθαι.
 ἐμὲ δὲ ἀκούσαντα πρὸς σεῦ κακῶς οὐ τοσοῦτο ἔδακε
 λύπη ὅσον γνωμέων δύο προκειμενέων Πέρσησι, τῆς μὲν
 ὕβριν αὐξανούσης, τῆς δὲ καταπανούσης καὶ λεγούσης
 ὥς κακὸν εἶη διδάσκειν τὴν ψυχὴν πλέον τι διζῆσθαι αἰεὶ
 ἔχειν τοῦ παρεόντος, τοιουτέων προκειμενέων γνωμέων
 ὅτι τὴν σφαλερωτέραν σεωυτῷ τε καὶ Πέρσησι ἀναιρέο.

Νῦν ὦν, ἐπειδὴ τέτραψαι ἐπὶ τὴν ἀμείνω, φήης τοι μετιέντι
 τὸν ἐπ' Ἑλλήνας στόλον ἐπιφοιτᾶν ὄνειρον θεοῦ τινος
 πομπῇ, οὐκ ἐώντά σε καταλύειν τὸν στόλον. ἀλλ' οὐδὲ
 ταῦτα ἐστι, ὦ παῖ, θεῖα. ἐνύπνια γὰρ τὰ ἐς ἀνθρώπους
 πεπλανημένα τοιαῦτα ἐστὶ οἷά σε ἐγὼ διδάξω, ἔτεσι σεῦ
 πολλοῖσι πρεσβύτερος ἐών· πεπλανῆσθαι αὐται μάλιστα

«ἴσον ἐκεῖνο ὧ βασιλεῦ παρ' ἐμοὶ κέκριται, φρονέειν
 τε εὖ καὶ τῷ λέγοντι |useful; brave, ἔιν πείθεσθαι· τὰ σε
 καὶ ἀμφότερα περιήκοντα ἀνθρώπων κακῶν ὀμιλῖαι

|overthrow, balk |ατά περ τὴν πάντων |useful

ἀνθρώποισι θάλασσαν πνεύματα φασὶ ἀνέμων
 ἐμπίπτοντα οὐ |look around; ἴσι τῇ ἐωυτῆς χρᾶσθαι.
 |watch; permit

ἐμέ δὲ ἀκούσαντα πρὸς σεῦ κακῶς οὐ τοσοῦτο |bite

|distress" τον γνωμένων δύο |be placed by; be Πέρσησι, τῆς μὲν
 |devoted to

|hubris αὔξανούσης, τῆς δὲ |stop, restrain καὶ λεγούσης

ὥς κακὸν εἶη διδάσκειν τὴν ψυχὴν πλέον τι |seek αἰεὶ

ἔχειν τοῦ παρεόντος, τοιουτέων |be placed by; be γνωμένων
 |devoted to

ὅτι τὴν |slippery; tottering σεωυτῷ τε καὶ Πέρσησι ἀναιρέο.

Νῦν ὦν, ἐπειδὴ τέτραψαι ἐπὶ τὴν ἀμείνω, φῆς τοι |let go, cease; (mid)
 |speed off

τὸν ἐπ' |Greek στόλον |come habitually ..ρον θεοῦ τινος

|a sending, ἵκ ἐώντά σε καταλύειν τὸν στόλον. ἀλλ' οὐδὲ
 |expedition

ταῦτα ἐστι, ὧ παῖ, θεία. ἐνύπνια γὰρ τὰ ἐς ἀνθρώπους

πεπλανημένα τοιαῦτα ἐστὶ οἶά σε ἐγὼ διδάξω, ἔτεσι σεῦ

πολλοῖσι πρεσβύτερος ἐών· πεπλανῆσθαι αὐται μάλιστα

my judgment, O king, whether a man has wisdom himself or is willing to follow the counsel of him who speaks well: and thou, who hast attained to both these good things, art caused to err by the communications of evil men; just as they say that the Sea, which is of all things the most useful to men, is by blasts of winds falling upon it prevented from doing according to its own nature. I however, when I was evil spoken of by thee, was not so much stung with pain for this, as because, when two opinions were laid before the Persians, the one tending to increase wanton insolence and the other tending to check it and saying that it was a bad thing to teach the soul to endeavour always to have something more than the present possession,—because, I say, when such opinions as these were laid before us, thou didst choose that one which was the more dangerous both for thyself and for the Persians. (b) And now that thou hast turned to the better counsel, thou sayest that when thou art disposed to let go the expedition against the Hellenes, a dream haunts thee sent by some god, which forbids thee to abandon thy enterprise. Nay, but here too thou dost err, my son, since this is not of the Deity; for the dreams of sleep which come roaming about to men, are of such nature as I shall inform thee, being by many years older than thou. The visions of dreams are wont to hover above us in such

*vocabulary***ἀναπαύω** cause to cease ~pause**ἀνήκω** reach up to; belong**διαιρέω** divide, distinguish, distribute**διακελεύομαι** give orders to, encourage**ἐπιφαίνω** display ~photon**ἐσθής** clothes ~vest**εὐήθεια** goodheartedness, silliness**ἔωθα** be accustomed, in the habit**καθυπνώνω** fall asleep**κάρτα** very much ~κράτος**κοίτη** rest, resting place, sleepiness**μετέχω** partake of**ὄνειρος** dream**ὀφείλω** owe, should, if only**ὄψις** ὄψεως (f) sight, view

~thanatopsis

παρατρέπω turn aside ~trophy**στρατηλασίη** expedition, campaign**συλλαμβάνω** seize, capture;

understand ~epilepsy

συνεχής (ὅ) continuously**τεκμαίρομαι** conclude, declare from evidence**φροντίζω** consider, ponder

ἐώθασι αἱ ὄψεις τῶν ὀνειράτων, τὰ τις ἡμέρης φροντίζει.
 ἡμεῖς δὲ τὰς πρὸ τοῦ ἡμέρας ταύτην τὴν στρατηλασίην
 καὶ τὸ κάρτα εἵχομεν μετὰ χεῖρας.

Εἰ δὲ ἄρα μή ἐστι τοῦτο τοιοῦτο οἶον ἐγὼ διαιρέω, ἀλλὰ
 τι τοῦ θείου μετέχον, σὺ πᾶν αὐτὸ συλλαβὼν εἴρηκας·
 φανήτω γὰρ δὴ καὶ ἐμοὶ ὡς καὶ σοὶ διακελευόμενον.
 φανῆναι δὲ οὐδὲν μᾶλλον μοι ὀφείλει ἔχοντι τὴν ἐσθῆτα
 ἢ οὐ καὶ τὴν ἐμὴν, οὐδέ τι μᾶλλον ἐν κοίτῃ τῇ σῇ
 ἀναπαυομένῳ ἢ οὐ καὶ ἐν τῇ ἐμῇ, εἴ πέρ γε καὶ ἄλλως
 ἐθέλει φανῆναι. οὐ γὰρ δὴ ἐς τοσοῦτό γε εὐηθείης ἀνήκει
 τοῦτο, ὅ τι δὴ κοτε ἐστί, τὸ ἐπιφαινόμενόν τοι ἐν τῷ ὕπνῳ,
 ὥστε δόξει ἐμὲ ὁρῶν σὲ εἶναι, τῇ σῇ ἐσθῆτι τεκμαιρόμενον.
 εἰ δὲ ἐμὲ μὲν ἐν οὐδενὶ λόγῳ ποιήσεται οὐδὲ ἀξιώσει
 ἐπιφανῆναι, οὔτε ἦν τὴν ἐμὴν ἐσθῆτα ἔχω οὔτε ἦν τὴν σήν,
 οὐδὲ ἐπιφοιτήσει, τοῦτο ἤδη μαθητέον ἔσται. εἰ γὰρ δὴ
 ἐπιφοιτήσει γε συνεχέως, φαίην ἂν καὶ αὐτὸς θεῖον εἶναι.
 εἰ δέ τοι οὕτω δεδόκηται γίνεσθαι καὶ οὐκ οἶά τε αὐτὸ
 παρατρέψαι, ἀλλ' ἤδη δεῖ ἐμὲ ἐν κοίτῃ σῇ κατυπνῶσαι,

|be accus-|sight τῶν |dream , τά τις ἡμέρης |consider, ponder
|tomed, in
|the habit
ἡμεῖς δὲ τὰς πρὸ τοῦ ἡμέρας ταύτην τὴν |expedition, campaign
καὶ τὸ |very much ἤμεν μετὰ χεῖρας.

Εἰ δὲ ἄρα μὴ ἐστὶ τοῦτο τοιοῦτο οἶον ἐγὼ |divide, distinguish, distribute
τι τοῦ θείου |partake of σὺ πᾶν αὐτὸ |seize, capture; ῥηκας· understand
φανήτω γὰρ δὴ καὶ ἐμοὶ ὡς καὶ σοὶ |give orders to, encourage
φανῆναι δὲ οὐδὲν μᾶλλον μοι |owe, should, if only, clothes
ἢ οὐ καὶ τὴν ἐμήν, οὐδέ τι μᾶλλον ἐν |rest, resting place, sleepiness
|cause to cease ἢ οὐ καὶ ἐν τῇ ἐμῇ, εἴ πέρ γε καὶ ἄλλως

ἐθέλει φανῆναι. οὐ γὰρ δὴ ἐς τοσοῦτό γε |good-heart- |reach up to; belong
|edness, silliness
τοῦτο, ὅ τι δὴ κοτε ἐστί, τὸ |display τῶ ἐν τῷ ὕπνῳ,

ὥστε δόξει ἐμὲ ὁρῶν σὲ εἶναι, τῇ σῇ |clothes |conclude, declare from evidence

εἰ δὲ ἐμὲ μὲν ἐν οὐδενὶ λόγῳ ποιήσεται οὐδὲ ἀξιώσει

|display , οὔτε ἦν τὴν ἐμήν |clothes ἔχω οὔτε ἦν τὴν σήν,

οὐδὲ ἐπιφοιτήσῃ, τοῦτο ἤδη μαθητέον ἔσται. εἰ γὰρ δὴ

ἐπιφοιτήσῃ γε |continuously, αἴην ἂν καὶ αὐτὸς θεῖον εἶναι.

εἰ δέ τοι οὕτω δεδόκηται γίνεσθαι καὶ οὐκ οἶά τε αὐτὸ

|turn aside , ἀλλ' ἤδη δεῖ ἐμὲ ἐν |rest, resting place, sleepiness
|place, sleepiness

form for the most part as the things of which we were thinking during the day; and we in the days preceding were very much occupied with this campaign. (c) If however after all this is not such a thing as I interpret it to be, but is something which is concerned with God, thou hast summed the matter up in that which thou hast said: let it appear, as thou sayest, to me also, as to thee, and give commands. But supposing that it desires to appear to me at all, it is not bound to appear to me any the more if I have thy garments on me than if I have my own, nor any more if I take my rest in thy bed than if I am in thy own; for assuredly this thing, whatever it may be, which appears to thee in thy sleep, is not so foolish as to suppose, when it sees me, that it is thou, judging so because the garments are thine. That however which we must find out now is this, namely if it will hold me in no account, and not think fit to appear to me, whether I have my own garments or whether I have thine, but continue still to haunt thee; for if it shall indeed haunt thee perpetually, I shall myself also be disposed to say that it is of the Deity. But if thou hast resolved that it shall be so, and it is not possible to turn aside this thy resolution, but I must go to sleep in thy bed, then let it

vocabulary

ἀνηκουστέω ignore, disobey ~acoustic
ἀπειλέω vow, threaten, boast
ἀποδείκνυμι (ὁ) show, point out;
 appoint; (mid) declare
ἀποσπεύδω push hard against
ἀποτρέπω divert from ~trophy
βασιλείως kingly
βασιλῆως kingly
ἐκκαίω set on fire
ἐνδύω go into, put on
ἐπιτελέω complete; do a religious duty
ἐπιτέλλω order ~apostle

ἐσθής clothes ~vest
θερμός warm, hot ~thermos
καταπροΐξομαι escape unpunished
κῆδω distress, hurt; mp: care about
 (+gen) ~heinous
κοῖτος rest, resting place, sleepiness
μετέπειτα afterward, next
ὄνειρον dream
ὄνειρος dream
παραυτίκα immediately
σιδήριον iron tool
φοιτάω go back and forth

φέρει, τούτων ἐξ ἐμεῦ ἐπιτελευμένων φανήτω καὶ ἐμοί.
μέχρι δὲ τούτου τῇ παρεούσῃ γνώμῃ χρῆσομαι.»

7.17

τοσαῦτα εἶπας Ἀρτάβανος, ἐλπίζων Ξέρξην ἀποδέξειν
λέγοντα οὐδέν, ἐποίεε τὸ κελευόμενον. ἐνδὺς δὲ τὴν
Ξέρξῃ ἐσθῆτα καὶ ἰζόμενος ἐς τὸν βασιλήιον θρόνον ὡς
μετὰ ταῦτα κοῖτον ἐποιέετο, ἦλθέ οἱ κατυπνωμένῳ τῶντὸ
ὄνειρον τὸ καὶ παρὰ Ξέρξην ἐφοίτα, ὑπερστὰν δὲ τοῦ
Ἀρταβάνου εἶπε· «ἄρα σὺ δὴ κείνος εἰς ὃ ἀποσπεύδων
Ξέρξην στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα ὡς δὴ κηδόμενος
αὐτοῦ; ἀλλ' οὔτε ἐς τὸ μετέπειτα οὔτε ἐς τὸ παραντίκα νῦν
καταπροΐζει ἀποτρέπων τὸ χρεὸν γενέσθαι. Ξέρξην δὲ
τὰ δεῖ ἀνηκουστέοντα παθεῖν, αὐτῷ ἐκείνῳ δεδήλωται.»

7.18

ταῦτά τε ἑδόκεε Ἀρτάβανος τὸ ὄνειρον ἀπειλέειν
καὶ θερμοῖσι σιδηρίοισι ἐκκαίειν αὐτοῦ μέλλειν τοὺς
ὀφθαλμούς. καὶ ὃς ἀμβώσας μέγα ἀναθρώσκει, καὶ

φέρει, τούτων ἐξ ἐμεῦ ἐπιτελευμένων φανήτω καὶ ἐμοί.
μέχρι δὲ τούτου τῇ παρεούσῃ γνώμῃ χρήσομαι.»

7.17

τοσαῦτα εἶπας Ἀρτάβανος, ἐλπίζων Ξέρξην |show, point out; ap-
|point; (mid) declare
λέγοντα οὐδέν, ἐποίεε τὸ κελευόμενον. |go into, put on
Ξέρξῃ |clothes καὶ ἱζόμενος ἐς τὸν βασιλῆιον θρόνον ὡς
μετὰ ταῦτα |rest, 'resting', ἡλθέ οἱ κατυπνωμένῳ τῷ τὸ
|place, sleepiness
ὄνειρον τὸ καὶ παρὰ Ξέρξην |go back and forth ἔν δὲ τοῦ
Ἀρταβάνου εἶπε· «ἄρα σὺ δὴ κείνος εἰς ὃ |push hard against
Ξέρξην στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα ὡς δὴ |distress
αὐτοῦ; ἀλλ' οὔτε ἐς τὸ |afterward, next ἐς τὸ |immediately γυν
|escape |divert from τὸ χρεὸν γενέσθαι. Ξέρξην δὲ
|unpunished
τὰ δεῖ |ignore, disobey παθεῖν, αὐτῷ ἐκείνῳ δεδήλωται.»

7.18

ταῦτά τε ἐδόκεε Ἀρτάβανος τὸ ὄνειρον |vow, threaten, boast
καὶ |warm, hot |iron tool |set on fire αὐτοῦ μέλλειν τοὺς
ὀφθαλμούς. καὶ ὃς ἀμβώσας μέγα ἀναθρώσκει, καὶ

appear to me also, when I perform these things: but until then I shall hold to the opinion which I now have.”

7.17

Having thus said Artabanos, expecting that he would prove that Xerxes was speaking folly, did that which was commanded him; and having put on the garments of Xerxes and seated himself in the royal throne, he afterwards went to bed: and when he had fallen asleep, the same dream came to him which used to come to Xerxes, and standing over Artabanos spoke these words: “Art thou indeed he who endeavours to dissuade Xerxes from making a march against Hellas, pretending to have a care of him? However, neither in the future nor now at the present shalt thou escape unpunished for trying to turn away that which is destined to come to pass: and as for Xerxes, that which he must suffer if he disobeys, hath been shown already to the man himself.”

7.18

Thus it seemed to Artabanos that the dream threatened him, and at the same time was just about to burn out his eyes with hot irons; and with a loud cry he started

vocabulary

ἀπηγέομαι lead; tell, relate
ἀτρεμίζω not be restless
δαιμόνιος voc: you crazy guy
διεξέρχομαι go through
εἶκω yield; seem likely, (pf+dat) seem
 like, (pf) be fit/worthy of/to ~victor
Ἑλληγν Greek
ἐνδέω tie to, entangle; lack
ἐνθαῦτα there, here
ἐνύπνιος seen in dreams
ἐπαείρω raise, place on ~aorta
ἡλικία time of life, contemporaries
καταλαμβάνω seize, understand, catch,

overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy
μακαριστός deemed happy
μετατίθημι set or cause among ~thesis
ὀρμή pressure, assault, order
 ~hormone
ὄψις ὄψεως (f) sight, view
 ~thanatopsis
παρίζω sit beside ~sit
Πέρσης Persian
σημαίνω give orders to; show; mark
 ~semaphore
συστρατεύω join in an expedition
φθορά ruin, rape

παριζόμενος Ξέρξη, ὡς τὴν ὄψιν οἱ τοῦ ἐνυπνίου διεξήλθε
 ἀπηγεόμενος, δεύτερά οἱ λέγει τάδε. «ἐγὼ μὲν, ὦ
 βασιλεῦ, οἷα ἄνθρωπος ἰδὼν ἤδη πολλά τε καὶ μεγάλα
 πεσόντα πρήγματα ὑπὸ ἡσόνων, οὐκ ἔων σε τὰ πάντα
 τῇ ἡλικίῃ εἴκειν, ἐπιστάμενος ὡς κακὸν εἴη τὸ πολλῶν
 ἐπιθυμέειν, μεμνημένος μὲν τὸν ἐπὶ Μασσαγέτας Κύρου
 στόλον ὡς ἔπρηξε, μεμνημένος δὲ καὶ τὸν ἐπ' Αἰθίοπας
 τὸν Καμβύσεω, συστρατευόμενος δὲ καὶ Δαρείῳ ἐπὶ
 Σκύθας. ἐπιστάμενος ταῦτα γνώμην εἶχον ἀτρεμίζοντά
 σε μακαριστὸν εἶναι πρὸς πάντων ἀνθρώπων. ἐπεὶ
 δὲ δαιμονίῃ τις γίνεται ὁρμή, καὶ Ἑλληνας, ὡς οἴκε,
 καταλαμβάνει τις φθορὴ θεήλατος, ἐγὼ μὲν καὶ αὐτὸς
 τρέπομαι καὶ τὴν γνώμην μετατίθεται, σὺ δὲ σήμερον
 μὲν Πέρσῃσι τὰ ἐκ τοῦ θεοῦ πεμπόμενα, χρᾶσθαι δὲ
 κέλευε τοῖσι ἐκ σέο πρώτοισι προειρημένοισι ἐς τὴν
 παρασκευήν, ποίειε δὲ οὕτω ὅπως τοῦ θεοῦ παραδιδόντος
 τῶν σῶν ἐνδεήσει μηδέν.» τούτων δὲ λεχθέντων, ἐνθαῦτα
 ἐπαερθέντες τῇ ὄψι, ὡς ἡμέρη ἐγένετο τάχιστα, Ξέρξης τε

|sit beside Ξέρξης, ὡς τὴν |sight οἱ τοῦ ἐνυπνίου |go through
 |lead; tell, relate, δεύτερά οἱ λέγει τάδε. «ἐγὼ μὲν, ὦ
 βασιλεῦ, οἶα ἄνθρωπος ἰδὼν ἤδη πολλά τε καὶ μεγάλα
 πεσόντα πρήγματα ὑπὸ ἡσσόνων, οὐκ ἔων σε τὰ πάντα
 τῇ |time |yield; seem likely, (pf+dat)|bad εἴη τὸ πολλῶν
 |of life, seem like, (pf) be fit/worthy
 ἐπισημάνειν, μεμνημένος μὲν τὸν ἐπὶ Μασσαγέτας Κύρου
 |contem- of/to
 |poraries
 στόλον ὡς ἔπραξε, μεμνημένος δὲ καὶ τὸν ἐπ' Αἰθίοπας
 τὸν Καμβύσεω, |join in an expedition δὲ καὶ Δαρείω ἐπὶ
 Σκύθας. ἐπιστάμενος ταῦτα γνώμην εἶχον |not be restless
 σε |deemed εἶναι πρὸς πάντων ἀνθρώπων. ἐπεὶ
 |happy
 δὲ |voc: you crazy γυῖνται |pressure, -as-Greek , ὡς οἶκε,
 |sault, order
 |seize, understand, catch, ὁρὴ θεήλατος, ἐγὼ μὲν καὶ αὐτὸς
 |overtake; (mp) happen
 τρέπομαι καὶ τὴν γνώμην |set or cause among δὲ |give orders to;
 |show; mark
 μὲν Πέρσῃσι τὰ ἐκ τοῦ θεοῦ πεμπόμενα, χρᾶσθαι δὲ
 κέλευε τοῖσι ἐκ σέο πρώτοισι προειρημένοισι ἐς τὴν
 παρασκευήν, ποίει δὲ οὕτω ὅπως τοῦ θεοῦ παραδιδόντος
 τῶν σῶν |tie to μηδέν.» τούτων δὲ λεχθέντων, |there, here
 |raise, place on τῇ |sight ὡς ἡμέρῃ ἐγένετο τάχιστα, Ξέρξης τε

up from his bed, and sitting down beside Xerxes he related to him throughout the vision of the dream, and then said to him as follows: "I, O king, as one who has seen before now many great things brought to their fall by things less, urged thee not to yield in all things to the inclination of thy youth, since I knew that it was evil to have desire after many things; remembering on the one hand the march of Cyrus against the Massagetai, what fortune it had, and also that of Cambyses against the Ethiopians; and being myself one who took part with Dareios in the campaign against the Scythians. Knowing these things I had the opinion that thou wert to be envied of all men, so long as thou shouldest keep still. Since however there comes a divine impulse, and, as it seems, a destruction sent by heaven is taking hold of the Hellenes, I for my part am both changed in myself and also I reverse my opinions; and do thou signify to the Persians the message which is sent to thee from God, bidding them follow the commands which were given by thee at first with regard to the preparations to be made; and endeavour that on thy side nothing may be wanting, since God delivers the matter into thy hands." These things having been said, both were excited to confidence by the vision, and so soon as it became day, Xerxes communicated the matter

vocabulary

ἀπελαύνω expel, exclude, ward off;
 (intrans) ride away
ἀποσπενύδω push hard against
ἀφαιρέω take away ~heresy
ἀφανίζω do away with, make off with;
 (pass) disappear
δουλεύω serve, be a slave
ἐλαία olive, olive tree ~olive
ἐπέχω hold, cover; offer; assail
ἐπισπενύδω urge on
ἐπίσχω aim; restrain
ἐρευνάω hunt for
ἥπειρος (f) mainland, continent
θαλλός green stuff, fodder ~thallium

κλάδος branch, shoot
ὄψις ὄψεως (f) sight, view
 ~thanatopsis
Πέρσης Persian
προθυμία (ῶ) zeal, alacrity ~fume
πρόκειμαι be placed by; be devoted to
στέφανος ring
στεφανώ crown
στρατηλατέω lead an army
στρατός common people/soldiers
 ~strategy
στρατώω be on a campaign ~strategy
συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion
ὑπερτίθημι hand over; excel; defer
χῶρος place ~heir

ὑπερετίθετο ταῦτα Πέρσῃσι, καὶ Ἀρτάβανος, ὃς πρότερον ἀποσπεύδων μῶνος ἐφαίνετο, τότε ἐπισπεύδων φανερὸς ἦν.

7.19

ὀρμημένῳ δὲ Ξέρξῃ στρατηλατείει μετὰ ταῦτα τρίτῃ ὄψις ἐν τῷ ὕπνῳ ἐγένετο, τὴν οἱ Μάγοι ἔκριναν ἀκούσαντες φέρειν τε ἐπὶ πᾶσαν γῆν δουλεύσειν τέ οἱ πάντας ἀνθρώπους. ἡ δὲ ὄψις ἦν ἥδε· ἐδόκεε ὁ Ξέρξης ἐστεφανῶσθαι ἐλαίῃς θαλλῶ, ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς ἐλαίης τοὺς κλάδους γῆν πᾶσαν ἐπισχεῖν, μετὰ δὲ ἀφανισθῆναι περὶ τῇ κεφαλῇ κείμενον τὸν στέφανον. κρινάντων δὲ ταῦτα τῶν Μάγων, Περσέων τε τῶν συλλεχθέντων αὐτίκα πᾶς ἀνὴρ ἐς τὴν ἀρχὴν ἐωυτοῦ ἀπελάσας εἶχε προθυμίην πᾶσαν ἐπὶ τοῖσι εἰρημένοισι, θέλων αὐτὸς ἕκαστος τὰ προκείμενα δῶρα λαβεῖν, καὶ Ξέρξης τοῦ στρατοῦ οὕτω ἐπάγερσιν ποιέεται, χῶρον πάντα ἐρευνῶν τῆς ἡπείρου.

|hand over; excel; defer ταῦτα Πέρσῃσι, καὶ Ἀρτάβανος, ὃς πρότερον

|push hard against Ἰνός ἐφαίνετο, τότε |urge on φανερὸς

ἦν.

7.19

ὀρμημένῳ δὲ Ξέρξῃ |lead an army μετὰ ταῦτα τρίτῃ

|sight ἐν τῷ ὕπνῳ ἐγένετο, τὴν οἱ Μάγοι ἔκριναν

ἀκούσαντες φέρειν τε ἐπὶ πᾶσαν γῆν |serve, be a slave οἱ

πάντας ἀνθρώπους. ἡ δὲ |sight ἦν ἥδε· ἐδόκεε ὁ Ξέρξης

|crown |olive |green , ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς |olive τοὺς

|branch, γῆν πᾶσαν ἐπιούρειν, μετὰ δὲ |do away with, make off with; (pass)

|shoot |disappear

κεφαλῇ κείμενον τὸν |ring κρινάντων δὲ ταῦτα τῶν

Μάγων, Περσέων τε τῶν |collect, assemble αὐτίκα πᾶς ἀνὴρ

εἰς τὴν ἀρχὴν ἐωυτοῦ ἀπελάσας εἶχε προθυμίην πᾶσαν ἐπὶ

τοῖσι εἰρημένοισι, θέλων αὐτὸς ἕκαστος τὰ |be placed by;
|be devoted to

δῶρα λαβεῖν, καὶ Ξέρξης τοῦ στρατοῦ οὕτω ἐπάγερσιν

ποιέεται, |place πάντα |hunt for τῆς |mainland,
|continent

to the Persians, and Artabanos, who before was the only man who came forward to dissuade him, now came forward to urge on the design.

7.19

Xerxes being thus desirous to make the expedition, there came to him after this a third vision in his sleep, which the Magians, when they heard it, explained to have reference to the dominion of the whole Earth and to mean that all men should be subject to him; and the vision was this:—Xerxes thought that he had been crowned with a wreath of an olive-branch and that the shoots growing from the olive-tree covered the whole Earth; and after that, the wreath, placed as it was about his head, disappeared. When the Magians had thus interpreted the vision, forthwith every man of the Persians who had been assembled together departed to his own province and was zealous by all means to perform the commands, desiring each one to receive for himself the gifts which had been proposed: and thus Xerxes was gathering his army together, searching every region of the continent.

vocabulary

ἄλωσις -τος (f) being conquered
ἄνω (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste;
 upwards, out to sea
διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis
εἰσβάλλω throw into ~ballistic
καταστρέφω overturn, subdue
 ~catastrophe
μεσαμβρίη midday; the south
νέμω to allot, to pasture ~nemesis

παραρτέομαι get something ready
πέμπτος fifth ~pentagon
πλήρης full, complete; (+gen) full of
 ~plethora
προσδοκάω expect
στρατηλατέω lead an army
στρατιά army ~strategy
τιμωρέω (ι) (+dat) take vengeance,
 punish; aid one who has been attacked

7.20

ἀπὸ γὰρ Αἰγύπτου ἀλώσιος ἐπὶ μὲν τέσσερα ἔτεα πλήρεια παραρτέετο στρατιήν τε καὶ τὰ πρόσφορα τῇ στρατιῇ, πέμπτῳ δὲ ἔτει ἄνομένῳ ἐστρατηλάτее χειρὶ μεγάλη πλήθεος. στόλων γὰρ τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν πολλῷ δὴ μέγιστος οὗτος ἐγένετο, ὥστε μήτε τὸν Δαρείου τὸν ἐπὶ Σκύθας παρὰ τοῦτον μηδένα φαίνεσθαι, μήτε τὸν Σκυθικόν, ὅτε Σκύθαι Κιμμερίους διώκοντες ἐς τὴν Μηδικὴν χώραν ἐσβαλόντες σχεδὸν πάντα τὰ ἄνω τῆς Ἀσίας καταστρεψάμενοι ἐνέμοντο, τῶν εἵνεκεν ὕστερον Δαρείος ἐτιμωρέετο, μήτε κατὰ τὰ λεγόμενα τὸν Ἀτρειδέων ἐς Ἴλιον, μήτε τὸν Μυσῶν τε καὶ Τευκρῶν τὸν πρὸ τῶν Τρωικῶν γενόμενον, οἱ διαβάντες ἐς τὴν Εὐρώπην κατὰ Βόσπορον τοὺς τε Θρήκας κατεστρέψαντο πάντας καὶ ἐπὶ τὸν Ἰόνιον πόντον κατέβησαν, μέχρι τε Πηνειοῦ ποταμοῦ τὸ πρὸς μεσαμβρίας ἤλασαν.

7.20

ἀπὸ γὰρ Αἰγύπτου |being conquered` , τέσσερα ἔτεα |full, complete;
 |(+gen) full of
 |get something ready... ἦν τε καὶ τὰ πρόσφορα τῇ στρατιῇ,
 |fifth δὲ ἔτει ἀνομένῳ |lead an army χειρὶ μεγάλη
 πλήθεος. στόλων γὰρ τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν πολλῷ δὴ μέγιστος
 οὗτος ἐγένετο, ὥστε μήτε τὸν Δαρείου τὸν ἐπὶ Σκύθας
 παρὰ τοῦτον μηδένα φαίνεσθαι, μήτε τὸν Σκυθικόν,
 ὅτε Σκύθαι Κιμμερίους διώκοντες ἐς τὴν Μηδικὴν
 χώραν |throw into σχεδὸν πάντα τὰ ἄνω τῆς Ἀσίας
 |overturn, subdue |distribute , τῶν εἵνεκεν ὕστερον Δαρείος
 |take vengeance, |punish, aid ἤτε κατὰ τὰ λεγόμενα τὸν Ἀτρειδέων ἐς
 Ἴλιον, μήτε τὸν Μυσῶν τε καὶ Τευκρῶν τὸν πρὸ τῶν
 Τρωικῶν γενόμενον, οἱ |pass over, cross ἤν Εὐρώπην κατὰ
 Βόσπορον τοὺς τε Θρήκας |overturn, subdue πάντας καὶ ἐπὶ
 τὸν Ἴόνιον πόντον κατέβησαν, μέχρι τε Πηνειοῦ ποταμοῦ
 τὸ πρὸς |midday; the south ἦσαν.

7.20

During four full years from the conquest of Egypt he was preparing the army and the things that were of service for the army, and in the course of the fifth year he began his campaign with a host of great multitude. For of all the armies of which we have knowledge this proved to be by far the greatest; so that neither that led by Dareios against the Scythians appears anything as compared with it, nor the Scythian host, when the Scythians pursuing the Kimmerians made invasion of the Median land and subdued and occupied nearly all the upper parts of Asia, for which invasion afterwards Dareios attempted to take vengeance, nor that led by the sons of Atreus to Ilion, to judge by that which is reported of their expedition, nor that of the Mysians and Teucrians, before the Trojan war, who passed over into Europe by the Bosphorus and not only subdued all the Thracians, but came down also as far as the Ionian Sea and marched southwards to the river Peneios.

vocabulary

γέφυρα (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge

διάδοχος being successor

ἐνθεῦτεν thence

ἐπιλείπω fail, not work ~eclipse

ἵππαγωγός carrying horses

μάστιξ -γος (f) whip

μίν him, her, it

ὀρμέω be anchored

ὀρύσσω dig

παντοδαπός of every kind, manifold

περιπλέω sail around ~float

προσγίγνομαι become ally to

προσπταίω batter; be set back

προστάσσω post at, attach to,
command

στρατηλασίη expedition, campaign

στρατιά army ~strategy

φοιτέω go back and forth

7.21

αὐται αἱ πᾶσαι οὐδ' εἰ ἕτεραι πρὸς ταύτησι προσγενόμεναι
στρατηλασίαι μῆς τῆσδε οὐκ ἄξιαί. τί γὰρ οὐκ
ἤγαγε ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας ἔθνος ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα Ξέρξης;
κοῖον δὲ πινόμενόν μιν ὕδωρ οὐκ ἐπέλιπε, πλὴν τῶν
μεγάλων ποταμῶν; οἳ μὲν γὰρ νέας παρείχοντο, οἳ δὲ ἐς
πέζον ἐτετάχατο, τοῖσι δὲ ἵππος προσετέτακτο, τοῖσι δὲ
ἵππαγωγὰ πλοῖα ἅμα στρατευομένοισι, τοῖσι δὲ ἐς τὰς
γεφύρας μακρὰς νέας παρέχειν, τοῖσι δὲ σιτὰ τε καὶ νέας.

7.22

καὶ τοῦτο μὲν, ὥς προσπταισάντων τῶν πρώτων
περιπλεόντων περὶ τὸν Ἄθων προετοιμάζετο ἐκ τριῶν
ἐτέων κου μάλιστα τὰ ἐς τὸν Ἄθων. ἐν γὰρ Ἐλαιούντι
τῆς Χερσονήσου ὄρμεον τριήρεις· ἐνθεύτεν δὲ ὀρμώμενοι
ᾠρυσσον ὑπὸ μαστίγων παντοδαποὶ τῆς στρατιῆς,
διάδοχοι δ' ἐφοίτεον· ᾠρυσσον δὲ καὶ οἱ περὶ τὸν Ἄθων
κατοικημένοι. Βουβάρης δὲ ὁ Μεγαβάζου καὶ Ἀρταχάης

7.21

αὐται αἱ πᾶσαι οὐδ' εἰ ἕτεραι πρὸς ταύτησι |become ally to
 |expedition, μῆς τῆσδε οὐκ ἄξιαί. τί γὰρ οὐκ
 |campaign
 ἤγαγε ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας ἔθνος ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα Ξέρξης;
 κοῖον δὲ πινόμενόν μιν ὕδωρ οὐκ |fail, not work` ἦν τῶν
 μεγάλων ποταμῶν; οἱ μὲν γὰρ νέας παρείχοντο, οἱ δὲ ἐς
 πεζὸν ἐτετάχατο, τοῖσι δὲ ἵππος |post at, attach to,, τοῖσι δὲ
 |command
 |carrying πλοῖα ἅμα στρατευομένοισι, τοῖσι δὲ ἐς τὰς
 |horses
 |dam, dike; bridge` νέας παρέχειν, τοῖσι δὲ σιτά τε καὶ νέας.

7.22

καὶ τοῦτο μέν, ὥς |batter; be set back τῶν πρώτων
 |sail around περὶ τὸν Ἄθων προετοιμάζετο ἐκ τριῶν
 ἐτέων κου μάλιστα τὰ ἐς τὸν Ἄθων. ἐν γὰρ Ἐλαιοῦντι
 τῆς Χερσονήσου |be anchored `ῥεες` |thence δὲ ὀρμώμενοι
 |dig ὑπὸ |whip |of every kind, τῆς στρατιῆς,
 |manifold
 |being succeſs-|go back and|dig δὲ καὶ οἱ περὶ τὸν Ἄθων
 |sor |forth
 κατοικημένοι. Βουβάρης δὲ ὁ Μεγαβάζου καὶ Ἀρταχαίης

7.21

All these expeditions put together, with others, if there be any, added to them, are not equal to this one alone. For what nation did Xerxes not lead out of Asia against Hellas? and what water was not exhausted, being drunk by his host, except only the great rivers? For some supplied ships, and others were appointed to serve in the land-army; to some it was appointed to furnish cavalry, and to others vessels to carry horses, while they served in the expedition themselves also; others were ordered to furnish ships of war for the bridges, and others again ships with provisions.

7.22

Then in the first place, since the former fleet had suffered disaster in sailing round Athos, preparations had been going on for about three years past with regard to Athos: for triremes lay at anchor at Elaius in the Chersonese, and with this for their starting point men of all nations belonging to the army worked at digging, compelled by the lash; and the men went to the work regularly in succession: moreover those who dwelt round about Athos worked also at the digging: and Bubares the son of Megabazos

*vocabulary***βάθρον** step, base, bench**βαθύς** high, deep ~bathysphere**δατέομαι** divide into portions ~demon**ἐκτός** outside**ἐξορύσσω** dig out**ἥπειρος** (f) mainland, continent**ἡπειρώτης** -ιδος (f) landsman**ἰσθμός** narrow neck**καθήκω** come down, (a day) to fall, arrive; be proper**καθίημι** (τι) speed down upon; take down ~jet**κατύπερθεν** above, from above**κατώτατος** lowest**κολωνός** hill, mound**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis**ὀνομαστός** named ~name**ορύσσω** dig**πέρθω** sack, ravage, plunder**Πέρσης** Persian**σταδίη** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters**σχοινοτενής** stretched straight**χοῦς** jar, jug; loose dirt**χόω** heap up**χῶρος** place ~heir

ὁ Ἄρταίου ἄνδρες Πέρσαι ἐπέστασαν τοῦ ἔργου. ὁ γὰρ Ἄθως ἐστὶ ὄρος μέγα τε καὶ ὀνομαστόν, ἐς θάλασσαν κατῆκον, οἰκημένον ὑπὸ ἀνθρώπων. τῇ δὲ τελευτᾷ ἐς τὴν ἡπειρον τὸ ὄρος, χερσονησοειδές τε ἐστὶ καὶ ἰσθμὸς ὥς δυνώδεκα σταδίων· πεδῖον δὲ τοῦτο καὶ κολωνοὶ οὐ μεγάλοι ἐκ θαλάσσης τῆς Ἀκανθίων ἐπὶ θάλασσαν τὴν ἀντίον Τορώνης. ἐν δὲ τῷ ἰσθμῷ τούτῳ, ἐς τὸν τελευτᾷ ὁ Ἄθως, Σάνη πόλις Ἑλλὰς οἴκηται, αἱ δὲ ἐκτὸς Σάνης, ἔσω δὲ τοῦ Ἄθω οἰκημέναι, τὰς τότε ὁ Πέρσης νησιώτιδας ἀντὶ ἡπειρωτῖδων ὄρμητο ποιέειν· εἰσὶ δὲ αἶδε, Δίον Ὀλόφυξος Ἀκρόθων Θύσσοις Κλεωναί.

7.23

πόλιες μὲν αὗται αἱ τὸν Ἄθων νέμονται, ὥρυσσον δὲ ὧδε δασάμενοι τὸν χῶρον οἱ βάρβαροι κατὰ ἔθνεα· κατὰ Σάνην πόλιν σχοινοτενὲς ποιησάμενοι, ἐπεῖτε ἐγίνετο βαθέα ἢ διῶρυξ, οἱ μὲν κατώτατα ἐστεῶτες ὥρυσσον, ἕτεροι δὲ παρεδίδοσαν τὸν αἰεὶ ἐξορυσσόμενον χοῦν ἄλλοισι κατύπερθε ἐστεῶσι ἐπὶ βάθρων, οἱ δ' αὖ

ὁ Ἀρταίου ἄνδρες Πέρσαι ἐπέστασαν τοῦ ἔργου. ὁ γὰρ
 Ἄθως ἐστὶ ὄρος μέγα τε καὶ |named , ἐς θάλασσαν
 κατῆκον, οἰκημένον ὑπὸ ἀνθρώπων. τῇ δὲ τελευτᾷ ἐς
 τὴν |mainland, ὃ ὄρος, χερσονησοειδές τε ἐστὶ καὶ |narrow neck
 |continent
 ὥς δυνώδεκα σταδίων· πεδῖον δὲ τοῦτο καὶ |hill, οὐ
 |mound
 μεγάλοι ἐκ θαλάσσης τῆς Ἀκανθίων ἐπὶ θάλασσαν τὴν
 ἀντίον Τορώνης. ἐν δὲ τῷ |narrow neck ρ, ἐς τὸν τελευτᾷ ὁ
 Ἄθως, Σάνη πόλις Ἑλλὰς οἴκηται, αἱ δὲ |outside Σάνης, ἔσω
 δὲ τοῦ Ἄθω οἰκημένοι, τὰς τότε ὁ Πέρσης νησιώτιδας ἀντὶ
 |landsman ὄρμητο ποιεῖν· εἰσὶ δὲ αἶδε, Δῖον Ὀλόφυξος
 Ἀκρόθων Θύσσοις Κλεωναί.

7.23

πόλεις μὲν αὗται αἱ τὸν Ἄθων |distribute , |dig δὲ
 ὧδε |divide into πορ-|place οἱ βάρβαροι κατὰ ἔθνεα· κατὰ
 |tions
 Σάνην πόλιν |stretched ποιησάμενοι, ἐπεῖτε ἐγίνετο
 |straight
 |high, deep διῶρνξ, οἱ μὲν |lowest ἐστεῶτες |dig ,
 ἕτεροι δὲ παρεδίδοσαν τὸν αἰὲ |dig out χούν
 ἄλλοισι |above, from above ἱσι ἐπὶ |step, base, bench ...

and Artachaies the son of Artaios, Persians both, were set over the work. Now Athos is a mountain great and famous, running down to the sea and inhabited by men: and where the mountain ends on the side of the mainland the place is like a peninsula with an isthmus about twelve furlongs across. Here it is plain land or hills of no great size, extending from the sea of the Acanthians to that which lies off Torone; and on this isthmus, where Athos ends, is situated a Hellenic city called Sane: moreover there are others beyond Sane and within the peninsula of Athos, all which at this time the Persian had resolved to make into cities of an island and no longer of the mainland; these are, Dion, Olophyxos, Acrothoon, Thyssos, Cleonai.

7.23

These are the cities which occupy Athos: and they dug as follows, the country being divided among the Barbarians by nations for the work:—at the city of Sane they drew a straight line across the isthmus, and when the channel became deep, those who stood lowest dug, while others delivered the earth as it was dug out to other men who stood above, as upon steps, and they again to

*vocabulary***ἄλέω** grind**ἄνω** (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste;
upwards, out to sea**ἀνώτατος** topmost**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ὁ) show, point out;
appoint; (mid) declare**ἀπολαγχάνω** get by lot**ἄτε** as if; since**διπλήσιος** twofold, double**διῶρυξ** -χος (f) ditch, canal**ἐκδέχομαι** receive; succeed to a
position**ἐκφορέω** carry out ~bear**ἐνθαῦτα** there, here**ἐξισόω** equalize**ἐπιβάλλω** throw upon, head for
~ballistic**καταρρήγνυμι** (ὁ) break down**κρημνός** riverside cliff**λειμών** -ος (m, 3) meadow ~limnic**μέτρον** measure ~metric**μνημόσυον** memorial**μόριον** piece, member; part of speech**ὄρυγμα** -τος (n, 3) trench, tunnel**ὀρύσσω** dig**προβαίνω** surpass, continue ~basis**προσδοκάω** expect**σοφία** skill; wisdom ~sophistry**συμβάλλω** pit against; compare; mp:
meet, fall in with ~ballistic**φοιτάω** go back and forth

ἐκδεκόμενοι ἑτέροισι, ἕως ἀπίκοντο ἐς τοὺς ἀνωτάτω· οὗτοι δὲ ἐξεφόρεόν τε καὶ ἐξέβαλλον. τοῖσι μὲν νυν ἄλλοισι πλὴν Φοινίκων καταρρηγνύμενοι οἱ κρημνοὶ τοῦ ὀρύγματος πόνον διπλήσιον παρέιχον· ἅτε γὰρ τοῦ τε ἄνω στόματος καὶ τοῦ κάτω τὰ αὐτὰ μέτρα ποιευμένων, ἔμελλέ σφι τοιοῦτο ἀποβήσασθαι. οἱ δὲ Φοίνικες σοφίην ἔν τε τοῖσι ἄλλοισι ἔργοισι ἀποδείκνυνται καὶ δὴ καὶ ἐν ἐκείνῳ. ἀπολαχόντες γὰρ μόριον ὅσον αὐτοῖσι ἐπέβαλλε, ὥρυσσον τὸ μὲν ἄνω στόμα τῆς διώρυχος ποιεῦντες διπλήσιον ἢ ὅσον ἔδεε αὐτὴν τὴν διώρυχα γενέσθαι, προβαίνοντος δὲ τοῦ ἔργου συνήγον αἰεὶ· κάτω τε δὴ ἐγίνετο καὶ ἐξισοῦτο τοῖσι ἄλλοισι τὸ ἔργον. ἐνθαῦτα λειμών ἐστι, ἵνα σφι ἀγορὴ τε ἐγίνετο καὶ πρητήριον· σίτος δέ σφι πολλὸς ἐφοίτα ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας ἀληλεσμένος.

7.24

ὥς μὲν ἐμὲ συμβαλλόμενον εὐρίσκειν, μεγαλοφροσύνης εἵνεκεν αὐτὸ Ξέρξης ὀρύσσειν ἐκέλευε, ἐθέλων τε δύναμιν ἀποδείκνυσθαι καὶ μνημόσυνα λιπέσθαι· παρεὸν γὰρ

|receive; succeed ἔροισι, ἕως ἀπίκοντο ἐς τοὺς |topmost
to a position

οὗτοι δὲ |carry out τε καὶ ἐξέβαλλον. τοῖσι μὲν νυν

ἄλλοισι πλὴν Φοινίκων |break down οἱ |riverside τοῦ
|cliff

|trench, πόνον |twofold, παρείχον· |as if; since τοῦ τε
|tunnel |double

ἄνω στόματος καὶ τοῦ κάτω τὰ αὐτὰ |measure οἰουμένων,

ἔμελλέ σφι τοιοῦτο ἀποβήσεσθαι. οἱ δὲ Φοίνικες σοφίην

ἔν τε τοῖσι ἄλλοισι ἔργοισι |show, point out; ap- δὴ καὶ ἐν
|point; (mid) declare

ἐκείνῳ. |get by lot γὰρ |piece, member; ὑποῖσι |throw upon
|part of speech

|dig τὸ μὲν ἄνω στόμα τῆς |ditch, ποιεῦντες
|canal

|twofold, ἢ ὅσον ἔδεε αὐτὴν τὴν |ditch, γενέσθαι,
|double |canal

|surpass δὲ τοῦ ἔργου συνήγον αἰεὶ κάτω τε δὴ

ἐγίνετο καὶ |equalize τοῖσι ἄλλοισι τὸ ἔργον. |there, here

|meadow ἐστὶ, ἵνα σφι ἀγορή τε ἐγίνετο καὶ πρητήριον·

σίτος δέ σφι πολλὸς |go back and forth· ἵης |grind

7.24

ὥς μὲν ἐμὲ |pit against; compare, ἵσκειν, μεγαλοφροσύνης
|mp: meet, fall in with

εἵνεκεν αὐτὸ Ξέρξης |dig ἐκέλευε, ἐθέλων τε δύναμιν

|show, point out; ap- |memorial λιπέσθαι· παρεὼν γὰρ
|point; (mid) declare

others when it was received, until they came to those that were highest; and these bore it away and cast it forth. Now the others except the Phenicians had double toil by the breaking down of the steep edges of their excavation; for since they endeavoured to make the opening at the top and that at the bottom both of the same measure, some such thing was likely to result, as they worked: but the Phenicians, who are apt to show ability in their works generally, did so in this work also; for when they had had assigned to them by lot so much as fell to their share, they proceeded to dig, making the opening of the excavation at the top twice as wide as the channel itself was to be; and as the work went forward, they kept contracting the width; so that, when they came to the bottom, their work was made of equal width with that of the others. Now there is a meadow there, in which there was made for them a market and a place for buying and selling; and great quantities of corn came for them regularly from Asia, ready ground.

7.24

It seems to me, making conjecture of this work, that Xerxes when he ordered this to be dug was moved by a love of magnificence and by a desire to make a display of his power and to leave a memorial behind him; for though they might

*vocabulary***ἄκτῃ** beach; cereal grain**ἀναπυνθάνομαι** study closely**βύβλινος** made of papyrus**γέφυρα** (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge**γεφυρόω** (ῥ) dam, move earth**διατάσσω** arrange, array**διῶρυξ** -χος (f) ditch, canal**ἐπιτάσσω** enjoin; place near**εὐρος** -εος (n, 3) width; (caps) the east
wind**εὖς** good, brave, noble**ζεύγνυμι** (ῥ) yoke, join ~zygote**ἰσθμός** narrow neck**καταβάλλω** throw down, cast off

~ballistic

λευκόλινον flax fiber**ὀλκός** -δος (f, 3) towed merchant ship**ὁμός** same ~homoerotic**ὁμοῦ** together**ὁμόω** unite ~homoerotic**ὄον** οῦ type of fruit**ὄρυγμα** -τος (n, 3) trench, tunnel**ὀρύσσω** dig**προστάσσω** post at, attach to,
command**στρατιά** army ~strategy**ὑποζύγιον** beast of burden ~zygote**χῶρος** place ~heir

μηδένα πόνον λαβόντας τὸν ἰσθμὸν τὰς νέας διειρύνσαι, ὀρύσσειν ἐκέλευε διώρυχα τῇ θαλάσῃ εὖρος ὡς δύο τριήρεας πλέειν ὁμοῦ ἐλαστρεομένας. τοῖσι δὲ αὐτοῖσι τούτοισι, τοῖσί περ καὶ τὸ ὄρυγμα, προσετέτακτο καὶ τὸν Στρυμόνα ποταμὸν ζεύξαντας γεφυρῶσαι.

7.25

ταῦτα μὲν νυν οὕτω ἐποίεε, παρεσκευάζετο δὲ καὶ ὄπλα ἐς τὰς γεφύρας βύβλινά τε καὶ λευκολίνου, ἐπιτάξας Φοίνιξί τε καὶ Αἰγυπτίοισι, καὶ σιτία τῇ στρατιῇ καταβάλλειν, ἵνα μὴ λιμῆναι ἡ στρατιὴ μηδὲ τὰ ὑποζύγια ἐλαυνόμενα ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα· ἀναπυθόμενος δὲ τοὺς χώρους καταβάλλειν ἐκέλευε ἵνα ἐπιτηδεότατον εἴη, ἅλλα ἄλλῃ ἀγινέοντας ὀλκάσι τε καὶ πορθμηίοισι ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας πανταχόθεν. τὸν δὲ ὦν πλεῖστον ἐς Λευκὴν ἀκτὴν καλεομένην τῆς Θρηίκης ἀγίνεον, οἱ δὲ ἐς Τυρόδιζαν τὴν Περινθίων, οἱ δὲ ἐς Δορίσκον, οἱ δὲ ἐς Ἥιόνα τὴν ἐπὶ Στρυμόνι, οἱ δὲ ἐς Μακεδονίην διατεταγμένοι.

μηδένα πόνον λαβόντας τὸν |narrow neck νέας διειρύσαι,
 |dig ἐκέλευε |ditch, canal τῇ θαλάσῃ |width; (caps) ὕο
 |the east wind
 τριήρας πλέειν ὁμοῦ ἐλαστρομένας. τοῖσι δὲ αὐτοῖσι
 τούτοισι, τοῖσί περ καὶ τὸ |trench, tunnel |post at, attach to, καὶ τὸν
 |command
 Στρυμόνα ποταμὸν |yoke, join |dam

7.25

ταῦτα μὲν νυν οὕτω ἐποίεε, παρεσκευάζετο δὲ καὶ ὄπλα ἐς
 τὰς |dam, dike; |made of papyrus` |flax fiber |enjoin; Φοίνιξί
 |bridge |place near
 τε καὶ Αἰγυπτίοισι, καὶ σιτία τῇ στρατιῇ |throw down, cast off
 μὴ λιμήνεια ἢ στρατιῇ μηδὲ τὰ |beast of burden νόμενα ἐπὶ
 τὴν Ἑλλάδα· ἀναπυθόμενος δὲ τοὺς |place |throw down, cast off
 ἐκέλευε ἵνα ἐπιτηδεότατον εἴη, ἅλλα ἄλλη ἀγινέοντας
 |towed |merchant
 |ship :· ἐ καὶ πορθμηίοισι ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας πανταχόθεν.
 τὸν δὲ ὦν πλείστον ἐς Λευκὴν |beach; καλεομένην τῆς
 |grain
 Θρηίκης ἀγίνεον, οἱ δὲ ἐς Τυρόδιζαν τὴν Περινθίων, οἱ δὲ
 ἐς Δορίσκον, οἱ δὲ ἐς Ἡϊόνα τὴν ἐπὶ Στρυμόνι, οἱ δὲ ἐς
 Μακεδονίην |arrange, array

have drawn the ships across the isthmus with no great labour, he bade them dig a channel for the sea of such breadth that two triremes might sail through, propelled side by side. To these same men to whom the digging had been appointed, it was appointed also to make a bridge over the river Strymon, yoking together the banks.

7.25

These things were being done by Xerxes thus; and meanwhile he caused ropes also to be prepared for the bridges, made of papyrus and of white flax, appointing this to the Phenicians and Egyptians; and also he was making preparations to store provisions for his army on the way, that neither the army itself nor the baggage animals might suffer from scarcity, as they made their march against Hellas. Accordingly, when he had learnt by inquiry of the various places, he bade them make stores where it was most convenient, carrying supplies to different parts by merchant ships and ferry-boats from all the countries of Asia. So they conveyed the greater part of the corn to the place which is called Leuke Acte in Thrace, while others conveyed stores to Tyrodiza of the Perinthians, others to Doriscos, others to Eïon on the Strymon, and others to Macedonia, the work being distributed between them.

vocabulary

ἀναδίδωμι yield; give out
ἀνακρεμάννυμι (ῥ) get snagged on
ἀνατέλλω cause to grow ~apostle
ἄσχος wine skin, leather bag
διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis
ἐκδέρω to skin ~dermatology
ἐκδίδωμι hand over ~donate
ἐνθαῦτα there, here
ἤπειρος (f) mainland, continent

κελαινός black, dark, swarthy, murky
ὁμιλέω (ι) associate with ~homily
πηγή headwaters, fountain
πηγός stout, mighty
πρόκειμαι be placed by; be devoted to
στέλλω prepare, send, furl ~apostle
στρατός common people/soldiers
 ~strategy
συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion

7.26

ἐν ᾧ δὲ οὗτοι τὸν προκείμενον πόνον ἐργάζοντο, ἐν τούτῳ ὁ πεζὸς ἅπας συλλελεγμένος ἅμα Ξέρξῃ ἐπορεύετο ἐς Σάρδεις, ἐκ ἐκ Κριτάλλων ὀρμηθεὶς τῶν ἐν Καππαδοκίῃ· ἐνθαῦτα γὰρ εἴρητο συλλέγεσθαι πάντα τὸν κατ' ἡπειρον μέλλοντα ἅμα αὐτῷ Ξέρξῃ πορεύεσθαι στρατόν. ὃς μὲν νυν τῶν ὑπάρχων στρατὸν κάλλιστα ἐσταλμένον ἀγαγὼν τὰ προκείμενα παρὰ βασιλέος ἔλαβε δῶρα, οὐκ ἔχω φράσαι· οὐδὲ γὰρ ἀρχὴν ἐς κρίσιν τούτου πέρι ἐλθόντας οἶδα. οἱ δὲ ἐπεῖτε διαβάντες τὸν Ἄλυν ποταμὸν ὠμίλησαν τῇ Φρυγίῃ, δι' αὐτῆς πορευόμενοι ἀπίκοντο ἐς Κελαινάς, ἵνα πηγαὶ ἀναδιδούσι Μαιάνδρου ποταμοῦ καὶ ἐτέρου οὐκ ἐλάσσονος ἢ Μαιάνδρου, τῷ οὖνομα τυγχάνει ἐὼν Καταρρήκτης, ὃς ἐξ αὐτῆς τῆς ἀγορῆς τῆς Κελαινέων ἀνατέλλων ἐς τὸν Μαίανδρον ἐκδιδοῖ· ἐν τῇ καὶ ὁ τοῦ Σιληνοῦ Μαρσύεω ἀσκὸς ἀνακρέμαται, τὸν ὑπὸ Φρυγῶν λόγος ἔχει ὑπὸ Ἀπόλλωνος ἐκδαρέντα ἀνακρεμασθῆναι.

7.26

ἐν ᾧ δὲ οὗτοι τὸν |be placed by; πόνον ἐργάζοντο, ἐν τούτῳ
 |be devoted to
 ὁ πεζὸς ἅπας |collect, assemble ἅμα Ξέρξῃ ἐπορεύετο ἐς
 Σάρδεις, ἐκ ἐκ Κριτάλλων ὀρμηθεὶς τῶν ἐν Καππαδοκίῃ·
 |there, here, ἂρ εἶρητο |collect, πάντα τὸν κατ' |mainland,
 |assemble |continent
 μέλλοντα ἅμα αὐτῷ Ξέρξῃ πορεύεσθαι |army ὃς μὲν
 νυν τῶν ὑπάρχων |army κάλλιστα |prepare, send, φυλ., ὡν
 τὰ |be placed by; παρὰ βασιλέος ἔλαβε δῶρα, οὐκ ἔχω
 |be devoted to
 φράσαι· οὐδὲ γὰρ ἀρχὴν ἐς κρίσιν τούτου πέρι ἐλθόντας
 οἶδα. οἱ δὲ ἐπείτε |pass over, cross. Ἄλυν ποταμὸν |associate with
 τῇ Φρυγίῃ, δι' αὐτῆς πορευόμενοι ἀπίκοντο ἐς |black ,
 ἵνα πηγαὶ |yield; give out Ἰαιάνδρου ποταμοῦ καὶ ἑτέρου
 οὐκ ἐλάσσονος ἢ Μαιάνδρου, τῷ οὐνομα τυγχάνει ἐὼν
 Καταρρήκτης, ὃς ἐξ αὐτῆς τῆς ἀγορῆς τῆς |black
 |cause to grow ἐς τὸν Μαίανδρον |hand over ἔν τῇ καὶ ὁ τοῦ
 Σιληνοῦ Μαρσύεω |wine |get snagged on , τὸν ὑπὸ Φρυγῶν
 |skin
 λόγος ἔχει ὑπὸ Ἀπόλλωνος |to skin |get snagged on

7.26

During the time that these were working at the task which had been proposed to them, the whole land-army had been assembled together and was marching with Xerxes to Sardis, setting forth from Critalla in Cappadokia; for there it had been ordered that the whole army should assemble, which was to go with Xerxes himself by the land: but which of the governors of provinces brought the best equipped force and received from the king the gifts proposed, I am not able to say, for I do not know that they even came to a competition in this matter. Then after they had crossed the river Halys and had entered Phrygia, marching through this land they came to Kelainai, where the springs of the river Maiander come up, and also those of another river not less than the Maiander, whose name is Catarractes; this rises in the market-place itself of Kelainai and runs into the Maiander: and here also is hanging up in the city the skin of Marsyas the Silenos, which is said by the Phrygians to have been flayed off and hung up by Apollo.

*vocabulary***ἄατος** (αᾶ) insatiate of**ἄμπελος** (f) vine**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise

~angel

ἀποκρύπτω hide away ~cryptic**ἀτρεκής** precise, certain**δωρέω** give ~donate**ἐμεωυτοῦ** myself**καταλέγω** relate in detail, choose;

enroll ~legion

κόσος how many, much, far?**ξεινίζω** be host, treat as a guest**ξείνιος** of hospitality**ὀπόσος** as many as, how many, how

great

οὐσία property; essence**Πέρσης** Persian**πλατάνιστος** (f) plane tree**σκήπτω** prop up; (mp) feign ~scepter**στρατιά** army ~strategy**τελευταῖος** last, final

7.27

ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ πόλει ὑποκατήμενος Πύθιος ὁ ἄνθρωπος Λυδὸς ἐξείνισε τὴν βασιλέως στρατιὴν πᾶσαν ξεινίοισι μεγίστοισι καὶ αὐτὸν Ξέρξην, χρήματά τε ἐπαγγέλλετο βουλόμενος ἐς τὸν πόλεμον παρέχειν. ἐπαγγελλομένου δὲ χρήματα Πυθίου, εἶρετο Ξέρξης Περσέων τοὺς παρεόντας τίς τε ἐὼν ἀνδρῶν Πύθιος καὶ κόσα χρήματα ἐκτημένος ἐπαγγέλλοιτο ταῦτα. οἳ δὲ εἶπαν «ὦ βασιλεῦ, οὗτος ἐστὶ ὅς τοι τὸν πατέρα Δαρεῖον ἐδωρήσατο τῇ πλατανίστῃ τῇ χρυσέῃ καὶ τῇ ἀμπέλῳ· ὃς καὶ νῦν ἐστὶ πρῶτος ἀνθρώπων πλούτῳ τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν μετὰ σέ.»

7.28

θωμάσας δὲ τῶν ἐπέων τὸ τελευταῖον Ξέρξης αὐτὸς δεύτερα εἶρετο Πύθιον ὁκόσα οἱ εἴη χρήματα. ὁ δὲ εἶπε «ὦ βασιλεῦ, οὔτε σε ἀποκρύψω οὔτε σκήψομαι τὸ μὴ εἰδέναι τὴν ἐμεωντοῦ οὐσίην, ἀλλ' ἐπιστάμενός τοι ἀτρεκέως καταλέξω. ἐπεῖτε γὰρ τάχιστα σε ἐπυθόμην ἐπὶ θάλασσαν

7.27

ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ πόλει ὑποκατήμενος Πύθιος ὁ Ἄτους ἀνὴρ
 Λυδὸς |be host τὴν βασιλέως στρατιὴν πᾶσαν |of hospitality
 μεγίστοισι καὶ αὐτὸν Ξέρξην, χρήματά τε ἐπαγγέλλετο
 βουλόμενος ἐς τὸν πόλεμον παρέχειν. ἐπαγγελλομένου δὲ
 χρήματα Πυθίου, εἶρετο Ξέρξης Περσέων τοὺς παρεόντας
 τίς τε ἐὼν ἀνδρῶν Πύθιος καὶ |how many, much, far? μένος
 ἐπαγγέλλοιτο ταῦτα. οἱ δὲ εἶπαν «ὦ βασιλεῦ, οὗτος ἐστὶ
 ὅς τοι τὸν πατέρα Δαρεῖον ἐδωρήσατο τῇ |plane tree τῇ
 χρυσέῃ καὶ τῇ |vine ὃς καὶ νῦν ἐστὶ πρῶτος ἀνθρώπων
 πλούτῳ τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν μετὰ σέ.»

7.28

θωμάσας δὲ τῶν ἐπέων τὸ |last, final Ξέρξης αὐτὸς
 δεύτερα εἶρετο Πύθιον |as/how many/great, ...ατα. ὁ δὲ εἶπε «ὦ
 βασιλεῦ, οὔτε σε |hide away οὔτε |prop up; (mp) feign ᾄδεναι
 τὴν |myself |property; ἐπισταμένος τοι |precise,
 |essence |certain
 |relate in detail, εἴτε γὰρ τάχιστα σε ἐπυθόμην ἐπὶ θάλασσαν
 |choose; enroll

7.27

In this city Pythios the son of Atys, a Lydian, was waiting for the king and entertained his whole army, as well as Xerxes himself, with the most magnificent hospitality: moreover he professed himself ready to supply money for the war. So when Pythios offered money, Xerxes asked those of the Persians who were present, who Pythios was and how much money he possessed, that he made this offer. They said: “O king, this is he who presented thy father Dareios with the golden plane-tree and the golden vine; and even now he is in wealth the first of all men of whom we know, excepting thee only.”

7.28

Marvelling at the conclusion of these words Xerxes himself asked of Pythios then, how much money he had; and he said: “O king, I will not conceal the truth from thee, nor will I allege as an excuse that I do not know my own substance, but I will enumerate it to thee exactly, since I know the truth: for as soon as I heard that thou wert coming down to the

vocabulary

ἀνδράποδον -ς slave ~androgynous
ἀπαγγέλλω announce, order, promise
 ~angel
ἀποπλέω sail away ~float
ἀργύριον small coin
ἀρκέω satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice
ἄρκυς net
δωρέω give ~donate
ἐκμανθάνω know by heart
ἐμεωυτοῦ myself
ἐπιδεής in need of
ἐπιδέω fasten; lack
εὖς good, brave, noble
ἡδομαι be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism
λογίζομαι reckon, consider
μυριάς -δος (ὑ, f, 3) countless, myriad
ξεινίζω be host, treat as a guest
ξείνιος of hospitality

ὄον οὓ type of fruit
ὄψις ὄψεως (f) sight, view
 ~thanatopsis
Περσίς Persian (language)
προτίθημι prefer, set out ~thesis
στατήρ -ος (m) pound; type of coin
στρατός common people/soldiers
 ~strategy
στρατόω be on a campaign ~strategy
συμβάλλω pit against; compare; mp:
 meet, fall in with ~ballistic
συμμίγνυμι mix with ~mix
τάλαντον scale, a unit of weight
 ~talent
τετρακόσιοι 400
τοιόσδε such
χιλιάς -δος (τι, f, 3) 1000
χρυσίον (ὑ) gold coin

καταβαίνοντα τὴν Ἑλληνίδα, βουλόμενός τοι δοῦναι ἐς τὸν πόλεμον χρήματα ἐξεμάνθανον, καὶ εὖρον λογιζόμενος ἀργυρίου μὲν δύο χιλιάδας εἰσάσας μοι ταλάντων, χρυσίου δὲ τετρακοσίας μυριάδας στατήρων Δαρεικῶν ἐπιδεούσας ἑπτὰ χιλιάδων. καὶ τούτοισί σε ἐγὼ δωρέομαι, αὐτῷ δέ μοι ἀπὸ ἀνδραπόδων τε καὶ γεωπέδων ἀρκέων ἐστὶ βίος.»

7.29

ὁ μὲν ταῦτα ἔλεγε, Ξέρξης δὲ ἡσθεὶς τοῖσι εἰρημένοισι εἶπε «ξείνε Λυδέ, ἐγὼ ἐπείτε ἐξηλθον τὴν Περσίδα χώραν, οὐδενὶ ἀνδρὶ συνέμιξα ἐς τόδε ὅστις ἠθέλησε ξείνια προθεῖναι στρατῷ τῷ ἐμῷ, οὐδὲ ὅστις ἐς ὄψιν τὴν ἐμὴν καταστὰς αὐτεπάγγελτος ἐς τὸν πόλεμον ἐμοὶ ἠθέλησε συμβαλέσθαι χρήματα, ἔξω σεῦ. σὺ δὲ καὶ ἐξείνισας μέγας στρατὸν τὸν ἐμὸν καὶ χρήματα μεγάλα ἐπαγγέλλαι. σοὶ ὦν ἐγὼ ἀντὶ αὐτῶν γέρεα τοιάδε δίδωμι· ξεινόν τέ σε ποιέειν ἐμὸν καὶ τὰς τετρακοσίας μυριάδας τοι τῶν στατήρων ἀποπλήσω παρ' ἐμευτοῦ δούς τὰς ἑπτὰ χιλιάδας, ἵνα μή τοι ἐπιδέεες ἔωσι αἱ τετρακόσαιοι

καταβαίνοντα τὴν Ἑλληνίδα, βουλόμενός τοι δοῦναι ἐς
 τὸν πόλεμον χρήματα |know by heart, καὶ εὖρον |reckon,
 |small coin μὲν δύο |1000 εὔσας μοι |scale, a unit|gold coin
 |of weight
 δὲ |400 |countless, |pound; type of coin ὄν |fasten; lack
 |myriad
 ἑπτὰ |1000 καὶ τούτοισί σε ἐγὼ δωρέομαι, αὐτῷ δέ
 μοι ἀπὸ |slave τε καὶ γεωπέδων ἀρκέων ἐστὶ βίος.»

7.29

ὁ μὲν ταῦτα ἔλεγε, Ξέρξης δὲ |be pleased, enjoy, ῥημένοισι
 εἶπε «ξείνῃ Λυδέ, ἐγὼ ἐπείτε ἐξῆλθον τὴν |Persian (language)
 χώραν, οὐδενὶ ἀνδρὶ |mix with ἐς τόδε ὅστις ἠθέλησε
 |of hos-|prefer, set out ῥατῷ τῷ ἐμῷ, οὐδὲ ὅστις ἐς |sight
 |pitality
 τὴν ἐμὴν καταστὰς αὐτεπάγγελτος ἐς τὸν πόλεμον ἐμοὶ
 ἠθέλησε |pit against; compare; ατα, ἔξω σεῦ. σὺ δὲ καὶ
 |mp: meet, fall in with
 |be host μεγάλως |army τὸν ἐμὸν καὶ χρήματα μεγάλα
 ἐπαγγέλλεαι. σοὶ ὦν ἐγὼ ἀντὶ αὐτῶν γέρεα |such δίδωμι·
 ξεινόν τέ σε ποιεῦμαι ἐμὸν καὶ τὰς |400 |countless,
 |myriad
 τοι τῶν |pound; type|sail away παρ' ἐμευτοῦ δούς τὰς
 |of coin
 ἑπτὰ |1000 , ἵνα μὴ τοι |in need of ὥσι αἱ |400

Sea of Hellas, desiring to give thee money for the war I ascertained the truth, and calculating I found that I had of silver two thousand talents, and of gold four hundred myriads of daric staters all but seven thousand: and with this money I present thee. For myself I have sufficient livelihood from my slaves and from my estates of land.”

7.29

Thus he said; and Xerxes was pleased by the things which he had spoken, and replied: “Lydian host, ever since I went forth from the Persian land I have encountered no man up to this time who was desirous to entertain my army, or who came into my presence and made offer of his own free will to contribute money to me for the war, except only thee: and thou not only didst entertain my army magnificently, but also now dost make offer of great sums of money. To thee therefore in return I give these rewards,—I make thee my guest-friend, and I will complete for thee the four hundred myriads of staters by giving from myself the seven thousand, in order that thy four hundred myriads may not fall short by seven thousand,

vocabulary

ἀναφαίνω reveal, shine ~phenomenon
ἀφανίζω do away with, make off with;
 (pass) disappear
γράμμα -τος (n, 3) writing, letter
γραμματεὺς -ος (m) clerk,
 schoolmaster
εἰσβάλλω throw into ~ballistic
ἐκδίδωμι hand over ~donate
ἐπιτελής accomplished
καταμηνύω point out, make known
λίμνη lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic
μεταμέλομαι (impers.+dat.) cause
 regret to; (mp) regret

μυριάς -δος (ῥ, f, 3) countless, myriad
παραμείβω pass by ~amoeba
πρόσω forward, in the future; far
σταδίη (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl
 noun) 200 meters
στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)
στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm;
 (pl noun) 200 meters
στήλη post, column
στρατός common people/soldiers
 ~strategy
χάσμα -τος (n, 3) chasm, gaping
 opening
χιλιάς -δος (ι, f, 3) 1000

μυριάδες ἑπτὰ χιλιάδων, ἀλλὰ ἦ τοι ἀπαρτιλογίῃ ὑπ' ἐμέο
 πεπληρωμένη. ἔκτησό τε αὐτὸς τά περ αὐτὸς ἐκτήσαιο,
 ἐπίστασό τε εἶναι αἰεὶ τοιοῦτος· οὐ γάρ τοι ταῦτα ποιέυντι
 οὔτε ἐς τὸ παρεὸν οὔτε ἐς χρόνον μεταμελήσει.»

7.30

ταῦτα δὲ εἶπας καὶ ἐπιτελέα ποιήσας ἐπορεύετο τὸ
 πρόσω αἰεὶ. Ἄναυα δὲ καλεομένην Φρυγῶν πόλιν
 παραμειβόμενος καὶ λίμνην ἐκ τῆς ἅλεις γίνονται, ἀπίκητο
 ἐς Κολοσσὰς πόλιν μεγάλην Φρυγίης· ἐν τῇ Λύκος
 ποταμὸς ἐς χάσμα γῆς ἐσβάλλων ἀφανίζεται, ἔπειτα διὰ
 σταδίων ὡς πέντε μάλιστα κη ἀναφαινόμενος ἐκδιδοῖ καὶ
 οὗτος ἐς τὸν Μαίανδρον. ἐκ δὲ Κολοσσέων ὁ στρατὸς
 ὁρμώμενος ἐπὶ τοὺς οὖρους τῶν Φρυγῶν καὶ Λυδῶν
 ἀπίκητο ἐς Κύδραρα πόλιν, ἔνθα στήλη καταπεπηγυῖα,
 σταθεῖσα δὲ ὑπὸ Κροίσου, καταμηνύει διὰ γραμμάτων
 τοὺς οὖρους.

|countless, *ἑπτὰ* |1000 , ἀλλὰ ἦ τοι ἀπαρτιλογίῃ ὑπ' ἐμέο
|myriad
πεπληρωμένη. ἔκτησό τε αὐτὸς τά περ αὐτὸς ἐκτήσαο,
ἐπίστασό τε εἶναι αἰεὶ τοιοῦτος· οὐ γάρ τοι ταῦτα ποιεῖντι
οὔτε ἐς τὸ παρεὸν οὔτε ἐς χρόνον μεταμελήσει.»

7.30

ταῦτα δὲ εἴπας καὶ |accomplished *ἤσας* ἐπορεύετο τὸ
|forward, in the *Ἄναυα* δὲ καλεομένην Φρυγῶν πόλιν
|future; far
|pass by καὶ |lake, marsh, *ἦς ἅλεις γίνονται*, ἀπίκητο
|basin, sea
ἐς Κολοσσὰς πόλιν μεγάλην Φρυγίης· ἐν τῇ Λύκος
ποταμὸς ἐς |chasm, gap- *ἐσβάλλων* |do away with, ὃ make off ἃ
|ing opening |with; (pass) disappear
σταδίων ὡς πέντε μάλιστα κη |reveal, shine |hand over ἃ
οὔτος ἐς τὸν Μαίανδρον. ἐκ δὲ Κολοσσέων ὁ |army
ὀρμώμενος ἐπὶ τοὺς οὖρους τῶν Φρυγῶν καὶ Λυδῶν
ἀπίκητο ἐς Κύδραρα πόλιν, ἔνθα |post, καταπεπηγυῖα,
|column
σταθεῖσα δὲ ὑπὸ Κροίσου, |make known διὰ γραμμάτων
τοὺς οὖρους.

but thou mayest have a full sum in thy reckoning, completed thus by me. Keep possession of that which thou hast got for thyself, and be sure to act always thus; for if thou doest so, thou wilt have no cause to repent either at the time or afterwards.”

7.30

Having thus said and having accomplished his promise, he continued his march onwards; and passing by a city of the Phrygians called Anaua and a lake whence salt is obtained, he came to Colossai, a great city of Phrygia, where the river Lycos falls into an opening of the earth and disappears from view, and then after an interval of about five furlongs it comes up to view again, and this river also flows into the Maiander. Setting forth from Colossai towards the boundaries of the Phrygians and Lydians, the army arrived at the city of Kydrara, where a pillar is fixed, set up by Croesus, which declares by an inscription that the boundaries are there.

*vocabulary***αἵτησις** -εως (f) request, demand**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp**ἀριστερός** left-hand**δημοεργός** public worker**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis**δωρέω** give ~donate**εἰσβάλλω** throw into ~ballistic**ἐπιτρέπω** entrust, decide, allow

~trophy

κάλλος -εος (n, 3) beauty

~kaleidoscope

μελεδωνός agent, steward**μέλι** honey, a sweet**μυρίκη** tamarisk**πάντη** everywhere**πλατάνιστος** (f) plane tree**πυρός** (ῥ) wheat**πυρόω** burn something**σχίζω** split ~schism

7.31

ὥς δὲ ἐκ τῆς Φρυγίης ἐσέβαλε ἐς τὴν Λυδίην, σχιζομένης τῆς ὁδοῦ καὶ τῆς μὲν ἐς ἀριστερὴν ἐπὶ Καρίης φερούσης τῆς δὲ ἐς δεξιὴν ἐς Σάρδεις, τῇ καὶ πορευομένῳ διαβῆναι τὸν Μαίανδρον ποταμὸν πᾶσα ἀνάγκη γίνεται καὶ ἵεναι παρὰ Καλλάτηβον πόλιν, ἐν τῇ ἄνδρες δημοεργοὶ μέλι ἐκ μυρίκης τε καὶ πυροῦ ποιεῦσι, ταύτην ἰὼν ὁ Ξέρξης τὴν ὁδὸν εὔρε πλατάνιστον, τὴν κάλλεος εἵνεκα δωρησάμενος κόσμῳ χρυσέῳ καὶ μελεδωνῷ ἀθανάτῳ ἀνδρὶ ἐπιτρέψας δευτέρῃ ἡμέρῃ ἀπίκητο ἐς τῶν Λυδῶν τὸ ἄστυ.

7.32

ἀπικόμενος δὲ ἐς Σάρδεις πρῶτα μὲν ἀπέπεμπε κήρυκας ἐς τὴν Ἑλλάδα αἰτήσοντας γῆν τε καὶ ὕδωρ καὶ προερέοντας δειπνα βασιλείᾳ παρασκευάζειν· πλὴν οὔτε ἐς Ἀθήνας οὔτε ἐς Λακεδαίμονα ἀπέπεμπε ἐπὶ γῆς αἴτησιν, τῇ δὲ ἄλλῃ πάντῃ. τῶνδε δὲ εἵνεκα τὸ δεύτερον ἀπέπεμπε ἐπὶ γῆν τε καὶ ὕδωρ· ὅσοι πρότερον οὐκ ἔδοσαν Δαρείῳ πέμψαντι,

7.31

ὥς δὲ ἐκ τῆς Φρυγίης ἐσέβαλε ἐς τὴν Λυδίην, |split
 τῆς ὁδοῦ καὶ τῆς μὲν ἐς |left-hand ἐπὶ Καρίης φερούσης
 τῆς δὲ ἐς δεξιὴν ἐς Σάρδεις, τῇ καὶ πορευομένῳ |pass over, cross
 τὸν Μαίανδρον ποταμὸν πᾶσα ἀνάγκη γίνεται καὶ ἶέναι
 παρὰ Καλλάτηβον πόλιν, ἐν τῇ ἄνδρες |public |honey
 |worker
 ἐκ |tamarisk τε καὶ πυροῦ ποιεῦσι, ταύτην ἰὼν ὁ Ξέρξης τὴν
 ὁδὸν εὔρε |plane tree , τὴν |beauty εἵνεκα δωρησάμενος
 κόσμῳ χρυσέῳ καὶ |agent, |steward ἀθανάτῳ ἀνδρὶ |entrust, de-
 |cide, allow
 δευτέρῃ ἡμέρῃ ἀπίκητο ἐς τῶν Λυδῶν τὸ ἄστυ.

7.32

ἀπικόμενος δὲ ἐς Σάρδεις πρῶτα μὲν |send away κήρυκας ἐς
 τὴν Ἑλλάδα αἰτήσοντας γῆν τε καὶ ὕδωρ καὶ προερέοντας
 δεῖπνα βασιλείᾳ παρασκευάζειν· πλὴν οὔτε ἐς Ἀθήνας οὔτε
 ἐς Λακεδαίμονα |send away ἐπὶ γῆς |request, |demand
 |everywhere ἔνδε δὲ εἵνεκα τὸ δεύτερον |send away ἐπὶ γῆν τε
 καὶ ὕδωρ· ὅσοι πρότερον οὐκ ἔδοσαν Δαρείῳ πέμψαντι,

7.31

From Phrygia then he entered Lydia; and here the road parts into two, and that which goes to the left leads towards Caria, while that which goes to the right leads to Sardis; and travelling by this latter road one must needs cross the river Maiander and pass by the city of Callatebos, where men live whose trade it is to make honey of the tamarisk-tree and of wheat-flour. By this road went Xerxes and found a plane-tree, to which for its beauty he gave an adornment of gold, and appointed that some one should have charge of it always in undying succession; and on the next day he came to the city of the Lydians.

7.32

Having come to Sardis he proceeded first to send heralds to Hellas, to ask for earth and water, and also to give notice beforehand to prepare meals for the king; except that he sent neither to Athens nor Lacedemon to ask for earth, but to all the other States: and the reason why he sent the second time to ask for earth and water was this,—as many as had not given at the former time to Dareios when he sent, these he thought would

*vocabulary***ἄθεμιστος** lawless, unworthy of law**ἀκριβής** (ἱ) exact**ἄκτῃ** beach; cereal grain**βύβλινος** made of papyrus**γεφυρόω** (ῶ) dam, move earth**ἐκμανθάνω** know by heart**ἔρδω** do, perform ~ergonomics**εὖς** good, brave, noble**ζεύγνυμι** (ῶ) yoke, join ~zygote**καθήκω** come down, (a day) to fall, arrive; be proper**καταντίον** facing, across from**λευκόλινον** flax fiber**μεταξύ** between**ὄον** οὓ type of fruit**πάγχυ** entirely**παχύς** thick, stout, clotted ~pachyderm**Πέρσης** Persian**πρόκειμαι** be placed by; be devoted to**σανίς** -δος (f) board, panel**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters

τούτους πάγχυ ἔδόκεε τότε δείσαντας δώσειν· βουλόμενος ὦν αὐτὸ τοῦτο ἐκμαθεῖν ἀκριβέως ἔπεμπε.

7.33

μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα παρεσκευάζετο ὡς ἐλῶν ἐς Ἄβυδον. οἱ δὲ ἐν τούτῳ τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον ἐξεύγνυσαν ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας ἐς τὴν Εὐρώπην. ἔστι δὲ τῆς Χερσονήσου τῆς ἐν Ἑλλησπόντῳ, Σηστοῦ τε πόλιος μεταξὺ καὶ Μαδύτου, ἀκτὴ παχέα ἐς θάλασσαν κατήκουσα Ἀβύδῳ καταντίον· ἔνθα μετὰ ταῦτα, χρόνῳ ὕστερον οὐ πολλῶ, ἐπὶ Ξανθίππου τοῦ Ἀρίφρονος στρατηγοῦ Ἀθηναῖοι Ἀρταῦκτην ἄνδρα Πέρσῃν λαβόντες Σηστοῦ ὕπαρχον ζῶντα πρὸς σανίδα διεπασσάλευσαν, ὃς καὶ ἐς τοῦ Πρωτεσίλεω τὸ ἱρὸν ἐς Ἑλαιοῦντα ἀγινεόμενος γυναῖκας ἀθέμιστα ἔρδεσκε.

7.34

ἐς ταύτην ὦν τὴν ἀκτὴν ἐξ Ἀβύδου ὁρμώμενοι ἐγεφύρουν τοῖσι προσέκειτο, τὴν μὲν λευκολίνου Φοίνικες, τὴν δ' ἐτέρην τὴν βυβλίνην Αἰγύπτιοι. ἔστι δὲ ἑπτὰ στάδιοι ἐξ

τούτους |entirely ἰδόκεε τότε δείσαντας δώσειν· βουλόμενος

ὦν αὐτὸ τοῦτο |know by|exact ἔπεμπε.
|heart

7.33

μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα παρεσκευάζετο ὡς ἐλῶν ἐς Ἀβυδον. οἱ δὲ ἐν

τούτῳ τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον |yoke, join ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας ἐς τὴν

Εὐρώπην. ἔστι δὲ τῆς Χερσονήσου τῆς ἐν Ἑλλησπόντῳ,

Σηστοῦ τε πόλιος |between καὶ Μαδύτου, |beach; |thick, stout,
|grain |clotted

ἐς θάλασσαν |come down, (a day) to καταντίον· ἔνθα μετὰ
|fall, arrive; be proper

ταῦτα, χρόνῳ ὕστερον οὐ πολλῶ, ἐπὶ Ξανθίπου

τοῦ Ἀρίφρονος στρατηγοῦ Ἀθηναῖοι Ἀρταύκτην ἄνδρα

Πέρσῃν λαβόντες Σηστοῦ ὑπαρχον ζῶντα πρὸς |board,
|panel

διεπασσάλευσαν, ὃς καὶ ἐς τοῦ Πρωτεσίλεω τὸ ἱρὸν ἐς

Ἐλαιοῦντα ἀγινεόμενος γυναῖκας |lawless, |do
|unworthy
|of law

7.34

ἐς ταύτην ὦν τὴν |beach; ἐξ Ἀβύδου ὀρμώμενοι |dam
|grain

τοῖσι προσέκειτο, τὴν μὲν |flax fiber Φοίνικες, τὴν δ'

ἐτέρην τὴν |made of papyrus...τιοι. ἔστι δὲ ἑπτὰ στάδιοι ἐξ

certainly give now by reason of their fear: this matter it was about which he desired to have certain knowledge, and he sent accordingly.

7.33

After this he made his preparations intending to march to Abydos: and meanwhile they were bridging over the Hellespont from Asia to Europe. Now there is in the Chersonese of the Hellespont between the city of Sestos and Madytos, a broad foreland running down into the sea right opposite Abydos; this is the place where no long time afterwards the Athenians under the command of Xanthippos the son of Ariphron, having taken Artayctes a Persian, who was the governor of Sestos, nailed him alive to a board with hands and feet extended (he was the man who was wont to take women with him to the temple of Protesilaos at Elaius and to do things there which are not lawful).

7.34

To this foreland they on whom this work was laid were making their bridges, starting from Abydos, the Phenicians constructing the one with ropes of white flax, and the Egyptians the other, which was made with papyrus rope. Now from Abydos to

vocabulary

ἄλμυρός salty
 ἀποπέμπω send away ~pomp
 ἀποτέμνω cut off, sever ~tonsure
 ἀτάσθαλος reckless, wanton
 δεσπότης -ου (m, 1) master, despot
 διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis
 διαλύω break up; relax, weaken
 ἐντέλλω (mp) command
 ἐπιγίγνομαι succeed, come after
 ~genus
 εὖς good, brave, noble
 ἐφικνέομαι reach, bear on
 ζεύγνυμι (ῥ) yoke, join ~zygote
 ζεῦγος -ους (n, 3) team of animals
 ~zygote
 ζημιόω fine, punish
 θύος θύεος (n, 3) sacrifice
 θύω (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω

κάτειμι go down, disembark ~ion
 μάστιξ -γος (f) whip
 μίν him, her, it
 ὄον οὐ type of fruit
 πεδάω impede, chain ~impede
 πέδη shackles ~pedal
 πέδον ground ~pedal
 πέλαγος -ους (n, 3) the open sea
 ~pelagic
 πικρός sharp, bitter ~picric
 πληγή a hit ~plectrum
 πόρος way, bridge ~fare
 πόρω aor. give, pf. be fated
 ῥαπίζω thrash, slap, beat
 στίζω tattoo
 συγκόπτω chop up; beat up
 τριηκόσιοι three hundred
 χειμῶν -ος (m, 3) winter, storm

Ἀβύδου ἐς τὴν ἀπαντίον. καὶ δὴ ἐξευγμένου τοῦ πόρου ἐπιγενόμενος χειμὼν μέγας συνέκοψέ τε ἐκείνα πάντα καὶ διέλυσε.

7.35

ὥς δ' ἐπύθετο Ξέρξης, δεινὰ ποιούμενος τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον ἐκέλευσε τριηκοσίας ἐπικέσθαι μάστιγι πληγὰς καὶ κατεῖναι ἐς τὸ πέλαγος πεδέων ζεύγος. ἤδη δὲ ἤκουσα ὥς καὶ στιγέας ἅμα τούτοισι ἀπέπεμψε στίζοντας τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον. ἐνετέλλετο δὲ ὦν ῥαπίζοντας λέγειν βάρβαρά τε καὶ ἀτάσθαλα· «ὦ πικρὸν ὕδωρ, δεσπότης τοι δίκην ἐπιτιθεῖ τήνδε, ὅτι μιν ἡδίκησας οὐδὲν πρὸς ἐκείνου ἄδικον παθόν. καὶ βασιλεὺς μὲν Ξέρξης διαβήσεται σε, ἦν τε σύ γε βούλη ἦν τε μή· σοὶ δὲ κατὰ δίκην ἄρα οὐδεὶς ἀνθρώπων θύει ὥς ἐόντι καὶ θολερῶ καὶ ἀλμυρῶ ποταμῶ». τήν τε δὴ θάλασσαν ἐνετέλλετο τούτοισι ζημιοῦν καὶ τῶν ἐπεστεώτων τῇ ζεύξει τοῦ Ἑλλησπόντου ἀποταμεῖν τὰς κεφαλὰς.

Ἀβύδου ἐς τὴν ἀπαντίον. καὶ δὴ |yoke, join τοῦ πόρου

|succeed |winter, μέγας |συγκόπτω?: chop up; beat up; or `συγκόπτω?:
|storm chop up; beat up

|break up; re-
|lax, weaken

7.35

ὥς δ' ἐπύθετο Ξέρξης, δεινὰ ποιούμενος τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον

ἐκέλευσε |three |reach, bear on|whip πληγὰς καὶ
|hundred

|go down, `disem-|the open sea δέων |team . ἤδη δὲ ἤκουσα
|bark

ὥς καὶ στιγέας ἅμα τούτοισι |send away |tattoo τὸν

Ἑλλήσποντον. ἐνετέλλετο δὲ ὦν |thrash, slap, beat `|ειν

βάρβαρα τε καὶ |reckless, «ὦ |sharp ὕδωρ, |master,
|wanton |despot

τοι δίκην ἐπιτιθεῖ τήνδε, ὅτι μιν ἠδίκησας οὐδὲν πρὸς

ἐκείνου ἄδικον παθόν. καὶ βασιλεὺς μὲν Ξέρξης

|pass over, cross ., ἦν τε σύ γε βούλη ἦν τε μή· σοὶ δὲ

κατὰ δίκην ἄρα οὐδεὶς ἀνθρώπων θύει ὥς ἐόντι καὶ

θολερῶ καὶ |salty ποταμῶ«. τήν τε δὴ θάλασσαν

ἐνετέλλετο τούτοισι |fine, καὶ τῶν ἐπεστεώτων τῇ ζεύξι
|punish

τοῦ Ἑλλήσπόντου |cut off, sever ἄς κεφαλάς.

the opposite shore is a distance of seven furlongs. But when the strait had been bridged over, a great storm came on and dashed together all the work that had been made and broke it up. Then when Xerxes heard it he was exceedingly enraged, and bade them scourge the Hellespont with three hundred strokes of the lash and let down into the sea a pair of fetters. Nay, I have heard further that he sent branders also with them to brand the Hellespont. However this may be, he enjoined them, as they were beating, to say Barbarian and presumptuous words as follows: "Thou bitter water, thy master lays upon thee this penalty, because thou didst wrong him not having suffered any wrong from him: and Xerxes the king will pass over thee whether thou be willing or no; but with right, as it seems, no man doeth sacrifice to thee, seeing that thou art a treacherous and briny stream." The sea he enjoined them to chastise thus, and also he bade them cut off the heads of those who were appointed to have charge over the bridging of the Hellespont.

*vocabulary***ἄγκυρα** (ῥ) anchor**ἀνακωχεύω** hold back, still**ἀρχιτέκτων** -τος (m, 3) master, architect**ἄχαρις** -δος (f) ungracious**βύβλινος** made of papyrus**δατέομαι** divide into portions ~demon**διέκπλοος** passage, breaking through**ἑξήκοντα** sixty**ἐπικάρσιος** running headlong**ἑσπέρα** evening, west**ζεύγνυμι** (ῥ) yoke, join ~zygote**ζέφυρος** the west wind ~zephyr**κατατείνω** stretch out**λεπτός** thin**λευκόλινον** flax fiber**νότος** south, south wind**ξύλινος** wooden**ὄνος** (f) donkey ~onager**παχύτης** -τος (f, 3) thickness**πεντηκόντερος** (f) ship with 50 oars**περιμήκης** very long, high**πρόκειμαι** be placed by; be devoted to**ῥόος ῥοῦ** stream, flow, current

~rheostat

συντίθημι hearken, mark ~thesis**τόνος** pitch, stretching**τριηκόσιοι** three hundred**χωρίς** separately; except, other than

~heir

7.36

καὶ οἳ μὲν ταῦτα ἐποίεον, τοῖσι προσέκειτο αὕτη ἡ ἄχαρις τιμή, τὰς δὲ ἄλλοι ἀρχιτέκτονες ἐξεύγνυσαν. ἐξεύγνυσαν δὲ ὧδε, πεντηκοντέρους καὶ τριήρεας συνθέντες, ὑπὸ μὲν τὴν πρὸς τοῦ Εὐξείνου πόντου ἐξήκοντά τε καὶ τριηκοσίας, ὑπὸ δὲ τὴν ἐτέρην τεσσαρεσκαῖδεκα καὶ τριηκοσίας, τοῦ μὲν Πόντου ἐπικαρσίας τοῦ δὲ Ἑλλησπόντου κατὰ ρόον, ἵνα ἀνακωχεύῃ τὸν τόνον τῶν ὄπλων· συνθέντες δὲ ἀγκύρας κατήκαν περιμήκεας, τὰς μὲν πρὸς τοῦ Πόντου τῆς ἐτέρης τῶν ἀνέμων εἵνεκεν τῶν ἔσωθεν ἐκπνεόντων, τῆς δὲ ἐτέρης πρὸς ἐσπέρης τε καὶ τοῦ Αἰγαίου ζεφύρου τε καὶ νότου εἵνεκα. διέκπλοον δὲ ὑπόφανσιν κατέλιπον τῶν πεντηκοντέρων καὶ τριηρέων, ἵνα καὶ ἐς τὸν Πόντον ἔχῃ ὁ βουλόμενος πλέειν πλοίοισι λεπτοῖσι καὶ ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου ἔξω. ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσαντες κατέτεινον ἐκ γῆς στρεβλοῦντες ὄνοισι ξυλίνοισι τὰ ὄπλα, οὐκέτι χωρὶς ἐκάτερα τάξαντες, ἀλλὰ δύο μὲν λευκολίνου δασάμενοι ἐς ἐκατέρην, τέσσερα δὲ τῶν βυβλίνων. παχύτης μὲν

7.36

καὶ οἱ μὲν ταῦτα ἐποίεον, τοῖσι προσέκειτο αὕτη ἡ |ungracious

τιμή, τὰς δὲ ἄλλοι |master, |yoke, join . |yoke, join
|architect

δὲ ὦδε, |ship with 50 oars καὶ τριήρας |hearken, mark...ὃ μὲν

τὴν πρὸς τοῦ Εὐξείνου πόντου |sixty τε καὶ |three
|hundred

ὑπὸ δὲ τὴν ἐτέρην τεσσσερεσκαῖδεκα καὶ |three
|hundred, τοῦ

μὲν Πόντου |running |headlong τοῦ δὲ Ἑλλησπόντου κατὰ |stream, flow

ἵνα |hold back, still . ὃν |pitch, . ὃν ὄπλων· |hearken, mark...
|stretching

|anchor κατήκαν |very long, high ἅς μὲν πρὸς τοῦ Πόντου

τῆς ἐτέρης τῶν ἀνέμων εἵνεκεν τῶν ἔσωθεν ἐκπνεόντων,

τῆς δὲ ἐτέρης πρὸς ἐσπέρης τε καὶ τοῦ Αἰγαίου |the west wind

τε καὶ |south, εἵνεκα. |passage, break- ὑπόφανσιν κατέλιπον
|south |ing through

τῶν |ship with 50 oars καὶ τριηρέων, ἵνα καὶ ἐς τὸν Πόντον

ἔχη ὁ βουλόμενος πλέειν πλοίοισι |thin καὶ ἐκ τοῦ

Πόντου ἔξω. ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσαντες |stretch out ἐκ γῆς

στρεβλοῦντες |donkey |wooden τὰ ὄπλα, οὐκέτι |separately; except,
|other than

ἐκάτερα τάξαντες, ἀλλὰ δύο μὲν |flax fiber |divide into portions

ἐκατέρην, τέσσαρα δὲ τῶν |made of pa-|thickness μὲν
|pyrus

7.36

Thus then the men did, to whom this ungracious office belonged; and meanwhile other chief-constructors proceeded to make the bridges; and thus they made them:—They put together fifty-oared galleys and triremes, three hundred and sixty to be under the bridge towards the Euxine Sea, and three hundred and fourteen to be under the other, the vessels lying in the direction of the stream of the Hellespont (though crosswise in respect to the Pontus), to support the tension of the ropes. They placed them together thus, and let down very large anchors, those on the one side towards the Pontus because of the winds which blow from within outwards, and on the other side, towards the West and the Egean, because of the South-East and South Winds. They left also an opening for a passage through, so that any who wished might be able to sail into the Pontus with small vessels, and also from the Pontus outwards. Having thus done, they proceeded to stretch tight the ropes, straining them with wooden windlasses, not now appointing the two kinds of rope to be used apart from one another, but assigning to each bridge two ropes of white flax and four of the papyrus ropes. The

*vocabulary***ἀγγέλλω** carry a message, announce

~angel

γέφυρα (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge**γεφυρόω** (ῥ) dam, move earth**διῶρυξ** -χος (f) ditch, canal**ἔαρ** -ος (n) spring (season)**ἐκλείπω** leave out, pass over**ἐνθαῦτα** there, here**ἐνθεν** thence, whence**ἐντίθημι** load; mp: take to heart

~thesis

ἐπέξειμι attack, prosecute**ἐπιφορέω** pile on**εὐρος** -εος (n, 3) width; (caps) the east
wind**ἐφεξῆς** in order, in a row**κατασκευάζω** equip, build**κατύπερθεν** above, from above**κορμός** log, trunk**λίνεος** linen**ὄρυγμα** -τος (n, 3) trench, tunnel**παντελής** complete, absolute**πῆχυς** forearm, cubit**πίμπλημι** fill (+gen.) ~plenum**πόρος** way, bridge ~fare**ῥηχίη** flood tide, breakers; rocky beach**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

σχεδία raft**σχεδίην** at close quarters ~ischemia**τάλαντον** scale, a unit of weight

~talent

τόνος pitch, stretching**ὑποζύγιον** beast of burden ~zygote**χειμερίζω** overwinter**χυτός** poured, piled, shed

ἦν ἡ αὐτὴ καὶ καλλονή, κατὰ λόγον δὲ ἐμβριθέστερα ἦν τὰ λίνεα, τοῦ τάλαντον ὁ πῆχυς εἶλκε. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐγεφυρώθη ὁ πόρος, κορμούς ξύλων καταπρίσαντες καὶ ποιήσαντες ἴσους τῆς σχεδίας τῷ εὐρείῳ κόσμῳ ἐτίθεσαν κατύπερθε τῶν ὅπλων τοῦ τόνου, θέντες δὲ ἐπεξῆς ἐνθαῦτα αὐτὶς ἐπεξεύγνυνον· ποιήσαντες δὲ ταῦτα ὕλην ἐπεφόρησαν, κόσμῳ δὲ θέντες καὶ τὴν ὕλην γῆν ἐπεφόρησαν, κατανάξαντες δὲ καὶ τὴν γῆν φραγμὸν παρείρυσαν ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν, ἵνα μὴ φοβέηται τὰ ὑποζύγια τὴν θάλασσαν ὑπερορῶντα καὶ οἱ ἵπποι.

7.37

ὥς δὲ τά τε τῶν γεφυρέων κατεσκευάστο καὶ τὰ περὶ τὸν Ἄθων, οἳ τε χυτοὶ περὶ τὰ στόματα τῆς διώρυχος, οἱ τῆς ῥηχίης εἵνεκεν ἐποιήθησαν, ἵνα μὴ πύμπληται τὰ στόματα τοῦ ὀρύγματος, καὶ αὐτὴ ἡ διώρυξ παντελέως πεποιημένη ἀγγέλλετο, ἐνθαῦτα χεμερίσας ἅμα τῷ ἔαρι παρεσκευασμένος ὁ στρατὸς ἐκ τῶν Σαρδίων ὀρμάτο ἐλὼν ἐς Ἀβυδὸν· ὀρμημένῳ δὲ οἱ ὁ ἥλιος ἐκλιπὼν τὴν

ἦν ἡ αὐτὴ καὶ καλλονή, κατὰ λόγον δὲ ἐμβριθέστερα

ἦν τὰ | linen , τοῦ | scale, a unit of forearm, ἵλκε. ἐπειδὴ
weight cubit

δὲ |dam ὁ |way, , |log, trunk ξύλων καταπρίσαντες
|bridge

καὶ ποιήσαντες ἴσους τῆς σχεδίας τῷ |width; (caps) ὁ
the east wind

ἐτίθεσαν |above, from above ὅπλων τοῦ τόνου, θέντες δὲ

ἐπεξῆς |there, here... ὅτις ἐπεξεύγνυνον· ποιήσαντες δὲ ταῦτα

ὑλὴν |pile on , κόσμῳ δὲ θέντες καὶ τὴν ὑλὴν γῆν

pile on , κατανάξαντες δὲ καὶ τὴν γῆν φραγμὸν

παρείρυσαν ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν, ἵνα μὴ φοβέηται τὰ **beast of burden**

τὴν θάλασσαν ὑπερορῶντα καὶ οἱ ἵπποι.

7.37

ὥς δὲ τὰ τε τῶν γεφυρέων |equip, build καὶ τὰ περὶ

τὸν Ἄθων, οἱ τε | poured,..ἐρὶ τὰ στόματα τῆς | ditch,
| piled, | canal

οἱ τῆς | flood tide, break-
ers; rocky beach | shed
ἐποιήθησαν, ἵνα μὴ | fill (+gen.) τὰ

στόματα τοῦ | trench,
| tunnel , καὶ αὐτὴ ἡ διώρυξ | complete,
| absolute

πεποιημένη	carry message,	α there, here overwinter	ἄμα τῶ spring (season)
------------	-------------------	--------------------------	-------------------------

παρεσκευασμένος ὁ | **army** ἐκ τῶν Σαρδίων ὁρμᾶτο

ἐλὼν εἰς Ἀβυδὸν· ὁρμημένῳ δέ οἱ ὁ ἥλιος |leave out, pass over

thickness and beauty of make was the same for both, but the flaxen ropes were heavier in proportion, and of this rope a cubit weighed one talent. When the passage was bridged over, they sawed up logs of wood, and making them equal in length to the breadth of the bridge they laid them above the stretched ropes, and having set them thus in order they again fastened them above. When this was done, they carried on brushwood, and having set the brushwood also in place, they carried on to it earth; and when they had stamped down the earth firmly, they built a barrier along on each side, so that the baggage-animals and horses might not be frightened by looking out over the sea.

7.37

When the construction of the bridges had been finished, and the works about Athos, both the embankments about the mouths of the channel, which were made because of the breaking of the sea upon the beach, that the mouths of it might not be filled up, and the channel itself, were reported to be fully completed, then, after they had passed the winter at Sardis, the army set forth from thence fully equipped, at the beginning of spring, to march to Abydos; and when it had just set forth, the Sun left his place

*vocabulary***αἰθρία** clear air**ἀφανής** unseen, occult, obscure**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot**δραίνω** be minded to**ἔδρα** (ᾱ) seat, seated group

~polyhedron

ἔκλειψις -δος (f) abandonment; eclipse**ἔλασις** -εως (f) driving out**ἐλαφρός** nimble, light on one's feet;

light, bearable ~elevator

Ἑλλήν Greek**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic**ἐπαίρω** raise, place on ~aorta**ἐπιμελής** careful, cared for**θαρσέω** be of good heart**καταρρωδέω** fear, dread**μίν** him, her, it**περιχαρής** very glad**προδείκνυμι** (ὅ) show by example;

foreshadow

προφαίνω show; pass: appear

~photon

σελήνη moon**στρατιά** army ~strategy**ὑπουργέω** serve, help**φάσμα** phantom, apparition

ἐκ τοῦ οὐρανοῦ ἔδρην ἀφανῆς ἦν οὐτ' ἐπινεφέλων ἐόντων αἰθρίης τε τὰ μάλιστα, ἀντὶ ἡμέρης τε νύξ ἐγένετο. ἰδόντι δὲ καὶ μαθόντι τοῦτο τῷ Ξέρξῃ ἐπιμελὲς ἐγένετο, καὶ εἵρετο τοὺς Μάγους τὸ θέλει προφαίνειν τὸ φάσμα. οἱ δὲ ἔφραζον ὥς Ἑλλησι προδεικνύει ὁ θεὸς ἔκλειψιν τῶν πολίων, λέγοντες ἥλιον εἶναι Ἑλλήνων προδέκτορα, σελήνην δὲ σφέων. ταῦτα πυθόμενος ὁ Ξέρξης περιχαρὴς ἔων ἐποιέετο τὴν ἔλασιν.

7.38

ὥς δ' ἐξήλανε τὴν στρατιήν, Πύθιος ὁ Λυδὸς καταρρωδήσας τὸ ἐκ τοῦ οὐρανοῦ φάσμα ἐπαερθεῖς τε τοῖσι δωρήμασι, ἐλθὼν παρὰ Ξέρξην ἔλεγε τάδε. «ὦ δέσποτα, χρήσας ἂν τι σεῦ βουλοίμην τυχεῖν, τὸ σοὶ μὲν ἐλαφρὸν τυγχάνει ἐὼν ὑπουργῆσαι, ἐμοὶ δὲ μέγα γενόμενον.» Ξέρξης δὲ πᾶν μᾶλλον δοκέων μιν χρήσειν ἢ τὸ ἐδεήθη, ἔφη τε ὑπουργήσειν καὶ δὴ ἀγορεύειν ἐκέλευε ὅτεν δέοιτο. ὁ δὲ ἐπείτε ταῦτα ἤκουσε, ἔλεγε θαρσήςας τάδε. «ὦ δέσποτα, τυγχάνουσί μοι παῖδες ἐόντες πέντε,

ἐκ τοῦ οὐρανοῦ ἔδρην |unseen, ὅς- οὗτ' ἐπινεφέλων ἐόντων
 |cult, obscure
 αἰθρίης τε τὰ μάλιστα, ἀντὶ ἡμέρης τε νύξ ἐγένετο.
 ἰδόντι δὲ καὶ μαθόντι τοῦτο τῷ Ξέρξῃ |careful, ἐγένετο,
 |cared for
 καὶ εἶρετο τοὺς Μάγους τὸ θέλει |show; pass: ἀ-|phantom,
 |pear |apparition
 οἱ δὲ ἔφραζον ὥς |Greek προδεικνύει ὁ θεὸς |abandonment;
 |eclipse
 τῶν πολίων, λέγοντες ἥλιον εἶναι |Greek προδέκτορα,
 |moon δὲ σφέων. ταῦτα πυθόμενος ὁ Ξέρξης |very glad
 ἐὼν ἐποιέετο τὴν |driving out

7.38

ὥς δ' |drive out τὴν στρατιήν, Πύθιος ὁ Λυδὸς
 |fear, dread τὸ ἐκ τοῦ οὐρανοῦ |phantom, |raise, place
 |apparition on
 τε τοῖσι δωρήμασι, ἐλθὼν παρὰ Ξέρξην ἔλεγε τάδε. «ὦ
 |master, , χρήσας ἂν τι σεῦ βουλοίμην τυχεῖν, τὸ σοὶ
 |despot
 μὲν |light in weight, χάνει ἐὼν |serve, help , ἐμοὶ δὲ μέγα
 γενόμενον.» Ξέρξης δὲ πᾶν μᾶλλον δοκέων μιν χρήσειν
 ἢ τὸ ἐδεήθη, ἔφη τε |serve, help καὶ δὴ ἀγορεύειν ἐκέλευε
 ὅτεν δέοιτο. ὁ δὲ ἐπείτε ταῦτα ἤκουσε, ἔλεγε |be of good heart
 τάδε. «ὦ |master, , τυγχάνουσί μοι παῖδες ἐόντες πέντε,
 |despot

in the heaven and was invisible, though there was no gathering of clouds and the sky was perfectly clear; and instead of day it became night. When Xerxes saw and perceived this, it became a matter of concern to him; and he asked the Magians what the appearance meant to portend. These declared that the god was foreshowing to the Hellenes a leaving of their cities, saying that the Sun was the foreshower of events for the Hellenes, but the Moon for the Persians. Having been thus informed, Xerxes proceeded on the march with very great joy.

7.38

Then as he was leading forth his army on its march, Pythios the Lydian, being alarmed by the appearance in the heavens and elated by the gifts which he had received, came to Xerxes, and said as follows: “Master, I would desire to receive from thee a certain thing at my request, which, as it chances, is for thee an easy thing to grant, but a great thing for me, if I obtain it.” Then Xerxes, thinking that his request would be for anything rather than that which he actually asked, said that he would grant it, and bade him speak and say what he desired. He then, when he heard this, was encouraged, and spoke these words: “Master, I have, as it chances, five sons, and it is

*vocabulary***άναιδής** shameless, ruthless**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise

~angel

ἐξεπίσταμαι know well**εὐεργεσία** good deed, public service

~ergonomics

ἡλικία time of life, contemporaries**θυμῶ** (ῶ) anger**κάρτα** very much ~κράτος**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy**μελεδωνός** agent, steward**νοστέω** go home**οἰκτείρω** pity**οὖς οὔατος** (n) ear**πανοικία** whole household**παραλύω** detach, disable**στρατηγή** expedition, campaign**συνέπομαι** go along with ~sequel**ὑπερβάλλω** cause to go beyond; delay

~ballistic

χρηστός useful; brave, worthy

καί σφεας καταλαμβάνει πάντας ἅμα σοὶ στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα. σὺ δέ, ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἐμὲ ἐς τόδε ἡλικίης ἦκοντα οἰκτείρας τῶν μοι παίδων ἓνα παράλυσον τῆς στρατηγῆς τὸν πρεσβύτατον, ἵνα αὐτοῦ τε ἐμεῦ καὶ τῶν χρημάτων ἡ μελεδωνός· τοὺς δὲ τέσσερας ἄγευ ἅμα σεωντῶ, καὶ πρήξας τὰ νοέεις νοστήσεις ὀπίσω.»

7.39

κάρτα τε ἐθυμώθη ὁ Ξέρξης καὶ ἀμείβετο τοῖσιδε. «ὦ κακὲ ἄνθρωπε, σὺ ἐτόλμησας, ἐμεῦ στρατευομένου αὐτοῦ ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα καὶ ἄγοντος παῖδας ἐμὸν καὶ ἀδελφεοὺς καὶ οἰκίους καὶ φίλους, μνήσασθαι περὶ σέο παιδός, ἐὼν ἐμὸς δοῦλος, τὸν χρῆν πανοικίῃ αὐτῇ τῇ γυναικὶ συνέπεσθαι; εὖ νυν τόδ' ἐξεπίστασο, ὥς ἐν τοῖσι ὥσὶ τῶν ἀνθρώπων οἰκέει ὁ θυμός, ὃς χρηστὰ μὲν ἀκούσας τέρψιμος ἐμπιπλεῖ τὸ σῶμα, ὑπεναντία δὲ τούτοις ἀκούσας ἀνοιδέει. ὅτε μὲν νυν χρηστὰ ποιήσας ἕτερα τοιαῦτα ἐπηγγέλλεο, εὐεργεσίῃσι βασιλέα οὐ καυχῆσαι ὑπερβαλέσθαι· ἐπεῖτε δὲ ἐς τὸ ἀναιδέστερον

καί σφεας |seize, understand, catch, & ἅμα σοὶ στρατεύεσθαι
 |overtake; (mp) happen
 ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα. σὺ δέ, ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἐμὲ ἐς τόδε |time of life, contem-
 |poraries
 ἦκοντα οἰκτείρας τῶν μοι παίδων ἕνα |detach, τῆς
 |disable
 |expedition, τὸν πρεσβύτατον, ἵνα αὐτοῦ τε ἐμεῦ καὶ τῶν
 |campaign
 χρημάτων ἡ |agent, τοὺς δὲ τέσσερας ἄγευ ἅμα
 |steward
 σεωυτῶ, καὶ πρήξας τὰ νοέεις |go home ὀπίσω.»

7.39

|very much - |anger ὁ Ξέρξης καὶ ἀμείβετο τοῖσιδε.
 «ὦ κακὲ ἄνθρωπε, σὺ ἐτόλμησας, ἐμεῦ στρατευομένου
 αὐτοῦ ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα καὶ ἄγοντος παῖδας ἐμοὺς καὶ
 ἀδελφεοὺς καὶ οἰκηίους καὶ φίλους, μνήσασθαι περὶ σέο
 παιδός, ἐὼν ἐμὸς δοῦλος, τὸν χρῆν |whole household, τῇ
 γυναικὶ |go along with, εἶ νυν τόδ' ἐξεπίστασο, ὥς ἐν τοῖσι
 |ear τῶν ἀνθρώπων οἰκέει ὁ θυμός, ὃς |useful; brave,
 |worthy
 ἀκούσας τέρψιος ἐμπιπλεῖ τὸ σῶμα, ὑπεναντία δὲ τούτοις
 ἀκούσας ἀνοιδέει. ὅτε μὲν νυν |useful; brave, ἵσας ἕτερα
 |worthy
 τοιαῦτα ἐπηγγέλλεο, εὐεργεσίῃσι βασιλέα οὐ καυχῆσαι
 |cause to go be- ἐπεῖτε δὲ ἐς τὸ |shameless,
 |yond; delay |ruthless

their fortune to be all going together with thee on the march against Hellas. Do thou, therefore, O king, have compassion upon me, who have come to so great an age, and release from serving in the expedition one of my sons, the eldest, in order that he may be caretaker both of myself and of my wealth: but the other four take with thyself, and after thou hast accomplished that which thou hast in thy mind, mayest thou have a safe return home.”

7.39

Then Xerxes was exceedingly angry and made answer with these words: “Thou wretched man, dost thou dare, when I am going on a march myself against Hellas, and am taking my sons and my brothers and my relations and friends, dost thou dare to make any mention of a son of thine, seeing that thou art my slave, who ought to have been accompanying me thyself with thy whole household and thy wife as well? Now therefore be assured of this, that the passionate spirit of man dwells within the ears; and when it has heard good things, it fills the body with delight, but when it has heard the opposite things to this, it swells up with anger. As then thou canst not boast of having surpassed the king in conferring benefits formerly, when thou didst to us good deeds and madest offer to

vocabulary

αἰχμοφόρος spearman
 ἀναμίξ indiscriminately
 ἀπολέγω pick; decline
 ἀριστερός left-hand
 διακρίνω (ι) separate, sort ~critic
 διαλείπω leave a gap, space apart
 διατέμνω cut apart
 διατίθημι arrange; set out goods for sale ~thesis
 διέξιμι pass through; recount ~ion
 ἐνθαῦτα there, here
 ἐξευρίσκω find; discover ~eureka
 ζημιόω fine, punish
 ἡμίτομος cut in two
 ἵππότης -ου (m, 1) horseman ~hippo
 λόγχη spear point; lot

ξείνιος of hospitality
 παντοῖος all kinds of
 περιέχω (mid) protect
 Πέρσης Persian
 προηγέομαι go first
 προστάσσω post at, attach to, command
 σκευοφόρος pack animal, porter
 στρατός common people/soldiers ~strategy
 συμμίγνυμι mix with ~mix
 σύμμικτος commingled, promiscuous
 ὑπερήμισυς mostly
 ὑποζύγιον beast of burden ~zygote
 ὑποκρίνομαι (ι) answer; pretend
 χίλιοι (ι) thousand ~kilo-

ἐτράπευ, τὴν μὲν ἀξίην οὐ λάμβναι, ἐλάσσω δὲ τῆς ἀξίης. σὲ μὲν γὰρ καὶ τοὺς τέσσαρας τῶν παίδων ῥύεται τὰ ξείνια· τοῦ δὲ ενός, τοῦ περιέχει μάλιστα, τῇ ψυχῇ ζημιώσει.» ὥς δὲ ταῦτα ὑπεκρίνατο, αὐτίκα ἐκέλευε τοῖσι προσετέτακτο ταῦτα πρήσσειν, τῶν Πυθίου παίδων ἐξευρόντας τὸν πρεσβύτατον μέσον διαταμεῖν, διαταμόντας δὲ τὰ ἡμίτομα διαθεῖναι τὸ μὲν ἐπὶ δεξιὰ τῆς ὁδοῦ τὸ δ' ἐπ' ἀριστερά, καὶ ταύτῃ διεξιέναι τὸν στρατόν.

7.40

ποιησάντων δὲ τούτων τοῦτο, μετὰ ταῦτα διεξήιε ὁ στρατός. ἡγέοντο δὲ πρῶτοι μὲν οἱ σκευοφόροι τε καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια, μετὰ δὲ τούτους σύμμικτος στρατὸς παντοίων ἐθνέων ἀναμίξ, οὐ διακεκριμένοι· τῇ δὲ ὑπερημίσεις ἦσαν, ἐνθαῦτα διελέλειπτο, καὶ οὐ συνέμισγον οὗτοι βασιλεί. προηγύντο μὲν δὴ ἱππότες χίλιοι, ἐκ Περσέων πάντων ἀπολελεγμένοι· μετὰ δὲ αἰχμοφόροι χίλιοι καὶ οὗτοι ἐκ πάντων ἀπολελεγμένοι, τὰς λόγχας κάτω ἐς τὴν γῆν τρέψαντες· μετὰ δὲ ἱροὶ Νησαῖοι καλεόμενοι ἵπποι δέκα

ἐτράπευ, τὴν μὲν ἀξίην οὐ λάμψαι, ἐλάσσω δὲ τῆς
 ἀξίης. σὲ μὲν γὰρ καὶ τοὺς τέσσερας τῶν παίδων
 ῥύεται τὰ |of hospitality δὲ ἑνός, τοῦ |(mid) protect ἱλίστα,
 τῇ ψυχῇ |fine, punish » ὥς δὲ ταῦτα |answer;
 |pretend , αὐτίκα
 ἐκέλευε τοῖσι προσετέτακτο ταῦτα πρήσσειν, τῶν Πυθίου
 παίδων |find;
 |discover τὸν πρεσβύτατον μέσον |cut apart ,
 |cut apart δὲ τὰ |cut in two|arrange; set οὐτ' ἐπὶ δεξιὰ τῆς
 |goods for sale
 ὁδοῦ τὸ δ' ἐπ' |left-hand , καὶ ταύτῃ |pass through;|army
 |recount

7.40

ποιησάντων δὲ τούτων τοῦτο, μετὰ ταῦτα διεξήμιε ὁ
 |army ἡγέοντο δὲ πρῶτοι μὲν οἱ |pack animal, porter τὰ
 |beast of burden ἡ δὲ τούτους |commingled, |army |all kinds of
 |promiscuous
 ἐθνέων |indiscrimi- |separate, sort τῇ δὲ |mostly ἥσαν,
 |nately
 ἐνθαῦτα |leave a gap, καὶ οὐ |mix with οὔτοι βασιλεί.
 |space apart
 |go first μὲν δὲ |horseman χίλιοι, ἐκ Περσέων πάντων
 |pick; decline μετὰ δὲ |spearman χίλιοι καὶ οὔτοι ἐκ
 πάντων |pick; decline , τὰς |spear
 |point;
 |lot τρέψαντες· μετὰ δὲ ἱροὶ Νησαῖοι καλεόμενοι ἵπποι δέκα

do more of the same kind, so now that thou hast turned to shamelessness, thou shalt receive not thy desert but less than thou deservest: for thy gifts of hospitality shall rescue from death thyself and the four others of thy sons, but thou shalt pay the penalty with the life of the one to whom thou dost cling most.” Having answered thus, he forthwith commanded those to whom it was appointed to do these things, to find out the eldest of the sons of Pythios and to cut him in two in the middle; and having cut him in two, to dispose the halves, one on the right hand of the road and the other on the left, and that the army should pass between them by this way.

7.40

When these had so done, the army proceeded to pass between; and first the baggage-bearers led the way together with their horses, and after these the host composed of all kinds of nations mingled together without distinction: and when more than the half had gone by, an interval was left and these were separated from the king. For before him went first a thousand horsemen, chosen out of all the Persians; and after them a thousand spearmen chosen also from all the Persians, having the points of their spears turned down to the ground; and then ten sacred horses, called

*vocabulary***αἰχμοφόρος** spearman**ἀπολέγω** pick; decline**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**ἀρμάμαξα** Persian carriage**γενναῖος** noble, sincere ~genesis**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic**ἐπιτάσσω** enjoin; place near**εὖς** good, brave, noble**ἡνίοχος** rein holder**κοσμέω** marshal, array ~cosmos**λόγχη** spear point; lot**μῖν** him, her, it**μυρίος** (ἑ) 10,000 ~myriad**ὀκτώ** eight ~octopus**ὄον** οὗ type of fruit**ὀπισθεν** behind, hereafter**Πέρσης** Persian**χαλινός** (ἰ) bit for a horse**χίλιοι** (ἑ) thousand ~kilo-

κεκοσμημένοι ὡς κάλλιστα. νησαῖοι δὲ καλέονται ἵπποι ἐπὶ τοῦδε· ἔστι πεδῖον μέγα τῆς Μηδικῆς τῷ οὐνόμα ἐστὶ Νήσαιον· τοὺς ὧν δὴ ἵππους τοὺς μεγάλους φέρει τὸ πεδῖον τοῦτο. ὅπισθε δὲ τούτων τῶν δέκα ἵππων ἄρμα Διὸς ἱρὸν ἐπετέτακτο, τὸ ἵπποι μὲν εἶλκον λευκοὶ ὀκτώ, ὅπισθε δὲ αὖ τῶν ἵππων εἶπετο πεζῇ ἡνίοχος ἐχόμενος τῶν χαλινῶν· οὐδεὶς γὰρ δὴ ἐπὶ τοῦτον τὸν θρόνον ἀνθρώπων ἐπιβαίνει. τούτου δὲ ὅπισθε αὐτὸς Ξέρξης ἐπ' ἄρματος ἵππων Νησαίων· παραβεβήκεε δέ οἱ ἡνίοχος τῷ οὐνόμα ἦν Πατιράμφης, Ὅτάνεω ἀνδρὸς Πέρσεω παῖς.

7.41

ἐξήλασε μὲν οὕτω ἐκ Σαρδίων Ξέρξης, μετεκβαίνεσκε δέ, ὅκως μιν λόγος αἰρέοι, ἐκ τοῦ ἄρματος ἐς ἀρμάμαξαν. αὐτοῦ δὲ ὅπισθε αἰχμοφόροι Περσέων οἱ ἄριστοί τε καὶ γενναιότατοι χίλιοι, κατὰ νόμον τὰς λόγχας ἔχοντες, μετὰ δὲ ἵππος ἄλλη χιλίη ἐκ Περσέων ἀπολελεγμένη, μετὰ δὲ τὴν ἵππον ἐκ τῶν λοιπῶν Περσέων ἀπολελεγμένοι μύριοι. οὗτος πεζὸς ἦν· καὶ τούτων χίλιοι μὲν ἐπὶ τοῖσι

|marshal, array ὥς κάλλιστα. νησαῖοι δὲ καλέονται ἵπποι
ἐπὶ τοῦδε· ἔστι πεδῖον μέγα τῆς Μηδικῆς τῷ οὐνομα ἐστὶ
Νήσαιον· τοὺς ὧν δὴ ἵππους τοὺς μεγάλους φέρει τὸ
πεδῖον τοῦτο. ὅπισθε δὲ τούτων τῶν δέκα ἵππων |chariot
Διὸς ἱρὸν |enjoin; place, τὸ ἵπποι μὲν εἶλκον λευκοὶ |eight ,
|near
ὅπισθε δὲ αὐτῶν ἵππων εἶπετο πεζῇ |rein holder ἄρμενος τῶν
|bit οὐδεὶς γὰρ δὴ ἐπὶ τοῦτον τὸν θρόνον ἀνθρώπων
ἐπιβαίνει. τούτου δὲ ὅπισθε αὐτὸς Ξέρξης ἐπ' |chariot
ἵππων Νησαίων· παραβεβήκεε δέ οἱ |rein holder ἡ οὐνομα
ἦν Πατιράμφης, Ὅτάνεω ἀνδρὸς |Persian παῖς.

7.41

|drive out μὲν οὕτω ἐκ Σαρδίων Ξέρξης, μετεκβαίνεσκε δέ,
ὅκως μιν λόγος αἰρέοι, ἐκ τοῦ |chariot ἐς |Persian
|carriage
αὐτοῦ δὲ ὅπισθε |spearman Περσέων οἱ ἄριστοί τε καὶ
|noble, sincere χίλιοι, κατὰ νόμον τὰς |spear ἔχοντες, μετὰ
|point;
δὲ ἵππος ἄλλη |thousand Περσέων |pick; decline , μετὰ δὲ
|lot
τῇν ἵππον ἐκ τῶν λοιπῶν Περσέων |pick; decline μύριοι.
οὗτος πεζὸς ἦν· καὶ τούτων χίλιοι μὲν ἐπὶ τοῖσι

“Nesaian,” with the fairest possible trappings. Now the horses are called Nesaian for this reason:—there is a wide plain in the land of Media which is called the Nesaian plain, and this plain produces the great horses of which I speak. Behind these ten horses the sacred chariot of Zeus was appointed to go, which was drawn by eight white horses; and behind the horses again followed on foot a charioteer holding the reins, for no human creature mounts upon the seat of that chariot. Then behind this came Xerxes himself in a chariot drawn by Nesaian horses, and by the side of him rode a charioteer, whose name was Patiramphes, son of Otanes a Persian.

7.41

Thus did Xerxes march forth out of Sardis; and he used to change, whenever he was so disposed, from the chariot to a carriage. And behind him went spearmen, the best and most noble of the Persians, a thousand in number, holding their spear-points in the customary way; and after them another thousand horsemen chosen out from the Persians; and after the horsemen ten thousand men chosen out from the remainder of the Persians. This body went on foot; and of these a thousand had upon their spears pomegranates of

vocabulary

ἄγχι near, nigh ~angina
 ἀναμένω wait for ~remain
 ἀναμίξ indiscriminately
 ἀργύρεος silver ~Argentina
 ἀριστερός left-hand
 βροντή thunder ~brontosaurus
 διαλείπω leave a gap, space apart
 ἐντός within
 ἐπιτάσσω enjoin; place near
 λόγχη spear point; lot
 μῆλον sheep, small livestock; apple,
 tree fruit
 μυρίος (ἑ) 10,000 ~myriad

ὄμιλος (ἱ) crowd, throng ~homily
 παραμείβω pass by ~amoeba
 πέριξ all around
 Πέρσης Persian
 ῥοιά pomegranate
 σαυρωτήρ -ος (m) spike at the butt of
 a spear
 στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)
 στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm;
 (pl noun) 200 meters
 στρατός common people/soldiers
 ~strategy
 συχνός long; many; extensive

δόρασι ἀντὶ τῶν σαυρωτήρων ροιάς εἶχον χρυσέας καὶ
 πέριξ συνεκλήιον τοὺς ἄλλους, οἱ δὲ εἰνακισχίλιοι ἐντὸς
 τούτων ἐόντες ἀργυρέας ροιάς εἶχον· εἶχον δὲ χρυσέας
 ροιάς καὶ οἱ ἐς τὴν γῆν τρέποντες τὰς λόγχας, καὶ μῆλα
 οἱ ἄγχιστα ἐπόμενοι Ξέρξῃ. τοῖσι δὲ μυρίοισι ἐπετέτακτο
 ἵππος Περσέων μυρίη. μετὰ δὲ τὴν ἵππον διέλειπε καὶ δύο
 σταδίους, καὶ ἔπειτα ὁ λοιπὸς ὄμιλος ἦε ἀναμίξ.

7.42

ἐποιέετο δὲ τὴν ὁδὸν ἐκ τῆς Λυδίας ὁ στρατὸς ἐπὶ τε
 ποταμὸν Κάικον καὶ γῆν τὴν Μυσίην, ἀπὸ δὲ Καΐκου
 ὁρμώμενος, Κάνης ὄρος ἔχων ἐν ἀριστερῇ, διὰ τοῦ
 Ἀταρνέος ἐς Καρήνην πόλιν· ἀπὸ δὲ ταύτης διὰ Θήβης
 πεδίου ἐπορεύετο, Ἀδραμύττειόν τε πόλιν καὶ Ἄντανδρον
 τὴν Πελασγίδα παραμειβόμενος. τὴν Ἰδην δὲ λαβὼν
 ἐς ἀριστερὴν χεῖρα ἦε ἐς τὴν Ἰλιάδα γῆν. καὶ πρῶτα
 μέν οἱ ὑπὸ τῇ Ἰδῇ νύκτα ἀναμείναντι βρονταί τε καὶ
 πρηστήρες ἐπεσπίπτουσι καὶ τινα αὐτοῦ ταύτῃ συχνὸν
 ὄμιλον διέφθειραν.

δόρασι ἀντὶ τῶν |spike at the butt|pomegranate χρυσέας καὶ
 of a spear
 |all around. ἐκλήιον τοὺς ἄλλους, οἱ δὲ εἰνακισχίλιοι |within
 τούτων ἑόντες |silver |pomegranate εἶχον δὲ χρυσέας
 |pomegranate. ἔς τὴν γῆν τρέποντες τὰς |spear , καὶ |sheep;
 |point;
 οἱ |near, nigh ἰπόμενοι Ξέρξη. τοῖσι δὲ μυριοῖσι |lot |apple
 |enjoin; place
 ἵππος Περσέων |10,000. μετὰ δὲ τὴν ἵππον |leave a gap, |δύο
 |space apart
 σταδίου, καὶ ἔπειτα ὁ λοιπὸς |crowd ἤιε |indiscriminately

7.42

ἐποιέετο δὲ τὴν ὁδὸν ἐκ τῆς Λυδίας ὁ |army ἐπὶ τε
 ποταμὸν Κάικον καὶ γῆν τὴν Μυσίην, ἀπὸ δὲ Καΐκου
 ὁρμώμενος, Κάνης ὄρος ἔχων ἐν |left-hand , διὰ τοῦ
 Ἀταρνέος ἐς Καρήνην πόλιν· ἀπὸ δὲ ταύτης διὰ Θήβης
 πεδίου ἐπορεύετο, Ἀδραμύττειόν τε πόλιν καὶ Ἄντανδρον
 τὴν Πελασγίδα |pass by τὴν Ἰδην δὲ λαβὼν
 ἐς |left-hand χεῖρα ἤιε ἐς τὴν Ἰλιάδα γῆν. καὶ πρῶτα
 μέν οἱ ὑπὸ τῇ Ἰδῇ νύκτα |wait for |thunder τε καὶ
 πρηστήρες ἐπεσπίπτουσι καὶ τινα αὐτοῦ ταύτη |long; many;
 |extensive
 |crowd διέφθειραν.

gold instead of the spikes at the butt-end, and these enclosed the others round, while the remaining nine thousand were within these and had silver pomegranates. And those also had golden pomegranates who had their spear-points turned towards the earth, while those who followed next after Xerxes had golden apples. Then to follow the ten thousand there was appointed a body of ten thousand Persian cavalry; and after the cavalry there was an interval of as much as two furlongs. Then the rest of the host came marching without distinction.

7.42

So the army proceeded on its march from Lydia to the river Caïcos and the land of Mysia; and then setting forth from the Caïcos and keeping the mountain of Cane on the left hand, it marched through the region of Atarneus to the city of Carene. From this it went through the plain of Thebe, passing by the cities of Adramytteion and Antandros of the Pelasgians; and taking mount Ida on the left hand, it came on to the land of Ilion. And first, when it had stopped for the night close under mount Ida, thunder and bolts of lightning fell upon it, and destroyed here in this place a very large number of men.

*vocabulary***ἄπεργος** idle; obsolete**ἀποχράω** suffice; abuse**ἀποχρέω** suffice; abuse**ἀριστερός** left-hand**ἐμπίπτω** fall into; attack ~petal**ἐνθεῦτεν** thence**ἐπιλείπω** fail, not work ~eclipse**ἐπιχειρέω** do, try, attack ~chiral**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider
~theater**θύω** (ō) rush; sacrifice ~θύω**ἔμερος** (ē) desire, inclination (+gen)**κολωνός** hill, mound**κτῆνος** -ους (n, 3) herd animal**ὄμουρος** bordering**προποιέω** do beforehand**ῥεῖθρον** stream ~rheostat**στρατιά** army ~strategy**στρατός** common people/soldiers
~strategy**στρατόω** be on a campaign ~strategy**χίλιοι** (ī) thousand ~kilo-**χοή** χώς libation

7.43

ἀπικομένου δὲ τοῦ στρατοῦ ἐπὶ ποταμὸν Σκάμανδρον,
ὃς πρῶτος ποταμῶν, ἐπείτε ἐκ Σαρδίων ὀρμηθέντες
ἐπεχείρησαν τῇ ὁδῷ, ἐπέλιπε τὸ ῥέεθρον οὐδ' ἀπέχρησε
τῇ στρατιῇ τε καὶ τοῖσι κτήνεσι πινόμενος· ἐπὶ τοῦτον
δὴ τὸν ποταμὸν ὡς ἀπίκετο Ξέρξης, ἐς τὸ Πριάμου
Πέργαμον ἀνέβη ἡμερον ἔχων θεήσασθαι· θεησάμενος δὲ
καὶ πυθόμενος ἐκείνων ἕκαστα τῇ Ἀθηναίῃ τῇ Ἰλιάδι
ἔθυσε βοῦς χιλίας, χοὰς δὲ οἱ Μάγοι τοῖσι ἥρωσι ἐχέαντο.
ταῦτα δὲ ποιησαμένοισι νυκτὸς φόβος ἐς τὸ στρατόπεδον
ἐνέπεσε. ἅμα ἡμέρῃ δὲ ἐπορεύετο ἐνθεῦτεν, ἐν ἀριστερῇ
μὲν ἀπέργων Ῥοίτιον πόλιν καὶ Ὀφρύνειον καὶ Δάρδανον,
ἣ περ δὴ Ἀβύδω ὅμουρος ἐστί, ἐν δεξιῇ δὲ Γέργιθας
Τευκρούς.

7.44

ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγένετο ἐν Ἀβύδω μέσῃ, ἠθέλησε Ξέρξης ιδέσθαι
πάντα τὸν στρατόν· καὶ προεπεποιήτο γὰρ ἐπὶ κολωνοῦ

7.43

ἀπικομένου δὲ τοῦ στρατοῦ ἐπὶ ποταμὸν Σκάμανδρον,
 ὃς πρῶτος ποταμῶν, ἐπείτε ἐκ Σαρδίων ὀρμηθέντες
 |do, try, attack τῇ ὁδῷ, |fail, not work |stream οὐδ' ἀπέχρησε
 τῇ στρατιῇ τε καὶ τοῖσι |herd animal ὄμενος· ἐπὶ τοῦτον
 δὴ τὸν ποταμὸν ὥς ἀπίκετο Ξέρξης, ἐς τὸ Πριάμου
 Πέργαμον ἀνέβη |urge ἔχων θεήσασθαι· θεησάμενος δὲ
 καὶ πυθόμενος ἐκείνων ἕκαστα τῇ Ἀθηναίῃ τῇ Ἰλιάδι
 |rush; , |sacri-|thou- , |libation` οἱ Μάγοι τοῖσι ἥρωσι ἐχέαντο.
 |fice |sand
 ταῦτα δὲ ποιησαμένοισι νυκτὸς φόβος ἐς τὸ στρατόπεδον
 ἐνέπεσε. ἅμα ἡμέρῃ δὲ ἐπορεύετο |thence , ἐν |left-hand
 μὲν |idle; 'Ροίτιον πόλιν καὶ Ὀφρύνειον καὶ Δάρδανον,
 |obsolete
 ἣ περ δὴ Ἀβύδω |bordering ἐστί, ἐν δεξιῇ δὲ Γέργιθας
 Τευκρούς.

7.44

ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγένετο ἐν Ἀβύδω μέση, ἠθέλησε Ξέρξης ιδέσθαι
 πάντα τὸν |army καὶ |do beforehand γὰρ ἐπὶ |hill,
 |mound

7.43

Then when the army had come to the river Scamander,—which of all rivers to which they had come, since they set forth from Sardis and undertook their march, was the first of which the stream failed and was not sufficient for the drinking of the army and of the animals with it,—when, I say, Xerxes had come to this river, he went up to the Citadel of Priam, having a desire to see it; and having seen it and learnt by inquiry of all those matters severally, he sacrificed a thousand heifers to Athene of Ilion, and the Magians poured libations in honour of the heroes: and after they had done this, a fear fell upon the army in the night. Then at break of day he set forth from thence, keeping on his left hand the cities of Rhoition and Ophryneion and Dardanos, which last borders upon Abydos, and having on the right hand the Gergith Teucrians.

7.44

When Xerxes had come into the midst of Abydos, he had a desire to see all the army; and there had been made purposely for him beforehand upon a hill in

*vocabulary***ἄκτῃ** beach; cereal grain**ἄμιλλα** conflict**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ō) show, point out;
appoint; (mid) declare**ἀποδέχομαι** accept ~doctrine**ἀποκρύπτω** hide away ~cryptic**δακρύω** weep**ἐλεύθερος** not enslaved**ἐνθαῦτα** there, here**ἐντέλλω** (mp) command**ἐπίπλεος** very full**ἐπιτηδές** enough; purposely**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism**ἡίων** beach**θιέομαι** look at, behold, consider
~theater**ἵζω** to seat ~sit**καθοράω** look down ~panorama**μακαρίζω** congratulate ~macarism**μίν** him, her, it**πάτρων** -ος (m, 3) patron**στρατιά** army ~strategy**συμβουλεύω** give advice; (mid) consult
~volunteer**χωρίζω** divide; distinguish, pull down

ἐπίτηδες αὐτῷ ταύτῃ προεξέδρη λίθου λευκοῦ, ἐποίησαν δὲ Ἀβυδηνοὶ ἐντειλαμένοι πρότερον βασιλέος, ἐνθαῦτα ὡς ἕξετο, κατορῶν ἐπὶ τῆς ἡϊόνος ἐθιγεῖτο καὶ τὸν πεζὸν καὶ τὰς νέας, θηγόμενος δὲ ἰμέρθη τῶν νεῶν ἄμιλλαν γινομένην ἰδέσθαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐγένετό τε καὶ ἐνίκων Φοίνικες Σιδώνιοι, ἦσθη τε τῇ ἀμίλλῃ καὶ τῇ στρατιῇ.

7.45

ὥς δὲ ὥρα πάντα μὲν τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον ὑπὸ τῶν νεῶν ἀποκεκρυμμένον, πάσας δὲ τὰς ἀκτὰς καὶ τὰ Ἀβυδηνῶν πεδία ἐπίπλεα ἀνθρώπων, ἐνθαῦτα ὁ Ξέρξης ἑωυτὸν ἐμακάρισε, μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο ἐδάκρυσε.

7.46

μαθὼν δέ μιν Ἀρτάβανος ὁ πάτριος, ὃς τὸ πρῶτον γνώμην ἀπεδέξατο ἐλευθέρως οὐ συμβουλευὼν Ξέρξη στρατεῦσθαι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, οὗτος ὠνήρ φρασθεὶς Ξέρξην δακρύσαντα εἶρετο τάδε. «ὦ βασιλεῦ, ὥς πολλὸν ἀλλήλων κεχωρισμένα ἐργάσαιο νῦν τε καὶ

ἐπίτηδες αὐτῷ ταύτῃ προεξέδρη λίθου λευκοῦ, ἐποίησαν
 δὲ Ἀβυδηνοὶ ἐντειλαμένον πρότερον βασιλέος, |there, here
 ὥς |to seat |look down ἐπὶ τῆς |beach |look at, . . . be- ὃν πεζὸν
 |hold, consider
 καὶ τὰς νέας, |look at, be- ἰμέρθη τῶν νεῶν |conflict
 |hold, consider
 γινομένην ἰδέσθαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐγένετό τε καὶ ἐνίκων Φοίνικες
 Σιδώνιοι, |be pleased, |conflict καὶ τῇ στρατιῇ.
 |enjoy

7.45

ὥς δὲ ὥρα πάντα μὲν τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον ὑπὸ τῶν νεῶν
 |hide away , πάσας δὲ τὰς |beach; καὶ τὰ Ἀβυδηνῶν
 |grain
 πεδία |very full ἀνθρώπων, |there, here ὁ Ξέρξης ἐωυτὸν
 |congratulate, μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο |weep

7.46

μαθὼν δέ μιν Ἀρτάβανος ὁ |patron , ὃς τὸ πρῶτον
 γνώμην ἀπεδέξατο |not enslaved οὗ |give advice; Ξέρξη
 |(mid) consult
 στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, οὗτος ὠνήρ φρασθεὶς
 Ξέρξη |weep εἶρετο τάδε. «ὦ βασιλεῦ, ὥς πολλὸν
 ἀλλήλων |divide; distinguish, ἄσας νῦν τε καὶ
 |pull down

this place a raised seat of white stone, which the people of Abydos had built at the command of the king given beforehand. There he took his seat, and looking down upon the shore he gazed both upon the land-army and the ships; and gazing upon them he had a longing to see a contest take place between the ships; and when it had taken place and the Phenicians of Sidon were victorious, he was delighted both with the contest and with the whole armament.

7.45

And seeing all the Hellespont covered over with the ships, and all the shores and the plains of Abydos full of men, then Xerxes pronounced himself a happy man, and after that he fell to weeping.

7.46

Artabanos his uncle therefore perceiving him,—the same who at first boldly declared his opinion advising Xerxes not to march against Hellas,—this man, I say, having observed that Xerxes wept, asked as follows: “O king, how far different from one another are the things which thou hast done now and

vocabulary

αίρετός takeable, desirable ~heresy
άνθρωπηος human
άνθρώπινος human
ἅπαξ once
γεύω taste ~gusto
γλυκύς sweet, pleasant ~glycerine
δακρύω weep
ἑκατοστός hundredth
εὐδαίμων blessed with a good genius
καταφυγή refuge, escape
λογίζομαι reckon, consider
μακαρίζω congratulate ~macarism
νόσος (f) plague, pestilence ~noisome

νοῦσος (f) plague, pestilence ~noisome
οἰκτρός pitiable
οὐκί intensified 'not'
περίειμι be superior to; be left over;
 still exist
περίστημι be around; turn out
 ~station
προσπίπτω attack; befall; kow-tow
συμφορά collecting; accident,
 misfortune
συνταράσσω mess up
φθονερός jealous
φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics
χρηστός useful; brave, worthy

ὀλίγω πρότερον· μακαρίσας γὰρ σεωντὸν δακρύεις.»
 ὁ δὲ εἶπε «ἐσῆλθε γάρ με λογισάμενον κατοικτεῖραι
 ὥς βραχὺς εἴη ὁ πᾶς ἀνθρώπινος βίος, εἰ τούτων γε
 ἐόντων τοσούτων οὐδεὶς ἐς ἑκατοστὸν ἔτος περιέσται.»
 ὁ δὲ ἀμείβετο λέγων «ἕτερα τούτου παρὰ τὴν ζόην
 πεπόνθαμεν οἰκτρότερα. ἐν γὰρ οὕτω βραχεὶ βίῳ οὐδεὶς
 οὕτω ἄνθρωπος ἐὼν εὐδαίμων πέφυκε οὔτε τούτων οὔτε
 τῶν ἄλλων, τῷ οὐ παραστήσεται πολλάκις καὶ οὐκὶ ἅπαξ
 τεθνάναι βούλεσθαι μᾶλλον ἢ ζῶειν. αἵ τε γὰρ συμφοραὶ
 προσπίπτουσαι καὶ αἱ νοῦσοι συνταράσσουσαι καὶ βραχὺν
 ἐόντα μακρὸν δοκέειν εἶναι ποιεῦσι τὸν βίον. οὕτω ὁ μὲν
 θάνατος μοχθηρῆς ἐούσης τῆς ζόης καταφυγὴ αἵρετωτάτη
 τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ γέγονε, ὁ δὲ θεὸς γλυκὺν γεύσας τὸν αἰῶνα
 φθονερὸς ἐν αὐτῷ εὐρίσκεται ἐών.»

7.47

Ξέρξης δὲ ἀμείβετο λέγων «Ἀρτάβανε, βιοτῆς μὲν νυν
 ἀνθρωπηίης πέρι, ἐούσης τοιαύτης οἴην περ σὺ διαιρέαι
 εἶναι, πανσώμεθα, μηδὲ κακῶν μεμνώμεθα χρηστὰ

ὀλίγω πρότερον· |congratulate γὰρ σεωντὸν |weep .»

ὁ δὲ εἶπε «ἐσῆλθε γάρ με |reckon, κατοικτεῖραι
|consider

ὥς βραχὺς εἴη ὁ πᾶς |human βίος, εἰ τούτων γε

έόντων τοσούτων οὐδεὶς ἐς |hundredth ἔτος περιέσται.»

ὁ δὲ ἀμείβετο λέγων «ἕτερα τούτου παρὰ τὴν ζόην

πεπόνθαμεν |pitiable . ἐν γὰρ οὕτω βραχεὶ βίῳ οὐδεὶς

οὕτω ἄνθρωπος ἐὼν |blessed with a ἔφυκε οὔτε τούτων οὔτε
|good genius

τῶν ἄλλων, τῷ οὐ παραστήσεται πολλάκις καὶ |in- |once

τεθνάναι βούλεσθαι μᾶλλον ἢ ζῶειν. αἱ τε γὰρ |ten-
|sified, |not φοραὶ

|attack; befall; καὶ αἱ νοῦσοι |mess up καὶ βραχὺν
|kow-tow

έόντα μακρὸν δοκέειν εἶναι ποιεῦσι τὸν βίον. οὕτω ὁ μὲν

θάνατος μοχθηρῆς εἰούσης τῆς ζόης |refuge, |takeable,
|escape |desirable

τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ γέγονε, ὁ δὲ θεὸς |sweet, |taste τὸν αἰῶνα
|pleasant

|jealous ἐν αὐτῷ εὕρισκεται ἐών.»

7.47

Ξέρξης δὲ ἀμείβετο λέγων «Ἀρτάβανε, βιοτῆς μὲν νυν

ἀνθρωπηῆς πέρι, εἰούσης τοιαύτης οἴην περ σὺ διαιρέαι

εἶναι, πανσώμεθα, μηδὲ κακῶν μεμνώμεθα |useful; brave,
|worthy

a short while before now! for having pronounced thyself a happy man, thou art now shedding tears.” He said: “Yea, for after I had reckoned up, it came into my mind to feel pity at the thought how brief was the whole life of man, seeing that of these multitudes not one will be alive when a hundred years have gone by.” He then made answer and said: “To another evil more pitiful than this we are made subject in the course of our life; for in the period of life, short as it is, no man, either of these here or of others, is made by nature so happy, that there will not come to him many times, and not once only, the desire to be dead rather than to live; for misfortunes falling upon us and diseases disturbing our happiness make the time of life, though short indeed, seem long: thus, since life is full of trouble, death has become the most acceptable refuge for man; and God, having given him to taste of the sweetness of life, is discovered in this matter to be full of jealousy.”

7.47

Xerxes made answer saying: “Artabanos, of human life, which is such as thou dost define it to be, let us cease to speak, and do not remember evils when we

*vocabulary***ἄγερσις** gathering, mustering**ἀρχαῖος** ancient, from the beginning

~oligarch

ἀτρεκής precise, certain**δαιμόνιος** voc: you crazy guy**δεῖμα** -τος (n, 3) fear**ἐμεωυτοῦ** myself**ἐναργής** visible, clear ~Argentina**ἐνδεής** inadequate**ἐντός** within**ἐνύπνιος** seen in dreams**ἐπιλέγω** say re, say also; choose; (mid)
think over**ἐπιφαίνω** display ~photon**κότερος** which, whichever of two**μεθίστημι** change, substitute;
withdraw; change sides; (mid) send

away ~station

μεμπτός blameworthy**ὄνειρον** dream**ὄνειρος** dream**ὄψις** ὄψεως (f) sight, view

~thanatopsis

πολλαπλήσιος many times more**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

στρατώω be on a campaign ~strategy**συναμφότεροι** both together

ἔχοντες πρήγματα ἐν χερσί, φράσον δέ μοι τόδε· εἴ τοι ἡ ὄψις τοῦ ἐνυπνίου μὴ ἐναργῆς οὕτω ἐφάνη, εἶχες ἂν τὴν ἀρχαίην γνώμην, οὐκ ἔων με στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ἢ μετέστης ἄν; φέρε τοῦτό μοι ἀτρεκέως εἰπέ.» ὁ δὲ ἀμείβετο λέγων «ὦ βασιλεῦ, ὄψις μὲν ἡ ἐπιφανείσα τοῦ ὀνείρου ὡς βουλόμεθα ἀμφότεροι τελευτήσῃ, ἐγὼ δ' ἔτι καὶ ἐς τόδε δείματος εἰμὶ ὑπόπλεος οὐδ' ἐντὸς ἐμεωντοῦ, ἄλλα τε πολλὰ ἐπιλεγόμενος καὶ δὴ καὶ ὁρῶν τοι δύο τὰ μέγιστα πάντων ἐόντα πολεμιώτατα.»

7.48

Ξέρξης δὲ πρὸς ταῦτα ἀμείβετο τοῖσιδε. «δαιμόνιε ἀνδρῶν, κοῖα ταῦτα λέγεις εἶναι δύο μοι πολεμιώτατα; κότερά τοι ὁ πεζὸς μεμπτὸς κατὰ πλῆθος ἐστὶ καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν στράτευμα φαίνεται πολλαπλήσιον ἔσεσθαι τοῦ ἡμετέρου, ἢ τὸ ναυτικὸν τὸ ἡμέτερον λείψεσθαι τοῦ ἐκείνων, ἢ καὶ συναμφότερα ταῦτα; εἰ γάρ τοι ταύτῃ φαίνεται ἐνδεέστερα εἶναι τὰ ἡμέτερα πρήγματα, στρατοῦ ἂν ἄλλου τις τὴν ταχίστην ἄγερσιν ποιέοιτο.»

ἔχοντες πρήγματα ἐν χερσί, φράσον δέ μοι τόδε· εἴ τοι
 ἡ |sight τοῦ ἐνυπνίου μὴ |visible, οὕτω ἐφάνη, εἶχες ἂν
 |clear
 τὴν |ancient, from ἰμην, οὐκ ἔων με στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τὴν
 |the beginning
 Ἑλλάδα, ἢ |change, substitute; withdraw; |precise, εἰπέ.» ὁ
 |change sides; (mid) send away |certain
 δὲ ἀμείβετο λέγων «ὦ βασιλεῦ, |sight μὲν ἡ |display τοῦ
 ονείρου ὡς βουλόμεθα ἀμφοτέροι τελευτήσεις, ἐγὼ δ' ἔτι
 καὶ ἐς τόδε |fear εἰμὶ ὑπόπλεος οὐδ' |within |myself ,
 ἄλλα τε πολλὰ |say, choose, καὶ δὴ καὶ ὀρώων τοι δύο τὰ
 |think over
 μέγιστα πάντων ἔοντα πολεμιώτατα.»

7.48

Ξέρξης δὲ πρὸς ταῦτα ἀμείβετο τοίσιδε. <|voc: you crazy guy
 ἀνδρῶν, κοῖα ταῦτα λέγεις εἶναι δύο μοι πολεμιώτατα;
 |which, . . . οἱ ὁ πεζὸς |blameworthy . . . τὰ πλήθος ἐστὶ καὶ τὸ
 |whichever
 Ἑλληνικὸν |army φαίνεται |many times more ἔσεσθαι
 τοῦ ἡμετέρου, ἢ τὸ ναυτικὸν τὸ ἡμέτερον λείψεσθαι τοῦ
 ἐκείνων, ἢ καὶ συναμφότερα ταῦτα; εἰ γάρ τοι ταύτη
 φαίνεται |inadequate εἶναι τὰ ἡμέτερα πρήγματα, στρατοῦ
 ἂν ἄλλου τις τὴν ταχίστην |gathering, . . . οἰέοιτο.»
 |mustering

have good things in hand: but do thou declare to me this:—If the vision of the dream had not appeared with so much evidence, wouldest thou still be holding thy former opinion, endeavouring to prevent me from marching against Hellas, or wouldest thou have changed from it? Come, tell me this exactly.” He answered saying: “O king, may the vision of the dream which appeared have such fulfilment as we both desire! but I am even to this moment full of apprehension and cannot contain myself, taking into account many things besides, and also seeing that two things, which are the greatest things of all, are utterly hostile to thee.”

7.48

To this Xerxes made answer in these words: “Thou strangest of men, of what nature are these two things which thou sayest are utterly hostile to me? Is it that the land-army is to be found fault with in the matter of numbers, and that the army of the Hellenes appears to thee likely to be many times as large as ours? or dost thou think that our fleet will fall short of theirs? or even that both of these things together will prove true? For if thou thinkest that in these respects our power is deficient, one might make gathering at once of another force.”

*vocabulary***ἀντίξοος** opposed to**διασώζω** preserve through**εἰκάζω** liken; conjecture**ἐκός** afar, far off**ἡπειρος** (f) mainland, continent**θάλλω** bloom, flourish, abound

~thallium

καίτοι and yet; and in fact; although**κλέπτω** steal**μέμφομαι** blame; reject**οὐκί** intensified 'not'**οὐκω** no longer**προβαίνω** surpass, continue ~basis**πρόσω** forward, in the future; far**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion**συμφορά** collecting; accident, misfortune**σύμφορος** accompanying; suitable**σύνεσις** -εως (f) confluence ~jet**χειμών** -ος (m, 3) winter, storm

7.49

ὁ δ' ἀμείβετο λέγων «ὦ βασιλεῦ, οὔτε στρατὸν τοῦτον, ὅστις γε σύνεσιν ἔχει, μέμφοιτ' ἂν οὔτε τῶν νεῶν τὸ πλῆθος· ἦν δὲ πλεῦνας συλλέξῃς, τὰ δύο τοι τὰ λέγω πολλῶ ἔτι πολεμιώτερα γίνεται. τὰ δὲ δύο ταῦτα ἐστὶ γῆ τε καὶ θάλασσα. οὔτε γὰρ τῆς θαλάσσης ἐστὶ λιμὴν τοσοῦτος οὐδαμόθι, ὥς ἐγὼ εἰκάζω, ὅστις ἐγειρομένου χειμῶνος δεξάμενός σευ τοῦτο τὸ ναυτικὸν φερέγγυος ἔσται διασῶσαι τὰς νέας. καίτοι οὐκί ἓνα αὐτὸν δεῖ εἶναι τὸν λιμένα, ἀλλὰ παρὰ πᾶσαν τὴν ἡπειρον παρ' ἣν δὴ κομίζεαι. οὐκὼν δὴ ἐόντων τοι λιμένων ὑποδεξίων, μάθε ὅτι αἱ συμφοραὶ τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἄρχουσι καὶ οὐκὶ ὠνθρωποι τῶν συμφορέων. καὶ δὴ τῶν δύο τοι τοῦ ἐτέρου εἰρημένου τὸ ἕτερον ἔρχομαι ἐρέων. γῆ δὲ πολεμὴ τῇδὲ τοι κατίσταται· εἰ θέλει τοι μηδὲν ἀντίξοον καταστήναι, τοσοῦτῳ τοι γίνεται πολεμιωτέρῃ ὅσῳ ἂν προβαίνης ἐκαστέρῳ, τὸ πρόσω αἰεὶ κλεπτόμενος· εὐπρηξίης δὲ οὐκ ἔστι ἀνθρώποισι οὐδεμία πληθώρη. καὶ δὴ τοι, ὥς οὐδενὸς

7.49

ὁ δ' ἀμείβετο λέγων «ὦ βασιλεῦ, οὔτε **|army** τοῦτον,
 ὅστις γε **|confluence-χρῖ**, **|blame;** ἂν οὔτε τῶν νεῶν τὸ
|reject
 πληθος· ἦν δὲ πλεῦνας **|collect,** , τὰ δύο τοι τὰ λέγω
|assemble
 πολλῶ ἔτι πολεμιώτερα γίνεται. τὰ δὲ δύο ταῦτα ἐστὶ
 γῇ τε καὶ **|bloom, flour-** ὅτε γὰρ τῆς θαλάσσης ἐστὶ λιμὴν
|ish, abound
 τοσοῦτος οὐδαμόθι, ὡς ἐγὼ **|liken;** , ὅστις ἐγειρομένου
|conjecture
|winter, δεξάμενός σευ τοῦτο τὸ ναυτικὸν φερέγγυος
|storm
 ἔσται **|preserve** τὰς νέας. **|and yet;intensified 'not'** ἔν δει
|through **|and in**
 εἶναι τὸν λιμένα, ἀλλὰ παρὰ **|fact;** τὴν **|mainland,** ἀρ' ἦν
|although **|continent**
 δὴ κομίζεαι. **|no longer** ἔόντων τοι λιμένων ὑποδεξίων,
 μάθε ὅτι αἱ συμφοραὶ τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἄρχουσι καὶ **|intensified 'not'**
 ὠνθρωποι τῶν **|accompanying;** αἱ δὲ τῶν δύο τοι τοῦ ἑτέρου
|suitable
 εἰρημένου τὸ ἕτερον ἔρχομαι ἐρέων. γῇ δὲ πολεμὴ τῇδέ
 τοι κατίσταται· εἰ θέλει τοι μηδὲν **|opposed to** ἀτασθῆναι,
 τοσοῦτῳ τοι γίνεται πολεμιωτέρῃ ὅσῳ ἂν **|surpass**
|afar, far off , τὸ **|forward,** ' in **|steal** εὐπρηξίης δὲ οὐκ
|the future; far
 ἔστι ἀνθρώποισι οὐδεμία πληθώρη. καὶ δὴ τοι, ὡς οὐδενός

7.49

Then he made answer and said: “O king, neither with this army would any one who has understanding find fault, nor with the number of the ships; and indeed if thou shalt assemble more, the two things of which I speak will be made thereby yet more hostile: and these two things are—the land and the sea. For neither in the sea is there, as I suppose, a harbour anywhere large enough to receive this fleet of thine, if a storm should arise, and to ensure the safety of the ships till it be over; and yet not one alone ought this harbour to be, but there should be such harbours along the whole coast of the continent by which thou sailest; and if there are not harbours to receive thy ships, know that accidents will rule men and not men the accidents. Now having told thee of one of the two things, I am about to tell thee of the other. The land, I say, becomes hostile to thee in this way:—if nothing shall come to oppose thee, the land is hostile to thee by so much the more in proportion as thou shalt advance more, ever stealing on further and further, for there is no satiety of good fortune felt by men: and this I say, that with no one to

vocabulary

ἀποδείκνυμι (ō) show, point out;
 appoint; (mid) declare
ἀπόδεξις acceptance; (Ion) showing
ἀποδέχομαι accept ~doctrine
βέβαιος steadfast; sure
ἐπιλέγω say re, say also; choose; (mid)
 think over
ἐπίπαν =ἐπί
ἥμισυς half ~hemisphere

θαρσέω be of good heart
θρασύς brave, strong
κέρδος -ους (n, 3) advantage, cunning
κῶας κῶως (n, 3) fleece
λιμός (i, f) famine
μηδαμός no one
ὀρρωδέω dread, shrink from
οὐδαμός not anyone
ὀφείλω owe, should, if only
σφάλλω overthrow, balk, stagger

ἐναντιευμένου, λέγω τὴν χώραν πλεῦνα ἐν πλέονι χρόνῳ
 γινομένην λιμὸν τέξεσθαι. ἀνὴρ δὲ οὕτῳ ἂν εἴη ἄριστος, εἰ
 βουλευόμενος μὲν ἀρρωδέοι, πᾶν ἐπιλεγόμενος πείσεσθαι
 χρήμα, ἐν δὲ τῷ ἔργῳ θρασὺς εἴη.»

7.50

ἀμείβεται Ξέρξης τοῖσιδε. «Ἄρτάβανε, οἰκότως μὲν
 σύ γε τούτων ἕκαστα διαιρέαι· ἀτὰρ μήτε πάντα
 φοβέο μήτε πᾶν ὁμοίως ἐπιλέγεο. εἰ γὰρ δὴ βούλοιο
 ἐπὶ τῷ αἰεὶ ἐπεσφερομένῳ πρήγματι τὸ πᾶν ὁμοίως
 ἐπιλέγεσθαι, ποιήσεις ἂν οὐδαμὰ οὐδέν· κρέσσον δὲ
 πάντα θαρσέοντα ἡμῖς τῶν δεινῶν πάσχειν μᾶλλον ἢ
 πᾶν χρήμα προδειμαίνοντα μηδαμὰ μηδὲν παθεῖν. εἰ δὲ
 ἐρίζων πρὸς πᾶν τὸ λεγόμενον μὴ τὸ βέβαιον ἀποδέξεις,
 σφάλλεσθαι ὀφείλεις ἐν αὐτοῖσι ὁμοίως καὶ ὁ ὑπεναντία
 τούτοις λέξας. τοῦτο μὲν νυν ἐπ' ἴσης ἔχει· εἰδέναι δὲ
 ἄνθρωπον ἐόντα κῶς χρὴ τὸ βέβαιον; δοκέω μὲν οὐδαμῶς.
 τοῖσι τοίνυν βουλομένοις ποιέειν ὥς τὸ ἐπίπαν φιλέει
 γίνεσθαι τὰ κέρδεα, τοῖσι δὲ ἐπιλεγόμενοισί τε πάντα καὶ

ἐναντιευμένου, λέγω τὴν χώραν πλεῦνα ἐν πλέονι χρόνῳ
 γινομένην |famine·έξεσθαι. ἀνὴρ δὲ οὕτω ἂν εἴη ἄριστος, εἰ
 βουλευόμενος μὲν |dread, shrink, , πᾶν |say, choose, πείσεσθαι
 |think over
 χρήμα, ἐν δὲ τῷ ἔργῳ |from brave, εἴη.»
 |strong

7.50

ἀμείβεται Ξέρξης τοῖσιδε. «Ἀρτάβανε, οἰκότως μὲν
 σύ γε τούτων ἕκαστα διαιρέει· ἀτὰρ μήτε πάντα
 φοβέο μήτε πᾶν ὁμοίως |say, choose, εἰ γὰρ δὴ βούλοιο
 |think over
 ἐπὶ τῷ αἰεὶ ἐπεσφερομένῳ πρήγματι τὸ πᾶν ὁμοίως
 |say, choose, ποιήσεις ἂν οὐδαμὰ οὐδέν· κρέσσον δὲ
 |think over
 πάντα |be of good|half τῶν δεινῶν πάσχειν μᾶλλον ἢ
 |heart
 πᾶν χρήμα προδεδμαίνοντα |no one μηδὲν παθεῖν. εἰ δὲ
 ἐρίζων πρὸς πᾶν τὸ λεγόμενον μὴ τὸ |steadfast; sure Ξέξεις,
 |overthrow, balk|owe, should, if only· ἢ ὁμοίως καὶ ὁ ὑπεναντία
 τούτοις λέξας. τοῦτο μὲν νυν ἐπ' ἴσης ἔχει· εἰδέναι δὲ
 ἄνθρωπον ἔοντα |fleece, ἢ τὸ |steadfast; sure· ὧ μὲν |not anyone
 τοῖσι τοίνυν βουλομένοις ποιεῖν ὥς τὸ |ἐπὶ φιλέει
 γίνεσθαι τὰ |advantage, ἵσι δὲ |say, choose, think τε πάντα καὶ
 |cunning |over

stand against thee the country traversed, growing more and more as time goes on, will produce for thee famine. Man, however, will be in the best condition, if when he is taking counsel he feels fear, reckoning to suffer everything that can possibly come, but in doing the deed he is bold.”

7.50

Xerxes made answer in these words: “Artabanos, reasonably dost thou set forth these matters; but do not thou fear everything nor reckon equally for everything: for if thou shouldest set thyself with regard to all matters which come on at any time, to reckon for everything equally, thou wouldest never perform any deed. It is better to have good courage about everything and to suffer half the evils which threaten, than to have fear beforehand about everything and not to suffer any evil at all: and if, while contending against everything which is said, thou omit to declare the course which is safe, thou dost incur in these matters the reproach of failure equally with him who says the opposite to this. This then, I say, is evenly balanced: but how should one who is but man know the course which is safe? I think, in no way. To those then who choose to act, for the most part gain is wont to come; but to those who reckon for everything and shrink back,

vocabulary

ἀροτήρ -ος (m) plowman ~arable
ἄχαρις -δος (f) ungracious
καθαιρέω take down, close ~heresy
καταστρέφω overturn, subdue
 ~catastrophe
λιμός (l, f) famine
νομάς -δος (m, 3) roaming, grazing
νοστέω go home

ὀκνέω shrink from, hesitate; worry
ὀρρωδέω dread, shrink from
Πέρσης Persian
προάγω lead forward, advance
προέρχομαι proceed, come out
προχωρέω proceed, come forward
συμβουλίη advice; consultation
σύμβουλος adviser
φορβή food, pasture ~euphorbia

ὁκνεοῦσι οὐ μάλα ἐθέλει. ὁρᾷς τὰ Περσέων πρήγματα ἐς
ὁ δυνάμις προκεχώρηκε. εἰ τοίνυν ἐκείνοι οἱ πρὸ ἐμεῦ
γενόμενοι βασιλέες γνώμησι ἐχρέωντο ὁμοίησι καὶ σύ,
ἢ μὴ χρεώμενοι γνώμησι τοιαύτησι ἄλλους συμβούλους
εἶχον τοιούτους, οὐκ ἂν κοτε εἶδες αὐτὰ ἐς τοῦτο
προελθόντα· νῦν δὲ κινδύνους ἀναρριπτεύοντες ἐς τοῦτο
σφέα προηγάγοντο. μεγάλα γὰρ πρήγματα μεγάλοισι
κινδύνοισι ἐθέλει καταϊρέεσθαι. ἡμεῖς τοίνυν ὁμοιούμενοι
ἐκείνοισι ὥρην τε τοῦ ἔτεος καλλίστην πορευόμεθα,
καὶ καταστρεψάμενοι πᾶσαν τὴν Εὐρώπην νοστήσομεν
ὀπίσω, οὔτε λιμῶ ἐντυχόντες οὐδαμόθι οὔτε ἄλλο ἄχαρι
οὐδὲν παθόντες. τοῦτο μὲν γὰρ αὐτοὶ πολλὴν φορβὴν
φερόμενοι πορευόμεθα, τοῦτο δέ, τῶν ἂν κου ἐπιβέωμεν
γῆν καὶ ἔθνος, τούτων τὸν σῆτον ἔξομεν· ἐπ' ἀροτῆρας δὲ
καὶ οὐ νομάδας στρατευόμεθα ἄνδρας.»

7.51

λέγει Ἀρτάβανος μετὰ ταῦτα «ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἐπεῖτε
ἀρρωδέειν οὐδὲν ἔῃς πρήγμα, σὺ δέ με συμβουλίην

|hesitate; worry οὐ μάλα ἐθέλει. ὁρᾷς τὰ Περσέων πρήγματα ἐς
 ὃ δυνάμιος |proceed, forward come. εἰ τοίνυν ἐκείνοι οἱ πρὸ ἐμεῦ
 γενόμενοι βασιλέες γνώμησι ἐχρέωντο ὁμοίησι καὶ σύ,
 ἢ μὴ χρεώμενοι γνώμησι τοιαύτησι ἄλλους |adviser
 εἶχον τοιούτους, οὐκ ἄν κοτε εἶδες αὐτὰ ἐς τοῦτο
 |proceed, come out. δὲ κινδύνους ἀναρριπτόντες ἐς τοῦτο
 σφέα |lead forward, advance μεγάλα γὰρ πρήγματα μεγάλοις
 κινδύνοισι ἐθέλει |take down, close ἡμεῖς τοίνυν ὁμοιούμενοι
 ἐκείνοισι ὥρην τε τοῦ ἔτεος καλλίστην πορευόμεθα,
 καὶ |overturn, subdue πᾶσαν τὴν Εὐρώπην |go home
 ὀπίσω, οὔτε |famine ἔντυχόντες οὐδαμόθι οὔτε ἄλλο |ungracious
 οὐδὲν παθόντες. τοῦτο μὲν γὰρ αὐτοὶ πολλὴν |food
 φερόμενοι πορευόμεθα, τοῦτο δέ, τῶν ἄν κου ἐπιβέωμεν
 γῆν καὶ ἔθνος, τούτων τὸν σίτον ἔξομεν· ἐπ' |plowman δέ
 καὶ οὐ |roaming, grazing στρατευόμεθα ἄνδρας.»

7.51

λέγει Ἀρτάβανος μετὰ ταῦτα «ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἐπεῖτε
 |dread, shrink from οὐδὲν ἔας πρήγμα, σὺ δέ μεν |advice; consultation

it is not much wont to come. Thou seest the power of the Persians, to what great might it has advanced: if then those who came to be kings before me had had opinions like to thine, or, though not having such opinions, had had such counsellors as thou, thou wouldest never have seen it brought forward to this point. As it is however, by running risks they conducted it on to this: for great power is in general gained by running great risks. We therefore, following their example, are making our march now during the fairest season of the year; and after we have subdued all Europe we shall return back home, neither having met with famine anywhere nor having suffered any other thing which is unpleasant. For first we march bearing with us ourselves great store of food, and secondly we shall possess the corn-crops of all the peoples to whose land and nation we come; and we are making a march now against men who plough the soil, and not against nomad tribes.”

7.51

After this Artabanos said: “O king, since thou dost urge us not to have fear of anything, do thou I pray thee accept a counsel from me;

vocabulary

ἀναγκάιος coerced, coercing, slavery
ἄνευ away from; not having; not
 needing ~Sp. sin
ἀνίημι urge, impel; release ~jet
ἀποφαίνω display, declare
δασμοφόρος tributary
δηλέομαι hurt, spoil, steal ~delenda
ἐκτείνω stretch out ~tend
ἐνδείκνυμι (ὅ) address, consider
ἐνδέχομαι accept, admit, be possible
εὖς good, brave, noble
καταδουλόω enslave
καταστρέφω overturn, subdue
 ~catastrophe
καταφαίνω declare, make visible
κατυπέρτερος having the upper hand

κέρδος -ους (n, 3) advantage, cunning
κῦρος -εος (n, 3) authority; validity
μάρτυς witness
μεταβάλλω alter, transform
μητρόπολις -εως (f) mother city
μηχανή machine; mechanism, way
ὄον οὖ type of fruit
Πέρσης Persian
προσβάλλω hit, attack, approach;
 attach, offer ~ballistic
προσδοκάω expect
στρατιά army ~strategy
συμβουλεύω give advice; (mid) consult
 ~volunteer
συνελευθερόω join in freeing from
συστρατεύω join in an expedition
σφάλλω overthrow, balk, stagger

ἐνδεξαι· ἀναγκαίως γὰρ ἔχει περὶ πολλῶν πρηγμάτων
 πλεῖνα λόγον ἐκτείνει. Κῦρος ὁ Καμβύσεω Ἰωνίην
 πᾶσαν πλὴν Ἀθηναίων κατεστρέψατο δασμοφόρον εἶναι
 Πέρσησι. τούτους ὦν τοὺς ἄνδρας συμβουλεύω τοι
 μηδεμιῇ μηχανῇ ἄγειν ἐπὶ τοὺς πατέρας· καὶ γὰρ ἄνευ
 τούτων οἰοί τε εἰμὲν τῶν ἐχθρῶν κατυπέρτεροι γίνεσθαι.
 ἢ γὰρ σφέας, ἣν ἔπωνται, δεῖ ἀδικωτάτους γίνεσθαι
 καταδουλουμένους τὴν μητρόπολιν, ἢ δικαιοτάτους
 συνελευθεροῦντας. ἀδικώτατοι μὲν νυν γινόμενοι οὐδὲν
 κέρδος μέγα ἡμῖν προσβάλλουσι, δικαιοτάτοι δὲ γινόμενοι
 οἰοί τε δηλήσασθαι μεγάλως τὴν σὴν στρατιὴν γίνονται.
 ἐς θυμὸν ὦν βάλευ καὶ τὸ παλαιὸν ἔπος ὥς εὖ εἴρηται, τὸ
 μὴ ἅμα ἀρχῇ πᾶν τέλος καταφαίνεσθαι.»

7.52

ἀμείβεται πρὸς ταῦτα Ξέρξης «Ἀρτάβανε, τῶν ἀπεφήναο
 γνωμέων σφάλλεαι κατὰ ταύτην δὴ μάλιστα, ὃς Ἴωνας
 φοβέαι μὴ μεταβάλωσι, τῶν ἔχομεν γνώμα μέγιστον, τῶν
 σύ τε μάρτυς γίνεαι καὶ οἱ συστρατευσάμενοι

ἔνδεξαι· |coerced, coerc- |ἵρ ἔχει περὶ πολλῶν πρηγμάτων
 |ing, slavery
 πλεῦνα λόγον |stretch out |authority; Καμβύσεω Ἰωνίην
 |validity
 πᾶσαν πλὴν Ἀθηναίων |overturn, subdue |tributary εἶναι
 Πέρσῃσι. τούτους ὦν τοὺς ἄνδρας |give advice; τοι
 |(mid) consult
 μηδεμιῇ |machine; mēcha- ἐπὶ τοὺς πατέρας· καὶ γὰρ ἄνευ
 |nism, way
 τούτων οἰοί τε εἰμὲν τῶν ἐχθρῶν |having the up- γίνεσθαι.
 |per hand
 ἣ γὰρ σφέας, ἣν ἔπωνται, δεῖ ἀδικωτάτους γίνεσθαι
 |enslave τὴν |mother city , ἣ δικαιοτάτους
 |join in freeing from ἀδικώτατοι μὲν νυν γινόμενοι οὐδὲν
 |advantage, |/α ἡμῖν |hit, attack, approach; μύοτατοι δὲ γινόμενοι
 |cunning |attach, offer
 οἰοί τε |hurt, spoil, μεγάλως τὴν σὴν στρατιὴν γίνονται.
 |steal
 εἰς θυμὸν ὦν βάλεν καὶ τὸ παλαιὸν ἔπος ὥς εὖ εἴρηται, τὸ
 μὴ ἅμα ἀρχῇ πᾶν τέλος |declare, make vis- »
 |ible

7.52

ἀμείβεται πρὸς ταῦτα Ξέρξης «Ἀρτάβανε, τῶν |display,
 |declare
 γνωμέων |overthrow, balk. ἃ ταύτην δὴ μάλιστα, ὃς Ἴωνας
 φοβέαι μὴ |alter, , τῶν ἔχομεν γνώμα μέγιστον, τῶν
 |transform
 σύ τε |witness γίνεαι καὶ οἱ |join in an expedition

for when speaking of many things it is necessary to extend speech to a greater length. Cyrus the son of Cambyses subdued all Ionia except the Athenians, so that it was tributary to the Persians. These men therefore I counsel thee by no means to lead against their parent stock, seeing that even without these we are able to get the advantage over our enemies. For supposing that they go with us, either they must prove themselves doers of great wrong, if they join in reducing their mother city to slavery, or doers of great right, if they join in freeing her: now if they show themselves doers of great wrong, they bring us no very large gain in addition; but if they show themselves doers of great right, they are able then to cause much damage to thy army. Therefore lay to heart also the ancient saying, how well it has been said that at the first beginning of things the end does not completely appear.”

7.52

To this Xerxes made answer: “Artabanos, of all the opinions which thou hast uttered, thou art mistaken most of all in this; seeing that thou fearest lest the Ionians should change side, about whom we have a most sure proof, of which thou art a witness thyself and also the rest are witnesses who

vocabulary

ἄχαρις -δος (f) ungracious
δόκιμος trustworthy; excellent
ἐνδίδωμι hand over, lend, show, allow
ἐπιλέγω say re, say also; choose; (mid)
 think over
ἐπιτρέπω entrust, decide, allow
 ~trophy
καταισχύνω (ὑ) act disgracefully
μεταπέμπω send; (mid) summon
 ~pomp
ξυνός (ὑ) common, shared
πάρεξ alongside, diverging from; (+ῆ
 or gen) except; (+acc) beyond,

alongside
περιποιέω preserve; obtain
Πέρσης Persian
προαγορεύω declare, predict, order
προθυμία (ὑ) zeal, alacrity ~fume
σκῆπτρον scepter, staff ~scepter
σοῦσον lily
σπεύδω 'push on,' get going, hurry
 ~repudiate
στρατιά army ~strategy
συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion
σύμπας (ἄ) all together
τυραννίς -δος (f) tyranny
χρήζω need ~chresard

Δαρείω ἄλλοι ἐπὶ Σκύθας, ὅτι ἐπὶ τούτοις ἢ πάσα Περσικὴ στρατιὴ ἐγένετο διαφθεῖραι καὶ περιποιῆσαι, οἱ δὲ δικαιοσύνην καὶ πιστότητα ἐνέδωκαν, ἄχαρι δὲ οὐδέν. παρέξ δὲ τούτου, ἐν τῇ ἡμετέρῃ καταλιπόντας τέκνα καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ χρήματα οὐδ' ἐπιλέγεσθαι χρή νεώτερόν τι ποιήσιν. οὕτω μὴδὲ τοῦτο φοβέο, ἀλλὰ θυμὸν ἔχων ἀγαθὸν σῶζε οἰκόν τε τὸν ἐμὸν καὶ τυραννίδα τὴν ἐμήν· σοὶ γὰρ ἐγὼ μούνῳ ἐκ πάντων σκῆπτρα τὰ ἐμὰ ἐπιτράπω.»

7.53

ταῦτα εἶπας καὶ Ἀρτάβανον ἀποστείλας ἐς Σοῦσα δεύτερα μετεπέμψατο Ξέρξης Περσέων τοὺς δοκιμωτάτους· ἐπεὶ δέ οἱ παρήσαν, ἔλεγέ σφι τάδε. «ὦ Πέρσαι, τῶνδ' ἐγὼ ὑμέων χρηρίζων συνέλεξα, ἄνδρας τε γενέσθαι ἀγαθοὺς καὶ μὴ κατασχύνειν τὰ πρόσθε ἐργασμένα Πέρσῃσι, ἔοντα μεγάλα τε καὶ πολλοῦ ἄξια, ἀλλ' εἷς τε ἕκαστος καὶ οἱ σύμπαντες προθυμίην ἔχωμεν· ξυνὸν γὰρ πᾶσι τοῦτο ἀγαθὸν σπεύδεται. τῶνδε δὲ εἵνεκα προαγορεύω

Δαρείω ἄλλοι ἐπὶ Σκύθας, ὅτι ἐπὶ τούτοις ἡ πᾶσα
 Περσικὴ στρατιὴ ἐγένετο διαφθεῖραι καὶ |preserve;
 |obtain
 οἱ δὲ δικαιοσύνην καὶ πιστότητα |hand over, |ungracious
 |lend, show,
 οὐδέν. παρέξ δὲ τούτου, ἐν τῇ ἡμετέρῃ καταλιπόντας
 τέκνα καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ χρήματα οὐδ' |say, choose, χρῇ
 |think over
 νεώτερόν τι ποιήσιν. οὕτω μὴδὲ τοῦτο φοβέο, ἀλλὰ
 θυμὸν ἔχων ἀγαθὸν σώζω οἰκόν τε τὸν ἐμὸν καὶ |tyranny
 τὴν ἐμήν· σοὶ γὰρ ἐγὼ μούνω ἐκ πάντων |scepter, τὰ ἐμὰ
 |staff
 |entrust, de- »
 |cide, allow

7.53

ταῦτα εἶπας καὶ Ἀρτάβανον ἀποστείλας ἐς |lily δεύτερα
 |send; (mid) summon ἑς Περσέων τοὺς |trustworthy; ex- ἐπὶ
 |cellent
 δέ οἱ παρήσαν, ἔλεγέ σφι τάδε. «ὦ Πέρσαι, τῶνδ' ἐγὼ
 ὑμέων |need |collect, ἄνδρας τε γενέσθαι ἀγαθοὺς καὶ
 |assemble
 μὴ |act disgracefully . ἀ πρόσθε ἐργασμένα Πέρσησι, ἐόντα
 μεγάλα τε καὶ πολλοῦ ἄξια, ἀλλ' εἰς τε ἕκαστος καὶ
 οἱ |all together προθυμίην ἔχωμεν· |common ἢ πᾶσι τοῦτο
 ἀγαθὸν |'push on,' get ὥνδε δὲ εἵνεκα |declare, pre-
 |going, hurry |dict, order

went with Dareios on his march against the Scythians,—namely this, that the whole Persian army then came to be dependent upon these men, whether they would destroy or whether they would save it, and they displayed righteous dealing and trustworthiness, and nought at all that was unfriendly. Besides this, seeing that they have left children and wives and wealth in our land, we must not even imagine that they will make any rebellion. Fear not then this thing either, but have a good heart and keep safe my house and my government; for to thee of all men I entrust my sceptre of rule.”

7.53

Having thus spoken and having sent Artabanos back to Susa, next Xerxes summoned to his presence the men of most repute among the Persians, and when they were come before him, he spoke to them as follows: “Persians, I assembled you together desiring this of you, that ye should show yourselves good men and should not disgrace the deeds done in former times by the Persians, which are great and glorious; but let us each one of us by himself, and all together also, be zealous in our enterprise; for this which we labour for is a common good for all. And I exhort you that ye

vocabulary

ἀκινάκης -ου (m, 1) Persian short sword

ἀνατίθῃμι consecrate, lay on, impute; (mp) reproach

ἀνθίστημι face, make a stand ~station

ἀντέχω hold up as protection against ~ischemia

ἀτρεκής precise, certain

γέφυρα (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge

γεφυρόω (ῥ) dam, move earth

διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis

διάβασις -εως (f) crossing, passage ~basis

διακρίνω (ιῖ) separate, sort ~critic

εἰσβάλλω throw into ~ballistic

ἐντεταμένως vehemently

ἐπανατέλλω raise, rise

ἐπεύχομαι exult (over); pray ~vow

θυμῖμα incense

καταγίζω devote, dedicate

καταστρέφω overturn, subdue

~catastrophe

κρητήρ -ος (m) mixing bowl for wine

λαγχάνω be allotted; (esp. λελα- forms) allot; receive

μίν him, her, it

μύρσινος myrtle

ξίφος -εος (n, 3) sword

παντοῖος all kinds of

πέλαγος -ους (n, 3) the open sea

~pelagic

Πέρσης Persian

σπένδω libate; (mid) make a treaty

~spontaneous

στόρνυμι (ῥ) smooth out

στρατός common people/soldiers

~strategy

συντυχίη event, accident

τέρμα -τος (n, 3) mark, turn-around point

ὕστεραῖος the next; later

φιάλη jar ~vial

ἀντέχεσθαι τοῦ πολέμου ἐντεταμένως· ὥς γὰρ ἐγὼ
 πυνθάνομαι, ἐπ' ἄνδρας στρατευόμεθα ἀγαθούς, τῶν ἣν
 κρατήσωμεν, οὐ μή τις ἡμῶν ἄλλος στρατὸς ἀντιστῇ κοτε
 ἀνθρώπων. νῦν δὲ διαβαίνωμεν ἐπευξάμενοι τοῖσι θεοῖσι
 οἱ Πέρσας λελόγχασι».

7.54

ταύτην μὲν τὴν ἡμέρην παρεσκευάζοντο ἐς τὴν διάβασιν·
 τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίῃ ἀνέμενον τὸν ἥλιον ἐθέλοντες ιδέσθαι
 ἀνίσχοντα, θυμῆματά τε παντοῖα ἐπὶ τῶν γεφυρέων
 καταγίζοντες καὶ μυρσίησι στορνύντες τὴν ὁδόν. ὥς
 δ' ἐπανετέλλε ὁ ἥλιος, σπένδων ἐκ χρυσέης φιάλης
 Ξέρξης ἐς τὴν θάλασσαν εὔχετο πρὸς τὸν ἥλιον
 μηδεμίαν οἱ συντυχίην τοιαύτην γενέσθαι, ἥ μιν παύσει
 καταστρέψασθαι τὴν Εὐρώπην πρότερον ἢ ἐπὶ τέρμασι
 τοῖσι ἐκείνης γένηται. εὐξάμενος δὲ ἐσέβαλε τὴν φιάλην
 ἐς τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον καὶ χρύσειον κρητῆρα καὶ Περσικὸν
 ξίφος, τὸν ἀκινάκην καλέουσι. ταῦτα οὐκ ἔχω ἀτρεκέως
 διακρῖναι οὔτε εἰ τῷ ἡλίῳ ἀνατιθεὶς κατῆκε ἐς τὸ πέλαγος,

|hold up as pro- οὐ πολέμου |vehemently ὥς γὰρ ἐγὼ
|tection against

πυνθάνομαι, ἐπ' ἄνδρας στρατευόμεθα ἀγαθούς, τῶν ἥν

κρατήσωμεν, οὐ μή τις ἡμῖν ἄλλος |army |face, make a stand

ἀνθρώπων. νῦν δὲ |pass over, cross |exult (over); pray ἵτι θεοῖσι

οἱ Πέρσας |be allotted; (esp. λελα-
|forms) allot; receive

7.54

ταύτην μὲν τὴν ἡμέρην παρεσκευάζοντο ἐς τὴν διάβασιν·

τῇ δὲ |the next; later ἔμενον τὸν ἥλιον ἐθέλοντες ιδέσθαι

ἀνίσχοντα, |incense τε |all kinds of πὶ τῶν γεφυρέων

|devote, dedicate καὶ |myrtle |smooth out τὴν ὁδόν. ὥς

δ' |raise, rise ὁ ἥλιος, |libate; (mid) χρυσέης |jar
|make a treaty

Ξέρξης ἐς τὴν θάλασσαν εὔχετο πρὸς τὸν ἥλιον

μηδεμίαν οἱ |event, |accident τοιαύτην γενέσθαι, ἥ μιν παύσει

|overturn, subdue τὴν Εὐρώπην πρότερον ἢ ἐπὶ |mark, turn-
|around point

τοῖσι ἐκείνης γένηται. εὐξάμενος δὲ ἐσέβαλε τὴν |jar

ἐς τὸν Ἑλλησποντον καὶ χρύσειον |mixing bowl for wine ἰὼν

|sword, τὸν |Persian καλέουσι. ταῦτα οὐκ ἔχω |precise,
|short |certain

|separate, sort |sword τε εἰ τῷ ἡλίῳ |consecrate, lay ὀν, impute; |the open sea
(mp) reproach

preserve in the war without relaxing your efforts, because, as I am informed, we are marching against good men, and if we shall overcome them, there will not be any other army of men which will ever stand against us. Now therefore let us begin the crossing, after having made prayer to those gods who have the Persians for their allotted charge.”

7.54

During this day then they were making preparation to cross over; and on the next day they waited for the Sun, desiring to see him rise, and in the meantime they offered all kinds of incense upon the bridges and strewed the way with branches of myrtle. Then, as the Sun was rising, Xerxes made libation from a golden cup into the sea, and prayed to the Sun, that no accident might befall him such as should cause him to cease from subduing Europe, until he had come to its furthest limits. After having thus prayed he threw the cup into the Hellespont and with it a golden mixing-bowl and a Persian sword, which they call akinakes; but whether he cast them into the sea as an offering dedicated to the Sun, or whether he had repented of his scourging of the

*vocabulary***αἰχμοφόρος** spearman**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**γέφυρα** (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge**γεφυρώω** (ῥ) dam, move earth**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis**δωρέω** give ~donate**θεραπήϊη** service, tending**ἵππότης** -ου (m, 1) horseman ~hippo**λόγχη** spear point; lot**μαστιγόω** (ι) whip**μεταμέλομαι** (impers.+dat.) cause

regret to; (mp) regret

μυρίος (ῥ) 10,000 ~myriad**παντοῖος** all kinds of**Πέρσης** Persian**στεφανώω** crown**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

σύμμικτος commingled, promiscuous**ὑποζύγιον** beast of burden ~zygote**ὑστεραίος** the next; later**χίλιοι** (ιι) thousand ~kilo-

οὔτε εἰ μετεμέλησέ οἱ τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον μαστιγώσαντι καὶ ἀντὶ τούτων τὴν θάλασσαν ἔδωρέετο.

7.55

ὥς δὲ ταῦτά οἱ ἐπεποιήτο, διέβαινον κατὰ μὲν τὴν ἐτέρην τῶν γεφυρέων τὴν πρὸς τοῦ Πόντου ὁ πεζός τε καὶ ἡ ἵππος ἅπασα, κατὰ δὲ τὴν πρὸς τὸ Αἰγαῖον τὰ ὑποζύγια καὶ ἡ θεραπηίη. ἡγέοντο δὲ πρῶτα μὲν οἱ μύριοι Πέρσαι, ἐστεφανωμένοι πάντες, μετὰ δὲ τούτους ὁ σύμμικτος στρατὸς παντοίων ἐθνέων. ταύτην μὲν τὴν ἡμέρην οὔτοι, τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίῃ πρῶτοι μὲν οἷ τε ἱππόται καὶ οἱ τὰς λόγχας κάτω τρέποντες· ἐστεφάνωντο δὲ καὶ οὔτοι. μετὰ δὲ οἷ τε ἵπποι οἱ ἱροὶ καὶ τὸ ἄρμα τὸ ἱρόν, ἐπὶ δὲ αὐτός τε Ξέρξης καὶ οἱ αἰχμοφόροι καὶ οἱ ἱππόται οἱ χίλιοι, ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοισι ὁ ἄλλος στρατός. καὶ αἱ νέες ἅμα ἀνήγοντο ἐς τὴν ἀπεναντίον. ἤδη δὲ ἤκουσα καὶ ὕστατον διαβῆναι βασιλέα πάντων.

οὔτε εἰ μετεμέλυσέ οἱ τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον |whip καὶ
ἀντὶ τούτων τὴν θάλασσαν ἔδωρέετο.

7.55

ὥς δὲ ταῦτά οἱ ἐπεποιήτο, |pass over, cross ἡ μὲν τὴν ἐτέρην
τῶν γεφυρέων τὴν πρὸς τοῦ Πόντου ὁ πεζὸς τε καὶ ἡ
ἵππος ἅπασα, κατὰ δὲ τὴν πρὸς τὸ Αἰγαῖον τὰ |beast of burden
καὶ ἡ θεραπήη. ἡγέοντο δὲ πρῶτα μὲν οἱ μύριοι Πέρσαι,
|crown πάντες, μετὰ δὲ τούτους ὁ |commingled,
|army |all kinds of ἑθνέων. ταύτην μὲν τὴν ἡμέρην οὔτοι,
τῇ δὲ |the next; later οὔτοι μὲν οἷ τε |horseman αἱ οἱ τὰς |spear
κάτω τρέποντες· |crown δὲ καὶ οὔτοι. μετὰ δὲ οἷ |point;
τε ἵπποι οἱ ἱροὶ καὶ τὸ |chariot πρὸ ἱρόν, ἐπὶ δὲ αὐτός τε |lot
Ξέρξης καὶ οἱ |spearman καὶ οἱ |horseman ὀχίλοι, ἐπὶ
δὲ τούτοις ὁ ἄλλος |army καὶ αἱ νέες ἅμα ἀνήγοντο
εἰς τὴν ἀπεναντίον. ἤδη δὲ ἤκουσα καὶ ὕστατον |pass over, cross
βασιλέα πάντων.

Hellespont and desired to present a gift to the sea as amends for this, I cannot for certain say.

7.55

When Xerxes had done this, they proceeded to cross over, the whole army both the footmen and the horsemen going by one bridge, namely that which was on the side of the Pontus, while the baggage-animals and the attendants went over the other, which was towards the Egean. First the ten thousand Persians led the way, all with wreaths, and after them came the mixed body of the army made up of all kinds of nations: these on that day; and on the next day, first the horsemen and those who had their spear-points turned downwards, these also wearing wreaths; and after them the sacred horses and the sacred chariot, and then Xerxes himself and the spear-bearers and the thousand horsemen; and after them the rest of the army. In the meantime the ships also put out from shore and went over to the opposite side. I have heard however another account which says that the king crossed over the very last of all.

vocabulary

ἄνευ away from; not having; not
 needing ~Sp. sin
ἀνίημι urge, impel; release ~jet
διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis
ἐλινύω (ι) rest
ἐνθαῦτα there, here
ἔξιμι go forth; is possible ~ion
εὖς good, brave, noble
εὐφρόνη euphemism for night
θέομαι look at, behold, consider
 ~theater
καίπερ even if

λαγός hare ~lagomorph
λαγών -όνος (f, 3) flank
μάστιξ -γος (f) whip
μεγαλοπρεπής befitting greatness
ὄον οὓ type of fruit
Πέρσης Persian
προσδοκάω expect
στρατιά army ~strategy
στρατός common people/soldiers
 ~strategy
τέρας -ως (n, 3) omen, fetish
τρέχω run, spin
χῶρος place ~heir

7.56

Ξέρξης δὲ ἐπεὶ διέβη ἐς τὴν Εὐρώπην, ἐθηείτο τὸν στρατὸν ὑπὸ μαστίγων διαβαίνοντα· διέβη δὲ ὁ στρατὸς αὐτοῦ ἐν ἑπτὰ ἡμέρησι καὶ ἐν ἑπτὰ εὐφρόνησι, ἐλινύσας οὐδένα χρόνον. ἐνθαῦτα λέγεται, Ξέρξεω ἤδη διαβεβηκότος τὸν Ἑλλάσποντον, ἄνδρα εἰπεῖν Ἑλλησπόντιον «ὦ Ζεῦ, τί δὴ ἀνδρὶ εἰδόμενος Πέρση καὶ οὖνομα ἀντὶ Διὸς Ξέρξην θέμενος ἀνάστατον τὴν Ἑλλάδα θέλεις ποιῆσαι, ἄγων πάντας ἀνθρώπους; καὶ γὰρ ἄνευ τούτων ἐξῆν τοι ποιέειν ταῦτα.»

7.57

ὥς δὲ διέβησαν πάντες, ἐς ὁδὸν ὀρμημένοισι τέρας σφὶ ἐφάνη μέγα, τὸ Ξέρξης ἐν οὐδενὶ λόγῳ ἐποιήσατο καίπερ εὐσύμβλητον ἑόν· ἵππος γὰρ ἔτεκε λαγόν. εὐσύμβλητον ὦν τῇδε τοῦτο ἐγένετο, ὅτι ἔμελλε μὲν ἐλᾶν στρατιὴν ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα Ξέρξης ἀγαυρότατα καὶ μεγαλοπρεπέστατα, ὁπίσω δὲ περὶ ἑωυτοῦ τρέχων ἦξεν ἐς τὸν αὐτὸν χώρον.

7.56

Ξέρξης δὲ ἐπεὶ |pass over, cross ἰρώπην, |look at, army
 behold,
 ὑπὸ |whip |pass over, cross |pass consider αὐτοῦ
 |cross over, army
 ἐν ἑπτὰ ἡμέρησι καὶ ἐν ἑπτὰ |euphemism, |rest οὐδένα
 |for night
 χρόνον. |there, here ἔγεται, Ξέρξεω ἤδη |pass over, cross τὸν
 Ἑλλησποντον, ἄνδρα εἰπεῖν Ἑλλησπόντιον «ὦ Ζεῦ, τί
 δὴ ἀνδρὶ εἰδόμενος Πέρσῃ καὶ οὐνομα ἀντὶ Διὸς Ξέρξην
 θέμενος ἀνάστατον τὴν Ἑλλάδα θέλεις ποιῆσαι, ἄγων
 πάντας ἀνθρώπους; καὶ γὰρ ἄνευ τούτων ἐξῆν τοι ποιέειν
 ταῦτα.»

7.57

ὥς δὲ |pass over, cross ἔς, ἐς ὁδὸν ὀρμημένοισι |omen, σφι
 |fetish
 ἐφάνη μέγα, τὸ Ξέρξης ἐν οὐδενὶ λόγῳ ἐποιήσατο |even if
 εὐσύμβλητον ἐόν· ἵππος γὰρ ἔτεκε λαγόν. εὐσύμβλητον
 ὦν τῇδε τοῦτο ἐγένετο, ὅτι ἔμελλε μὲν ἐλᾶν στρατιὴν ἐπὶ
 τὴν Ἑλλάδα Ξέρξης ἀγαυρότατα καὶ |befitting greatness
 ὀπίσω δὲ περὶ ἑωυτοῦ |run, spin ἵξειν ἐς τὸν αὐτὸν |place

7.56

When Xerxes had crossed over into Europe, he gazed upon the army crossing under the lash; and his army crossed over in seven days and seven nights, going on continuously without any pause. Then, it is said, after Xerxes had now crossed over the Hellespont, a man of that coast exclaimed: “Why, O Zeus, in the likeness of a Persian man and taking for thyself the name of Xerxes instead of Zeus, art thou proposing to lay waste Hellas, taking with thee all the nations of men? for it was possible for thee to do so even without the help of these.”

7.57

When all had crossed over, after they had set forth on their way a great portent appeared to them, of which Xerxes made no account, although it was easy to conjecture its meaning,—a mare gave birth to a hare. Now the meaning of this was easy to conjecture in this way, namely that Xerxes was about to march an army against Hellas very proudly and magnificently, but would come back again to the place whence he came, running for his life. There

*vocabulary***αἰδοῖον** genitals**αἰδοῖος** modest, honored**ἄκρα** at the edge, extreme ~acute**ἀνατολή** a rising in the sky ~apostle**ἀντέχω** hold up as protection against
~ischemia**ἄπιξις** arrival**ἀριστερός** left-hand**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis**διξός** double**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἐμπαλιν** backwards, on the contrary**ἐνθεῦτεν** thence**ἐπιλείπω** fail, not work ~eclipse**ἔρσην** male**ἐσπέρα** evening, west**ἡμίονος** (f) mule ~hemisphere**ἡπειρος** (f) mainland, continent**κάμπτω** bend, bend in exhaustion**κατύπερθεν** above, from above**κόλπος** bosom, lap-fold; gulf**περιμένω** wait for**πρόσω** forward, in the future; far**ῥεῖθρον** stream ~rheostat**στρατιά** army ~strategy**στρατός** common people/soldiers
~strategy**τάφος** (m) funeral, grave; (n)
astonishment**τέρας** -ως (n, 3) omen, fetish

ἐγένετο δὲ καὶ ἕτερον αὐτῷ τέρας ἐόντι ἐν Σάρδισι·
 ἡμίονος γὰρ ἔτεκε ἡμίονον διζὰ ἔχουσιν αἰδοῖα, τὰ μὲν
 ἔρσενος τὰ δὲ θηλέης· κατύπερθε δὲ ἦν τὰ τοῦ ἔρσενος.
 τῶν ἀμφοτέρων λόγον οὐδένα ποιησάμενος τὸ πρόσω
 ἐπορεύετο, σὺν δέ οἱ ὁ πεζὸς στρατός.

7.58

ὁ δὲ ναυτικὸς ἔξω τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον πλέων παρὰ γῆν
 ἐκομίζετο, τὰ ἔμπαλιν πρήσσω τοῦ πεζοῦ. ὁ μὲν γὰρ
 πρὸς ἐσπέρην ἔπλεε, ἐπὶ Σαρπηδονίης ἄκρης ποιούμενος
 τὴν ἄπιξιν, ἐς τὴν αὐτῷ προεῖρητο ἀπικομένῳ περιμένειν·
 ὁ δὲ κατ' ἡπειρον στρατὸς πρὸς ἡῷ τε καὶ ἡλίου ἀνατολὰς
 ἐποιέετο τὴν ὁδὸν διὰ τῆς Χερσονήσου, ἐν δεξιῇ μὲν
 ἔχων τὸν Ἑλλης τάφον τῆς Ἀθάμαντος, ἐν ἀριστερῇ
 δὲ Καρδίην πόλιν, διὰ μέσης δὲ πορευόμενος πόλιος τῇ
 οὔνομα τυγχάνει ἐὼν Ἀγορή. ἐνθεῦτεν δὲ κάμπτων τὸν
 κόλπον τὸν Μέλانا καλεόμενον καὶ Μέλانا ποταμόν,
 οὐκ ἀντισχόντα τότε τῇ στρατιῇ τὸ ρέεθρον ἀλλ'
 ἐπιλιπόντα, τοῦτον τὸν ποταμὸν διαβάς, ἐπ' οὐ καὶ ὁ

ἐγένετο δὲ καὶ ἕτερον αὐτῷ |omen, ἐόντι ἐν Σάρδισι·
 |fetish
 |mule γὰρ ἔτεκε |mule |double ᾠχουσαν αἰδοῖα, τὰ μὲν
 |male τὰ δὲ θηλέης· |above, from above, τὰ τοῦ |male
 τῶν ἀμφοτέρων λόγον οὐδένα ποιησάμενος τὸ |forward, in the fu-
 |ture; far
 ἐπορεύετο, σὺν δέ οἱ ὁ πεζὸς |army

7.58

ὁ δὲ ναυτικὸς ἔξω τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον πλέων παρὰ γῆν
 ἐκομίζετο, τὰ |backwards, πρὸς τὸν τοῦ πεζοῦ. ὁ μὲν γὰρ
 |the contrary
 πρὸς ἐσπέρην ἔπλεε, ἐπὶ Σαρπηδονίης |at the edge, extreme
 τὴν |arrival, ἐς τὴν αὐτῷ προείρητο ἀπικομένῳ |wait for
 ὁ δὲ κατ' |mainland, |army πρὸς ἡῷ τε καὶ ἡλίου |a rising in the sky
 |continent
 ἐποιέετο τὴν ὁδὸν διὰ τῆς Χερσονήσου, ἐν δεξιῇ μὲν
 ἔχων τὸν Ἑλλῆς |(m) funeral, grave; |μαντος, ἐν |left-hand
 |(n) astonishment
 δὲ Καρδίην πόλιν, διὰ μέσης δὲ πορευόμενος πόλιος τῇ
 οὐνομα τυγχάνει ἐὼν Ἀγορή. |thence δὲ |bend, bend in
 |exhaustion
 |bosom, lap- |Μέλανα καλεόμενον καὶ Μέλανα ποταμόν,
 |fold; gulf
 οὐκ |hold up as pro- ὅτε τῇ στρατιῇ τὸ |stream ἀλλ'
 |tection against
 |fail, not work, τοῦτον τὸν ποταμόν |pass over, cross καὶ ὁ

happened also a portent of another kind while he was still at Sardis,—a mule brought forth young and gave birth to a mule which had organs of generation of two kinds, both those of the male and those of the female, and those of the male were above. Xerxes however made no account of either of these portents, but proceeded on his way, and with him the land-army.

7.58

The fleet meanwhile was sailing out of the Hellespont and coasting along, going in the opposite direction to the land-army; for the fleet was sailing towards the West, making for the promontory of Sarpedon, to which it had been ordered beforehand to go, and there wait for the army; but the land-army meanwhile was making its march towards the East and the sunrising, through the Chersonese, keeping on its right the tomb of Helle the daughter of Athamas, and on its left the city of Cardia, and marching through the midst of a town the name of which is Agora. Thence bending round the gulf called Melas and having crossed over the river Melas, the stream of which did not suffice at this time for the army but failed,—having crossed, I say, this river, from which the gulf

*vocabulary***αἰγιαλός** beach, shore**ἄκρα** at the edge, extreme ~acute**ἄκρη** at the edge, extreme**ἄκρις** -ός (f) hilltop ~acute**ἀναψύχω** (ῥ) cool, refresh, soothe

~psychology

ἀνέλκω draw up, back**βασιλῆις** kingly**ἐξαριθμέω** count up; recount**ἐπωνύμιος** called, named**ἐσπέρα** evening, west**εὖς** good, brave, noble**κόλπος** bosom, lap-fold; gulf**λίμνη** lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic**ναύαρχος** admiral**ὀνομαστός** named ~name**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**παρέξιμι** pass by; transgress**Πέρσης** Persian**πολίζω** build a wall, city ~Minneapolis**προσεχής** close**ῥέω** flow ~rheostat**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

φρουρά guard duty, a watch**χῶρος** place ~heir

κόλπος οὗτος τὴν ἐπωνυμίην ἔχει, ἥιε πρὸς ἐσπέρην,
 Αἰνόν τε πόλιν Αἰολίδα καὶ Στεντορίδα λίμνην παρεξιών,
 ἐς ὃ ἀπίκητο ἐς Δορίσκον.

7.59

ὁ δὲ Δορίσκος ἐστὶ τῆς Θρηίκης αἰγιαλός τε καὶ πεδίων
 μέγα, διὰ δὲ αὐτοῦ ῥέει ποταμός μέγας Ἐβρος· ἐν τῷ
 τεῖχος τε ἐδέδμητο βασιλήιον τοῦτο τὸ δὴ Δορίσκος
 κέκληται, καὶ Περσέων φρουρὴ ἐν αὐτῷ κατεστήκεε
 ὑπὸ Δαρείου ἐξ ἐκείνου τοῦ χρόνου ἐπείτε ἐπὶ Σκύθας
 ἐστρατεύετο. ἔδοξε ὦν τῷ Ξέρξῃ ὁ χώρος εἶναι
 ἐπιτήδεος ἐνδιατάξαι τε καὶ ἐξαριθμῆσαι τὸν στρατόν, καὶ
 ἐποίεε ταῦτα. τὰς μὲν δὴ νέας τὰς πάσας ἀπικομένας
 ἐς Δορίσκον οἱ ναύαρχοι κελεύσαντος Ξέρξεω ἐς τὸν
 αἰγιαλὸν τὸν προσεχέα Δορίσκῳ ἐκόμισαν, ἐν τῷ Σάλη
 τε Σαμοθρηκίῃ πεπόλιστα πόλιν καὶ Ζώνη, τελευτᾷ
 δὲ αὐτοῦ Σέρρειον ἄκρη ὀνομαστή. ὁ δὲ χώρος οὗτος
 τὸ παλαιὸν ἦν Κικόνων. ἐς τοῦτον τὸν αἰγιαλὸν
 κατασχόντες τὰς νέας ἀνέψυχον ἀνελκύσαντες. ὁ δὲ ἐν

bosom, lap-^{ος} τὴν |called, ἔχει, ἥιε πρὸς ἐσπέρην,
 |fold; gulf |named
 Αἰνόν τε πόλιν Αἰολίδα καὶ Στεντορίδα |lake, marsh, ἐξιών,
 |basin, sea
 ἐς ὃ ἀπύκετο ἐς Δορίσκον.

7.59

ὁ δὲ Δορίσκος ἐστὶ τῆς Θρηίκης |beach, τε καὶ πεδίον
 |shore
 μέγα, διὰ δὲ αὐτοῦ ῥέει ποταμὸς μέγας Ἐβρος· ἐν τῷ
 τείχος τε ἐδέδμητο |kingly τοῦτο τὸ δὴ Δορίσκος
 κέκληται, καὶ Περσέων φρουρὴ ἐν αὐτῷ κατεστήκει
 ὑπὸ Δαρείου ἐξ ἐκείνου τοῦ χρόνου ἐπίτε ἐπὶ Σκύθας
 ἐστρατεύετο. ἔδοξε ὦν τῷ Ξέρξῃ ὁ |place εἶναι
 ἐπιτήδεος ἐνδιατάξαι τε καὶ |count up; recount |army , καὶ
 ἐποίεε ταῦτα. τὰς μὲν δὴ νέας τὰς πάσας ἀπικομένας
 ἐς Δορίσκον οἱ |admiral κελεύσαντος Ξέρξεω ἐς τὸν
 |beach, τὸν |close Δορίσκῳ ἐκόμισαν, ἐν τῷ Σάλῃ
 |shore
 τε Σαμοθρηικὴ |build a wall, city Ἰλῖς καὶ Ζώνη, τελευτᾷ
 δὲ αὐτοῦ Σέρρειον ἄκρη |named . ὁ δὲ |place οὗτος
 τὸ παλαιὸν ἦν Κικόνων. ἐς τοῦτον τὸν |beach,
 |shore
 κατασχόντες τὰς νέας |cool, |draw up, back . ὁ δὲ ἐν
 |refresh

also has its name, it went on Westwards, passing by Ainos a city of the Aiolians, and by the lake Stentoris, until at last it came to Doriscos.

7.59

Now Doriscos is a sea-beach and plain of great extent in Thrace, and through it flows the great river Hebros: here a royal fortress had been built, the same which is now called Doriscos, and a garrison of Persians had been established in it by Dareios, ever since the time when he went on his march against the Scythians. It seemed then to Xerxes that the place was convenient to order his army and to number it throughout, and so he proceeded to do. The commanders of the ships at the bidding of Xerxes had brought all their ships, when they arrived at Doriscos, up to the sea-beach which adjoins Doriscos, on which there is situated both Sale a city of the Samothrakians, and also Zone, and of which the extreme point is the promontory of Serreion, which is well known; and the region belonged in ancient time to the Kikonians. To this beach then they had brought in their ships, and having drawn them up on land they were

vocabulary

αίμασιά wall of dry stones?
ἀνήκω reach up to; belong
ἀριθμέω to count ~arithmetic
ἀριθμός number
ἀτρεκής precise, certain
διατάσσω arrange, array
ἐβδομήκοντα 70
εἰσβιβάζω put aboard
ἐξαριθμέω count up; recount
ἐξωθεν from outside
κύκλος circle, wheel ~cycle
μυριάς -δος (ὑ, f, 3) countless, myriad
μυρίος (ὑ) 10,000 ~myriad

ὀμφαλός navel, nub ~umbilicus
οὐδαμὸς not anyone
περιβάλλω act: excel; mid: put on
 clothing ~ballistic
περιγράφω trace, circumscribe
Πέρσης Persian
στρατιά army ~strategy
στρατός common people/soldiers
 ~strategy
στρατώ be on a campaign ~strategy
σύμπας (ᾱ) all together
ὕψος ὕψους (n, 3) height, summit
χῶρος place ~heir

τῷ Δορίσκῳ τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον τῆς στρατιῆς ἀριθμὸν
ἐποιέετο.

7.60

ὅσον μὲν νυν ἕκαστοι παρῆχον πλήθος ἐς ἀριθμὸν,
οὐκ ἔχω εἰπεῖν τὸ ἀτρεκές· οὐ γὰρ λέγεται πρὸς
οὐδαμῶν ἀνθρώπων· σύμπαντος δὲ τοῦ στρατοῦ τοῦ
πεζοῦ τὸ πλήθος ἐφάνη ἐβδομήκοντα καὶ ἑκατὸν
μυριάδες. ἐξηρίθμησαν δὲ τόνδε τὸν τρόπον· συνήγαγόν
τε ἐς ἓνα χώρον μυριάδα ἀνθρώπων, καὶ συννάξαντες
ταύτην ὥς μάλιστα εἶχον περιέγραψαν ἔξωθεν κύκλον·
περιγράψαντες δὲ καὶ ἀπέντες τοὺς μυρίους αἵμασινὴν
περιέβαλον κατὰ τὸν κύκλον, ὕψος ἀνήκουσαν ἀνδρὶ ἐς
τὸν ὀμφαλόν· ταύτην δὲ ποιήσαντες ἄλλους ἐσεβίβαζον ἐς
τὸ περιοικοδομημένον, μέχρι οὗ πάντας τούτῳ τῷ τρόπῳ
ἐξηρίθμησαν. ἀριθμήσαντες δὲ κατὰ ἔθνεα διέτασσον.

7.61

οἱ δὲ στρατευόμενοι οἶδε ἦσαν, Πέρσαι μὲν ὧδε

τῷ Δορίσκῳ τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον τῆς στρατιῆς |number
ἐποιέετο.

7.60

ὅσον μὲν νυν ἕκαστοι παρείχον πλῆθος ἐς |number ,
οὐκ ἔχω εἰπεῖν τὸ |precise, οὐ γὰρ λέγεται πρὸς
|certain
|not anyone ἰνθρώπων· |all together δὲ τοῦ στρατοῦ τοῦ
πεζοῦ τὸ πλῆθος ἐφάνη |70 καὶ ἑκατὸν
|countless, . |count up; recount ἡ γόνδε τὸν τρόπον· συνήγαγόν
|myriad
τε ἐς ἓνα |place |countless, ἀνθρώπων, καὶ συννάξαντες
|myriad
ταύτην ὡς μάλιστα εἶχον |trace, circum-|from |circle,
|scribe |outside |wheel
|trace, circumscribe ὃ καὶ ἀπέντες τοὺς μυρίους |wall of dry stones?
|excel; don κατὰ τὸν |circle, , |height,|reach up to; belong` ἐς
|wheel |summit
τὸν |navel, nub ταύτην δὲ ποιήσαντες ἄλλους ἐσεβίβαζον ἐς
τὸ περιουικοδομημένον, μέχρι οὗ πάντας τούτῳ τῷ τρόπῳ
|count up; re-|to count δὲ κατὰ ἔθνεα |arrange, .
|count |array

7.61

οἱ δὲ στρατευόμενοι οἶδε ἦσαν, Πέρσαι μὲν ᾧδε

letting them get dry: and during this time he proceeded to number the army at Doriscos.

7.60

Now of the number which each separate nation supplied I am not able to give certain information, for this is not reported by any persons; but of the whole land-army taken together the number proved to be one hundred and seventy myriads: and they numbered them throughout in the following manner:—they gathered together in one place a body of ten thousand men, and packing them together as closely as they could, they drew a circle round outside: and thus having drawn a circle round and having let the ten thousand men go from it, they built a wall of rough stones round the circumference of the circle, rising to the height of a man's navel. Having made this, they caused others to go into the space which had been built round, until they had in this manner numbered them all throughout: and after they had numbered them, they ordered them separately by nations.

7.61

Now those who served were as follows:—The Persians with this

vocabulary

αἰχμή spear point ~acute

ἀναξυρίδες Persian pants

γέρον wicker object

γόνος offspring ~genus

ἐγχειρίδιος handle, hand tool, dagger

Ἑλλην Greek

ἐπωνύμιος called, named

ἔρσην male

ζώνη girdle; waist, loins ~zone

καλάμινος of reed

κρεμάννυμι (ῶ) hang

μηρός thigh, femur

οἰστός arrow

ὄψις ὄψεως (f) sight, view

~thanatopsis

πάλαι long ago ~paleo

παλαίω wrestle ~Pallas

πάλη wrestling ~Pallas

πάλλω shake, brandish ~Pallas

περίοικος dwelling around

Πέρσης Persian

πίλος felt

ποικίλος ornamented; various

σκέλος -εος (n, 3) leg ~scoliosis

σκευάζω prepare, collect

στέλλω prepare, send, furl ~apostle

φαρετρεών quiver

ἐσκευασμένοι· περὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι εἶχον τιάρας
καλομένους πίλους ἀπαγέας, περὶ δὲ τὸ σῶμα κιθῶνας
χειριδωτοὺς ποικίλους,..... λεπίδος σιδηρέης ὄψιν
ἰχθυοειδέος, περὶ δὲ τὰ σκέλεα ἀναξυρίδας, ἀντὶ δὲ
ἀσπίδων γέρρα· ὑπὸ δὲ φαρετρεῶνες ἐκρέμαντο· αἰχμὰς
δὲ βραχέας εἶχον, τόξα δὲ μεγάλα, ὀιστοὺς δὲ καλαμίνους,
πρὸς δὲ ἐγχειρίδια παρὰ τὸν δεξιὸν μηρὸν παραιωρέμενα
ἐκ τῆς ζώνης. καὶ ἄρχοντα παρείχοντο Ὅτάνεα τὸν
Ἀμήστριος πατέρα τῆς Ξέρξεω γυναικός, ἐκαλέοντο δὲ
πάλαι ὑπὸ μὲν Ἑλλήνων Κηφῆνες, ὑπὸ μέντοι σφέων
αὐτῶν καὶ τῶν περιοίκων Ἀρταῖοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ Περσεὺς ὁ
Δανάης τε καὶ Διὸς ἀπύκετο παρὰ Κηφέα τὸν Βήλου καὶ
ἔσχε αὐτοῦ τὴν θυγατέρα Ἀνδρομέδην, γίνεται αὐτῷ παῖς
τῷ οὐνόμα ἔθετο Πέρσην, τοῦτον δὲ αὐτοῦ καταλείπει·
ἐτύγχανε γὰρ ἄπαις ἔων ὁ Κηφεὺς ἔρσεως γόνου. ἐπὶ
τούτου δὴ τὴν ἐπωνυμίην ἔσχον.

7.62

Μῆδοι δὲ τὴν αὐτὴν ταύτην ἐσταλμένοι ἐστρατεύοντο·

|prepare, collect περὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι εἶχον τιάρας
 καλομένους |felt ἀπαγέας, περὶ δὲ τὸ σῶμα κιθῶνας
 χειριδωτοὺς |ornamented..... λεπίδος σιδηρέης |sight
 ἰχθυοειδέος, περὶ δὲ τὰ |leg |Persian pants, ἀντὶ δὲ
 ἀσπίδων |wicker ὑπὸ δὲ |quiver |hang |spear
 |object |point
 δὲ βραχέας εἶχον, τόξα δὲ μεγάλα, |arrow δὲ |of reed ,
 πρὸς δὲ ἐγχειρίδια παρὰ τὸν δεξιὸν |thigh παραιωρέμενα
 ἐκ τῆς |girdle;
 |waist καὶ ἄρχοντα παρείχοντο Ὅτάνεια τὸν
 Ἀμήστριος πατέρα τῆς Ξέρξεω γυναικός, ἐκαλέοντο δὲ
 πάλαι ὑπὸ μὲν |Greek Κηφῆνες, ὑπὸ μέντοι σφέων
 αὐτῶν καὶ τῶν |dwelling
 |around Ἀρταῖοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ Περσεὺς ὁ
 Δανάης τε καὶ Διὸς ἀπύκετο παρὰ Κηφέα τὸν Βήλου καὶ
 ἔσχε αὐτοῦ τὴν θυγατέρα Ἀνδρομέδην, γίνεται αὐτῷ παῖς
 τῷ οὖνομα ἔθετο Πέρσην, τοῦτον δὲ αὐτοῦ καταλείπει·
 ἐτύγχανε γὰρ ἄπαις ἐὼν ὁ Κηφεὺς |male |offspring ἐπὶ
 τούτου δὴ τὴν |called,
 |named ἔσχον.

7.62

Μῆδοι δὲ τὴν αὐτὴν ταύτην |prepare, send, furl| τεύοντο·

equipment:—about their heads they had soft felt caps called tiaras, and about their body tunics of various colours with sleeves, presenting the appearance of iron scales like those of a fish, and about the legs trousers; and instead of the ordinary shields they had shields of wicker-work, under which hung quivers; and they had short spears and large bows and arrows of reed, and moreover daggers hanging by the right thigh from the girdle: and they acknowledged as their commander Otanes the father of Amestris the wife of Xerxes. Now these were called by the Hellenes in ancient time Kephenes; by themselves however and by their neighbours they were called Artaians: but when Perseus, the son of Danae and Zeus, came to Kepheus the son of Belos and took to wife his daughter Andromeda, there was born to them a son to whom he gave the name Perses, and this son he left behind there, for it chanced that Kepheus had no male offspring: after him therefore this race was named.

7.62

The Medes served in the expedition equipped in precisely the

vocabulary

αἰχμή spear point ~acute

ἐγχειρίδιος handle, hand tool, dagger

Ἑλλήν Greek

ἐπιτροπεύω administrate

θώραξ -ηκος (m) breastplate ~thorax

κράνος -εος (n, 3) helmet; ship's ram

λίνεος linen

μεταβάλλω alter, transform

πάλαι long ago ~paleo

παλαίω wrestle ~Pallas

πάλη wrestling ~Pallas

πάλλω shake, brandish ~Pallas

παραπλήσιος similar to

Πέρσης Persian

πίλος felt

πλέκω braid ~complex

ρόπαλον club, staff

σάττω pack, compress

σίδηρος iron ~siderite

σκευή equipment

Μηδική γὰρ αὕτη ἡ σκευὴ ἐστὶ καὶ οὐ Περσική. οἱ δὲ Μῆδοι ἄρχοντα μὲν παρείχοντο Τιγράνην ἄνδρα Ἀχαιμενίδην, ἐκαλέοντο δὲ πάλαι πρὸς πάντων Ἄριοι, ἀπικομένης δὲ Μηδείης τῆς Κολχίδος ἐξ Ἀθηνέων ἐς τοὺς Ἀρίους τούτους μετέβαλον καὶ οὗτοι τὸ οὔνομα. αὐτοὶ περὶ σφέων ὧδε λέγουσι Μῆδοι. Κίσσιοι δὲ στρατευόμενοι τὰ μὲν ἄλλα κατὰ περ Πέρσαι ἐσκενάδατο, ἀντὶ δὲ τῶν πύλων μιτρηφόροι ἦσαν. Κισσίων δὲ ἦρχε Ἀνάφης ὁ Ὀτάνεω. Ὑρκάνιοι δὲ κατὰ περ Πέρσαι ἐσεσάχατο, ἡγεμόνα παρεχόμενοι Μεγάπανον τὸν Βαβυλῶνος ὕστερον τούτων ἐπιτροπεύσαντα.

7.63

Ἀσσύριοι δὲ στρατευόμενοι περὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι εἶχον χάλκεά τε κράνεα καὶ πεπλεγμένα τρόπον τινὰ βάρβαρον οὐκ εὐαπήγητον, ἀσπίδας δὲ καὶ αἰχμὰς καὶ ἐγχειρίδια παραπλήσια τῇσι Αἰγυπτίῃσι εἶχον, πρὸς δὲ ρόπαλα ξύλων τετυλωμένα σιδήρῳ, καὶ λινέους θώρηκας. οὗτοι δὲ ὑπὸ μὲν Ἑλλήνων καλέονται Σύριοι, ὑπὸ δὲ τῶν

Μηδική γὰρ αὕτη ἡ |equipment ἱ καὶ οὐ Περσική. οἱ
 δὲ Μῆδοι ἄρχοντα μὲν παρείχοντο Τιγράνην ἄνδρα
 Ἀχαιμενίδην, ἐκαλέοντο δὲ πάλαι πρὸς πάντων Ἄριοι,
 ἀπικομένης δὲ Μηδείης τῆς Κολχίδος ἐξ Ἀθηνέων ἐς
 τοὺς Ἀρίους τούτους |alter, |transform καὶ οὗτοι τὸ οὔνομα.
 αὐτοὶ περὶ σφέων ὧδε λέγουσι Μῆδοι. Κίσσιοι δὲ
 στρατευόμενοι τὰ μὲν ἄλλα κατὰ περ Πέρσαι ἐσκευάδατο,
 ἀντὶ δὲ τῶν |felt μιτρηφόροι ἦσαν. Κισσίων δὲ
 ἦρχε Ἀνάφης ὁ Ὀτάνεω. Ὑρκάνιοι δὲ κατὰ περ
 Πέρσαι |pack, |compress, ἡγεμόνα παρεχόμενοι Μεγάπανον τὸν
 Βαβυλῶνος ὕστερον τούτων |administrate .

7.63

Ἀσσύριοι δὲ στρατευόμενοι περὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι εἶχον
 χάλκεά τε |helmet; ... |braid τρόπον τινὰ βάρβαρον
 οὐκ εὐαπήγητον, ἀσπίδας δὲ καὶ |spear |point καὶ ἐγχειρίδια
 |similar to τῇσι Αἰγυπτίῃσι εἶχον, πρὸς δὲ |club, |staff
 ξύλων τετυλωμένα σιδήρῳ, καὶ |linen |breastplate οὔτοι
 δὲ ὑπὸ μὲν |Greek καλέονται Σύριοι, ὑπὸ δὲ τῶν

same manner; for this equipment is in fact Median and not Persian: and the Medes acknowledged as their commander Tigranes an Achaimenid. These in ancient time used to be generally called Arians; but when Medea the Colchian came from Athens to these Arians, they also changed their name. Thus the Medes themselves report about themselves. The Kissians served with equipment in other respects like that of the Persians, but instead of the felt caps they wore fillets: 59and of the Kissians Anaphes the son of Otanes was commander. The Hyrcanians were armed like the Persians, acknowledging as their leader Megapanos, the same who after these events became governor of Babylon.

7.63

The Assyrians served with helmets about their heads made of bronze or plaited in a Barbarian style which it is not easy to describe; and they had shields and spears, and daggers like the Egyptian knives, and moreover they had wooden clubs with knobs of iron, and corslets of linen. These are by the Hellenes called Syrians, but by the Barbarians they have been called

*vocabulary***αἰχμή** spear point ~acute**ἀναξυρίδες** Persian pants**ἄξινη** (ι) war-axe**ἐγχειρίδιος** handle, hand tool, dagger**εἶμα** -τος (n, 3) garment ~vest**ἐνδύω** go into, put on**ἐπιχώριος** native**καλάμινος** of reed**μεταξύ** between**οἰστός** arrow**Πέρσης** Persian**πήγνυμι** (ὄ) stick, set, build ~fang**σίδηρος** iron ~siderite**στέλλω** prepare, send, furl ~apostle

βαρβάρων Ἀσσύριοι ἐκλήθησαν. τούτων δὲ μεταξὺ
Χαλδαῖοι. ἦρχε δὲ σφέων Ὀτάσπης ὁ Ἀρταχαίεω.

7.64

Βάκτριοι δὲ περὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι ἀγχότατα τῶν
Μηδικῶν ἔχοντες ἐστρατεύοντο, τόξα δὲ καλάμινα
ἐπιχώρια καὶ αἰχμὰς βραχέας. Σάκαι δὲ οἱ Σκύθαι περὶ
μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι κυρβασίας ἐς ὅξυν ἀπηγμέναις ὀρθὰς
εἶχον πεπηγυίας, ἀναξυρίδας δὲ ἐνεδεδύκεσαν, τόξα δὲ
ἐπιχώρια καὶ ἐγχειρίδια, πρὸς δὲ καὶ ἀξίνας σαγάρεις εἶχον.
τούτους δὲ ἔοντας Σκύθας Ἀμυργίους Σάκας ἐκάλεον·
οἱ γὰρ Πέρσαι πάντας τοὺς Σκύθας καλέουσι Σάκας.
Βακτριῶν δὲ καὶ Σακέων ἦρχε Ὑστάσπης ὁ Δαρείου τε
καὶ Ἀτόσσης τῆς Κύρου.

7.65

Ἴνδοι δὲ εἴματα μὲν ἐνδεδυκότες ἀπὸ ξύλων πεποιημένα,
τόξα δὲ καλάμινα εἶχον καὶ ὀιστοὺς καλαμίνουσ· ἐπὶ δὲ
σίδηρος ἦν. ἐσταλμένοι μὲν δὴ ἦσαν οὕτω Ἴνδοί,

βαρβάρων Ἀσσύριοι ἐκλήθησαν. τούτων δὲ |between
Χαλδαῖοι. ἦρχε δὲ σφέων Ὀτάσπης ὁ Ἀρταχάειω.

7.64

Βάκριοι δὲ περὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι ἀγχότατα τῶν
Μηδικῶν ἔχοντες ἐστρατεύοντο, τόξα δὲ |of reed
|native καὶ |spear
|point βραχέας. Σάκαι δὲ οἱ Σκύθαι περὶ
μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι κυρβασίας ἐς ὅξυν ἀπηγμένας ὀρθὰς
εἶχον |stick, set, build|Persian pants δὲ |go into, put on , τόξα δὲ
|native καὶ ἐγχειρίδια, πρὸς δὲ καὶ |axe ταγάρεις εἶχον.
τούτους δὲ ἑόντας Σκύθας Ἀμυργίους Σάκας ἐκάλεον·
οἱ γὰρ Πέρσαι πάντας τοὺς Σκύθας καλέουσι Σάκας.
Βακτρίων δὲ καὶ Σακέων ἦρχε Ὑστάσπης ὁ Δαρείου τε
καὶ Ἀτόσσης τῆς Κύρου.

7.65

Ἴνδοι δὲ |garment μὲν |go into, put on ὑπὸ ξύλων πεποιημένα,
τόξα δὲ |of reed εἶχον καὶ |arrow |of reed ἐπὶ δὲ
|iron ἦν. |prepare, send, furl ἣ ἦσαν οὕτω Ἴνδοί,

always Assyrians: [among these were the Chaldeans]: and the commander of them was Otaspes the son of Artachaies.

7.64

The Bactrians served wearing about their heads nearly the same covering as the Medes, and having native bows of reed and short spears. The Scaran Scythians had about their heads caps which were carried up to a point and set upright and stiff; and they wore trousers, and carried native bows and daggers, and besides this axes of the kind called sagaris. These were called Amyrgian Sacans, being in fact Scythians; for the Persians call all the Scythians Sacans: and of the Bactrians and Sacans the commander was Hystaspes, the son of Dareios and of Atossa the daughter of Cyrus.

7.65

The Indians wore garments made of tree-wool, and they had bows of reed and arrows of reed with iron points. Thus were the Indians equipped; and serving with the rest they had been

vocabulary

ἄκινάκης -ου (m, 1) Persian short sword

ἀνατείνω lift, reach out, threaten

βάπτω submerge ~baptize

εἶμα -τος (n, 3) garment ~vest

ἐνδύω go into, put on

ἐπιχώριος native

καλάμινος of reed

παρατίθημι put near, put at risk
~thesis

πέδιλον (ῑ) sandals ~pedal

προστάσσω post at, attach to, command

σκευάζω prepare, collect

σκευή equipment

συστρατεύω join in an expedition

προσετετάχατο δὲ συστρατευόμενοι Φαρναζάθρη τῷ Ἀρταβάτῳ.

7.66

ἄριοι δὲ τόξοισι μὲν ἐσκευασμένοι ἦσαν Μηδικοῖσι, τὰ δὲ ἄλλα κατὰ περ Βάκτριοι. Ἀρίων δὲ ἦρχε Σισάμνης ὁ Ὑδάρνεος. Πάρθοι δὲ καὶ Χοράσμοι καὶ Σόγδοι τε καὶ Γανδάριοι καὶ Δαδίκαι τὴν αὐτὴν σκευὴν ἔχοντες τὴν καὶ Βάκτριοι ἐστρατεύοντο. τούτων δὲ ἦρχον οἶδε. Πάρθων μὲν καὶ Χορασμίων Ἀρτάβαζος ὁ Φαρνάκεος, Σόγδων δὲ Ἀζάνης ὁ Ἀρταίου, Γανδαρίων δὲ καὶ Δαδικέων Ἀρτύφιος ὁ Ἀρταβάνου.

7.67

Κάσπιοι δὲ σισύρνας τε ἐνδεδυκότες καὶ τόξα ἐπιχώρια καλάμινᾳ ἔχοντες καὶ ἀκινάκας ἐστρατεύοντο. οὗτοι μὲν οὕτω ἐσκευάδατο, ἡγεμόνα παρεχόμενοι Ἀριόμαρδον τὸν Ἀρτυφίου ἀδελφεόν, Σαράγγαι δὲ εἴματα μὲν βεβαμμένα ἐνέπρεπον ἔχοντες, πέδιλα δὲ ἐς γόνυ ἀνατείνοντα εἶχον,

|post at, attach to, δὲ |join in an expedition Φαρναζάθρη τῷ
|command
Ἄρταβάτew.

7.66

ἄριοι δὲ τόξοισι μὲν |prepare, collect ἦσαν Μηδικοῖσι, τὰ δὲ
ἄλλα κατὰ περ Βάκριοι. Ἀρίων δὲ ἦρχε Σισάμνης ὁ
Ὑδάρνεος. Πάρθοι δὲ καὶ Χοράσμοι καὶ Σόγδοι τε καὶ
Γανδάριοι καὶ Δαδίκαι τὴν αὐτὴν |equipment ἔχοντες τὴν καὶ
Βάκριοι ἐστρατεύοντο. τούτων δὲ ἦρχον οἶδε. Πάρθων
μὲν καὶ Χορασμίων Ἀρτάβαζος ὁ Φαρνάκεος, Σόγδων δὲ
Ἀζάνης ὁ Ἀρταίου, Γανδαρίων δὲ καὶ Δαδικέων Ἀρτύφιος
ὁ Ἀρταβάνου.

7.67

Κάσπιοι δὲ σισύρνας τε |go into, put on αἱ τόξᾱ |native
|of reed ἔχοντες καὶ |Persian ἔστρατεύοντο. οὗτοι μὲν
|short
|sword
οὕτω ἐσκευάδατο, ἡγεμόνα παρεχόμενοι Ἀριόμαρδον τὸν
Ἀρτυφίου ἀδελφεόν, Σαράγγαι δὲ |garment μὲν |submerge
ἐνέπρεπον ἔχοντες, |sandals δὲ ἐς γόνυ |lift, reach out, εἶχον,
|threaten

assigned to Pharnazathres the son of Artabates.

7.66

The Arians were equipped with Median bows, and in other respects like the Bactrians: and of the Arians Sisamnes the son of Hydarnes was in command. The Parthians and Chorasmians and Sogdians and Gandarians and Dadicans served with the same equipment as the Bactrians. Of these the commanders were, Artabazos the son of Pharnakes of the Parthians and Chorasmians, Azanes the son of Artaios of the Sogdians, and Artyphios the son of Artabanos of the Gandarians and Dadicans. The Caspians served wearing coats of skin and having native bows of reed and short swords: thus were these equipped; and they acknowledged as their leader Ariomardos the brother of Artyphios. The Sarangians were conspicuous among the rest by wearing dyed garments; and they had boots reaching up to the knee, and

*vocabulary***αἰχμή** spear point ~acute**γλύφω** carve ~glyph**ἐγχειρίδιος** handle, hand tool, dagger**ἐνάπτω** clad, bind; set on fire**ἐπιχώριος** native**ζειρά** girded coat**καλάμινος** of reed**οἰστός** arrow**παλίντονος** bent back**παρδαλέα** leopard skin**σίδηρος** iron ~siderite**σκευάζω** prepare, collect**τετράπηγος** four cubits tall**ὑποζώννυμι** (υῶ) undergird**φοῖνιξ** -χος (m) red or purple dye or color; bay (horse); palm tree

τόξα δὲ καὶ αἰχμὰς Μηδικάς. Σαραγγέων δὲ ἦρχε Φερεινδάτης ὁ Μεγαβάζου. Πάκτυες δὲ σισυρνοφόροι τε ἦσαν καὶ τόξα ἐπιχώρια εἶχον καὶ ἐγχειρίδια. Πάκτυες δὲ ἄρχοντα παρείχοντο Ἀρταῦντην τὸν Ἰθαμίτρεω.

7.68

Οὔτιοι δὲ καὶ Μύκοι τε καὶ Παρικάνιοι ἐσκευασμένοι ἦσαν κατὰ περ Πάκτυες. τούτων δὲ ἦρχον οἶδε, Οὔτίων μὲν καὶ Μύκων Ἀρσαμένης ὁ Δαρείου, Παρικανίων δὲ Σιρομίτρης ὁ Οἰοβάζου.

7.69

Ἀράβιοι δὲ ζειράς ὑπεζωσμένοι ἦσαν, τόξα δὲ παλίντονα εἶχον πρὸς δεξιὰ, μακρά. Αἰθίοπες δὲ παρδαλέας τε καὶ λεοντέας ἐναμμένοι, τόξα δὲ εἶχον ἐκ φοίνικος σπάθης πεποιημένα, μακρά, τετραπηχέων οὐκ ἐλάσσω, ἐπὶ δὲ καλαμίνους ὀιστοὺς μικροὺς· ἀντὶ δὲ σιδήρου ἐπὶ λίθος ὁξὺς πεποιημένος, τῷ καὶ τὰς σφρηγίδας γλύφουσι· πρὸς δὲ αἰχμὰς εἶχον, ἐπὶ δὲ κέρας δορκάδος ἐπὶ

τόξα δὲ καὶ ^{|spear}_{|point} Μηδικάς. Σαραγγέων δὲ ἦρχε
 Φερενδάτης ὁ Μεγαβάζου. Πάκτυες δὲ σισυρνοφόροι τε
 ἦσαν καὶ τόξα ^{|native} εἶχον καὶ ἐγχειρίδια. Πάκτυες δὲ
 ἄρχοντα παρείχοντο Ἀρταύντην τὸν Ἰθαμίτρεω.

7.68

Οὔτιοι δὲ καὶ Μύκοι τε καὶ Παρικάνιοι ^{|prepare, collect} ἦσαν
 κατὰ περ Πάκτυες. τούτων δὲ ἦρχον οἶδε, Οὐτίων μὲν καὶ
 Μύκων Ἀρσαμένης ὁ Δαρείου, Παρικανίων δὲ Σιρομίτρης
 ὁ Οἰοβάζου.

7.69

Ἀράβιοι δὲ ^{|girded |undergird}_{|coat} ἦσαν, τόξα δὲ ^{|bent back}
 εἶχον πρὸς δεξιὰ, μακρά. Αἰθίοπες δὲ παρδαλέας τε καὶ
 λεοντέας ^{|clad, bind;}_{|set on fire} τόξα δὲ εἶχον ἐκ ^{|red, red dye;}_{|palm tree} γάθης
 πεποιημένα, μακρά, ^{|four cubits tall} οὐκ ἐλάσσω, ἐπὶ δὲ
^{|of reed} ^{|arrow} μικρούς· ἀντὶ δὲ σιδήρου ἐπὶν λίθος
 ὁξὺς πεποιημένος, τῷ καὶ τὰς σφρηγίδας ^{|carve} πρὸς
 δὲ ^{|spear}_{|point} εἶχον, ἐπὶ δὲ κέρας δορκάδος ἐπὶν

Median bows and spears: of these the commander was Pherendates the son of Megabazos. The Pactyans were wearers of skin coats and had native bows and daggers: these acknowledged as their commander Artayntes the son of Ithamitres.

7.68

The Utians and Mycans and Paricanians were equipped like the Pactyans: of these the commanders were, Arsamenes the son of Dareios of the Utians and Mycans, and of the Paricanians Siromitres the son of Oiobazos.

7.69

The Arabians wore loose mantles girt up, and they carried at their right side bows that bent backward of great length. The Ethiopians had skins of leopards and lions tied upon them, and bows made of a slip of palm-wood, which were of great length, not less than four cubits, and for them small arrows of reed with a sharpened stone at the head instead of iron, the same stone with which they engrave seals: in addition to this they had spears, and on them was the sharpened horn of a gazelle

vocabulary

ἀνατολή a rising in the sky ~apostle
διαλλάσσω exchange; differ; reconcile
διξός double
εἶδος -ους (n, 3) appearance, form
 ~-oid
ἐκδέρω to skin ~dermatology
ἥμισυς half ~hemisphere
λόγχη spear point; lot

λοφιά bristly back
λόφος neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop
οὔς οὔατος (n) ear
προμετωπίδιος on the forehead
προστάσσω post at, attach to, command
ρόπαλον club, staff
σάπτω pack, compress
στέργω love; be content

ὃςὐν πεποιημένον τρόπον λόγχης· εἶχον δὲ καὶ ρόπαλα τυλωτά. τοῦ δὲ σώματος τὸ μὲν ἥμισυ ἐξηλείφοντο γύψῳ ἰόντες ἐς μάχην, τὸ δὲ ἄλλο ἥμισυ μίλτω. Ἀραβίων δὲ καὶ Αἰθιοπῶν τῶν ὑπὲρ Αἰγύπτου οἰκημένων ἦρχε Ἀρσάμης ὁ Δαρείου καὶ Ἀρτυστῶνης τῆς Κύρου θυγατρός, τὴν μάλιστα στέρξας τῶν γυναικῶν Δαρείῳ εἰκὼ χρυσέην σφυρήλατον ἐποίησατο.

7.70

τῶν μὲν δὴ ὑπὲρ Αἰγύπτου Αἰθιοπῶν καὶ Ἀραβίων ἦρχε Ἀρσάμης, οἱ δὲ ἀπὸ ἡλίου ἀνατολέων Αἰθίοπες διξοὶ γὰρ δὴ ἐστρατεύοντο προσετετάχατο τοῖσι Ἰνδοῖσι, διαλλάσσοντες εἶδος μὲν οὐδὲν τοῖσι ἐτέροισι, φωνὴν δὲ καὶ τρίχωμα μῶνον· οἱ μὲν γὰρ ἀπὸ ἡλίου Αἰθίοπες ἰθύτριχες εἰσί, οἱ δ' ἐκ τῆς Λιβύης οὐλότατον τρίχωμα ἔχουσι πάντων ἀνθρώπων. οὗτοι δὲ οἱ ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας Αἰθίοπες τὰ μὲν πλέω κατὰ περ Ἰνδοὶ ἐσεσάχατο, προμετωπίδια δὲ ἵππων εἶχον ἐπὶ τῇσι κεφαλῇσι σύν τε τοῖσι ὥσὶ ἐκδεδαρμένα καὶ τῇ λοφιῇ· καὶ ἀντὶ μὲν λόφου

ὁξὺν πεποιημένον τρόπον |spear
point;
lot |club,
staff
τυλωτά. τοῦ δὲ σώματος τὸ μὲν |half ἐξηλείφοντο γύψω
ιόντες ἐς μάχην, τὸ δὲ ἄλλο |half μίλτω. Ἀραβίων δὲ καὶ
Αἰθιοῶν τῶν ὑπὲρ Αἰγύπτου οἰκημένων ἦρχε Ἀρσάμης
ὁ Δαρείου καὶ Ἀρτυστώνης τῆς Κύρου θυγατρός, τὴν
μάλιστα |love; be content γυναικῶν Δαρείου εἰκὼ χρυσέην
σφυρήλατον ἐποίησατο.

7.70

τῶν μὲν δὴ ὑπὲρ Αἰγύπτου Αἰθιοῶν καὶ Ἀραβίων
ἦρχε Ἀρσάμης, οἱ δὲ ἀπὸ ἡλίου |a rising in the sky ὕπες
|double, ἂρ δὴ ἐστρατεύοντο |post at, attach to, τοῖσι Ἴνδοῖσι,
|command
|exchange; differ;|form μὲν οὐδὲν τοῖσι ἑτέροισι, φωνὴν δὲ
|reconcile
καὶ τρίχωμα μῦνον· οἱ μὲν γὰρ ἀπὸ ἡλίου Αἰθίοπες
ιθύτριχες εἰσί, οἱ δ' ἐκ τῆς Λιβύης οὐλότατον τρίχωμα
ἔχουσι πάντων ἀνθρώπων. οὗτοι δὲ οἱ ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας
Αἰθίοπες τὰ μὲν πλέω κατὰ περ Ἴνδοι |pack,
|compress
|on the forehead δὲ ἵππων εἶχον ἐπὶ τῇσι κεφαλῇσι σύν τε
τοῖσι |ear |to skin καὶ τῇ λοφιῇ· καὶ ἀντὶ μὲν |neck, crest on a hel-
met, hilltop

by way of a spear-head, and they had also clubs with knobs upon them. Of their body they used to smear over half with white, when they went into battle, and the other half with red. Of the Arabians and the Ethiopians who dwelt above Egypt the commander was Arsames, the son of Dareios and of Artystone, the daughter of Cyrus, whom Dareios loved most of all his wives, and had an image made of her of beaten gold.

7.70

Of the Ethiopians above Egypt and of the Arabians the commander, I say, was Arsames; but the Ethiopians from the direction of the sunrising (for the Ethiopians were in two bodies) had been appointed to serve with the Indians, being in no way different from the other Ethiopians, but in their language and in the nature of their hair only; for the Ethiopians from the East are straight-haired, but those of Libya have hair more thick and woolly than that of any other men. These Ethiopians from Asia were armed for the most part like the Indians, but they had upon their heads the skin of a horse's forehead flayed off with the ears and the mane, and the mane served instead of a crest, while they had the

*vocabulary***αἰχμή** spear point ~acute**ἄκόντιον** diminutive of javelin**ἀνατείνω** lift, reach out, threaten**γέρανος** (f) crane (bird)**δορά** hide, flaying**ἐγχειρίδιος** handle, hand tool, dagger**ἐπιχώριος** native**καταχράομαι** (mp) abuse, use up;
(act) be enough**κνήμη** lower leg**κράνος** -εος (n, 3) helmet; ship's ram**λοφιά** bristly back**οὔς οὔατος** (n) ear**πέδιλον** (ī) sandals ~pedal**Πέρσης** Persian**πήγνυμι** (ū) stick, set, build ~fang**πλέκω** braid ~complex**σκευή** equipment**σχύτινος** (ū) of leather

ἢ λοφιὴν κατέχρα, τὰ δὲ ὦτα τῶν ἵππων ὀρθὰ πεπηγότα
εἶχον· προβλήματα δὲ ἀντ' ἀσπίδων ἐποιεῦντο γεράνων
δοράς.

7.71

Λίβυες δὲ σκευὴν μὲν σκυτίνην ἦισαν ἔχοντες, ἀκοντίοισι
δὲ ἐπικανύτοισι χρεώμενοι, ἄρχοντα δὲ παρείχοντο
Μασσάγην τὸν Ὅαρίζου.

7.72

Παφλαγόνες δὲ ἐστρατεύοντο ἐπὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι
κράνεα πεπλεγμένα ἔχοντες, ἀσπίδας δὲ μικρὰς αἰχμὰς τε
οὐ μεγάλας, πρὸς δὲ ἀκόντια καὶ ἐγχειρίδια, περὶ δὲ τοὺς
πόδας πέδιλα ἐπιχώρια ἐς μέσσην κνήμην ἀνατείνοντα.
Λίγυες δὲ καὶ Ματιηνοὶ καὶ Μαριανδανοὶ τε καὶ Σύριοι
τὴν αὐτὴν ἔχοντες Παφλαγόσι ἐστρατεύοντο. οἱ δὲ
Σύριοι οὗτοι ὑπὸ Περσέων Καππαδόκαι καλέονται.
Παφλαγόνων μὲν νυν καὶ Ματιηνῶν Δῶτος ὁ Μεγασίδρου
ἦρχε, Μαριανδυνῶν δὲ καὶ Λιγύων καὶ Συρίων Γοβρύης ὁ

ἡ λοφιὴ κατέχρα, τὰ δὲ |ear τῶν ἵππων ὀρθὰ |stick, set, build
εἶχον· προβλήματα δὲ αὐτ' ἀσπίδων ἐποιεῦντο |crane (bird)

|hide,
|flaying

7.71

Λίβνες δὲ |equipment |of leather ἦσαν ἔχοντες, |diminutive
|of javelin
δὲ ἐπικαύτοισι χρεώμενοι, ἄρχοντα δὲ παρείχοντο
Μασσάγην τὸν Ὀαρίζου.

7.72

Παφλαγόνες δὲ ἐστρατεύοντο ἐπὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι
|helmet; |braid ἔχοντες, ἀσπίδας δὲ μικρὰς |spear τε
|ship's |point
|ram
οὐ μεγάλας, πρὸς δὲ |diminutive |ἐγχειρίδια, περὶ δὲ τοὺς
|of javelin
πόδας |sandals |native ἐς μέσσην |lower leg |lift, reach out,
|threaten
Λίγνες δὲ καὶ Ματιηνοὶ καὶ Μαριανδυνοὶ τε καὶ Σύριοι
τὴν αὐτὴν ἔχοντες Παφλαγόσι ἐστρατεύοντο. οἱ δὲ
Σύριοι οὗτοι ὑπὸ Περσέων Καππαδόκαι καλέονται.
Παφλαγόνων μὲν νυν καὶ Ματιηνῶν Δῶτος ὁ Μεγασίδρου
ἦρχε, Μαριανδυνῶν δὲ καὶ Λιγύων καὶ Συρίων Γοβρύης ὁ

ears of the horse set up straight and stiff: and instead of shields they used to make defences to hold before themselves of the skins of cranes.

7.71

The Libyans went with equipments of leather, and they used javelins burnt at the point. These acknowledged as their commander Massages the son of Oarizos.

7.72

The Paphlagonians served with plaited helmets upon their heads, small shields, and spears of no great size, and also javelins and daggers; and about their feet native boots reaching up to the middle of the shin. The Ligians and Matienians and Mariandynoi and Syrians served with the same equipment as the Paphlagonians: these Syrians are called by the Persians Cappadokians. Of the Paphlagonians and Matienians the commander was Dotos the son of Megasidros, and of the Mariandynoi and Lygians and Syrians, Gobryas, who was the

*vocabulary***ἄατος** (αᾶ) insatiate of**ἀγχοτάτω** nearest**ἄκόντιον** diminutive of javelin**ἄποικος** abroad, colonizing**ἐπιχώριος** native**ἐπωνύμιος** called, named**κράνος** -εος (n, 3) helmet; ship's ram**μεταβαίνω** change the subject ~basis**μεταβάλλω** alter, transform**πάλαι** long ago ~paleo**παλαίω** wrestle ~Pallas**πάλη** wrestling ~Pallas**πάλλω** shake, brandish ~Pallas**παραλλάσσω** change, differ**σάττω** pack, compress**σκευή** equipment**συναμφότεροι** both together**σύνοικος** fellow inhabitant**φρύγω** (ϝ) roast, parch

Δαρείου τε καὶ Ἀρτυστῶνης.

7.73

φρύγες δὲ ἀγχοτάτω τῆς Παφλαγονικῆς σκευὴν εἶχον, ὀλίγον παραλλάσσοντες. οἱ δὲ Φρύγες, ὡς Μακεδόνες λέγουσι, ἐκαλέοντο Βρίγες χρόνον ὅσον Εὐρωπήιοι ἔοντες σύνοικοι ἦσαν Μακεδόσι, μεταβάντες δὲ ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην ἅμα τῇ χώρῃ καὶ τὸ οὖνομα μετέβαλον ἐς Φρύγας. Ἀρμένιοι δὲ κατὰ περ Φρύγες ἐσεσάχατο, ἔοντες Φρυγῶν ἄποικοι. τούτων συναμφοτέρων ἦρχε Ἀρτόχμης Δαρείου ἔχων θυγατέρα.

7.74

Λυδοὶ δὲ ἀγχοτάτω τῶν Ἑλληνικῶν εἶχον ὅπλα. οἱ δὲ Λυδοὶ Μηρίονες ἐκαλεῦντο τὸ πάλαι, ἐπὶ δὲ Λυδοῦ τοῦ Ἄτους ἔσχον τὴν ἐπωνυμίην, μεταβαλόντες τὸ οὖνομα. Μυσοὶ δὲ ἐπὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι εἶχον κράνεα ἐπιχώρια, ἀσπίδας δὲ μικράς, ἀκοντίοισι δὲ ἐχρέωντο ἐπικαύτοισι. οὗτοι δὲ εἰς Λυδῶν ἄποικοι, ἀπ' Ὀλύμπου δὲ ὄρεος

Δαρείου τε καὶ Ἀρτυστώνης.

7.73

|roast, parch δὲ |nearest τῆς Παφλαγονικῆς |equipment ἔχον,
 ὀλίγον |change, differ . οἱ δὲ Φρύγες, ὥς Μακεδόνες
 λέγουσι, ἐκαλέοντο Βρίγες χρόνον ὅσον Εὐρωπῆιοι ἐόντες
 |fellow |inhabitant ἦσαν Μακεδόσι, |change the subject τὴν Ἀσίην ἅμα
 τῇ χώρῃ καὶ τὸ οὖνομα |alter, |transform ἐς Φρύγας. Ἀρμένιοι
 δὲ κατὰ περ Φρύγας |pack, |compress , ἐόντες Φρυγῶν |abroad, |colonizing
 τούτων |both together ἦρχε Ἀρτόχμης Δαρείου ἔχων
 θυγατέρα.

7.74

Λυδοὶ δὲ |nearest τῶν Ἑλληνικῶν εἶχον ὅπλα. οἱ δὲ
 Λυδοὶ Μηρίονες ἐκαλεῦντο τὸ πάλαι, ἐπὶ δὲ Λυδοῦ τοῦ
 Ἄτους ἔσχον τὴν |called, |named , |alter, transform τὸ οὖνομα.
 Μυσοὶ δὲ ἐπὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι εἶχον |helmet; |native ,
 ἀσπίδας δὲ μικράς, |diminutive |of javelin δὲ ἐχρέωντο ἐπικαύτοισι.
 οὗτοι δὲ εἰς Λυδῶν |abroad, |colonizing , ἰπ' Ὀλύμπου δὲ ὄρεος

son of Dareios and Artystone.

7.73

The Phrygians had an equipment very like that of the Paphlagonians with some slight difference. Now the Phrygians, as the Macedonians say, used to be called Brigians during the time that they were natives of Europe and dwelt with the Macedonians; but after they had changed into Asia, with their country they changed also their name and were called Phrygians. The Armenians were armed just like the Phrygians, being settlers from the Phrygians. Of these two together the commander was Artochmes, who was married to a daughter of Dareios.

7.74

The Lydians had arms very closely resembling those of the Hellenes. Now the Lydians were in old time called Medonians, and they were named again after Lydos the son of Atys, changing their former name. The Mysians had upon their heads native helmets, and they bore small shields and used javelins burnt at the point. These are settlers from the Lydians, and from mount Olympos they are called

*vocabulary***ἄζω** dry up ~ash**ἄκόντιον** diminutive of javelin**ἄλωπεκῇ** fox skin**ἄω** aor: to sate ~sate**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis**ἐγχειρίδιος** handle, hand tool, dagger**εἰσβάλλω** throw into ~ballistic**ἐξανίστημι** raise, bring/send out**ζειρά** girded coat**ἦθος ἥθεος** (n, 3) habit, habitat ~ethos**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider

~theater

κνήμη lower leg**κράνος** -εος (n, 3) helmet; ship's ram**νεβρός** (f) fawn**οὔς οὔατος** (n) ear**πέδιλον** (ī) sandals ~pedal**πέλτη** shield, spear ~pelt**πέλτης** -ου (m, 1) type of river fish

~pelt

περιβάλλω act: excel; mid: put on clothing ~ballistic**ποικίλλω** make elaborately**ποικίλος** ornamented; various**πρόβολος** thing sticking out ~ballistic

καλέονται Ὀλυμπιηνοί. Λυδῶν δὲ καὶ Μυσῶν ἦρχε Ἄρταφρένης ὁ Ἄρταφρένης ὃς ἐς Μαραθῶνα ἐσέβαλε ἅμα Δάτι.

7.75

Θρήικες δὲ ἐπὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι ἀλωπεκέας ἔχοντες ἐστρατεύοντο, περὶ δὲ τὸ σῶμα κιθῶνας, ἐπὶ δὲ ζειράς περιβεβλημένοι ποικίλας, περὶ δὲ τοὺς πόδας τε καὶ τὰς κνήμας πέδιλα νεβρῶν, πρὸς δὲ ἀκόντιά τε καὶ πέλτας καὶ ἐγχειρίδια μικρά. οὗτοι δὲ διαβάντες μὲν ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην ἐκλήθησαν Βιθυνοί, τὸ δὲ πρότερον ἐκαλέοντο, ὥς αὐτοὶ λέγουσι, Στρυμόνιοι, οἰκέοντες ἐπὶ Στρυμόνι· ἐξαναστῆναι δὲ φασὶ ἐξ ἡθέων ὑπὸ Τευκρῶν τε καὶ Μυσῶν. Θρηίκων δὲ τῶν ἐν τῇ Ἀσίῃ ἦρχε Βασσάκης ὁ Ἄρταβάνου.

7.76

..... ἀσπίδας δὲ ὠμοβοΐνας εἶχον σμικράς, καὶ προβόλους δύο λυκιοεργέας ἕκαστος εἶχε, ἐπὶ δὲ τῇσι κεφαλῇσι κράνεα χάλκεα· πρὸς δὲ τοῖσι κράνεσι ὦτά τε καὶ κέρα

καλέονται Ὀλυμπιηνοί. Λυδῶν δὲ καὶ Μυσῶν ἦρχε
Ἄρταφρένης ὁ Ἄρταφρένεος ὃς ἐς Μαραθῶνα ἐσέβαλε
ἅμα Δάτι.

7.75

Θρήικες δὲ ἐπὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι |fox skin ἔχοντες
ἐστρατεύοντο, περὶ δὲ τὸ σῶμα κιθῶνας, ἐπὶ δὲ |girded coat
|excel; don ποικίλας, περὶ δὲ τοὺς πόδας τε καὶ τὰς
|lower leg |sandals |fawn , πρὸς δὲ |diminutive εἰ καὶ πέλτας
|of javelin
καὶ ἐγχειρίδια μικρά. οὗτοι δὲ |pass over, cross ἐς τὴν
Ἀσίην ἐκλήθησαν Βιθυνοί, τὸ δὲ πρότερον ἐκαλέοντο,
ὥς αὐτοὶ λέγουσι, Στρυμόνιοι, οἰκέοντες ἐπὶ Στρυμόνι·
|raise, bring/send out φασὶ ἐξ ἡθέων ὑπὸ Τευκρῶν τε καὶ Μυσῶν.
Θρηίκων δὲ τῶν ἐν τῇ Ἀσίῃ ἦρχε Βασσάκης ὁ Ἄρταβάνου.

7.76

..... ἀσπίδας δὲ ὠμοβοῦνας εἶχον σμικράς, καὶ |thing
|sticking
|out
δύο λυκιοεργέας ἕκαστος εἶχε, ἐπὶ δὲ τῇσι κεφαλῇσι
|helmet; ship's ram πρὸς δὲ τοῖσι |helmet; |ear
|ship's
|ram τε καὶ κέρα

Olympienoi. Of the Lydians and Mysians the commander was Artaphrenes the son of Artaphrenes, he who invaded Marathon together with Datis.

7.75

The Thracians served having fox-skins upon their heads and tunics about their body, with loose mantles of various colours thrown round over them; and about their feet and lower part of the leg they wore boots of deer-skin; and besides this they had javelins and round bucklers and small daggers. These when they had crossed over into Asia came to be called Bithynians, but formerly they were called, as they themselves report, Strymonians, since they dwelt upon the river Strymon; and they say that they were driven out of their abode by the Teucrians and Mysians. Of the Thracians who lived in Asia the commander was Bassakes the son of Artabanos.

76.... and they had small shields of raw ox-hide, and each man carried two hunting-spears of Lykian workmanship. On their heads they wore helmets of bronze, and to the helmets the ears and horns of an ox were attached,

*vocabulary***αἰχμή** spear point ~acute**διέξειμι** pass through; recount ~ion**διφθέρα** leather**εἶμα** -τος (n, 3) garment ~vest**κνήμη** lower leg**κυνέα** -ῆς helmet ~hound**κύνεος** doglike, shameless ~hound**λόγχη** spear point; lot**λόφος** neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop**μάκρων** -ος (m, 3) longhead (ethnic term)**μετεξέτεροι** (+gen) some ones of**μόσχος** calf (animal)**ξύλινος** wooden**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add
~ion**ῥάκος** -ους (n, 3) rag**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark
~semaphore**σκευάζω** prepare, collect**σκευή** equipment**συντάσσω** gather, assemble ~syntax**φοινίκεος** (i) purple, red **χρηστήριον** oracle, response

προσῆν βοὸς χάλκεα, ἐπῆσαν δὲ καὶ λόφοι· τὰς δὲ κνήμας
 ῥάκεσι φοινικέοισι κατειλίχατο. ἐν τούτοισι τοῖσι ἀνδράσι
 Ἄρεος ἐστὶ χρηστήριον.

7.77

Καβηλέες δὲ οἱ Μηῖονες, Λασόνιοι δὲ καλούμενοι, τὴν
 αὐτὴν Κίλιξι εἶχον σκευήν, τὴν ἐγώ, ἐπεὰν κατὰ τὴν
 Κιλικῶν τάξιν διεξιῶν γένωμαι, τότε σημανέω. Μιλύαι δὲ
 αἰχμὰς τε βραχέας εἶχον καὶ εἵματα ἐνεπεπορπέατο· εἶχον
 δὲ αὐτῶν τόξα μετεξέτεροι Λύκια, περὶ δὲ τῇσι κεφαλῇσι
 ἐκ διφθερέων πεποιημένας κυνέας. τούτων πάντων ἦρχε
 Βάδρης ὁ Ὑστάνεος.

7.78

μόσχοι δὲ περὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι κυνέας ξυλῖνας εἶχον,
 ἀσπίδας δὲ καὶ αἰχμὰς σμικράς· λόγχοι δὲ ἐπῆσαν
 μεγάλοι. Τιβαρηνοὶ δὲ καὶ Μάκρωνες καὶ Μοσσύνικοι
 κατὰ περ Μόσχοι ἐσκευασμένοι ἐστρατεύοντο. τούτους δὲ
 συνέτασσαν ἄρχοντες οἶδε, Μόσχους μὲν καὶ Τιβαρηνούς

προσῆν βοὸς χάλκεα, ἐπήσαν δὲ καὶ |neck, crest ὀνᾶ|lower leg
|helmet, hilltop

|rag |purple, red κατειλίχато. ἐν τούτοισι τοῖσι ἀνδράσι

Ἄρεος ἐστὶ |oracle,
|response

7.77

Καβηλᾶες δὲ οἱ Μηῖονες, Λασόνιοι δὲ καλούμενοι, τὴν
αὐτὴν Κίλιξι εἶχον |equipment ἣν ἐγὼ, ἐπεὰν κατὰ τὴν

Κιλικῶν τάξιν |pass through; μαι, τότε |give orders to; λύαι δὲ
|recount |show; mark

|spear τε βραχέας εἶχον καὶ |garment ἔνεπεπορπέατο· εἶχον
|point

δὲ αὐτῶν τόξα |(+gen) some ones of..., περὶ δὲ τῇσι κεφαλῇσι

ἐκ |leather πεποιημένας κυνέας. τούτων πάντων ἦρχε

Βάδρης ὁ Ὑστάνεος.

7.78

|calf δὲ περὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι κυνέας |wooden εἶχον,

ἀσπίδας δὲ καὶ |spear σμικράς· |spear δὲ ἐπήσαν
|point |point;

μεγάλαι. Τιβαρηνοὶ δὲ καὶ |longhead |lot καὶ Μοσσύνοικοι
(ethnic term)

κατὰ περ Μόσχοι |prepare, collect ἐστρατεύοντο. τούτους δὲ

|gather, ἄρχοντες οἶδε, Μόσχους μὲν καὶ Τιβαρηνοὺς
|assemble

in bronze, and upon them also there were crests; and the lower part of their legs was wrapped round with red-coloured strips of cloth. Among these men there is an Oracle of Ares.

7.77

The Meonian Cabelians, who are called Lasonians, had the same equipment as the Kilikians, and what this was I shall explain when in the course of the catalogue I come to the array of the Kilikians. The Milyans had short spears, and their garments were fastened on with buckles; some of them had Lykian bows, and about their heads they had caps made of leather. Of all these Badres the son of Hystanes was in command.

7.78

The Moschoi had wooden caps upon their heads, and shields and small spears, on which long points were set. The Tibarenians and Macronians and Mossynoicoi served with equipment like that of the Moschoi, and these were arrayed together under the following commanders,—the Moschoi and Tibarenians under Ariomardos, who was the

*vocabulary***ἀγγοτάτω** nearest**αἰχμή** spear point ~acute**ἄκόντιον** diminutive of javelin**δερμάτινος** made of leather

~dermatology

ἐπιχώριος native**ἔσθῃς** clothes ~vest**κατοικίζω** colonize**κράνος** -εος (n, 3) helmet; ship's ram**μάκρων** -ος (m, 3) longhead (ethnic term)**μάχαιρα** knife, dagger**ξύλινος** wooden**ὀπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite**πλεκτός** braided, woven ~plait

Ἀριόμαρδος ὁ Δαρείου τε παῖς καὶ Πάρμνος τῆς Σμέρδιος τοῦ Κύρου, Μάκρωνας δὲ καὶ Μοσσυνοίκους Ἀρταύκτης ὁ Χεράσμιος, ὃς Σηστόν τὴν ἐν Ἑλλησπόντῳ ἐπετρόπευε.

7.79

Μᾶρες δὲ ἐπὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι κράνεα ἐπιχώρια πλεκτὰ εἶχον, ἀσπίδας δὲ δερματίνας μικρὰς καὶ ἀκόντια. Κόλχοι δὲ περὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι κράνεα ξύλινα, ἀσπίδας δὲ ὠμοβοῦνας μικρὰς αἰχμὰς τε βραχέας, πρὸς δὲ μαχαίρας εἶχον. Μαρῶν δὲ καὶ Κόλχων ἦρχε Φαρανδάτης ὁ Τεάσπιος. Ἀλαρόδιοι δὲ καὶ Σάσπειρες κατὰ περ Κόλχοι ὠπλισμένοι ἐστρατεύοντο. τούτων δὲ Μασίστιος ὁ Σιρομίτρεω ἦρχε.

7.80

τὰ δὲ νησιωτικὰ ἔθνεα τὰ ἐκ τῆς Ἑρυθρῆς θαλάσσης ἐπόμενα, νήσων δὲ ἐν τῇσι τοὺς ἀνασπάστους καλεομένους κατοικίζει βασιλεὺς, ἀγχοτάτω τῶν Μηδικῶν εἶχον ἐσθῆτά τε καὶ ὄπλα. τούτων δὲ τῶν

Ἀριόμαρδος ὁ Δαρείου τε παῖς καὶ Πάρμνος τῆς Σμέρδιος
 τοῦ Κύρου, ^{|longhead}
^{|(ethnic term)} δὲ καὶ Μοσσυνοίκους Ἀρταύκτης
 ὁ Χεράσμιος, ὃς Σηιστὸν τὴν ἐν Ἑλλησπόντῳ ἐπετρόπενε.

7.79

Μᾶρες δὲ ἐπὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι ^{|helmet;} ^{|native} ^{|braided,}
^{|ship's} ^{|woven}
 εἶχον, ἀσπίδας δὲ ^{|made of leather} ^{|ram} καὶ ^{|diminutive} ^{|of javelin} Ἰόλχοι
 δὲ περὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι ^{|helmet;} ^{|wooden} ἀσπίδας δὲ
^{|ship's}
 ὠμοβοῦνας μικρὰς ^{|spear} ^{|ram} τε βραχέας, πρὸς δὲ ^{|knife}
^{|point}
 εἶχον. Μαρῶν δὲ καὶ Κόλχων ἦρχε Φαρανδάτης ὁ
 Τεάσπιος. Ἀλαρόδιοι δὲ καὶ Σάσπειρες κατὰ περ Κόλχοι
^{|prepare, arm} ἐστρατεύοντο. τούτων δὲ Μασίστιος ὁ
 Σιρομίτρεω ἦρχε.

7.80

τὰ δὲ νησιωτικὰ ἔθνεα τὰ ἐκ τῆς Ἐρυθρῆς θαλάσσης
 ἐπόμενα, νήσων δὲ ἐν τῇσι τοὺς ἀνασπάστους
 καλεομένους ^{|colonize} βασιλεύς, ^{|nearest} τῶν
 Μηδικῶν εἶχον ^{|clothes} τε καὶ ὄπλα. τούτων δὲ τῶν

son of Dareios and of Parmys, the daughter of Smerdis son of Cyrus; the Macronians and Mossynoicoi under Artayctes the son of Cherasmis, who was governor of Sestos on the Hellespont.

7.79

The Mares wore on their heads native helmets of plaited work, and had small shields of hide and javelins; and the Colchians wore wooden helmets about their heads, and had small shields of raw ox-hide and short spears, and also knives. Of the Mares and Colchians the commander was Pharandates the son of Teaspis. The Alarodians and Saspeirians served armed like the Colchians; and of these the commander was Masistios the son of Siromitres.

7.80

The island tribes which came with the army from the Erythraian Sea, belonging to the islands in which the king settles those who are called the “Removed,” had clothing and arms very like those of the Medes. Of these islanders the commander was Mardontes the son

vocabulary

ἀνεψιός cousin ~nepotism
ἀποδείκνυμι (ὁ) show, point out;
 appoint; (mid) declare
ἀποδέχομαι accept ~doctrine
διατάσσω arrange, array
ἐξαριθμέω count up; recount
εὖς good, brave, noble
ἥπειρος (f) mainland, continent

νησιώτης -ου (m, 1) insular
ὄον οὓ type of fruit
σημάντωρ commander, driver, herder
 ~semaphore
στρατηγέω be a general
στρατός common people/soldiers
 ~strategy
στρατώω be on a campaign ~strategy
σύμπας (ᾱ) all together

νησιωτέων ἦρχε Μαρδόντης ὁ Βαγαίου, ὃς ἐν Μυκάλη
στρατηγέων δευτέρῳ ἔτεϊ τούτων ἐτελεύτησε ἐν τῇ μάχῃ.

7.81

ταῦτα ἦν τὰ κατ' ἡπειρον στρατευόμενά τε ἔθνεα καὶ
τεταγμένα ἐς τὸν πεζόν. τούτου ὦν τοῦ στρατοῦ
ἦρχον μὲν οὗτοι οἱ περ εἰρέαται, καὶ οἱ διατάξαντες
καὶ ἐξαριθμήσαντες οὗτοι ἦσαν καὶ χιλιάρχας τε καὶ
μυριάρχας ἀποδέξαντες, ἑκατοντάρχας δὲ καὶ δεκάρχας οἱ
μυριάρχαι. τελέων δὲ καὶ ἐθνέων ἦσαν ἄλλοι σημάντορες.

7.82

ἦσαν μὲν δὴ οὗτοι οἱ περεῖρέαται ἄρχοντες, ἐστρατήγεον
δὲ τούτων τε καὶ τοῦ σύμπαντος στρατουρ' τοῦ πεζοῦ
Μαρδονίος τε ὁ Γοβρύεω καὶ Τριτανταίχμης ὁ Ἀρταβάνου
τοῦ γνώμην θεμένου μὴ στρατεῦσθαι ἐπὶ Ἑλλάδα
καὶ Σμερδομένης ὁ Ὀτάνεω, Δαρείου ἀμφότεροι οὗτοι
ἀδελφεῶν παῖδες, Ξέρξη δὲ ἐγίνοντο ἀνεψιοί, καὶ
Μασίστης ὁ Δαρείου τε καὶ Ἀτόσσης παῖς καὶ Γέργις ὁ

|insular ἦρχε Μαρδόντης ὁ Βαγαίου, ὃς ἐν Μυκάλῃ
στρατηγέων δευτέρῳ ἔτει τούτων ἐτελεύτησε ἐν τῇ μάχῃ.

7.81

ταῦτα ἦν τὰ κατ' |mainland, continent στρατευόμενά τε ἔθνεα καὶ
τεταγμένα ἐς τὸν πεζόν. τούτου ὦν τοῦ στρατοῦ
ἦρχον μὲν οὗτοι οἳ περ εἰρέαται, καὶ οἱ |arrange, array
καὶ |count up; recount οὗτοι ἦσαν καὶ χιλιάρχας τε καὶ
μυριάρχας ἀποδέξαντες, ἑκατοντάρχας δὲ καὶ δεκάρχας οἱ
μυριάρχαι. τελέων δὲ καὶ ἐθνέων ἦσαν ἄλλοι |commander, driver, herder

7.82

ἦσαν μὲν δὴ οὗτοι οἳ περεϊρέαται ἄρχοντες, |be a general
δὲ τούτων τε καὶ τοῦ |all together στρατοῦ τοῦ πεζοῦ
Μαρδονίου τε ὁ Γοβρύεω καὶ Τριτανταίχμης ὁ Ἀρταβάνου
τοῦ γνώμην θεμένου μὴ στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ Ἑλλάδα
καὶ Σμερδομένης ὁ Ὀτάνεω, Δαρείου ἀμφότεροι οὗτοι
ἀδελφεῶν παῖδες, Ξέρξῃ δὲ ἐγίνοντο |cousin , καὶ
Μασίστης ὁ Δαρείου τε καὶ Ἀτόσσης παῖς καὶ Γέργις ὁ

of Bagaïos, who in the year after these events was a commander of the army at Mykale and lost his life in the battle.

7.81

These were the nations which served in the campaign by land and had been appointed to be among the foot-soldiers. Of this army those who have been mentioned were commanders; and they were the men who sit it in order by divisions and numbered it and appointed commanders of thousands and commanders of tens of thousands, but the commanders of hundreds and of tens were appointed by the commanders of ten thousands; and there were others who were leaders of divisions and nations.

7.82

These, I say, who have been mentioned were commanders of the army; and over these and over the whole army together that went on foot there were in command Mardonios the son of Gobryas, Tritantaichmes the son of that Artabanos who gave the opinion that they should not make the march against Hellas, Smerdomenes the son of Otanes (both these being sons of brothers of Dareios and so cousins of Xerxes), Masistes the son of Dareios and Atossa, Gergis the son of

vocabulary

ἀπολέγω pick; decline

ἀριθμός number

ἀρμάμαξα Persian carriage

ἄφθονος ungrudging, plentiful

ἐκλείπω leave out, pass over

θεραπήνη service, tending

ἵππεύω ride

κάμηλος (f) camel

μυρίος (ἰ) 10,000 ~myriad

νόσος (f) plague, pestilence ~noisome

νοῦσος (f) plague, pestilence ~noisome

οὐδαμὸς not anyone

παλλακή sex slave

Πέρσης Persian

σκευάζω prepare, collect

σκευή equipment

στρατηγέω be a general

σύμπας (ᾱ) all together

ὑποζύγιον beast of burden ~zygote

χρυσός (ῶ) gold

χωρίς separately; except, other than
~heir

Ἀριάζου καὶ Μεγάβυζος ὁ Ζωπύρου.

7.83

οὗτοι ἦσαν στρατηγοὶ τοῦ σύμπαντος πεζοῦ χωρὶς τῶν μυρίων· τῶν δὲ μυρίων τούτων Περσέων τῶν ἀπολελεγμένων ἐστρατήγεε μὲν Ὑδάρνης ὁ Ὑδάρνεος, ἐκαλέοντο δὲ ἀθάνατοι οἱ Πέρσαι οὗτοι ἐπὶ τοῦδε· εἴ τις αὐτῶν ἐξέλιπε τὸν ἀριθμὸν ἢ θανάτῳ βιηθεὶς ἢ νόσῳ, ἄλλος ἀνὴρ ἀραίρητο, καὶ ἐγίνοντο οὐδαμὰ οὔτε πλεῦνες μυρίων οὔτε ἐλάσσονες. κόσμον δὲ πλείστον παρείχοντο διὰ πάντων Πέρσαι, καὶ αὐτοὶ ἄριστοι ἦσαν· σκευὴν μὲν τοιαύτην εἶχον ἢ περ εἴρηται, χωρὶς δὲ χρυσόν τε πολλὸν καὶ ἄφθονον ἔχοντες ἐνέπρεπον, ἄρμαμάξας τε ἅμα ἤγοντο, ἐν δὲ παλλακὰς καὶ θεραπήϊν πολλήν τε καὶ εὖ ἐσκευασμένην· σῖτα δέ σφι, χωρὶς τῶν ἄλλων στρατιωτέων, κάμηλοί τε καὶ ὑποζύγια ἤγον.

7.84

ἱππεύει δὲ ταῦτα τὰ ἔθνεα· πλὴν οὐ πάντα παρείχετο

Ἀριάξου καὶ Μεγάβυζος ὁ Ζωπύρου.

7.83

οὗτοι ἦσαν στρατηγοὶ τοῦ |all together πέζοῦ |separately; except,
 τῶν μυρίων· τῶν δὲ μυρίων τούτων Περσέων τῶν
 |pick; decline |be a general μὲν Ὑδάρνης ὁ Ὑδάρνεος,
 ἐκαλέοντο δὲ ἀθάνατοι οἱ Πέρσαι οὗτοι ἐπὶ τοῦδε· εἴ τις
 αὐτῶν |leave out, pass|number ἢ θανάτῳ βιηθεὶς ἢ νούσῳ,
 ἄλλος ἀνὴρ ἀραίρητο, καὶ ἐγίνοντο οὐδαμὰ οὔτε πλεῦνες
 μυρίων οὔτε ἐλάσσονες. κόσμον δὲ πλείστον παρείχοντο
 διὰ πάντων Πέρσαι, καὶ αὐτοὶ ἄριστοι ἦσαν· |equipment
 μὲν τοιαύτην εἶχον ἢ περ εἴρηται, |separately; |gold τε
 πολλὸν καὶ |ungrudging, |other than except, τε
 |plentiful |Persian |carriage
 ἅμα ἤγοντο, ἐν δὲ |sex slave καὶ θεραπήην πολλήν τε
 καὶ εὖ |prepare, collect σῖτα δέ σφι, |separately; |ex- |λλων
 |camel τε καὶ |beast of burden .

7.84

|ride δὲ ταῦτα τὰ ἔθνεα· πλὴν οὐ πάντα παρείχετο

Ariazos, and Megabyzos the son of Zopyros.

7.83

These were generals of the whole together that went on foot, excepting the ten thousand; and of these ten thousand chosen Persians the general was Hydarnes the son of Hydarnes; and these Persians were called “Immortals,” because, if any one of them made the number incomplete, being overcome either by death or disease, another man was chosen to his place, and they were never either more or fewer than ten thousand. Now of all the nations, the Persians showed the greatest splendour of ornament and were themselves the best men. They had equipment such as has been mentioned, and besides this they were conspicuous among the rest for great quantity of gold freely used; and they took with them carriages, and in them concubines and a multitude of attendants well furnished; and provisions for them apart from the soldiers were borne by camels and beasts of burden.

7.84

The nations who serve as cavalry are these; not all however supplied

*vocabulary***ἄκρον** crest, extremity ~acute**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme ~acute**βρόχος** rope, noose**ἐγχειρίδιος** handle, hand tool, dagger**ἐνιοι** some**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic**ἐρκος** -εος (n, 3) bulwark ~oath**ἱμάς** -ντος (ī, m, 3) strap**μεταξύ** between**νομάς** -δος (m, 3) roaming, grazing**Πέρσης** Persian**πίσυνος** trusting in, relying on (+dat)**πλέκω** braid ~complex**ποίημα** -τος (n, 3) work, deed**σειρά** cord, rope**σιδήρεος** of iron ~siderite**σκευάζω** prepare, collect**σκευή** equipment**συμμίγνυμι** mix with ~mix**τοσόσδε** this much**χίλιοι** (ti) thousand ~kilo-

ἵππον, ἀλλὰ τοσάδε μούνα, Πέρσαι μὲν τὴν αὐτὴν ἐσκευασμένοι καὶ ὁ πεζὸς αὐτῶν· πλὴν ἐπὶ τῇσι κεφαλῇσι εἶχον ἔνιοι αὐτῶν καὶ χάλκεα καὶ σιδήρεα ἐξεληλαμένα ποιήματα.

7.85

εἰσὶ δὲ τινὲς νομάδες ἄνθρωποι Σαγάρτιοι καλεόμενοι, ἔθνος μὲν Περσικὸν καὶ φωνῇ, σκευὴν δὲ μετὰξὺ ἔχουσι πεπονημένην τῆς τε Περσικῆς καὶ τῆς Πακτυϊκῆς· οἱ παρείχοντο μὲν ἵππον ὀκτακισχιλίην, ὅπλα δὲ οὐ νομίζουσι ἔχειν οὔτε χάλκεα οὔτε σιδήρεα ἔξω ἐγχειριδίων, χρέωνται δὲ σειρήσι πεπλεγμένῃσι ἐξ ἱμάντων· ταύτησι πίσυνοι ἔρχονται ἐς πόλεμον. ἡ δὲ μάχη τούτων τῶν ἀνδρῶν ἦδε· ἐπεὰν συμμίσγῃσι τοῖσι πολεμίοισι, βάλλουσι τὰς σειρὰς ἐπ' ἄκρῳ βρόχους ἐχούσας· ὅτεν δ' ἂν τύχῃ, ἦν τε ἵππου ἦν τε ἀνθρώπου, ἐπ' ἐωυτὸν ἔλκει· οἱ δὲ ἐν ἔρκεσι ἐμπαλασσόμενοι διαφθείρονται.

ἵππον, ἀλλὰ |this much, οὐνα, Πέρσαι μὲν τὴν αὐτὴν
 |prepare, collect καὶ ὁ πεζὸς αὐτῶν· πλὴν ἐπὶ τῇσι κεφαλῇσι
 εἶχον |some αὐτῶν καὶ χάλκεα καὶ |of iron |drive out
 |work, deed

7.85

εἰσὶ δὲ τινὲς |roaming, ἄνθρωποι Σαγάρτιοι καλεόμενοι,
 |grazing ἔθνος μὲν Περσικὸν καὶ φωνῇ, |equipment· |between ἔχουσι
 πεποιημένην τῆς τε Περσικῆς καὶ τῆς Πακτυϊκῆς·
 οἱ παρείχοντο μὲν ἵππον ὀκτακισχιλὴν, ὅπλα δὲ οὐ
 νομίζουσι ἔχειν οὔτε χάλκεα οὔτε |of iron ἕξω ἐγχειριδίων,
 χρέωνται δὲ |cord, |braid ἕξ |strap ταύτησι
 |rope |trusting ἔρχονται εἰς πόλεμον. ἡ δὲ μάχη τούτων
 τῶν ἀνδρῶν ἦδε· ἐπεὰν συμμίσγῃσι τοῖσι πολεμίοις,
 βάλλουσι τὰς |cord, rope· ἅκρῳ |rope, ἐχούσας· ὅτεν δ'
 |noose ἂν τύχῃ, ἦν τε ἵππου ἦν τε ἀνθρώπου, ἐπ' ἐωυτὸν ἔλκει·
 οἱ δὲ ἐν |bulwark ὑπαλασσόμενοι διαφθείρονται.

cavalry, but only as many as here follow:—the Persians equipped in the same manner as their foot-soldiers, except that upon their heads some of them had beaten-work of metal, either bronze or iron.

7.85

There are also certain nomads called Sagartians, Persian in race and in language and having a dress which is midway between that of the Persians and that of the Pactyans. These furnished eight thousand horse, and they are not accustomed to have any arms either of bronze or of iron excepting daggers, but they use ropes twisted of thongs, and trust to these when they go into war: and the manner of fighting of these men is as follows:—when they come to conflict with the enemy, they throw the ropes with nooses at the end of them, and whatsoever the man catches by the throw, whether horse or man, he draws to himself, and they being entangled in toils are thus destroyed.

vocabulary

ἄγριος wild, savage ~agriculture
ἀριθμός number
ἄρμα -τος (n, 3) chariot
αὐτως just so, merely; in vain ~after
ἐπιτάσσω enjoin; place near
ἵππεύω ride
κάμηλος (f) camel
κέλης -τος (m, 3) fast riding horse
μυριάς -δος (ῥ, f, 3) countless, myriad
ὀκτώ eight ~octopus

ὄνος (f) donkey ~onager
πάρεξ alongside, diverging from; (+ῥ or gen) except; (+acc) beyond, alongside
Πέρσης Persian
σάττω pack, compress
σκευή equipment
ταχυτής speed, hastiness ~tachometer
ὑπείμι be under
ὠφάω weave
ὠσαύτως in the same way

7.86

τούτων μὲν αὕτη ἡ μάχη, καὶ ἐπετετάχато ἐς τοὺς Πέρσας· Μῆδοι δὲ τήν περ ἐν τῷ πεζῷ εἶχον σκευήν, καὶ Κίσσιοι ὡσαύτως. Ἴνδοι δὲ σκευὴ μὲν ἐσεσάχато τῇ αὐτῇ καὶ ἐν τῷ πεζῷ, ἥλαυνον δὲ κέλητας καὶ ἄρματα· ὑπὸ δὲ τοῖσι ἄρμασι ὑπῆσαν ἵπποι καὶ ὄνοι ἄγριοι. Βάκτριοι δὲ ἐσκευάδατο ὡσαύτως καὶ ἐν τῷ πεζῷ, καὶ Κάσπιοι ὁμοίως. Λίβυες δὲ καὶ αὐτοὶ κατὰ περ ἐν τῷ πεζῷ· ἥλαυνον δὲ καὶ οὗτοι πάντες ἄρματα. ὥς δ' αὕτως Κάσπιοι καὶ Παρικάνιοι ἐσεσάχато ὁμοίως καὶ ἐν τῷ πεζῷ. Ἀράβιοι δὲ σκευὴν μὲν εἶχον τὴν αὐτὴν καὶ ἐν τῷ πεζῷ, ἥλαυνον δὲ πάντες καμήλους ταχυτήτα οὐ λειπομένας ἵππων.

7.87

ταῦτα τὰ ἔθνεα μούνα ἱππεύει. ἀριθμὸς δὲ τῆς ἵππου ἐγένετο ὀκτὼ μυριάδες, πάρεξ τῶν καμήλων καὶ τῶν ἀρμάτων. οἱ μὲν νυν ἄλλοι ἱππέες ἐτετάχато κατὰ τέλεα,

7.86

τούτων μὲν αὕτη ἡ μάχη, καὶ |enjoin; place ἐς τοὺς
 Πέρσας· Μῆδοι δὲ τήν περ ἐν τῷ πεζῷ εἶχον |equipment· ἡ
 Κίσσιοι |in the same way· ἡ δὲ |equipment |pack, τῇ αὐτῇ
 καὶ ἐν τῷ πεζῷ, ἥλαυνον δὲ |fast riding horse|chariot ὑπὸ
 δὲ τοῖσι |chariot ὑπῆσαν ἵπποι καὶ |don- |wild, Βάκτριοι
 δὲ ἐσκευάδατο |in the same way ἐν τῷ πεζῷ, καὶ Κάσπιοι
 ὁμοίως. Λίβυες δὲ καὶ αὐτοὶ κατὰ περ ἐν τῷ πεζῷ·
 ἥλαυνον δὲ καὶ οὗτοι πάντες |chariot ὥς δ' |just so, merely; in
 Κάσπιοι καὶ Παρικάνιοι |pack, ὁμοίως καὶ ἐν τῷ
 πεζῷ. Ἀράβιοι δὲ |equipment· ἐν εἶχον τὴν αὐτὴν καὶ ἐν
 τῷ πεζῷ, ἥλαυνον δὲ πάντες |camel |speed οὐ
 λειπομένους ἵππων.

7.87

ταῦτα τὰ ἔθνεα μούνα |ride |number δὲ τῆς ἵππου
 ἐγένετο |eight |countless, , πάρεξ τῶν |camel καὶ τῶν
 |chariot οἱ μὲν νυν ἄλλοι ἱππέες ἐτετάχατο κατὰ τέλεα,

7.86

This is the manner of fighting of these men, and they were arrayed next to the Persians. The Medes had the same equipment as their men on foot, and the Kissians likewise. The Indians were armed in the same manner as those of them who served on foot, and they both rode horses and drove chariots, in which were harnessed horses or wild asses. The Bactrians were equipped in the same way as those who served on foot, and the Caspians likewise. The Libyans too were equipped like those who served on foot, and these also all drove chariots. So too the Caspians and Paricanians were equipped like those who served on foot, and they all rode on camels, which in swiftness were not inferior to horses.

7.87

These nations alone served as cavalry, and the number of the cavalry proved to be eight myriads, apart from the camels and the chariots. Now the rest of the cavalry was arrayed in squadrons, but the Arabians were placed after

*vocabulary***ἀνεθέλητος** unwelcome**ἀπάγω** lead away, back ~demagogue**ἀποτέμνω** cut off, sever ~tonsure**ἄτε** as if; since**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot**ἐμέω** vomit ~emetic**ἐπιτάσσω** enjoin; place near**ἔσχατος** farthest, last**ἡγεμονία** authority, rule**ἵππικός** of horses ~hippo**κάμηλος** (f) camel**καταβάλλω** throw down, cast off

~ballistic

νοσέω be sick, be mad, suffer**νόσος** (f) plague, pestilence ~noisome**νοῦσος** (f) plague, pestilence ~noisome**οἰκέτης** -ου (m, 1) household; house
slave**οὔτις** nobody, nothing**παραλύω** detach, disable**περιέρχομαι** go around; come next to**περιπίπτω** embrace; fall in with**πρόοιδα** foresee**προοράω** see before oneself**σκέλος** -εος (n, 3) leg ~scoliosis**συμφορά** collecting; accident,
misfortune**ὑποτρέχω** run in under**χῶρος** place ~heir

Ἀράβιοι δὲ ἔσχατοι ἐπετετάχατο· ἅτε γὰρ τῶν ἵππων οὔτι ἀνεχομένων τὰς καμήλους, ὕστεροι ἐτετάχατο, ἵνα μὴ φοβέοιτο τὸ ἵππικόν.

7.88

ππαρχοι δὲ ἦσαν Ἀρμαμίθρης τε καὶ Τίθαιος Δάτιος παῖδες. ὁ δὲ τρίτος σφι συνίππαρχος Φαρνούχης κατελέλειπτο ἐν Σάρδισι νοσέων. ὥς γὰρ ὀρμῶντο ἐκ Σαρδίων, ἐπὶ συμφορὴν περιέπεσε ἀνεθέλητον· ἐλαύνοντι γάρ οἱ ὑπὸ τοὺς πόδας τοῦ ἵππου ὑπέδραμε κύων, καὶ ὁ ἵππος οὐ προιδὼν ἐφοβήθη τε καὶ στὰς ὀρθὸς ἀπεσεύσατο τὸν Φαρνούχεια, πεσὼν δὲ αἱμά τε ἤμειε καὶ ἐς φθίσιν περιῆλθε ἢ νοῦσος. τὸν δὲ ἵππον αὐτίκα κατ' ἀρχὰς ἐποίησαν ὥς ἐκέλευε· ἀπαγαγόντες οἱ οἰκέται ἐς τὸν χῶρον ἐν τῷ περ κατέβαλε τὸν δεσπότην, ἐν τοῖσι γούνασι ἀπέταμον τὰ σκέλεα. Φαρνούχης μὲν οὕτω παρελύθη τῆς ἡγεμονίης.

Ἀράβιοι δὲ |farthest |enjoin; place |as if; since τῶν ἵππων
|near
|nobody, εχομένων τὰς |camel , ὕστεροι ἐτετάχατο, ἵνα
|nothing
μὴ φοβέοιτο τὸ |of horses

7.88

ππαρχοι δὲ ἦσαν Ἀρμαμίθρης τε καὶ Τίθαιος Δάτιος
παῖδες. ὁ δὲ τρίτος σφι συνίππαρχος Φαρνούχης
κατελέλειπτο ἐν Σάρδισι νοσέων. ὥς γὰρ ὀρμῶντο ἐκ
Σαρδίων, ἐπὶ συμφορὴν |embrace; |unwelcome ἐλαύνοντι
|fall in with
γάρ οἱ ὑπὸ τοὺς πόδας τοῦ ἵππου |run in under...ων, καὶ ὁ
ἵππος οὐ προιδὼν ἐφοβήθη τε καὶ στὰς ὀρθὸς ἀπεσεύσατο
τὸν Φαρνούχεια, πεσὼν δὲ αἱμά τε |vomit καὶ ἐς φθίσιν
|go around; νοῦσος. τὸν δὲ ἵππον αὐτίκα κατ' ἀρχὰς
|come next to
ἐποίησαν ὥς ἐκέλευε· |lead away, back οἱ |household; τὸν
|house slave
|place ἐν τῷ περ |throw down; |master, , ἐν τοῖσι γούνασι
|cast off |despot
|cut off, sever ` |leg Φαρνούχης μὲν οὕτω |detach, τῆς
|disable
|authority, rule

them and last of all, for the horses could not endure the camels, and therefore they were placed last, in order that the horses might not be frightened.

7.88

The commanders of the cavalry were Harmamithras and Tithaios sons of Datis, but the third, Pharnuches, who was in command of the horse with them, had been left behind at Sardis sick: for as they were setting forth from Sardis, an accident befell him of an unwished-for kind, — as he was riding, a dog ran up under his horse's feet, and the horse not having seen it beforehand was frightened, and rearing up he threw Pharnuches off his back, who falling vomited blood, and his sickness turned to a consumption. To the horse however they forthwith at the first did as he commanded, that is to say, the servants led him away to the place where he had thrown his master and cut off his legs at the knees. Thus was Pharnuches removed from his command.

*vocabulary***ἀγχοτάτω** nearest**ἄκόντιον** diminutive of javelin**ἀριθμός** number**ἐνδύω** go into, put on**ἐνθεῦτεν** thence**θώραξ** -ηχος (m) breastplate ~thorax**θωρηκοφόρος** wearing a breastplate**ἕτυς** rim**κοῖλος** hollow ~hollow**κράνος** -εος (n, 3) helmet; ship's ram**κυνέα** -ῆς helmet ~hound**κύνεος** doglike, shameless ~hound**λίνεος** linen**μάχαιρα** knife, dagger**ναύμαχος** sea-fighting**σκευάζω** prepare, collect**τριηκόσιοι** three hundred**ὑπερβαίνω** pass, transgress ~basis**χίλιοι** (ι) thousand ~kilo-

7.89

τῶν δὲ τριηρέων ἀριθμὸς μὲν ἐγένετο ἑπτὰ καὶ
 διηκόσιαι καὶ χίλιναι, παρείχοντο δὲ αὐτὰς οἷδε, Φοίνικες
 μὲν σὺν Σύροις τοῖσι ἐν τῇ Παλαιστίνῃ τριηκοσίας,
 ὧδε ἐσκευασμένοι· περὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι κυνέας
 εἶχον ἀγχοτάτῳ πεποιημένας τρόπον τὸν Ἑλληνικόν,
 ἐνδεδυκότες δὲ θώρηκας λινέους, ἀσπίδας δὲ ἵτις οὐκ
 ἐχούσας εἶχον καὶ ἀκόντια. οὗτοι δὲ οἱ Φοίνικες τὸ
 παλαιὸν οἴκεον, ὥς αὐτοὶ λέγουσι, ἐπὶ τῇ Ἐρυθρῇ
 θαλάσῃ, ἐνθεῦτεν δὲ ὑπερβάντες τῆς Συρίας οἰκέουσι τὸ
 παρὰ θάλασσαν· τῆς δὲ Συρίας τοῦτο τὸ χωρίον καὶ τὸ
 μέχρι Αἰγύπτου πᾶν Παλαιστίνῃ καλεῖται. Αἰγύπτιοι δὲ
 νέας παρείχοντο διηκοσίας. οὗτοι δὲ εἶχον περὶ μὲν τῇσι
 κεφαλῇσι κράνεια χηλευτά, ἀσπίδας δὲ κοίλας, τὰς ἵτις
 μεγάλας ἐχούσας, καὶ δόρατά τε ναύμαχα καὶ τύχους
 μεγάλους. τὸ δὲ πλῆθος αὐτῶν θωρηκοφόροι ἦσαν,
 μαχαίρας δὲ μεγάλας εἶχον.

7.89

τῶν δὲ τριηρέων |number μὲν ἐγένετο ἑπτὰ καὶ
 διηκόσιαι καὶ |thousand ἀρείχοντο δὲ αὐτὰς οἶδε, Φοίνικες
 μὲν σὺν Σύροισι τοῖσι ἐν τῇ Παλαιστίνῃ |three
 |hundred ,
 ὧδε |prepare, collect περὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι κυνέας
 εἶχον |nearest πεπονημένας τρόπον τὸν Ἑλληνικόν,
 |go into, put on ἵε |breastplate |linen , ἀσπίδας δὲ |rim οὐκ
 ἐχούσας εἶχον καὶ |diminutive οὔτοι δὲ οἱ Φοίνικες τὸ
 |of javelin
 παλαιὸν οἴκεον, ὥς αὐτοὶ λέγουσι, ἐπὶ τῇ Ἐρυθρῇ
 θαλάσῃ, |thence δὲ |pass, transgress ἵς Συρίας οἰκέουσι τὸ
 παρὰ θάλασσαν· τῆς δὲ Συρίας τοῦτο τὸ χωρίον καὶ τὸ
 μέχρι Αἰγύπτου πᾶν Παλαιστίνῃ καλέεται. Αἰγύπτιοι δὲ
 νέας παρείχοντο διηκοσίας. οὔτοι δὲ εἶχον περὶ μὲν τῇσι
 κεφαλῇσι |helmet; ship's ram' , ἀσπίδας δὲ |hollow , τὰς |rim
 μεγάλας ἐχούσας, καὶ δόρατά τε |sea-fighting καὶ τύχους
 μεγάλους. τὸ δὲ πλῆθος αὐτῶν |wearing a ἦσαν,
 |breastplate
 |knife δὲ μεγάλας εἶχον.

7.89

Of the triremes the number proved to be one thousand two hundred and seven, and these were they who furnished them: — the Phenicians, together with the Syrians who dwell in Palestine furnished three hundred; and they were equipped thus, that is to say, they had about their heads leathern caps made very nearly in the Hellenic fashion, and they wore corslets of linen, and had shields without rims and javelins. These Phenicians dwelt in ancient time, as they themselves report, upon the Erythraian Sea, and thence they passed over and dwell in the country along the sea coast of Syria; and this part of Syria and all as far as Egypt is called Palestine. The Egyptians furnished two hundred ships: these men had about their heads helmets of plaited work, and they had hollow shields with the rims large, and spears for sea-fighting, and large axes: the greater number of them wore corslets, and they had large knives.

*vocabulary***ἀγχοτάτω** nearest**ἄκόντιον** diminutive of javelin**Ἕλληγ** Greek**ἐνδύω** go into, put on**ἐπιχώριος** native**ἐπωνύμιος** called, named**κράνος** -εος (n, 3) helmet; ship's ram**λαισήιον** hide shield**μάχαιρα** knife, dagger**μίτρα** metal waist guard**ξίφος** -εος (n, 3) sword**σκευάζω** prepare, collect**στέλλω** prepare, send, furl ~apostle**τοσόσδε** this much

7.90

οὔτοι μὲν οὕτω ἐστάλατο, Κύπριοι δὲ παρείχοντο νέας πεντήκοντα καὶ ἑκατόν, ἐσκευασμένοι ὧδε· τὰς μὲν κεφαλὰς εἰλίχατο μίτρησι οἱ βασιλέες αὐτῶν, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι εἶχον κιθῶνας, τὰ δὲ ἄλλα κατὰ περ Ἑλλήνες. τούτων δὲ τοσάδε ἔθνεα εἰσί, οἳ μὲν ἀπὸ Σαλαμῖνος καὶ Ἀθηνέων, οἳ δὲ ἀπ' Ἀρκαδίας, οἳ δὲ ἀπὸ Κύθνου, οἳ δὲ ἀπὸ Φοινίκης, οἳ δὲ ἀπὸ Αἰθιοπίας, ὥς αὐτοὶ Κύπριοι λέγουσι.

7.91

Κίλικες δὲ ἑκατόν παρείχοντο νέας. οὔτοι δ' αὖ περὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι κράνεα ἐπιχώρια, λαισήια δὲ εἶχον ἀντ' ἀσπίδων ὠμοβοέης πεποιημένα, καὶ κιθῶνας εἰρινέους ἐνδεδυκότες· δύο δὲ ἀκόντια ἕκαστος καὶ ξίφος εἶχον, ἀγχοτάτω τῇσι Αἰγυπτίησι μαχαίρησι πεποιημένα. οὔτοι δὲ τὸ παλαιὸν Ὑπαχαιοὶ ἐκαλέοντο, ἐπὶ δὲ Κίλικος τοῦ Ἀγήνορος ἀνδρὸς Φοίνικος ἔσχον τὴν ἐπωνυμίην. Πάμφυλοι δὲ τριήκοντα παρείχοντο νέας Ἑλληνικοῖσι

7.90

οὔτοι μὲν οὕτω |prepare, send, furl, |οι δὲ παρείχοντο νέας
 πεντήκοντα καὶ ἑκατόν, |prepare, collect ὦδε· τὰς μὲν
 κεφαλὰς εἰλίχατο |metal |οὐ βασιλέες αὐτῶν, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι
 εἶχον κιθῶνας, τὰ δὲ ἄλλα κατὰ περ |Greek |waist |guard
 |this much ἥνεα εἰσί, οἱ μὲν ἀπὸ Σαλαμῖνος καὶ Ἀθηνέων, οἱ
 δὲ ἀπ' Ἀρκαδίας, οἱ δὲ ἀπὸ Κύθνου, οἱ δὲ ἀπὸ Φοινίκης, οἱ
 δὲ ἀπὸ Αἰθιοπίας, ὥς αὐτοὶ Κύπριοι λέγουσι.

7.91

Κίλικες δὲ ἑκατόν παρείχοντο νέας. οὔτοι δ' αὖ περὶ μὲν
 τῇσι κεφαλῇσι |helmet; |native |hide shield εἶχον ἀντ'
 ἀσπίδων ὠμοβοδείης πεποιημένα, καὶ κιθῶνας εἰρινέους
 |go into, put on δύο δὲ |diminutive ῥκαστος καὶ |sword εἶχον,
 |nearest τῇσι Αἰγυπτίῃσι |knife πεποιημένα. οὔτοι
 δὲ τὸ παλαιὸν Ὑπαχαιοὶ ἐκαλέοντο, ἐπὶ δὲ Κίλικος
 τοῦ Ἀγήνορος ἀνδρὸς Φοίνικος ἔσχον τὴν |called,
 Πάμφυλοι δὲ τριήκοντα παρείχοντο νέας Ἑλληνικοῖσι
 |named

7.90

These men were thus equipped; and the Cyprians furnished a hundred and fifty ships, being themselves equipped as follows,—their kings had their heads wound round with fillets, and the rest had tunics, but in other respects they were like the Hellenes. Among these there are various races as follows,—some of them are from Salamis and Athens, others from Arcadia, others from Kythnos, others again from Phenicia and others from Ethiopia, as the Cyprians themselves report.

7.91

The Kilikians furnished a hundred ships; and these again had about their heads native helmets, and for shields they carried targets made of raw ox-hide: they wore tunics of wool and each man had two javelins and a sword, this last being made very like the Egyptian knives. These in old time were called Hypachaians, and they got their later name from Kilix the son of Agenor, a Phenician. The Pamphylians furnished thirty

vocabulary

αἶξ αἰγός (m) goat

αἰωρέω lift; (mp) hang

ἄκόντιον diminutive of javelin

ἀποσκεδάννυμι (ῥ) dismiss; scatter

ἄπτερος wingless; winged

~archeopteryx

δέρμα -τος (n, 3) skin, hide

~dermatology

δρέπανον sickle ~dermatology

ἐβδομήκοντα 70

ἐγχειρίδιος handle, hand tool, dagger

Ἑλλήν Greek

ἐπωνύμιος called, named

θωρηκοφόρος wearing a breastplate

καλάμινος of reed

ὀιστός arrow

περιστεφανόω enwreath

πίλος felt

πτερόν feather, wing ~pterodactyl

σκευάζω prepare, collect

στέλλω prepare, send, furl ~apostle

ὅπλοισι ἐσκευασμένοι. οἱ δὲ Πάμφυλοι οὗτοι εἰσὶ τῶν ἐκ Τροίης ἀποσκεδασθέντων ἅμα Ἀμφιλόχῳ καὶ Κάλχαντι.

7.92

λύκιοι δὲ παρείχοντο νέας πεντήκοντα θωρηκοφόροι τε ἐόντες καὶ κνημιδοφόροι, εἶχον δὲ τόξα κρανέινα καὶ οἰστοὺς καλαμίους ἀπτέρους καὶ ἀκόντια, ἐπὶ δὲ αἰγὸς δέρμα περὶ τοὺς ὤμους αἰωρεύμενον, περὶ δὲ τῇσι κεφαλῇσι πῖλους πτεροῖσι περιεστεφανωμένους· ἐγχειρίδια δὲ καὶ δρέπανα εἶχον. Λύκιοι δὲ Τερμίλαι ἐκαλέοντο ἐκ Κρήτης γεγονότες, ἐπὶ δὲ Λύκου τοῦ Πανδίωνος ἀνδρὸς Ἀθηναίου ἔσχον τὴν ἐπωνυμίην.

7.93

Δωριέες δὲ οἱ ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας τριήκοντα παρείχοντο νέας, ἔχοντές τε Ἑλληνικὰ ὅπλα καὶ γεγονότες ἀπὸ Πελοποννήσου. Κᾶρες δὲ ἐβδομήκοντα παρείχοντο νέας, τὰ μὲν ἄλλα κατὰ περ Ἑλληνες ἐσταλμένοι, εἶχον δὲ καὶ δρέπανα καὶ ἐγχειρίδια. οὗτοι δὲ οἵτινες πρότερον

ὅπλοισι |prepare, collect . οἱ δὲ Πάμφυλοι οὗτοι εἰσὶ τῶν ἐκ
Τροίης |dismiss; scatter ἅμα Ἀμφιλόχῳ καὶ Κάλχαντι.

7.92

λύκιοι δὲ παρείχοντο νέας πεντήκοντα |wearing a
|breastplate
τε ἑόντες καὶ κνημιδοφόροι, εἶχον δὲ τόξα κρანείνα
καὶ |arrow |of reed |wingless; καὶ |diminutive ἐπὶ δὲ
|winged |of javelin
|goat |skin, hide ἐπὶ τοὺς ὤμους |lift; (mp) hang, περὶ δὲ
τῇσι κεφαλῇσι |felt |feather, |enwreathe
|wing
ἐγχειρίδια δὲ καὶ |sickle εἶχον. Λύκιοι δὲ Τερμίλαι
ἐκαλέοντο ἐκ Κρήτης γεγονότες, ἐπὶ δὲ Λύκου τοῦ
Πανδίωνος ἀνδρὸς Ἀθηναίου ἔσχον τὴν |called,
|named

7.93

Δωριέες δὲ οἱ ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας τριήκοντα παρείχοντο
νέας, ἔχοντές τε Ἑλληνικὰ ὅπλα καὶ γεγονότες ἀπὸ
Πελοποννήσου. Κᾶρες δὲ |70 παρείχοντο νέας,
τὰ μὲν ἄλλα κατὰ περ |Greek |prepare, send, furnish δὲ καὶ
|sickle καὶ ἐγχειρίδια. οὗτοι δὲ οὔτινες πρότερον

ships and were equipped in Hellenic arms. These Pamphylians are of those who were dispersed from Troy together with Amphilochos and Calchas.

7.92

The Lykians furnished fifty ships; and they were wearers of corslets and greaves, and had bows of cornel-wood and arrows of reeds without feathers and javelins and a goat-skin hanging over their shoulders, and about their heads felt caps wreathed round with feathers; also they had daggers and falchions. The Lykians were formerly called Termilai, being originally of Crete, and they got their later name from Lycos the son of Pandion, an Athenian.

7.93

The Dorians of Asia furnished thirty ships; and these had Hellenic arms and were originally from the Peloponnese. The Carians supplied seventy ships; and they were equipped in other respects like Hellenes but they had also falchions and daggers. What was the former name of these has been

*vocabulary***Ἑλλην** Greek**ἑξήκοντα** sixty**ἑπτακαίδεκα** 17**νησιώτης** -ου (m, 1) insular**ὀπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite**πάλαι** long ago ~paleo**παλαίω** wrestle ~Pallas**πάλη** wrestling ~Pallas**πάλλω** shake, brandish ~Pallas**προστάσσω** post at, attach to, command**σκευάζω** prepare, collect

ἐκαλέοντο, ἐν τοῖσι πρῶτοισι τῶν λόγων εἴρηται.

7.94

Ἵωνες δὲ ἑκατὸν νέας παρείχοντο ἐσκευασμένοι ὡς Ἕλληνες. Ἵωνες δὲ ὅσον μὲν χρόνον ἐν Πελοποννήσῳ οἴκεον τὴν νῦν καλεομένην Ἀχαιΐν, καὶ πρὶν ἢ Δαναόν τε καὶ Εὐθύθον ἀπικέσθαι εἰς Πελοπόννησον, ὡς Ἕλληνες λέγουσι, ἐκαλέοντο Πελασγοὶ Αἰγιαλέες, ἐπὶ δὲ Ἵωνος τοῦ Εὐθύθου Ἵωνες.

7.95

νησιῶται δὲ ἑπτακαίδεκα παρείχοντο νέας, ὠπλισμένοι ὡς Ἕλληνες, καὶ τοῦτο Πελασγικὸν ἔθνος; ὕστερον δὲ Ἴωνικὸν ἐκλήθη κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν λόγον καὶ οἱ δυωδεκαπόλιες Ἵωνες οἱ ἀπ' Ἀθηνέων. Αἰολέες δὲ ἐξήκοντα νέας παρείχοντο, ἐσκευασμένοι τε ὡς Ἕλληνες καὶ τὸ πάλαι καλεόμενοι Πελασγοί, ὡς Ἑλλήνων λόγος. Ἑλλησπόντιοι δὲ πλὴν Ἀβυδηνῶν Ἀβυδηνοῖσι γὰρ προσετέτακτο ἐκ βασιλέος κατὰ χώραν μένουσι

ἐκαλέοντο, ἐν τοῖσι πρῶτοισι τῶν λόγων εἴρηται.

7.94

Ἵωνες δὲ ἑκατὸν νέας παρείχοντο |prepare, collect ὥς
 |Greek . Ἵωνες δὲ ὅσον μὲν χρόνον ἐν Πελοποννήσῳ
 οἴκεον τὴν νῦν καλεομένην Ἀχαιΐην, καὶ πρὶν ἢ Δαναόν
 τε καὶ Εὐῶθον ἀπικέσθαι ἐς Πελοπόννησον, ὥς |Greek
 λέγουσι, ἐκαλέοντο Πελασγοὶ Αἰγιαλέες, ἐπὶ δὲ Ἵωνος τοῦ
 Εὐῶθου Ἵωνες.

7.95

|insular δὲ |17 παρείχοντο νέας, |prepare, arm
 ὥς |Greek , καὶ τοῦτο Πελασγικὸν ἔθνος; ὕστερον
 δὲ Ἵωνικὸν ἐκλήθη κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν λόγον καὶ οἱ
 δυωδεκαπόλιες Ἵωνες οἱ ἀπ' Ἀθηνέων. Αἰολέες δὲ
 |sixty νέας παρείχοντο, |prepare, collect τε ὥς |Greek
 καὶ τὸ πάλαι καλεόμενοι Πελασγοί, ὥς |Greek
 λόγος. Ἑλλησπόντιοι δὲ πλὴν Ἀβυδηνῶν Ἀβυδηνοῖσι γὰρ
 |post at, attach to, ἐκ βασιλέος κατὰ χώραν μένουσι
 |command

told in the first part of the history.

7.94

The Ionians furnished a hundred ships, and were equipped like Hellenes. Now the Ionians, so long time as they dwelt in the Peloponnese, in the land which is now called Achaia, and before the time when Danaos and Xuthos came to the Peloponnese, were called, as the Hellenes report, Pelasgians of the Coast-land, and then Ionians after Ion the son of Xuthos.

7.95

The islanders furnished seventeen ships, and were armed like Hellenes, this also being a Pelasgian race, though afterwards it came to be called Ionian by the same rule as the Ionians of the twelve cities, who came from Athens. The Aiolians supplied sixty ships; and these were equipped like Hellenes and used to be called Pelasgians in the old time, as the Hellenes report. The Hellespontians, excepting those of Abydos (for the men of Abydos had been appointed by the king to stay

vocabulary

ἄποικος abroad, colonizing
γέφυρα (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge
γεφυρόω (ῥ) dam, move earth
Ἕλληγν Greek
ἐξέργω shut out; prevent; force to
ἐπάξιος worthy of

ἐπιβατεύω move into, go aboard
ἐπιχώριος native
ἱστορία science, history
Πέρσης Persian
σκευάζω prepare, collect
φύλαξ -χος (m) guard; sentry
 ~phylactery

φύλακας εἶναι τῶν γεφυρέων οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ οἱ ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου στρατευόμενοι παρείχοντο μὲν ἑκατὸν νέας, ἐσκευασμένοι δὲ ἦσαν ὡς Ἑλληνες. οὗτοι δὲ Ἰώνων καὶ Δωριέων ἄποικοι.

7.96

ἐπεβάτευον δὲ ἐπὶ πασέων τῶν νεῶν Πέρσαι καὶ Μῆδοι καὶ Σαάκαι. τούτων δὲ ἄριστα πλεούσας παρείχοντο νέας Φοίνικες καὶ Φοινίκων Σιδώνιοι. τούτοισι πᾶσι καὶ τοῖσι ἐς τὸν πεζὸν τεταγμένοισι αὐτῶν ἐπῆσαν ἐκάστοισι ἐπιχώριοι ἡγεμόνες, τῶν ἐγώ, οὐ γὰρ ἀναγκαίη ἐξέργομαι ἐς ἱστορίας λόγον, οὐ παραμένημαι. οὔτε γὰρ ἔθνεος ἐκάστου ἐπάξιοι ἦσαν οἱ ἡγεμόνες, ἔν τε ἔθνει ἐκάστῳ ὅσαι περ πόλεις τοσοῦτοι καὶ ἡγεμόνες ἦσαν, εἶποντο δὲ ὡς οὐ στρατηγοὶ ἀλλ' ὥσπερ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατευόμενοι δοῦλοι· ἐπεὶ στρατηγοὶ γε οἱ τὸ πᾶν ἔχοντες κράτος καὶ ἄρχοντες τῶν ἐθνέων ἐκάστων, ὅσοι αὐτῶν ἦσαν Πέρσαι, εἰρέαται μοι.

|guard;
sentry εἶναι τῶν γεφυρέων οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ οἱ ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου

στρατευόμενοι παρείχοντο μὲν ἑκατὸν νέας, |prepare, collect

δὲ ἦσαν ὥς |Greek οὗτοι δὲ Ἰώνων καὶ Δωριέων

|abroad,
colonizing

7.96

|move into, go aboard τασέων τῶν νεῶν Πέρσαι καὶ Μῆδοι

καὶ Σαάκαι. τούτων δὲ ἄριστα πλεύσας παρείχοντο

νέας Φοίνικες καὶ Φοινίκων Σιδώνιοι. τούτοισι πᾶσι καὶ

τοῖσι ἐς τὸν πεζὸν τεταγμένοισι αὐτῶν ἐπῆσαν ἑκάστοισι

|native ἡγεμόνες, τῶν ἐγώ, οὐ γὰρ ἀναγκαίῃ |shut out; pre-
vent; force to

ἐς ἱστορίας λόγον, οὐ παραμένημαι. οὔτε γὰρ ἔθνεος

ἐκάστου |worthy of, ἦσαν οἱ ἡγεμόνες, ἐν τε ἔθνει ἐκάστῳ ὅσαι

περ πόλεις τοσοῦτοι καὶ ἡγεμόνες ἦσαν, εἶποντο δὲ ὥς

οὐ στρατηγοὶ ἀλλ' ὥσπερ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατευόμενοι δοῦλοι·

ἐπεὶ στρατηγοὶ γε οἱ τὸ πᾶν ἔχοντες κράτος καὶ ἄρχοντες

τῶν ἐθνέων ἐκάστων, ὅσοι αὐτῶν ἦσαν Πέρσαι, εἰρέαται

μοι.

in their place and be guards of the bridges), the rest, I say, of those who served in the expedition from the Pontus furnished a hundred ships, and were equipped like Hellenes: these are colonists of the Ionians and Dorians.

7.96

In all the ships there served as fighting-men Persians, Medes, or Sacans; and of the ships, those which sailed best were furnished by the Phenicians, and of the Phenicians the best by the men of Sidon. Over all these men and also over those of them who were appointed to serve in the land-army, there were for each tribe native chieftains, of whom, since I am not compelled by the course of the inquiry, I make no mention by the way; for in the first place the chieftains of each separate nation were not persons worthy of mention, and then moreover within each nation there were as many chieftains as there were cities. These went with the expedition too not as commanders, but like the others serving as slaves; for the generals who had the absolute power and commanded the various nations, that is to say those who were Persians, having already been mentioned by me.

vocabulary

ἀριθμός number

ἐπιπλέω sail on, over ~float

ἵππαγωγός carrying horses

ὀνομαστός named ~name

πεντηκόντερος (f) ship with 50 oars

στρατηγέω be a general

στρατιά army ~strategy

συνέρχομαι come together

τρισχίλιοι 3000 ~kilo-

7.97

τοῦ δὲ ναυτικοῦ ἐστρατήγεον Ἀριαβίγνης τε ὁ Δαρείου καὶ Πρηξάσπης ὁ Ἀσπαθίνεω καὶ Μεγάβαζος ὁ Μεγαβάτεω καὶ Ἀχαιμένης ὁ Δαρείου, τῆς μὲν Ἰάδος τε καὶ Καρικῆς στρατιῆς Ἀριαβίγνης ὁ Δαρείου τε παῖς καὶ τῆς Γοβρύεω θυγατρός· Αἰγυπτίων δὲ ἐστρατήγεε Ἀχαιμένης Ξέρξεω ἐὼν ἀπ' ἀμφοτέρων ἀδελφεός, τῆς δὲ ἄλλης στρατιῆς ἐστρατήγεον οἱ δύο. τριηκόντεροι δὲ καὶ πεντηκόντεροι καὶ κέρκουροι καὶ ἵππαγωγὰ πλοῖα μακρὰ συνελθόντα ἐς τὸν ἀριθμὸν ἐφάνη τρισχίλια.

7.98

τῶν δὲ ἐπιπλεόντων μετὰ γε τοὺς στρατηγούς οἶδε ἦσαν ὀνομαστότατοι, Σιδώνιος Τετράμνηστος Ἀνύσου, καὶ Τύριος Ματτὴν Σιρώμου, καὶ Ἀράδιος Μέρβαλος Ἀγβάλου, καὶ Κίλιξ Συνέννεσις Ὠρομέδοντος, καὶ Λύκιος Κυβερνίσκος Σίκα, καὶ Κύπριοι Γόργος τε ὁ Χέρσιος καὶ Τιμῶναξ ὁ Τιμαγόρεω, καὶ Καρῶν Ἰστιαῖός τε ὁ

7.97

τοῦ δὲ ναυτικοῦ |be a general Ἀριαβίγνης τε ὁ Δαρείου καὶ
 Πρηξάσπης ὁ Ἀσπαθίνεω καὶ Μεγάβαζος ὁ Μεγαβάτεω
 καὶ Ἀχαιμένης ὁ Δαρείου, τῆς μὲν Ἰάδος τε καὶ Καρικῆς
 στρατιῆς Ἀριαβίγνης ὁ Δαρείου τε παῖς καὶ τῆς Γοβρύεω
 θυγατρὸς· Αἰγυπτίων δὲ |be a general Ἀχαιμένης Ξέρξεω
 ἐὼν ἀπ' ἀμφοτέρων ἀδελφεός, τῆς δὲ ἄλλης στρατιῆς
 |be a general οἱ δύο. τριηκόντεροι δὲ καὶ |ship with 50 oars
 καὶ κέρκouroι καὶ |carrying |horses πλοῖα μακρὰ |come together ὅς
 τὸν |number ἐφάνη |3000

7.98

τῶν δὲ |sail on, over μετὰ γε τοὺς στρατηγοὺς οἶδε
 ἦσαν |named , Σιδώνιος Τετράμνηστος Ἀνύσου,
 καὶ Τύριος Ματτὴν Σιρώμου, καὶ Ἀράδιος Μέρβαλος
 Ἀγβάλου, καὶ Κίλιξ Συνέννεσις Ὀρομέδοντος, καὶ Λύκιος
 Κυβερνίσκος Σίκα, καὶ Κύπριοι Γόργος τε ὁ Χέρσιος καὶ
 Τιμῶναξ ὁ Τιμαγόρεω, καὶ Καρῶν Ἰστιαίος τε ὁ

7.97

Of the naval force the following were commanders, — Ariabignes the son of Dareios, Prexaspes the son of Aspathines, Megabazos the son of Megabates, and Achaimenes the son of Dareios; that is to say, of the Ionian and Carian force Ariabignes, who was the son of Dareios and of the daughter of Gobryas; of the Egyptians Achaimenes was commander, being brother of Xerxes by both parents; and of the rest of the armament the other two were in command: and galleys of thirty oars and of fifty oars, and light vessels, and long ships to carry horses had been assembled together, as it proved, to the number of three thousand.

7.98

Of those who sailed in the ships the men of most note after the commanders were these, — of Sidon, Tetramnestos son of Anysos; of Tyre, Matten son of Siromos; or Arados, Merbalos son of Agbalos; of Kilikia, Syennesis son of Oromedon; of Lykia, Kyberniscos son of Sicas; of Cyprus, Gorgos son of Chersis and Timonax son of Timagoras; of Caria, Histiaios

vocabulary

ἀναγκαίη of necessity, by force
ἀναγκαῖος coerced, coercing, slavery
ἀνδρηίη courage
ἀνδρήιος of a man, manly
ἀποδείκνυμι (ὄ) show, point out;
 appoint; (mid) declare
ἀποδέχομαι accept ~doctrine
ἀποφαίνω display, declare
ἡγεμονεύω lead ~hegemony
θῶμα a wonder, feeling of surprise

~theater

καταλέγω relate in detail, choose;
 enroll ~legion
λῆμα will, desire, purpose; courage,
 insolence
μητρόθεν from the mother
νεηνίης young person
στρατιά army ~strategy
συνάπας (αᾶ) all together
ταξίαρχος military rank
τυραννίς -δος (f) tyranny

Τύμνεω καὶ Πίγρης ὁ Ὑσσελδώμων, καὶ Δαμασίθυμος ὁ Κανδαύλεω.

7.99

τῶν μὲν νυν ἄλλων οὐ παραμένημαι ταξιάρχων ὥς οὐκ ἀναγκαζόμενος, Ἀρτεμισίης δὲ τῆς μάλιστα θῶμα ποιεῦμαι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα στρατευσαμένης γυναικός· ἥτις ἀποθανόντος τοῦ ἀνδρὸς αὐτὴ τε ἔχουσα τὴν τυραννίδα καὶ παιδὸς ὑπάρχοντος νεηνίεω ὑπὸ λήματός τε καὶ ἀνδρηίης ἐστρατεύετο, οὐδεμιῆς οἱ εἰούσης ἀναγκαίης. οὐνομα μὲν δὴ ἦν αὐτῇ Ἀρτεμισίη, θυγάτηρ δὲ ἦν Λυγδάμιος, γένος δὲ ἐξ Ἀλικαρνησοῦ τὰ πρὸς πατρός, τὰ μητρόθεν δὲ Κρήσσα. ἡγεμόνευε δὲ Ἀλικαρνησέων τε καὶ Κώων καὶ Νισυρίων τε καὶ Καλυδνίων, πέντε νέας παρεχομένη. καὶ συναπάσης τῆς στρατιῆς, μετὰ γε τὰς Σιδωνίων, νέας εὐδοξοτάτας παρείχετο, πάντων τε τῶν συμμάχων γνώμας ἀρίστας βασιλεὶ ἀπεδέξατο. τῶν δὲ κατέλεξα πολίων ἡγεμονεύειν αὐτήν, τὸ ἔθνος ἀποφαίνω πᾶν ἐὼν Δωρικόν, Ἀλικαρνησέας μὲν Τροιζηνίους, τοὺς δὲ

Τύμνεω καὶ Πίγρης ὁ Ὑσσελδώμων, καὶ Δαμασίθυμος ὁ
Κανδαύλεω.

7.99

τῶν μὲν νυν ἄλλων οὐ παραμέμνημαι ὥς
οὐκ ἀναγκαζόμενος, Ἀρτεμισίης δὲ τῆς ^{|military rank} μάλιστα
ποιεῦμαι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα στρατευσαμένης γυναικός ^{|wonder, surprise}
ἀποθανόντος τοῦ ἀνδρὸς αὐτὴ τε ἔχουσα τὴν
καὶ παιδὸς ὑπάρχοντος ὑπὸ ^{|tyranny} τε καὶ
ἀνδρὸς ἐστρατεύετο, οὐκ οἷός τις οἱ ἐοικέναι ^{|young person} ἀναγκαίης. ^{|will, desire, purpose; courage, insolence}
οὐνομα μὲν δὴ ἦν αὐτῇ Ἀρτεμισίη, θυγάτηρ δὲ ἦν
Λυγδάμιος, γένος δὲ ἐξ Ἀλικαρνησοῦ τὰ πρὸς πατρός,
τὰ δὲ Κρήσσα. δὲ Ἀλικαρνησσέων τε
καὶ Κώων καὶ Νισυρίων ^{|from the mother} τε καὶ Καλυδνίων, ^{|lead} πέντε νέας
παρεχομένη. καὶ συναπάσης τῆς στρατιῆς, μετὰ γε τὰς
Σιδωνίων, νέας εὐδοξοτάτας παρείχετο, πάντων τε τῶν
συμμάχων γνώμας ἀρίστας βασιλεῖ ἀπεδέξατο. τῶν δὲ
πολίων αὐτήν, τὸ ἔθνος
^{|relate in detail, lead} πάλιν Ἀπρικόν, Ἀλικαρνησσέας μὲν Τροίηντας ^{|display, declare}
δὲ

son of Tymnes, Pigres son of Hysseldomos, and Damasithymos son of Candaules.

7.99

Of the rest of the officers I make no mention by the way (since I am not bound to do so), but only of Artemisia, at whom I marvel most that she joined the expedition against Hellas, being a woman; for after her husband died, she holding the power herself, although she had a son who was a young man, went on the expedition impelled by high spirit and manly courage, no necessity being laid upon her. Now her name, as I said, was Artemisia and she was the daughter of Lygdamis, and by descent she was of Halicarnassos on the side of her father, but of Crete by her mother. She was ruler of the men of Halicarnassos and Cos and Nisyros and Calydna, furnishing five ships; and she furnished ships which were of all the fleet reputed the best after those of the Sidonians, and of all his allies she set forth the best counsels to the king. Of the States of which I said that she was leader I declare the people to be all of Dorian race, those of Halicarnassos being Troizenians, and

*vocabulary***αἰγιαλός** beach, shore**ἀνακωχεύω** hold back, still**ἀπογράφω** copy, register**ἀριθμέω** to count ~arithmetic**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**γραμματιστής** -οῦ (m, 1) clerk,
schoolmaster**διατάσσω** arrange, array**διεξελαύνω** drive through**ἐνθαῦτα** there, here**ἐντός** within**ἐξοπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite**ἐπειρωτέω** consult, ask**ἐπιβάτης** -ου (m, 1) marine, passenger**ἐσχατάω** be at the edge**ἐσχατος** farthest, last**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider
~theater**θέομαι** look at, behold, consider
~theater**ἵζω** to seat ~sit**καθέλκω** launch; carry down**ναύαρχος** admiral**παραπλέω** sail past ~float**πλέθρον** 30 meters or its square
~plethora**πρῶρα** bow, prow ~prolog**σκηνέω** camp**σκηνή** tent; stage**στρατός** common people/soldiers
~strategy**τοσόσδε** this much

ἄλλους Ἐπιδαυρίους. ἐς μὲν τοσόνδε ὁ ναυτικὸς στρατὸς εἴρηται.

7.100

Ξέρξης δέ, ἐπεὶ ἡριθμήθη τε καὶ διετάχθη ὁ στρατός, ἐπεθύμησε αὐτὸς σφεας διεξελάσας θεήσασθαι· μετὰ δὲ ἐποίεε ταῦτα, καὶ διεξελαύνων ἐπὶ ἄρματος παρὰ ἔθνος ἐν ἑκάστον ἐπυνθάνετο. καὶ ἀπέγραφον οἱ γραμματισταί, ἕως ἐξ ἐσχάτων ἐς ἔσχατα ἀπίκετο καὶ τῆς ἵππου καὶ τοῦ πεζοῦ. ὥς δὲ ταῦτά οἱ ἐπεποίητο, τῶν νεῶν κατελκυσθεισέων ἐς θάλασσαν, ἐνθαῦτα ὁ Ξέρξης μετεκβὰς ἐκ τοῦ ἄρματος ἐς νέα Σιδωνίην ἵζετο ὑπὸ σκηνῇ χρυσῇ καὶ παρέπλεε παρὰ τὰς πρῶρας τῶν νεῶν, ἐπειρωτῶν τε ἐκάστας ὁμοίως καὶ τὸν πεζὸν καὶ ἀπογραφόμενος. τὰς δὲ νέας οἱ ναύαρχοι ἀναγαγόντες ὅσον τε τέσσερα πλέθρα ἀπὸ τοῦ αἰγιαλοῦ ἀνεκώχεον, τὰς πρῶρας ἐς γῆν τρέψαντες πάντες μετωπηδόν, καὶ ἐξοπλίσαντες τοὺς ἐπιβάτας ὥς ἐς πόλεμον. ὁ δ' ἐντὸς τῶν προωρέων πλέων ἐθγεῖτο καὶ τοῦ αἰγιαλοῦ.

ἄλλους Ἐπιδανρίους. ἐς μὲν |this much ἡ ναυτικός |army
εἴρηται.

7.100

Ξέρξης δέ, ἐπεὶ |to count τε καὶ |arrange, ὁ |army
|array
ἐπεθύμησε αὐτός σφεας |drive θεήσασθαι· μετὰ δέ
|through
ἐποίεε ταῦτα, καὶ |drive through ἐπὶ |chariot παρὰ ἔθνος ἐν
ἕκαστον ἐπυνθάνετο. καὶ |copy, register οἱ |clerk, schoolmaster
ἕως ἐξ ἐσχάτων ἐς ἔσχατα ἀπύκετο καὶ τῆς ἵππου
καὶ τοῦ πεζοῦ. ὥς δὲ ταῦτά οἱ ἐπεποίητο, τῶν
νεῶν |launch; carry down ἐς θάλασσαν, |there, here ἡ Ξέρξης
μετεκβαὺς ἐκ τοῦ |chariot ἐς νέα Σιδωνίην |to seat ὑπὸ
σκηνῇ χρυσέῃ καὶ |sail past παρὰ τὰς |bow, prow τῶν
νεῶν, |consult, ask τε ἐκάστας ὁμοίως καὶ τὸν πεζὸν καὶ
|copy, register τὰς δὲ νέας οἱ |admiral ἀναγαγόντες
ὅσον τε τέσσερα |30 me- ὑπὸ τοῦ |beach, |hold back, still
|ters or its |shore
τὰς |bow, prow ἐς γῆν τρέψαντες πάντες μετωπηδόν, καὶ
|prepare, arm τοὺς |marine, ὥς ἐς πόλεμον. ὁ δ' |within
|passenger
τῶν πρωρέων πλέων |look at, behold, |beach,
|consider |shore

the rest Epidaurians. So far then I have spoken of the naval force.

7.100

Then when Xerxes had numbered the army, and it had been arranged in divisions, he had a mind to drive through it himself and inspect it: and afterwards he proceeded so to do; and driving through in a chariot by each nation, he inquired about them and his scribes wrote down the names, until he had gone from end to end both of the horse and of the foot. When he had done this, the ships were drawn down into the sea, and Xerxes changing from his chariot to a ship of Sidon sat down under a golden canopy and sailed along by the prows of the ships, asking of all just as he had done with the land-army, and having the answers written down. And the captains had taken their ships out to a distance of about four hundred feet from the beach and were staying them there, all having turned the prows of the ships towards the shore in an even line and having armed all the fighting-men as for war; and he inspected them sailing within, between the prows of the ships and the beach.

*vocabulary***ἀηδής** unpleasant**ἀνταείρω** raise against**ἀνταίρω** raise against**ἀξιόμαχος** well matched for war**ἄρθμιος** allied, friendly ~harmony**ἀσθενής** weak**ἐκβαίνω** come forth, disembark ~basis**ἐλάχιστος** smallest, shortest, fewest**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἑσπέρα** evening, west**εὖς** good, brave, noble**ἡδονή** pleasure**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism**κότερος** which, whichever of two**μεταπέμπω** send; (mid) summon

~pomp

μίν him, her, it**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**ὅποῖος** whatever kind**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion**συστρατεύω** join in an expedition**ὑπολαμβάνω** take under one's

support, seize; speak up; imagine

~epilepsy

ὑπομένω stay behind, await ~remain

7.101

ὥς δὲ καὶ ταύτας διεξέπλωσε καὶ ἐξέβη ἐκ τῆς νεός, μετεπέμψατο Δημάρητον τὸν Ἀρίστωνος συστρατευόμενον αὐτῷ ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καλέσας δ' αὐτὸν εἶρετο τάδε. «Δημάρητε, νῦν μοι σὲ ἡδύ τι ἐστὶ εἰρέσθαι τὰ θέλω. σὺ εἰς Ἑλλήν τε, καὶ ὥς ἐγὼ πυνθάνομαι σεῦ τε καὶ τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων τῶν ἐμοὶ ἐς λόγους ἀπικνεομένων, πόλιος οὔτ' ἐλαχίστης οὔτ' ἀσθνεστάτης. νῦν ὦν μοι τόδε φράσον, εἰ Ἑλληνες ὑπομενέουσι χεῖρας ἐμοὶ ἀνταειρόμενοι. οὐ γάρ, ὥς ἐγὼ δοκέω, οὐδ' εἰ πάντες Ἑλληνες καὶ οἱ λοιποὶ οἱ πρὸς ἐσπέρης οἰκέοντες ἄνθρωποι συλλεχθείησαν, οὐκ ἀξιόμαχοι εἰσὶ ἐμὲ ἐπιόντα ὑπομεῖναι, μὴ ἐόντες ἄρθμιοι. θέλω μέντοι καὶ τὸ ἀπὸ σεῦ, ὁκοῖόν τι λέγεις περὶ αὐτῶν, πυνθέσθαι.» ὁ μὲν ταῦτα εἰρώτα, ὁ δὲ ὑπολαβὼν ἔφη «βασιλεῦ, κότερα ἀληθείη χρήσωμαι πρὸς σὲ ἢ ἡδονῇ;» ὁ δέ μιν ἀληθείη χρήσασθαι ἐκέλευε, φὰς οὐδέν οἱ ἀηδέστερον ἔσεσθαι ἢ πρότερον ἦν.

7.101

ὥς δὲ καὶ ταύτας διεξέπλωσε καὶ |come forth τῆς
 νεός, |send; (mid) summon ἡμάρητον τὸν Ἀρίστωνος
 |join in an expedition αὐτῷ ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καλέσας δ'
 αὐτὸν εἵρετο τάδε. «Δημάρητε, νῦν μοι σὲ |sweet ἡ
 ἐστὶ εἰρέσθαι τὰ θέλω. σὺ εἰς Ἑλλήν τε, καὶ ὥς ἐγὼ
 πυνθάνομαι σεῦ τε καὶ τῶν ἄλλων |Greek τῶν ἐμοὶ
 ἐς λόγους ἀπικνεομένων, πόλιος οὗτ' |smallest, short-τ'
 |est, fewest
 |weak νῦν ὦν μοι τόδε φράσον, εἰ |Greek
 |stay behind, await ἡμῶν ἐμοὶ ἀνταειρόμενοι. οὐ γάρ, ὥς
 ἐγὼ δοκέω, οὐδ' εἰ πάντες |Greek καὶ οἱ λοιποὶ οἱ
 πρὸς ἐσπέρης οἰκέοντες ἄνθρωποι |collect, assemble , οὐκ
 |well matched for war ἡμῶν ἐπιόντα |stay behind, await ἡμῶν ἐπὶ
 |allied, friendly
 θέλω μέντοι καὶ τὸ ἀπὸ σεῦ, |whatever kind ἡμῶν περὶ
 αὐτῶν, πυθέσθαι.» ὁ μὲν ταῦτα εἰρώτα, ὁ δὲ |take under one's sup-
 |port, seize; speak up;
 ἔφη «βασιλεῦ, |which, ἡμῶν ληθείη χρήσωμαι πρὸς δὲ ἡ
 |whichever
 |pleasure ὁ δὲ μιν ἀληθείη χρήσασθαι ἐκέλευε, φὰς οὐδὲν
 οἱ |unpleasant ἔσεσθαι ἢ πρότερον ἦν.

7.101

Now when he had sailed through these and had disembarked from his ship, he sent for Demaratos the son of Ariston, who was marching with him against Hellas; and having called him he asked as follows: “Demaratos, now it is my pleasure to ask thee somewhat which I desire to know. Thou art not only a Hellene, but also, as I am informed both by thee and by the other Hellenes who come to speech with me, of a city which is neither the least nor the feeblest of Hellas. Now therefore declare to me this, namely whether the Hellenes will endure to raise hands against me: for, as I suppose, even if all the Hellenes and the remaining nations who dwell towards the West should be gathered together, they are not strong enough in fight to endure my attack, supposing them to be my enemies. I desire however to be informed also of thy opinion, what thou sayest about these matters.” He inquired thus, and the other made answer and said: “O king, shall I utter the truth in speaking to thee, or that which will give pleasure?” and he bade him utter the truth, saying that he should suffer nothing unpleasant in consequence of this, any more than he suffered before.

vocabulary

αἰνέω praise, assent, acquiesce in
 ἀλίσκομαι be captured ~helix
 ἀντιόω meet, fight, join
 ἀριθμέω to count ~arithmetic
 ἀριθμός number
 διαχρέομαι use habitually; lend out;
 reveal
 δουλοσύνη slavery
 ἐκστρατεύω march out; (mp) take the
 field

Ἑλλην Greek

κατεργάζομαι achieve; cultivate; get;
 kill
 πάντως by all means
 πενία poverty ~osteopenia
 σοφία skill; wisdom ~sophistry
 σύντροφος fellow; habitual
 χίλιοι (ι) thousand ~kilo-
 χῶρος place ~heir
 ψεύδω be false, deceive; (mid) to lie
 ~pseudo-

7.102

ὥς δὲ ταῦτα ἤκουσε Δημάρητος, ἔλεγε τάδε. «βασιλεῦ, ἐπειδὴ ἀληθείῃ διαχρήσασθαι πάντως κελεύεις ταῦτα λέγοντα τὰ μὴ ψευδόμενός τις ὕστερον ὑπὸ σεῦ ἀλώσεται, τῇ Ἑλλάδι πενίη μὲν αἰεὶ κοτε σύντροφος ἐστί, ἀρετὴ δὲ ἔπακτος ἐστί, ἀπὸ τε σοφίης κατεργασμένη καὶ νόμου ἰσχυροῦ· τῇ διαχρεωμένη ἢ Ἑλλὰς τήν τε πενίην ἀπαμύνεται καὶ τὴν δεσποσύνην. αἰνέω μὲν νυν πάντας Ἕλληνας τοὺς περὶ ἐκείνους τοὺς Δωρικοὺς χώρους οἰκημένους, ἔρχομαι δὲ λέξων οὐ περὶ πάντων τούσδε τοὺς λόγους ἀλλὰ περὶ Λακεδαιμονίων μούνων, πρῶτα μὲν ὅτι οὐκ ἔστι ὅπως κοτὲ σοὺς δέξονται λόγους δουλοσύνην φέροντας τῇ Ἑλλάδι, αὖτις δὲ ὡς ἀντιώσονται τοι ἐς μάχην καὶ ἦν οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες πάντες τὰ σὰ φρονέωσι. ἀριθμοῦ δὲ πέρι, μὴ πύθῃ ὅσοι τινὲς ἐόντες ταῦτα ποιέειν οἰοί τε εἰσί· ἦν τε γὰρ τύχῳσι ἐξεστρατευμένοι χίλιοι, οὗτοι μαχήσονται τοι, ἦν τε ἐλάσσονες τούτων ἦν τε καὶ πλεῦνες.»

7.102

ὥς δὲ ταῦτα ἤκουσε Δημάρητος, ἔλεγε τάδε. «βασιλεῦ,
 ἐπειδὴ ἀληθείῃ |use habitually;|by all means...λέύεις ταῦτα
 |lend out; reveal
 λέγοντα τὰ μὴ |be false, deceive; ὕστερον ὑπὸ σεῦ |be captured
 |(mid) to lie
 τῇ Ἑλλάδι πενίῃ μὲν αἰεί κοτε |fellow; ἐστί, ἀρετὴ
 |habitual
 δὲ ἔπακτος ἐστί, ἀπὸ τε σοφίης |achieve; culti- καὶ
 |vate; get; kill
 νόμου ἰσχυροῦ· τῇ |use habitually; ἢ Ἑλλάς τὴν τε πενίην
 |lend out; reveal
 ἀπαμύνεται καὶ τὴν δεσποσύνην. |praise, μὲν νυν πάντας
 |assent
 |Greek τοὺς περὶ ἐκείνους τοὺς Δωρικοὺς |place
 οἰκημένους, ἔρχομαι δὲ λέξων οὐ περὶ πάντων τούσδε τοὺς
 λόγους ἀλλὰ περὶ Λακεδαιμονίων μούνων, πρῶτα μὲν
 ὅτι οὐκ ἔστι ὅπως σοὺς δέξονται λόγους |slavery
 φέροντας τῇ Ἑλλάδι, αὐτὶς δὲ ὥς |meet, fight, join τοι ἐς
 μάχην καὶ ἦν οἱ ἄλλοι |Greek πάντες τὰ σὰ φρονέωσι.
 ἀριθμοῦ δὲ πέρι, μὴ πύθῃ ὅσοι τινὲς ἐόντες ταῦτα ποιέειν
 οἰοί τε εἰσί· ἦν τε γὰρ τύχῳσι |march out; (mp) χίλιοι,
 |take the field
 οὔτοι μαχήσονταιί τοι, ἦν τε ἐλάσσονες τούτων ἦν τε καὶ
 πλεῦνες.»

7.102

When Demaratos heard this, he spoke as follows: “O king, since thou biddest me by all means utter the truth, and so speak as one who shall not be afterwards convicted by thee of having spoken falsely, I say this:—with Hellas poverty is ever an inbred growth, while valour is one that has been brought in, being acquired by intelligence and the force of law; and of it Hellas makes use ever to avert from herself not only poverty but also servitude to a master. Now I commend all the Hellenes who are settled in those Dorian lands, but this which I am about to say has regard not to all, but to the Lacedemonians alone: of these I say, first that it is not possible that they will ever accept thy terms, which carry with them servitude for Hellas; and next I say that they will stand against thee in fight, even if all the other Hellenes shall be of thy party: and as for numbers, ask now how many they are, that they are able to do this; for whether it chances that a thousand of them have come out into the field, these will fight with thee, or if there be less than this, or again if there be more.”

vocabulary

ἀνθίστημι face, make a stand ~station
ἀντάξιος worth just as much as
 ~axiom
ἀντιτάσσω set against
αὐχέω boast
γελάω laugh, smile, laugh at
διαιρέω divide, distinguish, distribute
δίζημαι seek ~zeal
διπλήσιος twofold, double
ἐλεύθερος not enslaved
Ἕλλην Greek
εὖς good, brave, noble
καίτοι and yet; and in fact; although
κόμπος noise, racket
κῶας κῶως (n, 3) fleece
μάτην in vain, randomly

μέγαθος tall, big (person)
μυρίος (ὑ) 10,000 ~myriad
ὄον οὓ type of fruit
ὀρθόω stand up
πεντακισμύριοι (ὑ) 50,000
πρέπω be conspicuous, preeminent
 ~refurbish
στρατιά army ~strategy
στρατός common people/soldiers
 ~strategy
στρατόω be on a campaign ~strategy
τοσόσδε this much
φθέγγομαι make a sound, utter
 ~diphthong
φοιτάω go back and forth
χίλιοι (ιι) thousand ~kilo-

7.103

ταῦτα ἀκούσας Ξέρξης γελάσας ἔφη «Δημάρητε, οἷον ἐφθέγξαο ἔπος, ἄνδρας χιλίους στρατιῇ τοσῆδε μαχήσεσθαι. ἄγε εἰπέ μοι· σὺ φῆς τούτων τῶν ἀνδρῶν βασιλεὺς αὐτὸς γενέσθαι· σὺ ὦν ἐθελήσεις αὐτίκα μάλα πρὸς ἄνδρας δέκα μάχεσθαι; καίτοι εἰ τὸ πολιτικὸν ὑμῖν πᾶν ἐστὶ τοιοῦτον οἷον σὺ διαιρέεις, σέ γε τὸν κείνων βασιλέα πρέπει πρὸς τὸ διπλήσιον ἀντιτάσσεσθαι κατὰ νόμους τοὺς ὑμετέρους. εἰ γὰρ κείνων ἕκαστος δέκα ἀνδρῶν τῆς στρατιῆς τῆς ἐμῆς ἀντάξιος ἐστί, σὲ δέ γε δίζημαι εἴκοσι εἶναι ἀντάξιον, καὶ οὕτω μὲν ὀρθοῖτ' ἂν ὁ λόγος ὁ παρὰ σέο λεγόμενος· εἰ δὲ τοιοῦτοί τε ἐόντες καὶ μεγάθεα τοσοῦτοι, ὅσοι σύ τε καὶ οἱ παρ' ἐμὲ φοιτῶσι Ἑλλήνων ἐς λόγους αὐχέετε τοσοῦτον, ὅρα μὴ μάτην κόμπος ὁ λόγος οὗτος εἰρημένος ᾗ. ἐπεὶ φέρε ἴδω παντὶ τῷ οἰκότῃ· κῶς ἂν δυναίητο χίλιοι ἢ καὶ μύριοι ἢ καὶ πεντακισμύριοι, ἐόντες γε ἐλεύθεροι πάντες ὁμοίως καὶ μὴ ὑπ' ἐνὸς ἀρχόμενοι, στρατῷ τοσῶδε ἀντιστήναι; ἐπεὶ

7.103

ταῦτα ἀκούσας Ξέρξης |laugh, |έφη «Δημάρητε,
 οἶον |make a sound, utter Ἰνδρας χιλίους στρατιῇ |this much
 μαχήσεσθαι. ἄγε εἰπέ μοι· σὺ φῆς τούτων τῶν ἀνδρῶν
 βασιλεὺς αὐτὸς γενέσθαι· σὺ ὦν ἐθελήσεις αὐτίκα μάλα
 πρὸς ἄνδρας δέκα μάχεσθαι; |and yet; and in ολιτικὸν ὑμῖν
 |fact; although
 πᾶν ἐστι τοιοῦτον οἶον σὺ |divide, distín-, ε τὸν κείνων
 |guish, distribute
 βασιλέα |be conspicuous, prè- |twofold, |set against κατὰ
 |eminent |double
 νόμους τοὺς ὑμετέρους. εἰ γὰρ κείνων ἕκαστος δέκα
 ἀνδρῶν τῆς στρατιῆς τῆς ἐμῆς |worth just ἵστί, σὲ δέ γε
 |as much as
 |seek εἴκοσι εἶναι |worth just καὶ οὕτω μὲν |stand up ἔν
 |as much as
 ὁ λόγος ὁ παρὰ σέο λεγόμενος· εἰ δὲ τοιοῦτοί τε ἑόντες
 καὶ |tall, big τοσοῦτοι, ὅσοι σύ τε καὶ οἱ παρ' ἐμὲ |go back and forth
 |Greek ἐς λόγους |boast τοσοῦτον, ὅρα μὴ μάτην
 |noise, ὁ λόγος οὗτος εἰρημένος ἦ. ἐπεὶ φέρε ἴδω παντὶ
 |racket
 τῷ οἰκότι· |fleece ἔν δυνάϊατο χίλιοι ἦ καὶ μύριοι ἦ καὶ
 |50,000 , ἑόντες γε |not enslaved ἄντες ὁμοίως καὶ
 μὴ ὑπ' ἐνὸς ἀρχόμενοι, στρατῷ |this |face, make a stand.
 |much

7.103

Xerxes hearing this laughed, and said: “Demaratos, what a speech is this which thou hast uttered, saying that a thousand men will fight with this vast army! Come tell me this:—thou sayest that thou wert thyself king of these men; wilt thou therefore consent forthwith to fight with ten men? and yet if your State is such throughout as thou dost describe it, thou their king ought by your laws to stand in array against double as many as another man; that is to say, if each of them is a match for ten men of my army, I expect of thee that thou shouldest be a match for twenty. Thus would be confirmed the report which is made by thee: but if ye, who boast thus greatly are such men and in size so great only as the Hellenes who come commonly to speech with me, thyself included, then beware lest this which has been spoken prove but an empty vaunt. For come, let me examine it by all that is probable: how could a thousand or ten thousand or even fifty thousand, at least if they were all equally free and were not ruled by one man, stand against so great

vocabulary

αἰχμοφόρος spearman
ἀνίημι urge, impel; release ~jet
ἄπειρος untested; infinite
ἀρχῆθεν since forever
δειμαίνω be afraid
ἐλεύθερος not enslaved
Ἑλλήν Greek
ἐπίσταμαι know how, understand
 ~station
καθήκω come down, (a day) to fall,
 arrive; be proper
καίτοι and yet; and in fact; although
μάστιξ -γος (f) whip

ὁμός same ~homoerotic
ὁμοῦ together
ὁμόω unite ~homoerotic
οὐδέτερος neither
Πέρσης Persian
σπάνιος rare, scanty
στέργω love; be content
φλυηρέω talk foolishly
φύσις -εως (f) nature (of a thing)
 ~physics
φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics
χιλιάς -δος (ι, f, 3) 1000
χίλιοι (ι) thousand ~kilo-

τοι πλεῦνες περὶ ἓνα ἕκαστον γινόμεθα ἢ χίλιοι, ἐόντων
ἐκείνων πέντε χιλιάδων. ὑπὸ μὲν γὰρ ἑνὸς ἀρχόμενοι
κατὰ τρόπον τὸν ἡμέτερον γενοιάτ' ἄν, δειμαίνοντες
τοῦτον, καὶ παρὰ τὴν ἐωυτῶν φύσιν ἀμείνονες, καὶ ἴοιεν
ἀναγκαζόμενοι μάστιγι ἐς πλεῦνας ἐλάσσονες ἐόντες·
ἀναιμένοι δὲ ἐς τὸ ἐλεύθερον οὐκ ἂν ποίεοιεν τούτων
οὐδέτερα. δοκέω δὲ ἔγωγε καὶ ἀνισωθέντας πλήθει
χαλεπῶς ἂν Ἑλλήνας Πέρσησι μούνοισι μάχεσθαι. ἀλλὰ
παρ' ἡμῖν μὲν μούνοισι τοῦτο ἐστὶ τὸ σὺ λέγεις, ἔστι γε
μὲν οὐ πολλὸν ἀλλὰ σπάνιον· εἰσὶ γὰρ Περσέων τῶν ἐμῶν
αἰχμοφόρων οἱ ἐθελήσουσι Ἑλλήνων ἀνδράσι τρισὶ ὁμοῦ
μάχεσθαι· τῶν σὺ ἐὼν ἄπειρος πολλὰ φλυηρείς.»

7.104

πρὸς ταῦτα Δημάρητος λέγει «ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἀρχῆθεν
ἠπιστάμην ὅτι ἀληθείῃ χρεώμενος οὐ φίλα τοι ἐρέω· σὺ
δ' ἐπεὶ ἠνάγκασας λέγειν τῶν λόγων τοὺς ἀληθεστάτους,
ἔλεγον τὰ κατήκοντα Σπαρτιήτησι. καίτοι ὥς ἐγὼ
τυγχάνω τὰ νῦν τάδε ἐστοργῶς ἐκείνους, αὐτὸς μάλιστα

τοι πλεῦνες περὶ ἓνα ἕκαστον γινόμεθα ἢ χίλιοι, ἐόντων
 ἐκείνων πέντε |1000 . ὑπὸ μὲν γὰρ ἑνὸς ἀρχόμενοι
 κατὰ τρόπον τὸν ἡμέτερον γενοίατ' ἂν, |be afraid
 τοῦτον, καὶ παρὰ τὴν ἑωυτῶν φύσιν ἀμείνονες, καὶ ἴοιεν
 ἀναγκαζόμενοι |whip ἐς πλεῦνας ἐλάσσονες ἐόντες·
 |urge, δὲ ἐς τὸ |not enslaved οὐκ ἂν ποίεοιεν τούτων
 |impel;
 |release
 |neither . δοκέω δὲ ἔγωγε καὶ ἀνισωθέντας πλήθει
 χαλεπῶς ἂν |Greek Πέρσησι μύνουσι μάχεσθαι. ἀλλὰ
 παρ' ἡμῖν μὲν μύνουσι τοῦτο ἐστὶ τὸ σὺν λέγεις, ἔστι γε
 μὲν οὐ πολλὸν ἀλλὰ |rare, εἰσὶ γὰρ Περσέων τῶν ἐμῶν
 |spearman |scanty οἳ ἐθελήσουσι |Greek ἀνδράσι τρισὶ ὁμοῦ
 μάχεσθαι· τῶν σὺν ἑὼν |untested; πολλὰ |talk foolishly
 |infinite

7.104

πρὸς ταῦτα Δημάρητος λέγει «ὦ βασιλεῦ, |since
 |forever
 |know ὅτι ἀληθείῃ χρεώμενος οὐ φίλα τοι ἐρέω· σὺ
 δ' ἐπεὶ ἡνάγκασας λέγειν τῶν λόγων τοὺς ἀληθεστάτους,
 ἔλεγον τὰ |come down, (a day) to fall, arrive; and yet; and in, ὡ
 |be proper |fact; although
 τυγχάνω τὰ νῦν τάδε |love; be content ἄρους, αὐτὸς μάλιστα

an army? since, as thou knowest, we shall be more than a thousand coming about each one of them, supposing them to be in number five thousand. If indeed they were ruled by one man after our fashion, they might perhaps from fear of him become braver than it was their nature to be, or they might go compelled by the lash to fight with greater numbers, being themselves fewer in number; but if left at liberty, they would do neither of these things: and I for my part suppose that, even if equally matched in numbers, the Hellenes would hardly dare to fight with the Persians taken alone. With us however this of which thou speakest is found in single men, not indeed often, but rarely; for there are Persians of my spearmen who will consent to fight with three men of the Hellenes at once: but thou hast had no experience of these things and therefore thou speakest very much at random.”

7.104

To this Demaratos replied: “O king, from the first I was sure that if I uttered the truth I should not speak that which was pleasing to thee; since however thou didst compel me to speak the very truth, I told thee of the matters which concern the Spartans. And yet how I am at this present time attached to them by affection thou knowest better than any; seeing that first they took away from me the rank and privileges which came to

vocabulary

ἀλῆς crowded; all together
 ἀναγκαίη of necessity, by force
 ἀναγκαῖος coerced, coercing, slavery
 ἀφαιρέω take away ~heresy
 δεσπότης -ου (m, 1) master, despot
 διωθέω tear, rend
 ἐκὼν willingly, on purpose; giving in
 too easily
 ἐλεύθερος not enslaved
 Ἑλλήν Greek
 ἐξεπίσταμαι know well
 ἐπικρατέω rule over
 ἐποτρύνω (ῶ) urge, stir, dispatch
 εὖνοια good will, gift
 ἡδέως pleasantly ~hedonism
 ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism

οὐδαμὸς not anyone
 οὐκω no longer
 πατρώιος of the father(s), ancestral
 ~paternal
 πατρῷος of the father(s), ancestral
 σιγάω (ῖ) be silent
 στέργω love; be content
 σόφρων sensible, prudent ~frenzy
 ὑπίσχομαι promise, agree to do
 ὑποδείκνυμι (υῶ) show, trace out
 ὑποδειμαίνω cower before
 ὑποδέχομαι welcome, accept, suffer
 ~doctrine
 φλυηρέω talk foolishly
 φυγὰς -δος (m, 3) exile, refugee
 ~fugitive

ἐξεπίσται, οἳ με τιμὴν τε καὶ γέρεα ἀπελόμενοι πατρώια
 ἄπολιν τε καὶ φυγάδα πεποιήκασι, πατὴρ δὲ σὸς
 ὑποδεξάμενος βίον τέ μοι καὶ οἶκον ἔδωκε. οὔκων οἶκός
 ἐστὶ ἄνδρα τὸν σὺ φρονα εὐνοίην φαινομένην διωθέεσθαι,
 ἀλλὰ στέργειν μάλιστα. ἐγὼ δὲ οὔτε δέκα ἀνδράσι
 ὑπὸ σχομαι οἷός τε εἶναι μάχεσθαι οὔτε δυοῖσι, ἐκὼν τε εἶναι
 οὐδ' ἂν μονομαχέοιμι. εἰ δὲ ἀναγκαίῃ εἴῃ ἢ μέγας τις ὁ
 ἐποτρύνων ἀγών, μαχοίμην ἂν πάντων ἥδιιστα ἐνὶ τούτων
 τῶν ἀνδρῶν οἱ Ἑλλήνων ἕκαστος φησὶ τριῶν ἄξιός εἵναι.
 ὥς δὲ καὶ Λακεδαιμόνιοι κατὰ μὲν ἓνα μαχόμενοι οὐδαμῶν
 εἰσι κακίονες ἀνδρῶν, ἀλέες δὲ ἄριστοι ἀνδρῶν ἀπάντων.
 ἐλεύθεροι γὰρ ἐόντες οὐ πάντα ἐλεύθεροι εἰσὶ· ἔπεστι
 γάρ σφι δεσπότης νόμος, τὸν ὑποδειμαίνουσι πολλῶ
 ἔτι μᾶλλον ἢ οἱ σοὶ σέ. ποιεῦσι γὼν τὰ ἂν ἐκεῖνος
 ἀνώγη· ἀνώγει δὲ τῶντὸ αἰεὶ, οὐκ ἔων φεύγειν οὐδὲν
 πλῆθος ἀνθρώπων ἐκ μάχης, ἀλλὰ μένοντας ἐν τῇ τάξει
 ἐπικρατέειν ἢ ἀπόλλυσθαι. σοὶ δὲ εἰ φαίνομαι ταῦτα
 λέγων φλυηρέειν, τᾶλλα σιγᾶν θέλω τὸ λοιπόν·

ἐξεπίστεται, οἳ με τιμὴν τε καὶ γέρεα |take away πατρώια
 ἄπολιν τε καὶ |exile, πεποιήκασι, πατήρ δὲ σὸς
 |refugee
 ὑποδεξάμενος βίον τέ μοι καὶ οἶκον ἔδωκε. |no longer ἔκός
 ἐστι ἄνδρα τὸν |sensible, |good will, 'gift ἡμένην |tear, rend
 |prudent
 ἀλλὰ |love; be content ἵστα. ἐγὼ δὲ οὔτε δέκα ἀνδράσι
 |promise, οἷός τε εἶναι μάχεσθαι οὔτε δυοῖσι, |willingly εἶναι
 |agree
 οὐδ' ἂν μονομαχέοιμι. εἰ δὲ ἀναγκαίη εἴη ἢ μέγας τις ὁ
 |urge, stir ἄγών, μαχοίμην ἂν πάντων ἥδιστα ἐνὶ τούτων
 τῶν ἀνδρῶν οἱ |Greek ἕκαστος φησὶ τριῶν ἄξιος εἶναι.
 ὥς δὲ καὶ Λακεδαιμόνιοι κατὰ μὲν ἓνα μαχόμενοι |not anyone
 εἰσι κακίονες ἀνδρῶν, |crowded; ἄριστοι ἀνδρῶν ἀπάντων.
 |all together
 |not enslaved, ἀρ' ἐόντες οὐ πάντα |not enslaved ὅσι' ἔπεστι
 γάρ σφι |master, νόμος, τὸν |cower before πολλῶ
 |despot
 ἔτι μᾶλλον ἢ οἱ σοὶ σέ. ποιεῦσι γῶν τὰ ἂν ἐκείνος
 ἀνώγει· ἀνώγει δὲ τῶντ' αἰεὶ, οὐκ ἔων φεύγειν οὐδὲν
 πλῆθος ἀνθρώπων ἐκ μάχης, ἀλλὰ μένοντας ἐν τῇ τάξει
 |rule over ἢ ἀπόλλυσθαι. σοὶ δὲ εἰ φαίνομαι ταῦτα
 λέγων |talk foolishly ἄλλα |be silent ἄλω τὸ λοιπόν·

me from my fathers, and then also they have caused me to be without native land and an exile; but thy father took me up and gave me livelihood and a house to dwell in. Surely it is not to be supposed likely that the prudent man will thrust aside friendliness which is offered to him, but rather that he will accept it with full contentment. And I do not profess that I am able to fight either with ten men or with two, nay, if I had my will, I would not even fight with one; but if there were necessity or if the cause which urged me to the combat were a great one, I would fight most willingly with one of these men who says that he is a match for three of the Hellenes. So also the Lacedemonians are not inferior to any men when fighting one by one, and they are the best of all men when fighting in a body: for though free, yet they are not free in all things, for over them is set Law as a master, whom they fear much more even than thy people fear thee. It is certain at least that they do whatsoever that master commands; and he commands ever the same thing, that is to say, he bids them not flee out of battle from any multitude of men, but stay in their post and win the victory or lose their life. But if when I say these things I seem to thee to be speaking at random, of other things for the future I prefer to be silent; and at this

*vocabulary***ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp**ἀριστεύω** be the best ~aristocrat**γέλως** laughter**ἐκγονος** offspring, descendant ~genus**ἐλασις** -εως (f) driving out**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic**ἥπιος** kind (adj)**καταπαύω** stop, restrain ~pause**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

τοιόσδε such**ὑπαρχος** subordinate

νῦν τε ἀναγκασθεὶς ἔλεξα. γένοιτο μέντοι κατὰ νόον τοι, βασιλεῦ.»

7.105

ὁ μὲν δὴ ταῦτα ἀμείψατο, Ξέρξης δὲ ἐς γέλωτά τε ἔτρεψε καὶ οὐκ ἐποίησατο ὀργὴν οὐδεμίαν, ἀλλ' ἠπίως αὐτὸν ἀπεπέμψατο. τούτῳ δὲ ἐς λόγους ἐλθὼν Ξέρξης, καὶ ὕπαρχον ἐν τῷ Δορίσκῳ τούτῳ καταστήσας Μασκάμην τὸν Μεγαδόστω, τὸν δὲ ὑπὸ Δαρείου σταθέντα καταπαύσας, ἐξήλαυνε τὸν στρατὸν διὰ τῆς Θρηίκης ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα.

7.106

κατέλιπε δὲ ἄνδρα τοιόνδε Μασκάμην γενόμενον, τῷ μούνῳ Ξέρξης δῶρα πέμπεσκε ὡς ἀριστεύοντι πάντων ὅσους αὐτὸς κατέστησε ἢ Δαρείος ὑπάρχους, πέμπεσκε δὲ ἀνὰ πᾶν ἔτος· ὥς δὲ καὶ Ἀρτοξέρξης ὁ Ξέρξεω τοῖσι Μασκαμείοισι ἐκγόνοισι. κατέστασαν γὰρ ἔτι πρότερον ταύτης τῆς ἐλάσιος ὕπαρχοι ἐν τῇ Θρηίκῃ καὶ

νῦν τε ἀναγκασθεὶς ἔλεξα. γένοιτο μέντοι κατὰ νόον τοι,
 βασιλεῦ.»

7.105

ὁ μὲν δὴ ταῦτα ἀμείψατο, Ξέρξης δὲ ἐς |laughter
 τε ἔτρεψε καὶ οὐκ ἐποιήσατο ὀργὴν οὐδεμίαν, ἀλλ’
 |kind (adj) ’ τὸν |send away . . . τούτῳ δὲ ἐς λόγους ἐλθὼν
 Ξέρξης, καὶ ὕπαρχον ἐν τῷ Δορίσκῳ τούτῳ καταστήσας
 Μασκάμην τὸν Μεγαδόστεω, τὸν δὲ ὑπὸ Δαρείου
 σταθέντα |stop, restrain , |drive out τὸν |army διὰ τῆς
 Θρηίκης ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα.

7.106

κατέλιπε δὲ ἄνδρα |such Μασκάμην γενόμενον, τῷ
 μούνῳ Ξέρξης δῶρα πέμπεσκε ὥς |be the best πάντων
 ὅσους αὐτὸς κατέστησε ἢ Δαρείῳ |subordinate, πέμπεσκε
 δὲ ἀνὰ πᾶν ἔτος· ὥς δὲ καὶ Ἀρτοξέρξης ὁ Ξέρξεω τοῖσι
 Μασκαμείοις |offspring . . . κατέστασαν γὰρ ἔτι πρότερον
 ταύτης τῆς |driving |subordinate τῇ Θρηίκῃ καὶ
 |out

time I spake only because I was compelled. May it come to pass however according to thy mind, O king.”

7.105

He thus made answer, and Xerxes turned the matter to laughter and felt no anger, but dismissed him with kindness. Then after he had conversed with him, and had appointed Mascames son of Megadostes to be governor at this place Doriscos, removing the governor who had been appointed by Dareios, Xerxes marched forth his army through Thrace to invade Hellas.

7.106

And Mascames, whom he left behind here, proved to be a man of such qualities that to him alone Xerxes used to send gifts, considering him the best of all the men whom either he himself or Dareios had appointed to be governors,— he used to send him gifts, I say, every year, and so also did Artaxerxes the son of Xerxes to the descendants of Mascames. For even before this march governors had been appointed

*vocabulary***αἶνος** story, praise**βασιλεύω** be king**δειλία** cowardice**διακαρτερέω** endure, stand by**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἔνιμι** be in ~ion**ἐξαιρέω** pick, steal; dedicate; destroy

~heresy

ἔσχατος farthest, last**εὖς** good, brave, noble**νοστέω** go home**οἰκέτης** -ου (m, f) household; house
slave**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**οὐδαμὸς** not anyone**παλλακή** sex slave**πανταχῇ** everywhere**περίειμι** be superior to; be left over;
still exist**Πέρσης** Persian**πυρά** pyre ~pyre**στρατηλασίη** expedition, campaign**συννέω** swim together; pile together**σφάζω** cut the throat**ὑπόσπονδος** under truce**φορβή** food, pasture ~euphorbia

τοῦ Ἑλλησπόντου πανταχῇ. οὗτοι ὦν πάντες οἳ τε ἐκ Θρηίκης καὶ τοῦ Ἑλλησπόντου, πλὴν τοῦ ἐν Δορίσκῳ, ὑπὸ Ἑλλήνων ὕστερον ταύτης τῆς στρατηλασίης ἐξαιρέθησαν· τὸν δὲ ἐν Δορίσκῳ Μασκάμην οὐδαμοί κω ἐδυνάσθησαν ἐξελεῖν πολλῶν πειρησαμένων. διὰ τοῦτο δὴ οἱ τὰ δῶρα πέμπεται παρὰ τοῦ βασιλεύοντος αἰεὶ ἐν Πέρσῃσι.

7.107

τῶν δὲ ἐξαιρεθέντων ὑπὸ Ἑλλήνων οὐδένα βασιλεὺς Ξέρξης ἐνόμισε εἶναι ἄνδρα ἀγαθὸν εἰ μὴ Βόγην μούνον τὸν ἐξ Ἡιόνος, τοῦτον δὲ αἰνέων οὐκ ἐπαύετο, καὶ τοὺς περιέοντας αὐτοῦ ἐν Πέρσῃσι παῖδας ἐτίμα μάλιστα, ἐπεὶ καὶ ἄξιος αἵνου μεγάλου ἐγένετο Βόγης· ὃς ἐπειδὴ ἐπολιορκέετο ὑπὸ Ἀθηναίων καὶ Κίμωνος τοῦ Μιλτιάδεω, παρέδον αὐτῷ ὑπόσπονδον ἐξελθεῖν καὶ νοστῆσαι ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην, οὐκ ἠθέλησε, μὴ δειλίῃ δόξειε περιεῖναι βασιλεί, ἀλλὰ διεκαρτέρεε ἐς τὸ ἔσχατον. ὥς δ' οὐδὲν ἔτι φορβῆς ἐνῆν ἐν τῷ τείχεϊ, συννήσας πυρὴν μεγάλην ἔσφαξε τὰ τέκνα καὶ τὴν γυναῖκα καὶ τὰς παλλακὰς καὶ τοὺς οἰκέτας

τοῦ Ἑλλησπόντου |everywhere οὔτοι ὦν πάντες οἳ τε ἐκ

Θρηίκης καὶ τοῦ Ἑλλησπόντου, πλὴν τοῦ ἐν Δορίσκῳ, ὑπὸ

|Greek ὕστερον ταύτης τῆς |expedition, |pick, steal; dedi-
|campaign |cate; destroy

τὸν δὲ ἐν Δορίσκῳ Μασκάμην |not anyone οὐ ἐδυνάσθησαν

|pick, steal; dedi- ν πειρησαμένων. διὰ τοῦτο δὴ οἱ τὰ δῶρα
|cate; destroy

πέμπεται παρὰ τοῦ |be king αἰεὶ ἐν Πέρσησι.

7.107

τῶν δὲ |pick, steal; dedicate; de-|Greek οὐδένα βασιλεὺς
|stroy

Ξέρξης ἐνόμισε εἶναι ἄνδρα ἀγαθὸν εἰ μὴ Βόγην μῶνον

τὸν ἐξ Ἡϊόνος, τοῦτον δὲ αἰνέων οὐκ ἐπαύετο, καὶ τοὺς

|be superior to; be ἡ ἐν Πέρσησι παῖδας ἐτίμα μάλιστα,
|left over; still exist

ἐπεὶ καὶ ἄξιος |story, μεγάλου ἐγένετο Βόγης· ὃς ἐπειδὴ
|praise

ἐπολιορκέετο ὑπὸ Ἀθηναίων καὶ Κίμωνος τοῦ Μιλτιάδεω,

παρεὼν αὐτῷ |under truce ἐξελθεῖν καὶ |go home ἐς τὴν

Ἀσίην, οὐκ ἠθέλησε, μὴ |cowardice· ἔπειτα |be superior to; be left over; still
|exist

ἀλλὰ |endure, stand ἐς τὸ |farthest ὥς δ' οὐδὲν ἔτι |food
|by

ἐνὴν ἐν τῷ τείχεϊ, |swim |pyre μεγάλην |cut the throat
|together;

τέκνα καὶ τὴν γυναῖκα καὶ τὰς |pile together |sex slave καὶ τοὺς |household;
|house slave

in Thrace and everywhere about the Hellespont; and these all, both those in Thrace and in the Hellespont, were conquered by the Hellenes after this expedition, except only the one who was at Doriscos; but Mascames at Doriscos none were ever able to conquer, though many tried. For this reason the gifts are sent continually for him from the king who reigns over the Persians.

7.107

Of those however who were conquered by the Hellenes Xerxes did not consider any to be a good man except only Boges, who was at Eïon: him he never ceased commending, and he honoured very highly his children who survived him in the land of Persia. For in truth Boges proved himself worthy of great commendation, seeing that when he was besieged by the Athenians under Kimon the son of Miltiades, though he might have gone forth under a truce and so returned home to Asia, he preferred not to do this, for fear that the king should that it was by cowardice that he survived; and he continued to hold out till the last. Then when there was no longer any supply of provisions within the wall, he heaped together a great pyre, and he cut the throats of his children, his wife, his concubines and his servants, and threw

vocabulary

αἰνέω praise, assent, acquiesce in
ἀντέχω hold up as protection against
 ~ischemia
ἄργυρος silver, money ~Argentina
δασυμόφος tributary
διαρρέω flow through
δουλόω enslave
εἰσβάλλω throw into ~ballistic
ἐμποδών getting in the way
ἐπιλείπω fail, not work ~eclipse
ἐσπέρα evening, west
ἔσχατος farthest, last
καταστρέφω overturn, subdue
 ~catastrophe

μεσαμβρίη midday; the south
πάλαι long ago ~paleo
παλαίω wrestle ~Pallas
πάλη wrestling ~Pallas
πάλλω shake, brandish ~Pallas
παραμείβω pass by ~amoeba
Πέρσης Persian
πορίζω build a wall, city ~Minneapolis
σπείρω sow ~diaspora
στρατός common people/soldiers
 ~strategy
στρατόω be on a campaign ~strategy
συστρατεύω join in an expedition
χρυσός (ῶ) gold

καὶ ἔπειτα ἐσέβαλε ἐς τὸ πῦρ, μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα τὸν χρυσὸν ἅπαντα τὸν ἐκ τοῦ ἄστεος καὶ τὸν ἄργυρον ἔσπειρε ἀπὸ τοῦ τείχεος ἐς τὸν Στρυμόνα, ποιήσας δὲ ταῦτα ἑωυτὸν ἐσέβαλε ἐς τὸ πῦρ. οὕτω μὲν οὗτος δικαίως αἰνέεται ἔτι καὶ ἐς τόδε ὑπὸ Περσέων.

7.108

Ξέρξης δὲ ἐκ τοῦ Δορίσκου ἐπορεύετο ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, τοὺς δὲ αἰεὶ γινομένους ἐμποδὼν συστρατεύεσθαι ἠνάγκαζε· ἐδεδούλωτο γάρ, ὥς καὶ πρότερόν μοι δεδήλωται, ἢ μέχρι Θεσσαλίας πᾶσα καὶ ἦν ὑπὸ βασιλέα δασμοφόρος, Μεγαβάζου τε καταστρεψαμένου καὶ ὕστερον Μαρδονίου. παραμείβετο δὲ πορευόμενος ἐκ Δορίσκου πρῶτα μὲν τὰ Σαμοθρηκίκα τείχεα, τῶν ἐσχάτη πεπόλισται πρὸς ἐσπέρης πόλις τῇ οὖνομα ἐστὶ Μεσαμβρίη. ἔχεται δὲ ταύτης Θασίων πόλις Στρώμη, διὰ δὲ σφέων τοῦ μέσου Λίσος ποταμὸς διαρρέει, ὃς τότε οὐκ ἀντέσχε τὸ ὕδωρ παρέχων τῷ Ξέρξει στρατῷ ἀλλ' ἐπέλιπε. ἢ δὲ χώρα αὕτη πάλαι μὲν ἐκαλέετο Γαλλαϊκή,

καὶ ἔπειτα ἐσέβαλε ἐς τὸ πῦρ, μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα τὸν |gold
 ἅπαντα τὸν ἐκ τοῦ ἄστεος καὶ τὸν |silver, |sow ἀπὸ
 |money
 τοῦ τείχεος ἐς τὸν Στρυμόνα, ποιήσας δὲ ταῦτα ἐωυτὸν
 ἐσέβαλε ἐς τὸ πῦρ. οὕτω μὲν οὗτος δικαίως |praise, ἔτι
 |assent
 καὶ ἐς τὸδε ὑπὸ Περσέων.

7.108

Ξέρξης δὲ ἐκ τοῦ Δορίσκου ἐπορεύετο ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα,
 τοὺς δὲ αἰεὶ γινομένους |getting in the|join in an expedi-
 |way |tion
 ἠνάγκαζε· |enslave γάρ, ὥς καὶ πρότερόν μοι
 δεδήλωται, ἡ μέχρι Θεσσαλίας πᾶσα καὶ ἡν ὑπὸ βασιλέα
 |tributary , Μεγαβάζου τε |overturn, subdue καὶ
 ὕστερον Μαρδονίου. |pass by δὲ πορευόμενος ἐκ
 Δορίσκου πρῶτα μὲν τὰ Σαμοθρηκία τείχεα, τῶν
 |farthest |build a wall, city, ἵς ἐσπέρης πόλις τῇ οὖνομα ἐστὶ
 |midday; the south ἔται δὲ ταύτης Θασίων πόλις Στρώμη,
 διὰ δὲ σφέων τοῦ μέσου Λίσος ποταμὸς |flow through, τότε
 οὐκ |hold up as pro-^ςωρ παρέχων τῷ Ξέρξει στρατῷ ἀλλ'
 |tection against
 |fail, not work ἔχωρη αὕτη πάλαι μὲν ἐκαλέετο Γαλλαϊκή,

them into the fire; and after this he scattered all the gold and silver in the city from the wall into the river Strymon, and having so done he threw himself into the fire. Thus he is justly commended even to this present time by the Persians.

7.108

Xerxes from Doriscos was proceeding onwards to invade Hellas; and as he went he compelled those who successively came in his way, to join his march: for the whole country as far as Thessaly had been reduced to subjection, as has been set forth by me before, and was tributary under the king, having been subdued by Megabazos and afterwards by Mardonios. And he passed in his march from Doriscos first by the Samothrakian strongholds, of which that which is situated furthest towards the West is a city called Mesambria. Next to this follows Stryme, a city of the Thasians, and midway between them flows the river Lisos, which at this time did not suffice when supplying its water to the army of Xerxes, but the stream failed. This country was in old time

*vocabulary***ἅλμυρός** salty**ἀποξηραίνω** dry up**ἄρδω** give water**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis**εἰσίημι** (mid) speed to ~jet**ἡπειρώτης** -ιδος (f) landsman**κάρτα** very much ~κράτος**λίμνη** lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic**μεταξύ** between**ὀνομαστός** named ~name**παραμείβω** pass by ~amoeba**παρέξιμι** pass by; transgress**περίοδος** picket, circuit**ῥεῖθρον** stream ~rheostat**ῥέω** flow ~rheostat**stadia** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters**ὑποζύγιον** beast of burden ~zygote**ὥσεί** as if

νῦν δὲ Βριαντική· ἔστι μέντοι τῷ δικαιοτάτῳ τῶν λόγων
καί αὕτη Κικόνων.

7.109

διαβάς δὲ τοῦ Λίσου ποταμοῦ τὸ ρέεθρον ἀπεξηρασμένον
πόλιας Ἑλληνίδας τάσδε παραμείβετο, Μαρώνειαν
Δίκαιαν Ἀβδηρα. ταύτας τε δὴ παρεξήιε καὶ κατὰ ταύτας
λίμνας ὀνομαστὰς τάσδε, Μαρωνείης μὲν μεταξὺ καὶ
Στρύμης κειμένην Ἰσμαρίδα, κατὰ δὲ Δίκαιαν Βιστονίδα,
ἐς τὴν ποταμοὶ δύο ἐσιείσι τὸ ὕδωρ, Τραυός τε καὶ
Κόμφαντος. κατὰ δὲ Ἀβδηρα λίμνην μὲν οὐδεμίαν
εἶδον ὀνομαστὴν παραμείψατο Ξέρξης, ποταμὸν δὲ
Νέστον ρέοντα ἐς θάλασσαν. μετὰ δὲ ταύτας τὰς χώρας
ἰὼν τὰς ἡπειρώτιδας πόλεις παρήιε, τῶν ἐν μιῇ λίμνῃ
εἶδον τυγχάνει ὥσεί τριήκοντα σταδίων μάλιστά κη τὴν
περίοδον, ἰχθυώδης τε καὶ κάρτα ἀλμυρή· ταύτην τὰ
ὑποζύγια μούνα ἀρδόμενα ἀνεξήρηνε. τῇ δὲ πόλει ταύτῃ
ὄνομα ἐστὶ Πίστυρος.

νῦν δὲ Βριαντική· ἔστι μέντοι τῷ δικαιολόγῳ τῶν λόγων
καὶ αὕτη Κικόνων.

7.109

|pass over, crosŝ Λίσου ποταμοῦ τὸ |stream ἀπεξηρασμένον
πόλιας Ἑλληνίδας τάσδε |pass by , Μαρώνειαν
Δίκαιαν Ἀβδηρα. ταύτας τε δὴ παρεξήιε καὶ κατὰ ταύτας
|lake, |named τάσδε, Μαρωνείης μὲν |between καὶ
|marsh,
|basin, sea
Ζτρυμῆς κειμένην Ἰσμαρίδα, κατὰ δὲ Δίκαιαν Βιστονίδα,
ἔς τὴν ποταμοὶ δύο |(mid) speed to ὤωρ, Τραυὸς τε καὶ
Κόμφαντος. κατὰ δὲ Ἀβδηρα |lake, marsh, οὐδεμίαν
|basin, sea
εὐούσαν |named |pass by Ξέρξης, ποταμὸν δὲ
Νέστον |flow ἔς θάλασσαν. μετὰ δὲ ταύτας τὰς χώρας
ἰὼν τὰς |landsman πόλις παρήιε, τῶν ἐν μίῃ |lake, marsh, basin,
|sea
εὐούσα τυγχάνει |as if τριήκοντα σταδίων μάλιστα κη τὴν
|picket, , ἰχθυώδης τε καὶ |very |salty ταύτην τὰ
|circuit
|beast of burden̂ α |give water ἀνεξήρηνε. τῇ δὲ πόλι ταύτῃ
οὐνομα ἐστὶ Πίστυρος.

called Gallaike, but now Briantike; however by strict justice this also belongs to the Kikonians.

7.109

Having crossed over the bed of the river Lisos after it had been dried up, he passed by these Hellenic cities, namely Maroneia, Dicaia and Abdera. These I say he passed by, and also the following lakes of note lying near them,—the Ismarian lake, lying between Maroneia and Stryme; the Bistonian lake near Dicaia, into which two rivers pour their waters, the Trauos and the Compsantos; and at Abdera no lake indeed of any note was passed by Xerxes, but the river Nestos, which flows there into the sea. Then after passing these places he went by the cities of the mainland, near one of which there is, as it chances, a lake of somewhere about thirty furlongs in circumference, abounding in fish and very brackish; this the baggage-animals alone dried up, being watered at it: and the name of this city is Pistyros.

*vocabulary***ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme ~acute**ἄπεργος** idle; obsolete**διατελέω** accomplish; keep doing

~apostle

ἐλεύθερος not enslaved**εὐώνυμος** honored; left-hand**καταλέγω** relate in detail, choose;

enroll ~legion

μαντεῖον prophetic warning ~mantis**μεσόγαια** inland**παντοῖος** all kinds of**παραθαλάσσιος** by the sea**παρέξιμι** pass by; transgress**συνηρεφής** shaded; covering**τοσόσδε** this much**ὕπήκοος** heeding, subject**χιών** χιόνος (f, 3) snow

7.110

ταύτας μὲν δὴ τὰς πόλιας τὰς παραθαλασσίας τε καὶ Ἑλληνίδας ἐξ εὐωνύμου χειρὸς ἀπέργων παρεξήιε· ἔθνεα δὲ Θρηίκων δι' ὧν τῆς χώρας ὁδὸν ἐποιέετο τοσάδε, Παῖτοι Κίκονες Βίστονες Σαπαῖοι Δερσαῖοι Ἡδωνοὶ Σάτραι. τούτων οἱ μὲν παρὰ θάλασσαν κατοικημένοι ἐν τῇσι νηυσὶ εἶποντο· οἱ δὲ αὐτῶν τὴν μεσόγαιαν οἰκέοντες καταλεχθέντες τε ὑπ' ἐμεῦ, πλὴν Σατρέων, οἱ ἄλλοι πάντες πεζῇ ἀναγκαζόμενοι εἶποντο.

7.111

σάτραι δὲ οὐδενός κω ἀνθρώπων ὑπήκοοι ἐγένοντο, ὅσον ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν, ἀλλὰ διατελευσι τὸ μέχρι ἐμεῦ αἰεὶ ἐόντες ἐλεύθεροι μῦνοι Θρηίκων· οἰκέουσὶ τε γὰρ ὄρεα ὑψηλά, ἴδηςί τε παντοίησι καὶ χιόνι συνηρεφέα, καὶ εἰσὶ τὰ πολέμια ἄκροι. οὗτοι οἱ Διονύσου τὸ μαντήιον εἰσὶ ἐκτηγμένοι· τὸ δὲ μαντήιον τοῦτο ἔστι μὲν ἐπὶ τῶν ὀρέων τῶν ὑψηλοτάτων, Βησσοὶ δὲ τῶν Σατρέων εἰσὶ οἱ

7.110

These cities, I say, lying by the sea coast and belonging to Hellenes, he passed by, leaving them on the left hand; and the tribes of Thracians through whose country he marched were as follows, namely the Paitians, Kikonians, Bistonians, Sapaians, Dersaians, Edonians, Satrians. Of these they who were settled along the sea coast accompanied him with their ships, and those of them who dwelt inland and have been enumerated by me, were compelled to accompany him on land, except the Satrians:

7.111

The Satrians however never yet became obedient to any man, so far as we know, but they remain up to my time still free, alone of all the Thracians; for they dwell in lofty mountains, which are covered with forest of all kinds and with snow, and also they are very skilful in war. These are they who possess the Oracle of Dionysos; which Oracle is on their most lofty mountains. Of the Satrians those who act as prophets of the temple are the Bessians; it is

*vocabulary***ἄπεργος** idle; obsolete**ἀργύρεος** silver ~Argentina**βορέας** -οῦ (m, 1) north, north wind**ἐνιμι** be in ~ion**ἐσπέρα** evening, west**ζωός** alive ~zoo**κατατείνω** stretch out**μέταλλον** mine; mineral**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis**παραμείβω** pass by ~amoeba**παρέξιμι** pass by; transgress**ποικίλος** ornamented; various**πρόμαντις** prophet**προφητεύω** prophecy**ὑπεροικέω** dwell above or beyond

προφητεύοντες τοῦ ἱροῦ, πρόμαντις δὲ ἡ χρέωσα κατὰ περ ἐν Δελφοῖσι, καὶ οὐδὲν ποικιλώτερον.

7.112

παραμειψάμενος δὲ ὁ Ξέρξης τὴν εἰρημένην, δεύτερα τούτων παραμείβετο τείχεα τὰ Πιέρων, τῶν ἐνὶ Φάγρης ἐστὶ οὕνομα καὶ ἑτέρῳ Πέργαμος. ταύτῃ μὲν δὴ παρ' αὐτὰ τὰ τείχεα τὴν ὁδὸν ἐποιέετο, ἐκ δεξιῆς χειρὸς τὸ Πάγγαιον ὄρος ἀπέργων, ἐὼν μέγα τε καὶ ὑψηλόν, ἐν τῷ χρύσεά τε καὶ ἀργύρεα ἐνὶ μέταλλα, τὰ νέμονται Πιέρές τε καὶ Ὀδόμαντοι καὶ μάλιστα Σάτραι.

7.113

ὑπεροικέοντας δὲ τὸ Πάγγαιον πρὸς βορέῳ ἀνέμου Παίονας Δόβηράς τε καὶ Παιόπλας παρεξιὼν ἤϊε πρὸς ἐσπέρην, ἐς ᾧ ἀπίκητο ἐπὶ ποταμόν τε Στρυμόνα καὶ πόλιν Ἰλιόνα, τῆς ἔτι ζωὸς ἐὼν ἦρχε Βόγης τοῦ περ ὀλίγω πρότερον τούτων λόγον ἐποιεύμην. ἡ δὲ γῆ αὕτη ἡ περὶ τὸ Πάγγαιον ὄρος καλεῖται Φυλλίς, κατατείνουσα

|prophecy τοῦ ἱεροῦ, |prophet δὲ ἡ χρέωσα κατὰ
περ ἐν Δελφοῖσι, καὶ οὐδὲν |ornamented .

7.112

|pass by δὲ ὁ Ξέρξης τὴν εἰρημένην, δεύτερα
τούτων |pass by τείχεα τὰ Πιέρων, τῶν ἐνὶ Φάγρης
ἐστὶ οὖνομα καὶ ἑτέρῳ Πέργαμος. ταύτῃ μὲν δὴ παρ' αὐτὰ
τὰ τείχεα τὴν ὁδὸν ἐποιέετο, ἐκ δεξιῆς χειρὸς τὸ Πάγγαιον
ὄρος |idle; , ἐὼν μέγα τε καὶ ὑψηλόν, ἐν τῷ χρύσεά
|obsolete
τε καὶ |silver |be |mine; , τὰ |distribute Πιέρές τε καὶ
|in |mineral
Ὀδόμαντοι καὶ μάλιστα Σάτραι.

7.113

|dwell above or δὲ τὸ Πάγγαιον πρὸς |north, ἀνέμου
|beyond |north
Παίονας Δόβηράς τε καὶ Παιόπλας παρεξίων ἦε πρὸς
|wind
ἐσπέρην, ἐς ὃ ἀπύκετο ἐπὶ ποταμόν τε Στρυμόνα καὶ
πόλιν Ἡϊόνα, τῆς ἔτι |alive ἐὼν ἦρχε Βόγης τοῦ περ ὀλίγω
πρότερον τούτων λόγον ἐποιεύμην. ἡ δὲ γῆ αὕτη ἡ περὶ
τὸ Πάγγαιον ὄρος καλέεται Φυλλίς, |stretch out

a prophetess who utters the oracles, as at Delphi; and beyond this there is nothing further of a remarkable character.

7.112

Xerxes having passed over the land which has been spoken of, next after this passed the strongholds of the Pierians, of which the name of the one is Phagres and of the other Pergamos. By this way, I say, he made his march, going close by the walls of these, and keeping Mount Pangaion on the right hand, which is both great and lofty and in which are mines both of gold and of silver possessed by the Pierians and Odomantians, and especially by the Satrians.

7.113

Thus passing by the Paionians, Doberians and Paioplans, who dwell beyond Pangaion towards the North Wind, he went on Westwards, until at last he came to the river Strymon and the city of Eion, of which, so long as he lived, Boges was commander, the same about whom I was speaking a short time back. This country about Mount Pangaion is called Phyllis,

vocabulary

γέφυρα (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge

γηράσκω grow old ~geriatric

δῖς twice

ἐκδίδωμι hand over ~donate

ἐννέα nine

ἐπιφανής coming to view; conspicuous

ἐπιχώριος native

ἐσπέρα evening, west

ζεύγνυμι (ῥ) yoke, join ~zygote

καλλιερέω have good signs

κατορύσσω bury

μεσαμβρία midday; the south

παρθένος (f) girl, virgin ~Parthenon

Πέρσης Persian

σφάζω cut the throat

τείνω stretch, tend ~tense

χῶρος place ~heir

τὰ μὲν πρὸς ἐσπέρην ἐπὶ ποταμὸν Ἀγγίτην ἐκδιδόντα ἐς τὸν Στρυμόνα, τὰ δὲ πρὸς μεσαμβρίην τείνουσα ἐς αὐτὸν τὸν Στρυμόνα· ἐς τὸν οἱ Μάγοι ἐκαλλιερέοντο σφάζοντες ἵππους λευκούς.

7.114

φαρμακεύσαντες δὲ ταῦτα ἐς τὸν ποταμὸν καὶ ἄλλα πολλὰ πρὸς τούτοισι ἐν Ἑννέα ὁδοῖσι τῇσι Ἑδωνῶν ἐπορεύοντο κατὰ τὰς γεφύρας, τὸν Στρυμόνα εὐρόντες ἐξευγμένον. ἐννέα δὲ ὁδοὺς πυνθανόμενοι τὸν χῶρον τοῦτον καλέεσθαι, τοσούτους ἐν αὐτῷ παῖδās τε καὶ παρθένους ἀνδρῶν τῶν ἐπιχωρίων ζῶοντας κατάρυσσον. Περσικὸν δὲ τὸ ζῶοντας κατορύσσειν, ἐπεὶ καὶ Ἀμυστριν τὴν Ξέρξεω γυναῖκα πυνθάνομαι γηράσασαν δις ἐπτὰ Περσέων παῖδας ἐόντων ἐπιφανέων ἀνδρῶν ὑπὲρ ἐωυτῆς τῷ ὑπὸ γῆν λεγομένῳ εἶναι θεῷ ἀντιχαρίζεσθαι κατορύσσουσιν.

τὰ μὲν πρὸς ἐσπέρην ἐπὶ ποταμὸν Ἀγγίτην |hand over ἐς
τὸν Στρυμόνα, τὰ δὲ πρὸς |midday; the|stretch, tend| αὐτὸν
|south
τὸν Στρυμόνα· ἐς τὸν οἱ Μάγοι |have good signs |cut the throat
ἵππους λευκοὺς.

7.114

φαρμακεύσαντες δὲ ταῦτα ἐς τὸν ποταμὸν καὶ ἄλλα
πολλὰ πρὸς τούτοις ἐν |nine ὁδοῖσι τῇσι Ἡδωνῶν
ἐπορεύοντο κατὰ τὰς |dam, dike; bridge Στρυμόνα εὐρόντες
|yoke, join . |nine δὲ ὁδοὺς πυνθανόμενοι τὸν |place
τοῦτον καλέεσθαι, τοσοῦτους ἐν αὐτῷ παῖδᾶς τε καὶ
|girl, virgin ἀνδρῶν τῶν |native ζώοντας |bury
Περσικὸν δὲ τὸ ζώοντας |bury , ἐπεὶ καὶ Ἀμυστριν
τὴν Ξέρξεω γυναῖκα πυνθάνομαι |grow old |twice πτὰ
Περσέων παῖδας ἐόντων |coming to view; ἄνδρων ὑπὲρ
|conspicuous
ἐωυτῆς τῷ ὑπὸ γῆν λεγομένῳ εἶναι θεῷ ἀντιχαρίζεσθαι
|bury

and it extends Westwards to the river Angites, which flows into the Strymon, and Southwards it stretches to the Strymon itself; and at this river the Magians sacrificed for good omens, slaying white horses.

7.114

Having done this and many other things in addition to this, as charms for the river, at the Nine Ways in the land of the Edonians, they proceeded by the bridges, for they had found the Strymon already yoked with bridges; and being informed that this place was called the Nine Ways, they buried alive in it that number of boys and maidens, children of the natives of the place. Now burying alive is a Persian custom; for I am informed that Amestris also, the wife of Xerxes, when she had grown old, made return for her own life to the god who is said to be beneath the earth by burying twice seven children of Persians who were men of renown.

*vocabulary***αἰγιαλός** beach, shore**ἀριστερός** left-hand**δυσμή** sunset**ἐνθαῦτα** there, here**ἐνθεῦτεν** thence**καταλέγω** relate in detail, choose;

enroll ~legion

κατύπερθεν above, from above**κόλπος** bosom, lap-fold; gulf**ξείνιος** of hospitality**παραμείβω** pass by ~amoeba**παρέξιμι** pass by; transgress**σέβομαι** feel shame, awe**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

συγχέω entangle, destroy, confound

7.115

ὥς δὲ ἀπὸ τοῦ Στρυμόνος ἐπορεύετο ὁ στρατός, ἐνθαῦτα πρὸς ἡλίου δυσμέων ἐστὶ αἰγιαλὸς ἐν τῷ οἰκημένην Ἀργίλον πόλιν Ἑλλάδα παρεξήιε· αὕτη δὲ καὶ ἡ κατύπερθε ταύτης καλέεται Βισαλτίη. ἐνθεῦτεν δὲ κόλπον τὸν ἐπὶ Ποσιδηίου ἐξ ἀριστερῆς χειρὸς ἔχων ἦιε διὰ Συλέος πεδίου καλεομένου, Στάγειρον πόλιν Ἑλλάδα παραμειβόμενος, καὶ ἀπίκητο ἐς Ἄκανθον, ἅμα ἀγόμενος τούτων ἕκαστον τῶν ἐθνέων καὶ τῶν περὶ τὸ Πάργαιον ὄρος οἰκεόντων, ὁμοίως καὶ τῶν πρότερον κατέλεξα, τοὺς μὲν παρὰ θάλασσαν ἔχων οἰκημένους ἐκ νηυσὶ στρατευομένους, τοὺς δ' ὑπὲρ θαλάσσης πεζῇ ἐπομένους. τὴν δὲ ὁδὸν ταύτην, τῇ βασιλεὺς Ξέρξης τὸν στρατὸν ἤλασε, οὔτε συγχέουσι Θρήικες οὔτ' ἐπισπείρουσι σέβονται τε μεγάλως τὸ μέχρι ἐμεῦ.

7.116

ὥς δὲ ἄρα ἐς τὴν Ἄκανθον ἀπίκητο, ξεινίην τε ὁ Ξέρξης

7.115

ὥς δὲ ἀπὸ τοῦ Στρυμόνος ἐπορεύετο ὁ [|]army [|]there, here
 πρὸς ἡλίου [|]sunset ἐστὶ [|]beach, [|]shore ἐν τῷ οἰκημένην
 Ἄργιλον πόλιν Ἑλλάδα παρεξήιε· αὕτη δὲ καὶ ἡ
[|]above, from above [|]s καλέεται Βισαλτίη. [|]thence δὲ [|]bosom, lap-
[|]fold; gulf
 τὸν ἐπὶ Ποσιδηίου ἐξ [|]left-hand χειρὸς ἔχων ἦιε διὰ
 Συλέος πεδίου καλεομένου, Στάγειρον πόλιν Ἑλλάδα
[|]pass by [|], καὶ ἀπίκητο ἐς Ἄκανθον, ἅμα ἀγόμενος
 τούτων ἕκαστον τῶν ἐθνέων καὶ τῶν περὶ τὸ Πάγγαιον
 ὄρος οἰκόντων, ὁμοίως καὶ τῶν πρότερον [|]relate in detail, choose;
[|]enroll
 τοὺς μὲν παρὰ θάλασσαν ἔχων οἰκημένους ἐκ νηυσὶ
 στρατευομένους, τοὺς δ' ὑπὲρ θαλάσσης πεζῇ ἐπομένους.
 τὴν δὲ ὁδὸν ταύτην, τῇ βασιλεὺς Ξέρξης τὸν [|]army
 ἤλασε, οὗτε [|]entangle, [|]de-ΐικες οὗτ' ἐπισπείρουσι σέβονται
[|]stroy, confound
 τε μεγάλως τὸ μέχρι ἐμεῦ.

7.116

ὥς δὲ ἄρα ἐς τὴν Ἄκανθον ἀπίκητο, ξεινίην τε ὁ Ξέρξης

7.115

As the army proceeded on its march from the Strymon, it found after this a sea-beach stretching towards the setting of the sun, and passed by the Hellenic city, Argilos, which was there placed. This region and that which lies above it is called Bisaltia. Thence, keeping on the left hand the gulf which lies of Posideion, he went through the plain which is called the plain of Syleus, passing by Stageiros a Hellenic city, and so came to Acanthos, taking with him as he went each one of these tribes and also of those who dwell about Mount Pangaion, just as he did those whom I enumerated before, having the men who dwelt along the sea coast to serve in the ships and those who dwelt inland to accompany him on foot. This road by which Xerxes the king marched his army, the Thracians do not disturb nor sow crops over, but pay very great reverence to it down to my own time.

7.116

Then when he had come to Acanthos, Xerxes proclaimed a guest-friendship with the people of Acanthos

vocabulary

βασίλειος kingly
δάκτυλος finger, toe
διῶρυξ -χος (f) ditch, canal
δόκιμος trustworthy; excellent
δωρέω give ~donate
ἐκφέρω carry off ~bear
Ἑλλην Greek
ἐπαινέω concur, praise, advise
ἐπονομάζω to name
ἐσθής clothes ~vest
θάπτω bury ~epitaph
θεοπρόπιον prophecy ~theology
θύω (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω
μέγαθος tall, big (person)
νόσος (f) plague, pestilence ~noisome

νοῦσος (f) plague, pestilence ~noisome
ὄρυγμα -τος (n, 3) trench, tunnel
Πέρσης Persian
πῆχυς forearm, cubit
προαγορεύω declare, predict, order
προεῖπον foretell, proclaim, order
 before
πρόθυμος (ῥ) willing, eager ~fume
προλέγω prophecy, proclaim; preselect
 ~legion
στρατιά army ~strategy
συμφέρω bring together; be expedient;
 agree; (mp) happen ~bear
συμφορά collecting; accident,
 misfortune
ὑποδέχομαι welcome, accept, suffer

τοῖσι Ἀκανθίοισι προεῖπε καὶ ἔδωρήσατο σφέας ἐσθῆτι
Μηδικῇ ἐπαίνεέ τε, ὀρέων καὶ αὐτοὺς προθύμους ἐόντας
ἐς τὸν πόλεμον καὶ τὸ ὄρυγμα ἀκούων.

7.117

ἐν Ἀκάνθῳ δὲ ἐόντος Ξέρξῳ συνήνεικε ὑπὸ νούσου
ἀποθανεῖν τὸν ἐπεστεῶτα τῆς διώρυχος Ἀρταχαίην,
δόκιμον ἐόντα παρὰ Ξέρξῃ καὶ γένος Ἀχαιμενίδην,
μεγάθει τε μέγιστον ἐόντα Περσέων ἀπὸ γὰρ πέντε
πηχέων βασιλῆϊων ἀπέλειπε τέσσερας δακτύλους
φωνέοντά τε μέγιστον ἀνθρώπων, ὥστε Ξέρξην
συμφορὴν ποιησάμενον μεγάλην ἐξενεῖκαί τε αὐτὸν
κάλλιστα καὶ θάψαι· ἐτυμβοχόεε δὲ πᾶσα ἡ στρατιή.
τούτῳ δὲ τῷ Ἀρταχαίῃ θύουσι Ἀκάνθιοι ἐκ θεοπροπίου
ὥς ἥρωι, ἐπονομάζοντες τὸ οὖνομα.

7.118

βασιλεὺς μὲν δὴ Ξέρξης ἀπολομένου Ἀρταχαίῳ ἐποιέετο
συμφορὴν. οἱ δὲ ὑποδεκόμενοι Ἑλλήνων τὴν στρατιὴν καὶ

τοῖσι Ἀκανθίοισι προεῖπε καὶ ἐδωρήσατο σφέας |clothes
Μηδικῇ |concur τε, ὀρέων καὶ αὐτοὺς |willing, ἐόντας
|eager
ἐς τὸν πόλεμον καὶ τὸ |trench, ἀκούων.
|tunnel

7.117

ἐν Ἀκάνθῳ δὲ ἔόντος Ξέρξεω συνήνηκε ὑπὸ νούσου
 ἀποθανεῖν τὸν ἐπεστεῶτα τῆς |ditch, canal Ἀρταχαίην,
 |trustworthy; ἔντα παρὰ Ξέρξῃ καὶ γένος Ἀχαιμενίδην,
 |excellent
 |tall, big τε μέγιστον ἔοντα Περσέων ἀπὸ γὰρ πέντε
 |forearm, |kingly ἀπέλειπε τέσσερας |finger, toe
 |cubit
 φωνέοντά τε μέγιστον ἀνθρώπων, ὥστε Ξέρξην
 συμφορὴν ποιησάμενον μεγάλην |carry off τε αὐτὸν
 κάλλιστα καὶ |bury ἐτυμβοχόεε δὲ πᾶσα ἡ στρατιή.
 τούτῳ δὲ τῷ Ἀρταχαίῃ |rush; sacrifice. θιοι ἐκ |prophecy
 ὡς ἥρωι, |to name τὸ οὐνομα.

7.118

βασιλεὺς μὲν δὴ Ξέρξης ἀπολομένου Ἀρταχαίου ἐποιέετο
 συμφορὴν. οἱ δὲ welcome, accept, suffer τὴν στρατιὴν καὶ

and also presented them with the Median dress and commended them, perceiving that they were zealous to serve him in the war and hearing of that which had been dug.

7.117

And while Xerxes was in Acanthos, it happened that he who had been set over the making of the channel, Artachaies by name, died of sickness, a man who was highly esteemed by Xerxes and belonged to the Achaimenid family; also he was in stature the tallest of all the Persians, falling short by only four fingers of being five royal cubits in height, and he had a voice the loudest of all men; so that Xerxes was greatly grieved at the loss of him, and carried him forth and buried him with great honour, and the whole army joined in throwing up a mound for him. To this Artachaies the Acanthians by the bidding of an oracle do sacrifice as a hero, calling upon his name in worship.

7.118

King Xerxes, I say, was greatly grieved at the loss of Artachaies: and meanwhile the Hellenes who were entertaining his army and

*vocabulary***ἄλευρον** flour**ἄλφιτον** barley meal**ἀνάστατος** driven out, ruined**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ō) show, point out;

appoint; (mid) declare

ἀποδέχομαι accept ~doctrine**ἀργύριον** small coin**ἀστός** townsman; citizen**δατέομαι** divide into portions ~demon**δειπνίζω** host at a meal**δόκιμος** trustworthy; excellent**ἐξευρίσκω** find; discover ~eureka**ἡπειρος** (f) mainland, continent**κτῆνος** -ους (n, 3) herd animal**λάκκος** pond, tank**λιμναῖος** of a marsh**οἶκημα** -τος (n, 3) room**ὄρνις** -θος (ī, f) bird ~ornithology**παραπλήσιος** similar to**περιαγγέλλω** send orders, messages
around**στρατιά** army ~strategy**στρατός** common people/soldiers
~strategy**στρατώω** be on a campaign ~strategy**συχνός** long; many; extensive**σφέτερος** their**τάλαντον** scale, a unit of weight
~talent**τετρακόσιοι** 400**τοιόσδε** such**ὑποδοχή** reception, admission**χερσαῖος** of dry land

δειπνίζοντες Ξέρξην ἐς πᾶν κακοῦ ἀπίκατο, οὕτω ὥστε ἀνάστατοι ἐκ τῶν οἴκων ἐγίνοντο· ὅκου Θασίοισι ὑπὲρ τῶν ἐν τῇ ἡπείρῳ πολίων τῶν σφετερέων δεξαμένοισι τὴν Ξέρξεω στρατιὴν καὶ δειπνίσασι Ἀντίπατρος ὁ Ὀργέος ἀραιρημένος, τῶν ἀστῶν ἀνὴρ δόκιμος ὅμοια τῷ μάλιστα, ἀπέδεξε ἐς τὸ δεῖπνον τετρακόσια τάλαντα ἀργυρίου τετελεσμένα.

7.119

ὥς δὲ παραπλησίως καὶ ἐν τῇσι ἄλλῃσι πόλιν οἱ ἐπεστεῶτες ἀπεδείκνυσαν τὸν λόγον. τὸ γὰρ δεῖπνον τοιόνδε τι ἐγίνετο, οἷα ἐκ πολλοῦ χρόνου προειρημένον καὶ περὶ πολλοῦ ποιευμένων· τοῦτο μὲν, ὥς ἐπύθοντο τάχιστα τῶν κηρύκων τῶν περιαγγελλόντων, δασάμενοι σῖτον ἐν τῇσι πόλιν οἱ ἀστοὶ ἄλευρά τε καὶ ἄλφιτα ἐποίευν πάντες ἐπὶ μῆνας συχνούς· τοῦτο δὲ κτήνεα ἐσίτευον ἐξευρίσκοντες τιμῆς τὰ κάλλιστα, ἔτρεφόν τε ὄρνιθας χερσαίους καὶ λιμναίους ἔν τε οἰκήμασι καὶ λάκκοις, ἐς ὑποδοχὰς τοῦ στρατοῦ· τοῦτο δὲ χρύσεά

|host at a meal Ξέρξην ἐς πᾶν κακοῦ ἀπίκατο, οὕτω ὥστε
 |driven out, ruined ὃν οἴκων ἐγίνοντο· ὅκου Θασίοισι ὑπὲρ
 τῶν ἐν τῇ |mainland, |their δεξαμένοισι τὴν
 |continent
 Ξέρξῳ στρατιὴν καὶ |host at a meal¹ ντίπατρος ὁ Ὀργέος
 ἀραιρημένος, τῶν ἀστῶν ἀνὴρ |trustworthy; |excellence
 ἀπέδεξε ἐς τὸ δεῖπνον |400 |scale, a unit|small coin
 |of weight
 τετελεσμένα.

7.119

ὥς δὲ |similar to καὶ ἐν τῇσι ἄλλῃσι πόλιν οἱ
 ἐπεστεῶτες ἀπεδείκνυσαν τὸν λόγον. τὸ γὰρ δεῖπνον
 |such τι ἐγίνετο, οἷα ἐκ πολλοῦ χρόνου προειρημένον
 καὶ περὶ πολλοῦ ποιευμένων· τοῦτο μὲν, ὡς ἐπύθοντο
 τάχιστα τῶν κηρύκων τῶν |send orders, messages|divide into portions
 |around
 σίτον ἐν τῇσι πόλιν οἱ |towns|four τε καὶ |barley meal |είν
 |citizen
 πάντες ἐπὶ μῆνας |long; many; οὗτο δὲ |herd animal |γεγον
 |extensive
 |find; discover τιμῆς τὰ κάλλιστα, ἔτρεφόν τε |bird
 |of dry land καὶ |of a marsh ἔν τε |room καὶ |pond, tank ἐς
 |reception, |admission τοῦ στρατοῦ· τοῦτο δὲ χρύσεά

providing Xerxes with dinners had been brought to utter ruin, so that they were being driven from house and home; seeing that when the Thasians, for example, entertained the army of Xerxes and provided him with a dinner on behalf of their towns upon the mainland, Antipater the son of Orgeus, who had been appointed for this purpose, a man of repute among the citizens equal to the best, reported that four hundred talents of silver had been spent upon the dinner.

7.119

Just so or nearly so in the other cities also those who were set over the business reported the reckoning to be: for the dinner was given as follows, having been ordered a long time beforehand, and being counted by them a matter of great importance:—In the first place, so soon as they heard of it from the heralds who carried round the proclamation, the citizens in the various cities distributed corn among their several households, and all continued to make wheat and barley meal for many months; then they fed cattle, finding out and obtaining the finest animals for a high price; and they kept birds both of the land and of the water, in cages or in pools, all for the entertainment of the army. Then again they had drinking-cups and mixing-bowls made of

*vocabulary***ἀνασπάω** draw again ~spatula**ἀργύρεος** silver ~Argentina**ἐπιπλά** -τος (n, 2) stuff, possessions**ἐτοῖμος** ready; fulfilled**ἥμισυς** half ~hemisphere**ἵζω** to seat ~sit**ἰκέτης** -ου (m, 1) suppliant, refugee**κρητήρ** -ος (m) mixing bowl for wine**πανδημεί** the masses**παραιτέομαι** entreat; beg for; decline**παροίχομαι** pass, keep going**πίμπλημι** fill (+gen.) ~plenum**ποτήριον** cup**σκηνή** tent; stage**σταθμός** cottage; post**στρατιά** army ~strategy**συμβουλευώ** give advice; (mid) consult
~volunteer**σφέτερος** their**τράπεζα** a table ~trapezoid**ὕπαιθριος** in open air**ὕστεραίος** the next; later**φορβή** food, pasture ~euphorbia

τε καὶ ἀργύρεα ποτήριά τε καὶ κρητῆρας ἐποιεῦντο καὶ τᾶλλα ὅσα ἐπὶ τράπεζαν τιθέαται πάντα. ταῦτα μὲν αὐτῷ τε βασιλεί καὶ τοῖσι ὁμοσίτοισι μετ' ἐκείνου ἐπεποίητο, τῇ δὲ ἄλλῃ στρατιῇ τὰ ἐς φορβὴν μούνα τασσόμενα. ὅκως δὲ ἀπίκοιτο ἡ στρατιή, σκηνὴ μὲν ἔσκε πεπηγυῖα ἐτοίμη ἐς τὴν αὐτὸς σταθμὸν ποιέσκετο Ξέρξης, ἡ δὲ ἄλλῃ στρατιῇ ἔσκε ὑπαίθριος. ὥς δὲ δεῖπνον ἐγίνετο ὥρῃ, οἱ μὲν δεκόμενοι ἔχесκον πόνον, οἱ δὲ ὅκως πλησθέντες νύκτα αὐτοῦ ἀγάγοιεν, τῇ ὑστεραίῃ τὴν τε σκηνὴν ἀνασπάσαντες καὶ τὰ ἔπιπλα πάντα λαβόντες οὕτω ἀπελαύνεσκον, λείποντες οὐδὲν ἀλλὰ φερόμενοι.

7.120

ἔνθα δὴ Μεγακρέοντος ἀνδρὸς Ἀβδηρίτεω ἔπος εὔειρημένον ἐγένετο, ὃς συνεβούλευσε Ἀβδηρίτησι πανδημεί, αὐτοὺς καὶ γυναῖκας, ἐλθόντας ἐς τὰ σφέτερα ἱρὰ ἵζεσθαι ἰκέτας τῶν θεῶν παραιτεομένους καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν σφι ἀπαμύνειν τῶν ἐπιόντων κακῶν τὰ ἡμίσεα, τῶν τε παροιχομένων ἔχειν σφι μεγάλην χάριν, ὅτι βασιλεὺς

gold and of silver, and all the other things which are placed upon the table: these were made for the king himself and for those who ate at his table; but for the rest of the army only the things appointed for food were provided. Then whenever the army came to any place, there was a tent pitched ready wherein Xerxes himself made his stay, while the rest of the army remained out in the open air; and when it came to be time for dinner, then the entertainers had labour; but the others, after they had been satiated with food and had spent the night there, on the next day tore up the tent and taking with them all the movable furniture proceeded on their march, leaving nothing, but carrying all away with them.

7.120

Then was uttered a word well spoken by Megacreon, a man of Abdera, who advised those of Abdera to go in a body, both themselves and their wives, to their temples, and to sit down as suppliants of the gods, entreating them that for the future also they would ward off from them the half of the evils which threatened; and he bade them feel great thankfulness to the gods for the past events, because king

*vocabulary***δατέομαι** divide into portions ~demon**διατρίβω** (ιτ) wear down, delay

~tribology

δῖς twice**ἐντέλλω** (μπ) command**ἐπιτάσσω** enjoin; place near**ἐπιτελέω** complete; do a religious duty**ἐπωνύμιος** called, named**καταμένω** stay; not change**κόλπος** bosom, lap-fold; gulf**μεσόγαια** inland**ὁμός** same ~homoerotic**ὁμοῦ** together**ὁμόω** unite ~homoerotic**πιέζω** press, squeeze ~piezoelectric**στρατηγέω** be a general**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

στρατόω be on a campaign ~strategy**σύντομος** truncated, concise**τριτημορίς** 1/3**ὑπομένω** stay behind, await ~remain

Ξέρξης οὐ δις ἐκάστης ἡμέρης ἐνόμισε σίτον αἰρέεσθαι· παρέχειν γὰρ ἂν Ἀβδηρίτησι, εἰ καὶ ἄριστον προεῖρητο ὅμοια τῷ δείπνῳ παρασκευάζειν, ἢ μὴ ὑπομένειν Ξέρξην ἐπιόντα ἢ καταμείναντας κάκιστα πάντων ἀνθρώπων διατριβῆναι.

7.121

οἳ μὲν δὴ πιεζόμενοι ὅμως τὸ ἐπιτασσόμενον ἐπετέλεον. Ξέρξης δὲ ἐκ τῆς Ἀκάνθου, ἐντειλάμενος τοῖσι στρατηγοῖσι τοῦ ναυτικοῦ στρατοῦ ὑπομένειν ἐν Θέρμῃ, ἀπῆκε ἀπ' ἐωυτοῦ πορεύεσθαι τὰς νέας, Θέρμῃ δὲ τῇ ἐν τῷ Θερμαίῳ κόλπῳ οἰκημένη, ἀπ' ἧς καὶ ὁ κόλπος οὗτος τὴν ἐπωνυμίην ἔχει· ταύτῃ γὰρ ἐπυνθάνετο συντομώτατον εἶναι. μέχρι μὲν γὰρ Ἀκάνθου ὧδε τεταγμένος ὁ στρατὸς ἐκ Δορίσκου τὴν ὁδὸν ἐποιέετο· τρεῖς μοίρας ὁ Ξέρξης δασάμενος πάντα τὸν πεζὸν στρατόν, μίαν αὐτέων ἔταξε παρὰ θάλασσαν ἵεναι ὁμοῦ τῷ ναυτικῷ· ταύτης μὲν δὴ ἐστρατήγεον Μαρδόνιός τε καὶ Μασίστης, ἑτέρῃ δὲ τεταγμένη ἦε τοῦ στρατοῦ τριτημορὶς τὴν μεσόγαιαν,

Ξέρξης οὐ |twice·| κάσσης ἡμέρης ἐνόμισε σίτον αἰρέεσθαι·
 παρέχειν γὰρ ἂν Ἀβδηρίτησι, εἰ καὶ ἄριστον προείρητο
 ὅμοια τῷ δείπνῳ παρασκευάζειν, ἢ μὴ |stay behind, await·|,
 ἐπιόντα ἢ |stay; not change| κάκιστα πάντων ἀνθρώπων
 |wear down, delay|

7.121

οὐ μὲν δὴ |press, squeeze| ὅμως τὸ |enjoin; place near| complete; do a
 |religious duty|
 Ξέρξης δὲ ἐκ τῆς Ἀκάνθου, ἐντειλάμενος τοῖσι
 στρατηγοῖσι τοῦ ναυτικοῦ στρατοῦ |stay behind, await| Ἱέρμη,
 ἀπῆκε ἀπ' ἐωντοῦ πορεύεσθαι τὰς νέας, Θέρμη δὲ τῇ ἐν τῷ
 Θερμαίῳ |bosom, lap-| μένη, ἀπ' ἧς καὶ ὁ |bosom, lap-| ὅς τὴν
 |fold; gulf|
 |called, named| ἔχει· ταύτῃ γὰρ ἐπυνθάνετο |truncated, concise|
 εἶναι. μέχρι μὲν γὰρ Ἀκάνθου ὧδε τεταγμένος ὁ |army|
 ἐκ Δορίσκου τὴν ὁδὸν ἐποιέετο· τρεῖς μοίρας ὁ Ξέρξης
 |divide into portions·| τὸν πεζὸν |army|, μίαν αὐτέων ἔταξε
 παρὰ θάλασσαν ἵεναι ὁμοῦ τῷ ναυτικῷ· ταύτης μὲν
 δὴ |be a general| Μαρδονίος τε καὶ Μασίστης, ἑτέρῃ δὲ
 τεταγμένη ἦε τοῦ στρατοῦ |1/3| τὴν μεσόγαιαν,

Xerxes had not thought good to take food twice in each day; for if it had been ordered to them beforehand to prepare breakfast also in like manner as the dinner, it would have remained for the men of Abdera either not to await the coming of Xerxes, or if they stayed, to be crushed by misfortune more than any other men upon the Earth.

7.121

They then, I say, though hard put to it, yet were performing that which was appointed to them; and from Acanthos Xerxes, after having commanded the generals to wait for the fleet at Therma, let the ships take their course apart from himself, (now this Therma is that which is situated on the Thermaic gulf, from which also this gulf has its name); and thus he did because he was informed that this was the shortest way: for from Doriscos as far as Acanthos the army had been making its march thus:—Xerxes had divided the whole land-army into three divisions, and one of them he had set to go along the sea accompanying the fleet, of which division Mardonios and Masistes were commanders; another third of the army had been appointed to go by the inland way, and of

*vocabulary***ἄημι** blow**ἄκρα** at the edge, extreme ~acute**ἄμπελος** (f) vine**ἄω** aor: to sate ~sate**διέχω** pass through; be apart**διώρυξ** -χος (f) ditch, canal**ἐνθεῦτεν** thence**κάμπτω** bend, bend in exhaustion**κόλπος** bosom, lap-fold; gulf**παραμείβω** pass by ~amoeba**στρατηγέω** be a general**στρατιά** army ~strategy**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

τῆς ἐστρατήγεον Τριτανταίχμης τε καὶ Γέργις· ἡ δὲ τρίτη τῶν μοιρέων, μετ' ἧς ἐπορεύετο αὐτὸς Ξέρξης, ἦι μὲν τὸ μέσον αὐτῶν, στρατηγούς δὲ παρείχετο Σμερδομένεά τε καὶ Μεγάβυζον.

7.122

ὁ μὲν νυν ναυτικὸς στρατὸς ὡς ἀπείθη ὑπὸ Ξέρξεω καὶ διεξέπλωσε τὴν διώρυχα τὴν ἐν τῷ Ἄθῳ γενομένην, διέχουσαν δὲ ἐς κόλπον ἐν τῷ Ἄσσῳ τε πόλις καὶ Πίλωρος καὶ Σίγγος καὶ Σάρτη οἴκηνται, ἐνθεῦτεν, ὡς καὶ ἐκ τουτέων τῶν πολίων στρατιὴν παρέλαβε, ἔπλεε ἀπιέμενος ἐς τὸν Θερμαῖον κόλπον, κάμπτων δὲ Ἄμπελον τὴν Τορωναίην ἄκρην παραμείβετο Ἑλληνίδας γε τάσδε πόλις, ἐκ τῶν νέας τε καὶ στρατιὴν παρελάμβανε, Τορώνην Γαληψὸν Σερμύλην Μηκύβερναν Ὀλυνθον.

7.123

ἡ μὲν νυν χώρα αὕτη Σιθωνίη καλεῖται, ὁ δὲ ναυτικὸς στρατὸς ὁ Ξέρξεω συντάμνων ἀπ' Ἀμπέλου ἄκρης ἐπὶ

τῆς |be a general Τριτανταίχμης τε καὶ Γέργις· ἡ δὲ τρίτη
τῶν μοιρέων, μετ' ἧς ἐπορεύετο αὐτὸς Ξέρξης, ἦι μὲν τὸ
μέσον αὐτῶν, στρατηγούς δὲ παρείχετο Σμερδομένεά τε
καὶ Μεγάβυζον.

7.122

ὁ μὲν νυν ναυτικὸς |army ὡς ἀπείθη ὑπὸ Ξέρξεω καὶ
διεξέπλωσε τὴν |ditch, canal τὴν ἐν τῷ Ἄθῳ γενομένην,
|pass through; ἔ ἐς |bosom, lap- τῷ Ἄσσοι τε πόλιν καὶ
|be apart |fold; gulf
Πίλωρος καὶ Σίγγος καὶ Σάρτη οἴκονται, |thence , ὡς
καὶ ἐκ τουτέων τῶν πολίων στρατιὴν παρέλαβε, ἔπλεε
ἀπιέμενος ἐς τὸν Θερμαῖον |bosom, |bend, bend ἰν|vine
|lap-fold; |exhaustion
τὴν Τορωναίην |at the|pass by Ἑλληνίδας γε τάσδε
|edge, |gulf
πόλιν, ἐκ τῶν |νεᾶς τε καὶ στρατιὴν παρελάμβανε,
|extreme
Τορώνην Γαληψὸν Σερμύλην Μηκύβερναν Ὀλυνθον.

7.123

ἡ μὲν νυν χώρα αὕτη Σιθωνίη καλεῖται, ὁ δὲ ναυτικὸς
|army ὁ Ξέρξεω συντάμνων ἀπ' |vine |at the edge, extreme

this the generals in command were Tritantaichmes and Gergis; and meanwhile the third of the subdivisions, with which Xerxes himself went, marched in the middle between them, and acknowledged as its commanders Smerdomenes and Megabyzos.

7.122

The fleet, when it was let go by Xerxes and had sailed right through the channel made in Athos (which went across to the gulf on which are situated the cities of Assa, Píloros, Singos and Sarte), having taken up a contingent from these cities also, sailed thence with a free course to the Thermaïc gulf, and turning round Ampelos the headland of Torone, it left on one side the following Hellenic cities, from which it took up contingents of ships and men, namely Torone, Galepsos, Sermyle, Mekyberna, Olynthos: this region is called Sithonia.

7.123

And the fleet of Xerxes, cutting across from the headland of Ampelos to that of Canastron, which runs out

*vocabulary***ἄκρα** at the edge, extreme ~acute**ἐνθεῦτεν** thence**θερμαίνω** heat ~thermos**κάμπτω** bend, bend in exhaustion**καταλέγω** relate in detail, choose;
enroll ~legion**κόλπος** bosom, lap-fold; gulf**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis**ὄμουρέω** be next to**οὐρίζω** divide; ordain, define**παραπλέω** sail past ~float**παράπλοος** -υ coasting**πλόος** -ῦ course, voyage ~float**στρατιά** army ~strategy**στρατός** common people/soldiers
~strategy**στρατόω** be on a campaign ~strategy

Καναστραϊνὴν ἄκρην, τὸ δὴ πάρης τῆς Παλλήνης ἀνέχει
 μάλιστα, ἐνθεῦτεν νέας τε καὶ στρατιὴν παρελάμβανε
 ἐκ Ποτιδαίης καὶ Ἀφύτιος καὶ Νέης πόλιος καὶ Αἰγῆς
 καὶ Θεράμβω καὶ Σκιώνης καὶ Μένδης καὶ Σάνης· αὐται
 γὰρ εἰσὶ αἱ τὴν νῦν Παλλήνην πρότερον δὲ Φλέγρην
 καλεομένην νεμόμεναι. παραπλέων δὲ καὶ ταύτην
 τὴν χώραν ἔπλεε ἐς τὸ προειρημένον, παραλαμβάνων
 στρατιὴν καὶ ἐκ τῶν προσεχέων πολίων τῇ Παλλήνῃ,
 ὁμουρεουσέων δὲ τῷ Θερμαίῳ κόλπῳ, τῇσι οὐνόματα ἐστὶ
 τάδε, Λίπαξος Κώμβρεια Αἶσα Γίγωνος Κάμψα Σμίλα
 Αἴνεια· ἡ δὲ τουτέων χώρα Κροσσαίη ἔτι καὶ ἐς τόδε
 καλέεται. ἀπὸ δὲ Αἰνείης, ἐς τὴν ἐτελεύτων καταλέγων
 τὰς πόλεις, ἀπὸ ταύτης ἤδη ἐς αὐτόν τε τὸν Θερμαῖον
 κόλπον ἐγένετο τῷ ναυτικῷ στρατῷ ὁ πλόος καὶ γῆν τὴν
 Μυγδονίην, πλέων δὲ ἀπύκετο ἔς τε τὴν προειρημένην
 Θέρμην καὶ Σίνδον τε πόλιν καὶ Χαλέστρην ἐπὶ τὸν
 Ἄξιον ποταμόν, ὃς οὐρίζει χώραν τὴν Μυγδονίην τε καὶ
 Βοττιαίδαν, τῆς ἔχουσι τὸ παρὰ θάλασσαν στεινὸν χωρίον

Καναστραίην |at the edge, extreme, |s τῆς Παλλήνης ἀνέχει
 μάλιστα, |thence νέας τε καὶ στρατιὴν παρελάμβανε
 ἐκ Ποτιδαίης καὶ Ἀφύτιος καὶ Νέης πόλιος καὶ Αἰγῆς
 καὶ Θεράμβω καὶ Σκιώνης καὶ Μένδης καὶ Σάνης· αὐται
 γὰρ εἰσὶ αἱ τὴν νῦν Παλλήνην πρότερον δὲ Φλέγρην
 καλεομένην |distribute . παραπλέων δὲ καὶ ταύτην
 τὴν χώραν ἔπλεε ἐς τὸ προειρημένον, παραλαμβάνων
 στρατιὴν καὶ ἐκ τῶν προσεχέων πολιῶν τῇ Παλλήνῃ,
 |be next to δὲ τῷ Θερμαίῳ |bosom, lap; |fold; gulf
 τάδε, Λίπαξος Κώμβρεια Αἶσα Γίγωνος Κάμψα Σμίλα
 Αἴνεια· ἡ δὲ τουτέων χώρα Κροσσαίη ἔτι καὶ ἐς τόδε
 καλέεται. ἀπὸ δὲ Αἰνείης, ἐς τὴν ἐτελεύτων |relate in detail, choose;
 |enroll
 τὰς πόλεις, ἀπὸ ταύτης ἤδη ἐς αὐτόν τε τὸν Θερμαῖον
 |bosom, lap; |course, καὶ γῆν τὴν
 |fold; gulf |voyage
 Μυγδονίην, πλέων δὲ ἀπίκετο ἔς τε τὴν προειρημένην
 Θέρμην καὶ Σίνδον τε πόλιν καὶ Χαλέστρην ἐπὶ τὸν
 Ἄξιον ποταμόν, ὃς |divide; |or-, |rην τὴν Μυγδονίην τε καὶ
 |dain, define
 Βοττιαίδα, τῆς ἔχουσι τὸ παρὰ θάλασσαν στεινὸν χωρίον

furthest to sea of all Pallene, took up there contingents of ships and men from Potidaia, Aphytis, Neapolis, Aige, Therambo, Skione, Mende and Sane, for these are the cities which occupy the region which now is called Pallene, but was formerly called Phlegra. Then sailing along the coast of this country also the fleet continued its course towards the place which has been mentioned before, taking up contingents also from the cities which come next after Pallene and border upon the Thermaïc gulf; and the names of them are these,—Lipaxos, Combreaia, Lisai, Gigonos, Campsa, Smila, Aineia; and the region in which these cities are is called even to the present day Crossaia. Then sailing from Aineia, with which name I brought to an end the list of the cities, at once the fleet came into the Thermaïc gulf and to the region of Mygdonia, and so it arrived at the aforesaid Therma and at the cities of Sindos and Chalestra upon the river Axios. This river is the boundary between the land of Mygdonia and Bottiaia, of which district the narrow region which lies on the sea coast is occupied by

*vocabulary***ἔλος** ἔλεος (n, 3) marsh**ἐξίημι** send forth, allow forth ~jet**ἦθος** ἡθεος (n, 3) habit, habitat ~ethos**θερμαίνω** heat ~thermos**κάμηλος** (f) camel**κεραίζω** slay, ravage ~caries**μεσόγαια** inland**μεταξύ** between**περιμένω** wait for**ρέω** flow ~rheostat**σιτοφόρος** (ι) carrying, producing grain**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up station ~strategy**στρατός** common people/soldiers ~strategy**σφέτερος** their**τέμνω** cut, sacrifice, solemnize ~tonsure**ὑποζύγιον** beast of burden ~zygote

πόλεις Ἰχναι τε καὶ Πέλλα.

7.124

ὁ μὲν δὴ ναυτικὸς στρατὸς αὐτοῦ περὶ Ἄξιον ποταμὸν καὶ πόλιν Θέρμην καὶ τὰς μεταξὺ πόλιας τούτων περιμένων Βασιλέα ἐστρατοπεδεύετο, Ξέρξης δὲ καὶ ὁ πεζὸς στρατὸς ἐπορεύετο ἐκ τῆς Ἀκάνθου τὴν μεσόγαιαν τάμνων τῆς ὁδοῦ, βουλόμενος ἐς τὴν Θέρμην ἀπικέσθαι· ἐπορεύετο δὲ διὰ τῆς Παιονικῆς καὶ Κρηστωνικῆς ἐπὶ ποταμὸν Χεῖδωρον, ὃς ἐκ Κρηστωναίων ἀρξάμενος ῥέει διὰ Μυγδονίης χώρας καὶ ἐξιεὶ παρὰ τὸ ἔλος τὸ ἐπ' Ἀξίῳ ποταμῷ.

7.125

πορευομένῳ δὲ ταύτῃ λέοντές οἱ ἐπεθήκαντο τῇσι σιτοφόροισι καμήλοισι. καταφοιτέοντες γὰρ οἱ λέοντες τὰς νύκτας καὶ λείποντες τὰ σφέτερα ἤθεα ἄλλου μὲν οὐδενὸς ἄπτοντο οὔτε ὑποζυγίου οὔτε ἀνθρώπου, οἳ δὲ τὰς καμήλους ἐκεραίζον μούνας. θωμάζω δὲ τὸ αἷτιον, ὃ

πόλεις Ἰχναι τε καὶ Πέλλα.

7.124

ὁ μὲν δὴ ναυτικὸς |army αὐτοῦ περὶ Ἄξιον ποταμὸν καὶ
 πόλιν Θέρμην καὶ τὰς |between πόλεις τούτων |wait for
 Βασιλέα |encamp or take up, station, Ξέρξης δὲ καὶ ὁ πεζὸς |army
 ἐπορεύετο ἐκ τῆς Ἀκάνθου τὴν μεσόγαίαν τάμνων τῆς
 ὁδοῦ, βουλόμενος εἰς τὴν Θέρμην ἀπικέσθαι· ἐπορεύετο
 δὲ διὰ τῆς Παιονικῆς καὶ Κρηστωνικῆς ἐπὶ ποταμὸν
 Χεῖδωρον, ὃς ἐκ Κρηστωναίων ἀρξάμενος ῥέει διὰ
 Μυγδονίης χώρας καὶ |send forth, allow|marsh ὁ ἐπ' Ἀξίῳ
 ποταμῷ.

7.125

πορευομένων δὲ ταύτῃ λέοντες οἱ ἐπεθήκαντο τῇσι
 |carrying, pro-camel . καταφοιτέοντες γὰρ οἱ λέοντες
 |ducing grain
 τὰς νύκτας καὶ λείποντες τὰ |their |habit, ἄλλου μὲν
 |habitat
 οὐδενὸς ἄπτοντο οὔτε |beast of burden ἀνθρώπου, οἱ δὲ τὰς
 |camel ἐκεραίζον μούνας. θωμάζω δὲ τὸ αἴτιον, ὃ

the cities of Ichnai and Pella.

7.124

Now while his naval force was encamped about the river Axios an the city of Therma and the cities which lie between these two, waiting for the coming of the king, Xerxes and the land-army were proceeding from Acanthos, cutting through the middle by the shortest way with a view to reaching Therma: and he was proceeding through Paionia and Crestonia to the river Cheidoros, which beginning from the land of the Crestonians, runs through the region of Mygdonia and comes out alongside of the marsh which is by the river Axios.

7.125

As he was proceeding by this way, lions attacked the camels which carried his provisions; for the lions used to come down regularly by night, leaving their own haunts, but they touched nothing else, neither beast of burden nor man, but killed the camels only: and I marvel what was the cause, and what was it

vocabulary

ἄγριος wild, savage ~agriculture
ἀπέχω ward off, drive off, refrain, be at
 some distance
Ἕλληγν Greek
ἐπέχω hold, cover; offer; assail
ἐπίλοιπος remaining
ἐσπέρα evening, west
ἡπειρος (f) mainland, continent
θερμαίνω heat ~thermos
ἰδρύω establish
κάμηλος (f) camel

μεταξύ between
ῥέω flow ~rheostat
ῥοά pl: waters of a river ~rheostat
ῥόος ῥοῦ stream, flow, current
 ~rheostat
στρατιά army ~strategy
στρατοπεδεύω encamp or take up
 station ~strategy
στρατός common people/soldiers
 ~strategy
τοσόσδε this much
φοιτέω go back and forth

τι κοτὲ ἦν τῶν ἄλλων τὸ ἀναγκάζον ἀπεχομένους τοὺς
λέοντας τῇσι καμήλοισι ἐπιτίθεσθαι, τὸ μήτε πρότερον
ὀπώπεσαν θηρίον μήτ' ἐπεπειρέατο αὐτοῦ.

7.126

εἰσὶ δὲ κατὰ ταῦτα τὰ χωρία καὶλέοντες πολλοὶ καὶ
βόες ἄγριοι, τῶν τὰ κέρεια ὑπερμεγάλα ἐστὶ τὰ ἐς
Ἑλλήνας φοιτέοντα. οὗρος δὲ τοῖσι λέουσι ἐστὶ ὃ τε δι'
Ἀβδήρων ῥέων ποταμὸς Νέστος καὶ ὁ δι' Ἀκαρνανίης
ῥέων Ἀχελῶος· οὔτε γὰρ τὸ πρὸς τὴν ἡῶ τοῦ Νέστου
οὐδαμόθι πάσης τῆς ἔμπροσθε Εὐρώπης ἴδοι τις ἂν
λέοντα, οὔτε πρὸς ἐσπέρης τοῦ Ἀχελῶου ἐν τῇ ἐπιλοίπῳ
ἡπείρῳ, ἀλλ' ἐν τῇ μεταξὺ τούτων τῶν ποταμῶν γίνονται.

7.127

ὥς δὲ ἐς τὴν Θέρμην ἀπῖκετο ὁ Ξέρξης, ἵδρυσεν αὐτοῦ τὴν
στρατιήν. ἐπέσχε δὲ ὁ στρατὸς αὐτοῦ στρατοπεδεύμενος
τὴν παρὰ θάλασσαν χώραν τοσὴνδε, ἀρξάμενος ἀπὸ
Θέρμης πόλιος καὶ τῆς Μυγδονίης μέχρι

τι κοτὲ ἦν τῶν ἄλλων τὸ ἀναγκάζον |ward off, drive off, `refrain, be at
 |some distance
 λέοντας τῇσι |camel ἐπιτίθεσθαι, τὸ μήτε πρότερον
 ὁπώπεσαν θηρίον μήτ' ἐπεπειρέατο αὐτοῦ.

7.126

εἰσὶ δὲ κατὰ ταῦτα τὰ χωρία καὶ λέοντες πολλοὶ καὶ
 βόες |wild, , τῶν τὰ κέρεια ὑπερμεγάθεια ἐστὶ τὰ ἐς
 |savage
 |Greek |go back and forth . s δὲ τοῖσι λέουσι ἐστὶ ὅ τε δι'
 Ἀβδήρων ῥέων ποταμὸς Νέστος καὶ ὁ δι' Ἀκαρνανίης
 ῥέων Ἀχελῶος· οὔτε γὰρ τὸ πρὸς τὴν ἡῶ τοῦ Νέστου
 οὐδαμόθι πάσης τῆς ἔμπροσθε Εὐρώπης ἴδοι τις ἂν
 λέοντα, οὔτε πρὸς ἐσπέρης τοῦ Ἀχελῶου ἐν τῇ |remaining
 |mainland, ἄλλ' ἐν τῇ |between γούτων τῶν ποταμῶν γίνονται.
 |continent

7.127

ὥς δὲ ἐς τὴν Θέρμην ἀπύκετο ὁ Ξέρξης, |establish...αὐτοῦ τὴν
 στρατιήν. ἐπέσχε δὲ ὁ |army αὐτοῦ |encamp or take up sta-
 |tion
 τὴν παρὰ θάλασσαν χώραν |this much ἀρξάμενος ἀπὸ
 Θέρμης πόλιος καὶ τῆς Μυγδονίης μέχρι

that impelled the lions to abstain from all else and to attack the camels only, creatures which they had never seen before, and of which they had had no experience.

7.126

Now there are in these parts both many lions and also wild oxen, those that have the very large horns which are often brought into Hellas; and the limit within which these lions are found is on the one side the river Nestos, which flows through Abdera, and on the other the Achelos, which flows through Acarnania; for neither do the East of the Nestos, in any part of Europe before you come to this, would you see a lion, nor again in the remaining part of the continent to the West of the Acheloos, but they are produced in the middle space between these rivers.

7.127

When Xerxes had reached Therma he established the army there; and his army encamping there occupied of the land along by the sea no less than this,—beginning from the city of Therma and from Mygdonia it extended as

*vocabulary***ἀναδέχομαι** catch, receive ~doctrine**ἄνω** (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste;
upwards, out to sea**αὐλῶν** canyon, strait, canal**εἰσβαίνω** enter, board ~basis**ἐκβολή** throwing out**ἐπιλείπω** fail, not work ~eclipse**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider
~theater**θερμαίνω** heat ~thermos**καταλέγω** relate in detail, choose;
enroll ~legion**κατύπερθεν** above, from above**μέγαθος** tall, big (person)**οὐρίζω** divide; ordain, define**προσδοκάω** expect**ῥεῖθρον** stream ~rheostat**ῥέω** flow ~rheostat**ῥοά** pl: waters of a river ~rheostat**ῥόος ῥοῦ** stream, flow, current
~rheostat**στρατιά** army ~strategy**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up
station ~strategy**συμμίγνυμι** mix with ~mix**ὑπερμήκης** too long, very long

Λυδῖέώ τε ποταμοῦ καὶ Ἀλιάκμονος, οἳ οὐρίζουσι γῆν τὴν
 Βοττιαῖδα τε καὶ Μακεδονίδα, ἐς τὸντὸ ρέεθρον τὸ ὕδωρ
 συμμίσγοντες. ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο μὲν δὴ ἐν τούτοισι τοῖσι
 χωρίοισι οἱ βάρβαροι, τῶν δὲ καταλεχθέντων τούτων
 ποταμῶν ἐκ Κρηστωναίων ρέων Χεῖδωρος μῦνος οὐκ
 ἀντέχρησε τῇ στρατιῇ πινόμενος ἀλλ' ἐπέλιπε.

7.128

Ξέρξης δὲ ὀρέων ἐκ τῆς Θέρμης ὄρεα τὰ Θεσσαλικά,
 τόν τε Ὀλυμπον καὶ τὴν Ὀσσαν, μεγάθει τε ὑπερμήκεα
 ἐόντα, διὰ μέσου τε αὐτῶν αὐλῶνα στευνὸν πυνθανόμενος
 εἶναι δι' οὗ ῥέει ὁ Πηνειός, ἀκούων τε ταύτῃ εἶναι
 ὁδὸν ἐς Θεσσαλίην φέρουσαν, ἐπεθύμησε πλώσας
 θεήσασθαι τὴν ἐκβολὴν τοῦ Πηνειοῦ, ὅτι τὴν ἄνω
 ὁδὸν ἔμελλε ἔλαν διὰ Μακεδόνων τῶν κατύπερθε
 οἰκημένων ἔστε Περραιβοὺς παρὰ Γόννον πόλιν· ταύτῃ
 γὰρ ἀσφαλέστατον ἐπυνθάνετο εἶναι. ὥς δὲ ἐπεθύμησε,
 καὶ ἐποίεε ταῦτα· ἐσβὰς ἐς Σιδωνίην νέα, ἐς τὴν περ
 ἐσέβαινε αἰεὶ ὅπως τι ἐθέλοι τοιοῦτο ποιῆσαι, ἀνέδεξε

Λυδίαώ τε ποταμοῦ καὶ Ἀλιάκμονος, οἷ ^{|divide; or-,} ἦν τὴν ^{|dain, define}
 Βοττιαίδα τε καὶ Μακεδονίδα, ἐς τὸν ποτὸν ^{|stream} τὸ ὕδωρ
 συμμίσγοντες. ^{|encamp or take up} μὲν δὲ ἐν τούτοισι τοῖσι ^{|station}
 χωρίοις οἱ βάρβαροι, τῶν δὲ ^{|relate in detail, τούτων} ^{|choose; enroll}
 ποταμῶν ἐκ Κρησωναίων ῥέων Χειδωρος μῦθος οὐκ
 ἀντέχρησε τῇ στρατιῇ πινόμενος ἀλλ' ^{|fail, not work}

7.128

Ξέρξης δὲ ὁρέων ἐκ τῆς Θέρμης ὄρεα τὰ Θεσσαλικά,
 τὸν τε Ὀλυμπον καὶ τὴν Ὀσσαν, ^{|tall, big} τε ^{|too long, very long}
 ἔόντα, διὰ μέσου τε αὐτῶν ^{|canyon,} εἰνὸν ^{|strait, canal} πυνθανόμενος
 εἶναι δι' οὗ ῥέει ὁ Πηνειός, ἀκούων τε ταύτῃ εἶναι
 ὁδὸν ἐς Θεσσαλίην φέρουσαν, ἐπεθύμησε πλώσας
 θεήσασθαι τὴν ^{|throwing out} Πηνειοῦ, ὅτι τὴν ἄνω
 ὁδὸν ἔμελλε ἐλᾶν διὰ Μακεδόνων τῶν ^{|above, from above}
 οἰκημένων ἔστε Περραιβοὺς παρὰ Γόννον πόλιν· ταύτῃ
 γὰρ ἀσφαλέστατον ἐπυνθάνετο εἶναι. ὥς δὲ ἐπεθύμησε,
 καὶ ἐποίεε ταῦτα· ^{|enter,} ἐς Σιδωνίην ^{|board} νέα, ἐς τὴν περ
^{|enter,} αἰὲ ὅπως τι ἐθέλοι τοιοῦτο ποιῆσαι, ^{|receive}
^{|board}

far as the river Lydias and the Haliacmon, which form the boundary between the lands of Bottiaia and Macedonia, mingling their waters together in one and the same stream. The Barbarians, I say, were encamped in these regions; and of the rivers which have been enumerated, only the river Cheidoros flowing from the Crestonian land was insufficient for the drinking of the army and failed in its stream.

7.128

Then Xerxes seeing from Therma the mountains of Thessaly, Olympos and Ossa, that they were of very great height, and being informed that in the midst between them there was a narrow channel, through which flows the Peneios, and hearing also that by this way there was a good road leading to Thessaly, formed a desire to sail thither and look at the outlet of the Peneios, because he was meaning to march by the upper road, through the land of the Macedonians who dwell inland, until he came to the Perraibians, passing by the city of Gonnos; for by this way he was informed that it was safest to go. And having formed this desire, so also he proceeded to do; that is, he embarked in a Sidonian ship, the same in which he used always to embark when he wished to do anything

vocabulary

ἀποκλήϊω shut out; close up
βορέας -οῦ (m, 1) north, north wind
δόκιμος trustworthy; excellent
εἰσβάλλω throw into ~ballistic
ἐκβολή throwing out
ἐσπέρα evening, west
εὖς good, brave, noble
θῶμα a wonder, feeling of surprise
 ~theater
καθηγεμών leader, guide
κοῖλος hollow ~hollow
λίμνη lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic

μεσαμβρίη midday; the south
νότος south, south wind
ὄον οὔ type of fruit
πάντοθεν from all directions
παρατρέπω turn aside ~trophy
στρατός common people/soldiers
 ~strategy
συγκλείω hem in, connect, conclude
συμμίγνυμι mix with ~mix
συχνός long; many; extensive
ὑπερμήκης too long, very long
ὕπωρεια foothills ~hormone

σημήιον καὶ τοῖσι ἄλλοισι ἀνάγεσθαι, καταλιπὼν αὐτοῦ
 τὸν πεζὸν στρατόν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπύκετο καὶ ἐθέησατο
 Ξέρξης τὴν ἐκβολὴν τοῦ Πηνειοῦ, ἐν θώματι μεγάλῳ
 ἐνέσχετο, καλέσας δὲ τοὺς κατηγεμόνας τῆς ὁδοῦ εἶρετο
 εἰ τὸν ποταμὸν ἐστὶ παρατρέψαντα ἐτέρῃ ἐς θάλασσαν
 ἐξαγαγεῖν.

7.129

τὴν δὲ Θεσσαλίην λόγος ἐστὶ τὸ παλαιὸν εἶναι λίμνην,
 ὥστε γε συγκεκλημένην πάντοθεν ὑπερμήκεσι ὄρεσι. τὰ
 μὲν γὰρ αὐτῆς πρὸς τὴν ἡῶ ἔχοντα τό τε Πήλιον ὄρος καὶ
 ἡ Ὑσσα ἀποκλήϊει συμμίσγοντα τὰς ὑπωρείας ἀλλήλοισι,
 τὰ δὲ πρὸς βορῶ ἀνέμου Ὀλυμπος, τὰ δὲ πρὸς ἐσπέρην
 Πίνδος, τὰ δὲ πρὸς μεσαμβρίην τε καὶ ἄνεμον νότον ἡ
 Ὀθρυς· τὸ μέσον δὲ τούτων τῶν λεχθέντων ὀρέων ἡ
 Θεσσαλίη ἐστὶ ἐοῦσα κοίλῃ. ὥστε ὧν ποταμῶν ἐς αὐτὴν
 καὶ ἄλλων συχνῶν ἐσβαλλόντων, πέντε δὲ τῶν δοκίμων
 μάλιστα τῶνδε, Πηνειοῦ καὶ Ἀπιδανοῦ καὶ Ὀνοχώνου καὶ
 Ἐνιπέος καὶ Παμίσου,

σημήιον καὶ τοῖσι ἄλλοισι ἀνάγεσθαι, καταλιπὼν αὐτοῦ
 τὸν πεζὸν |army . . . ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπύκετο καὶ ἐθέησατο
 Ξέρξης τὴν |throwing out. Ὡ Πηνειοῦ, ἐν |wonder, |surprise, μεγάλην
 ἐνέσχετο, καλέσας δὲ τοὺς |leader, guide τῆς ὁδοῦ εἵρετο
 εἰ τὸν ποταμὸν ἐστὶ |turn aside ἐτέρῃ ἐς θάλασσαν
 ἐξαγαγεῖν.

7.129

τὴν δὲ Θεσσαλίην λόγος ἐστὶ τὸ παλαιὸν εἶναι |lake, marsh,
 |basin, sea
 ὥστε γε |συγκλείω?: hem in, |from all di- |too long, very long. . . τὰ
 |connect, conclude; |reactions
 μὲν γὰρ αὐτῆς πρὸς τὴν ἡῶ ἔχοντα τό τε Πήλιον ὄρος καὶ
 |in, |connect, con-
 |clude
 ἡ Ὅσσα ἀποκληθεῖ συμμίσγοντα τὰς |foothills ἀλλήλοισι,
 τὰ δὲ πρὸς |north, ἀνέμου Ὀλυμπος, τὰ δὲ πρὸς ἐσπέρην
 |north
 Πίνδος, τὰ δὲ πρὸς |midday; the south . . αἱ ἄνεμον |south, ἡ
 |south
 Ὀθρυς· τὸ μέσον δὲ τούτων τῶν λεχθέντων ὁρέων ἡ
 |wind
 Θεσσαλίη ἐστὶ ἐοῦσα |hollow. ὥστε ὦν ποταμῶν ἐς αὐτὴν
 καὶ ἄλλων |long; many; |γαλλόντων, πέντε δὲ τῶν |trustworthy;
 |extensive |excellent
 μάλιστα τῶνδε, Πηνειοῦ καὶ Ἀπιδανοῦ καὶ Ὀνοχώνου καὶ
 Ἐνιπέος καὶ Παμίσου,

of this kind, and he displayed a signal for the others to put out to sea also, leaving there the land-army. Then when Xerxes had looked at the outlet of the Peneios, he was possessed by great wonder, and summoning his guides he asked them whether it was possible to turn the river aside and bring it out to the sea by another way.

7.129

Now it is said that Thessaly was in old time a lake, being enclosed on all sides by very lofty mountains: for the parts of it which lie towards the East are shut in by the ranges of Pelion and Ossa, which join one another in their lower slopes, the parts towards the North Wind by Olympos, those towards the West by Pindos and those towards the mid-day and the South Wind by Othrys; and the region in the midst, between these mountains which have been named, is Thessaly, forming as it were a hollow. Whereas then many rivers flow into it and among them these five of most note, namely Peneios, Apidanos, Onochonos, Enipeus and Pamisos, these, which collect

vocabulary

ἄνώνυμος nameless ~name

αὐλὼν canyon, strait, canal

δίιστημι stand apart ~stand

ἐνθεῦτεν thence

λίμνη lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic

πέλαγος -ους (n, 3) the open sea

~pelagic

περικληίω enclose, confine

ῥέω flow ~rheostat

σεισμός shaking

σειώ shake ~seismic

συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion

οἱ μὲν νυν ἐς τὸ πεδῖον τοῦτο συλλεγόμενοι ἐκ τῶν ὀρέων τῶν περικληιόντων τὴν Θεσσαλίην ὀνομαζόμενοι δι' ἐνὸς αὐλῶνος καὶ τούτου στεينوῦ ἔκροον ἔχουσι ἐς θάλασσαν, προσυμμίσγοντες τὸ ὕδωρ πάντες ἐς τῶντό· ἐπεὰν δὲ συμμιχθέωσι τάχιστα, ἐνθεῦτεν ἤδη ὁ Πηνειὸς τῷ οὐνόματι κατακρατέων ἀνωνύμους τοὺς ἄλλους εἶναι ποιεῖ. τὸ δὲ παλαιὸν λέγεται, οὐκ ἐόντος κω τοῦ αὐλῶνος καὶ διεκρούου τούτου, τοὺς ποταμοὺς τούτους, καὶ πρὸς τοῖσι ποταμοῖσι τούτοισι τὴν Βοιβηίδα λίμνην, οὔτε ὀνομάζεσθαι κατὰ περ νῦν ῥέειν τε οὐδὲν ἦσσαν ἢ νῦν, ῥέοντας δὲ ποιεῖν τὴν Θεσσαλίην πᾶσαν πέλαγος. αὐτοὶ μὲν νυν Θεσσαλοὶ φασὶ Ποσειδέωνα ποιῆσαι τὸν αὐλῶνα δι' οὗ ῥέει ὁ Πηνειός, οἰκότα λέγοντες· ὅστις γὰρ νομίζει Ποσειδέωνα τὴν γῆν σείειν καὶ τὰ διεστεῶτα ὑπὸ σεισμοῦ τοῦ θεοῦ τούτου ἔργα εἶναι, κὰν ἐκείνο ἰδὼν φαίῃ Ποσειδέωνα ποιῆσαι· ἔστι γὰρ σεισμοῦ ἔργον, ὥς ἐμοὶ φαίνεται εἶναι, ἢ διάστασις τῶν ὀρέων.

οἱ μὲν νυν ἐς τὸ πεδῖον τοῦτο |collect, assemble ἐκ τῶν
 ὀρέων τῶν περικληϊόντων τὴν Θεσσαλίην ὀνομαζόμενοι
 δι' ἐνὸς |canyon, strait, canal αἰ τούτου στεينوῦ ἔκροον ἔχουσι ἐς
 θάλασσαν, προσυμμίσγοντες τὸ ὕδωρ πάντες ἐς τὸν
 ἐπεὰν δὲ συμμιχθῶσι τάχιστα, |thence ἥδη ὁ Πηνειὸς
 τῷ οὐνόματι κατακρατέων |nameless τοὺς ἄλλους εἶναι
 ποιέει. τὸ δὲ παλαιὸν λέγεται, οὐκ ἔοντος κω τοῦ
 |canyon, strait, canal αἰ διεκρούου τούτου, τοὺς ποταμοὺς τούτους,
 καὶ πρὸς τοῖσι ποταμοῖσι τούτοισι τὴν Βοιβηίδα |lake, marsh, basin, sea
 οὔτε ὀνομάζεσθαι κατὰ περ νῦν |flow τε οὐδὲν ἦσσαν ἢ
 νῦν, |flow δὲ ποιέειν τὴν Θεσσαλίην πᾶσαν |the open sea
 αὐτοὶ μὲν νυν Θεσσαλοὶ φασι Ποσειδέωνα ποιῆσαι τὸν
 |canyon, strait, canal οὐ ρέει ὁ Πηνειός, οἰκότα λέγοντες· ὅστις γὰρ
 νομίζει Ποσειδέωνα τὴν γῆν |shake καὶ τὰ |stand apart ὑπὸ
 |shaking τοῦ θεοῦ τούτου ἔργα εἶναι, καὶ ἐκεῖνο ἰδὼν φαίη
 Ποσειδέωνα ποιῆσαι· ἔστι γὰρ |shaking ἔργον, ὥς ἐμοὶ
 φαίνεται εἶναι, ἢ διάστασις τῶν ὀρέων.

their waters from the mountains that enclose Thessaly round, and flow into this plain, with names separate each one, having their outflow into the sea by one channel and that a narrow one, first mingling their waters all together in one and the same stream; and so soon as they are mingled together, from that point onwards the Peneios prevails with its name over the rest and causes the others to lose their separate names. And it is said that in ancient time, there not being yet this channel and outflow between the mountains, these rivers, and besides these rivers the lake Boibeïs also, had no names as they have now, but by their waters they made Thessaly to be all sea. The Thessalians themselves say that Poseidon made the channel through which the Peneios flows; and reasonably they report it thus, because whosoever believes that it is Poseidon who shakes the Earth and that the partings asunder produced by earthquake are the work of this god, would say, if he saw this, that it was made by Poseidon; for the parting asunder of the mountains is the work of an earthquake, as is evident to me.

vocabulary

ἀπαγγέλλω announce, order, promise
 ~angel
ἀποπλέω sail away ~float
ἀτρεκής precise, certain
αὐλῶν canyon, strait, canal
γνωσιμαχέω submit; admit a mistake
Ἑλλην Greek
ἐξεπίσταμαι know well
ἐξήλυσις exit
ἐξοδος (f) leaving, way out
θεάομαι look at, behold, consider
 ~theater

θερμαίνω heat ~thermos
καθηγέομαι lead
καθήκω come down, (a day) to fall,
 arrive; be proper
παρατρέπω turn aside ~trophy
περιστεφανόω enwreath
ῥεῖθρον stream ~rheostat
ῥέω flow ~rheostat
σοφός skilled, clever, wise
ὑπόβρυχα submerged
φίλιος friendly
χῶμα -τος (n, 3) mound of dirt

7.130

οἱ δὲ κατηγορόμενοι, εἰρομένου Ξέρξεω εἰ ἔστι ἄλλη ἔξοδος ἐς θάλασσαν τῷ Πηνειῷ, ἐξεπιστάμενοι ἀτρεκέως εἶπον «βασιλεῦ, ποταμῷ τούτῳ οὐκ ἔστι ἄλλη ἐξήλυσις ἐς θάλασσαν κατήκουσα, ἀλλ' ἦδε αὐτή· ὄρεσι γὰρ περιεστεφάνωται πᾶσα Θεσσαλίη.» Ξέρξην δὲ λέγεται εἰπεῖν πρὸς ταῦτα «σοφοὶ ἄνδρες εἰσὶ Θεσσαλοί. ταῦτ' ἄρα πρὸ πολλοῦ ἐφυλάξαντο γνωσιμαχείοντες καὶ τᾶλλα καὶ ὅτι χώραν ἄρα εἶχον εὐαίρετόν τε καὶ ταχυάλωτον. τὸν γὰρ ποταμὸν πρῆγμα ἂν ἦν μόνον ἐπεῖναι σφέων ἐπὶ τὴν χώραν, χώματι ἐκ τοῦ αὐλῶνος ἐκβιβάσαντα καὶ παρατρέψαντα δι' ὧν νῦν ῥέει ῥέεθρων, ὥστε Θεσσαλὴν πᾶσαν ἔξω τῶν ὀρέων ὑπόβρυχα γενέσθαι.» ταῦτα δὲ ἔχοντα ἔλεγε ἐς τοὺς Ἀλεύεω παῖδας, ὅτι πρῶτοι Ἑλλήνων ἐόντες Θεσσαλοὶ ἔδοσαν ἐωντοὺς βασιλεί, δοκέων ὁ Ξέρξης ἀπὸ παντός σφεας τοῦ ἔθνους ἐπαγγέλλεσθαι φιλήν. εἶπας δὲ ταῦτα καὶ θεησάμενος ἀπέπλεε ἐς τὴν Θέρμην.

7.130

οἱ δὲ |lead , εἰρομένου Ξέρξεω εἰ ἔστι ἄλλη
 |leaving, way out...σαν τῷ Πηνειῷ, ἐξεπιστάμενοι |precise,
 |certain
 εἶπον «βασιλεῦ, ποταμῷ τούτῳ οὐκ ἔστι ἄλλη |exit
 ἐς θάλασσαν |come down, (a day) to ἴδε αὐτή· ὅρεσι γὰρ
 |fall, arrive; be proper
 |enwreathe πᾶσα Θεσσαλὴ.» Ξέρξην δὲ λέγεται
 εἰπεῖν πρὸς ταῦτα «|skilled, ... ὅρεσι εἰσὶ Θεσσαλοί. ταῦτ'
 |clever, wise
 ἄρα πρὸ πολλοῦ ἐφυλάξαντο |submit; admit a καὶ τᾶλλα
 |mistake
 καὶ ὅτι χώραν ἄρα εἶχον εὐαίρετόν τε καὶ ταχύνωτον.
 τὸν γὰρ ποταμὸν πρῆγμα ἂν ἦν μόνον ἐπεῖναι σφέων
 ἐπὶ τὴν χώραν, |mound of dirt οὐ |canyon, ἔκβιβάσαντα
 |strait, canal
 καὶ |turn aside δι' ὧν νῦν ῥέει |stream , ὥστε
 Θεσσαλίην πᾶσαν ἔξω τῶν ὁρέων ὑπόβρυχα γενέσθαι.»
 ταῦτα δὲ ἔχοντα ἔλεγε ἐς τοὺς Ἀλεύεω παῖδας, ὅτι
 πρῶτοι |Greek ἑόντες Θεσσαλοὶ ἔδοσαν ἑωυτοὺς
 βασιλεί, δοκέων ὁ Ξέρξης ἀπὸ παντός σφεας τοῦ ἔθνους
 ἐπαγγέλλεσθαι |friendly εἶπας δὲ ταῦτα καὶ θεησάμενος
 |sail away ἐς τὴν Θέρμην.

7.130

So the guides, when Xerxes asked whether there was any other possible outlet to the sea for the Peneios, said with exact knowledge of the truth: “O king, for this river there is no other outgoing which extends to the sea, but this alone; for all Thessaly is circled about with mountains as with a crown.” To this Xerxes is said to have replied: “The Thessalians then are prudent men. This it appears was that which they desired to guard against in good time when they changed their counsel, reflecting on this especially besides other things, namely that they had a country which, it appears, is easy to conquer and may quickly be taken: for it would have been necessary only to let the river flow over their land by making an embankment to keep it from going through the narrow channel and so diverting the course by which now it flows, in order to put all Thessaly under water except the mountains.” This he said in reference to the sons of Aleuas, because they, being Thessalians, were the first of the Hellenes who gave themselves over to the king; for Xerxes thought that they offered him friendship on behalf of their whole nation. Having said thus and having looked at the place, he sailed back to Therma.

vocabulary

αἵτησις -εως (f) request, demand
ἀποπέμπω send away ~pomp
δεκατεύω take a tenth
διατρίβω (ι) wear down, delay
 ~tribology
διέξιμι pass through; recount ~ion
Ἕλληγ Greek
κείρω shave, sever, raze; devour, use

up
κενός empty, vain
ὄρκιον oath ~orc
Πέρσης Persian
στρατιά army ~strategy
συχνός long; many; extensive
τέμνω cut, sacrifice, solemnize
 ~tonsure
τριτημορίς 1/3

7.131

ὁ μὲν δὴ περὶ Πιερίην διέτριβε ἡμέρας συχνάς· τὸ γὰρ δὴ ὄρος τὸ Μακεδονικὸν ἔκειρε τῆς στρατιῆς τριτημορίς, ἵνα ταύτῃ διεξίῃ ἅπασα ἡ στρατιὴ ἐς Περραιβούς. οἱ δὲ δὴ κήρυκες οἱ ἀποπεμφθέντες ἐς τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἐπὶ γῆς αἵτησιν ἀπίκατο οἱ μὲν κεινοί, οἱ δὲ φέροντες γῆν τε καὶ ὕδωρ.

7.132

τῶν δὲ δόντων ταῦτα ἐγένοντο οἷδε, Θεσσαλοὶ Δόλοπες Ἐνιῆνες Περραιβοὶ Λοκροὶ Μάγνητες Μηλιέες Ἀχαιοὶ οἱ Φθιώται καὶ Θηβαῖοι καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι Βοιωτοὶ πλὴν Θεσπιέων τε καὶ Πλαταιέων. ἐπὶ τούτοισι οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔταμον ὄρκιον οἱ τῷ βαρβάρῳ πόλεμον ἀειράμενοι· τὸ δὲ ὄρκιον ὧδε εἶχε, ὅσοι τῷ Πέρσῃ ἔδοσαν σφέας αὐτοὺς Ἕλληνες ἐόντες μὴ ἀναγκασθέντες, καταστάντων σφι εἰς τῶν πρηγμάτων, τούτους δεκατεῦσαι τῷ ἐν Δελφοῖσι θεῷ. τὸ μὲν δὴ ὄρκιον ὧδε εἶχε τοῖσι Ἕλλησι.

7.131

ὁ μὲν δὴ περὶ Πιερίην |wear down, delay - |long; many; γὰρ
 |extensive
 δὴ ὄρος τὸ Μακεδονικὸν |shave, sever, raze; .δε-1/3
 |vour, use up
 ἵνα ταύτῃ |pass through; ἡ στρατιὴ ἐς Περραιβούς. οἱ δὲ δὴ
 |recount
 κήρυκες οἱ |send away ἐς τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἐπὶ γῆς |request,
 |demand
 ἀπίκατο οἱ μὲν κεινοί, οἱ δὲ φέροντες γῆν τε καὶ ὕδωρ.

7.132

τῶν δὲ δόντων ταῦτα ἐγένοντο οἶδε, Θεσσαλοὶ Δόλοπες
 Ἐνιήνες Περραιβοὶ Λοκροὶ Μάγνητες Μηλιέες Ἀχαιοὶ οἱ
 Φθιώται καὶ Θηβαῖοι καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι Βοιωτοὶ πλὴν Θεσπιέων
 τε καὶ Πλαταιέων. ἐπὶ τούτοις οἱ |Greek |cut, sacrifice, on
 |solemnize
 οἱ τῷ βαρβάρῳ πόλεμον ἀειράμενοι· τὸ δὲ ὄρκιον ὥδε
 εἶχε, ὅσοι τῷ Πέρσῃ ἔδοσαν σφέας αὐτοὺς |Greek ἐόντες
 μὴ ἀναγκασθέντες, καταστάντων σφι εἰς τῶν πρηγμάτων,
 τούτους |take a tenth τῷ ἐν Δελφοῖσι θεῷ. τὸ μὲν δὴ ὄρκιον
 ὥδε εἶχε τοῖσι |Greek .

7.131

He then was staying in the region of Pieria many days, for the road over the mountains of Macedonia was being cut meanwhile by a third part of his army, that all the host might pass over by this way into the land of the Perraibians: and now the heralds returned who had been sent to Hellas to demand the gift of earth, some empty-handed and others bearing earth and water.

7.132

And among those who gave that which was demanded were the following, namely the Thessalians, Dolopians, Enianians, Perraibians, Locrians, Megnesians, Malians, Achaians of Phthiotis, and Thebans, with the rest of the Boeotians also excepting the Thespians and Plataians. Against these the Hellenes who took up war with the Barbarian made an oath; and the oath was this,—that whosoever being Hellenes had given themselves over to the Persian, not being compelled, these, if their own affairs should come to a good conclusion, they would dedicate as an offering to the god at Delphi.

*vocabulary***αἵτησις** -εως (f) request, demand**ἀνεθέλητος** unwelcome**ἀπόγονος** descended from**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp**βάραθρον** gulf, pit ~voracious**γέρας** -ως (n, 3) reward, honor**δηιόω** be inimical, hurt, tear, kill**εὖς** good, brave, noble**κατασκήπτω** fall upon**μῆνις** -ος (f) rage**ὄον** οὓ type of fruit**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient;
agree; (mp) happen ~bear**φρέαρ** well

7.133

ἐς δὲ Ἀθήνας καὶ Σπάρτην οὐκ ἀπέπεμψε Ξέρξης ἐπὶ γῆς αἵτησιν κήρυκας τῶνδε εἵνεκα· πρότερον Δαρείου πέμπαντος ἐπ' αὐτὸ τοῦτο, οἳ μὲν αὐτῶν τοὺς αἰτέοντας ἐς τὸ βάραθρον οἳ δ' ἐς φρέαρ ἐμβαλόντες ἐκέλευον γῆν τε καὶ ὕδωρ ἐκ τούτων φέρειν παρὰ βασιλέα. τούτων μὲν εἵνεκα οὐκ ἔπεμψε Ξέρξης τοὺς αἰτήσοντας· ὅ τι δὲ τοῖσι Ἀθηναίοισι ταῦτα ποιήσασι τοὺς κήρυκας συνήνεκε ἀνεθέλητον γενέσθαι, οὐκ ἔχω εἰπαί τι, πλὴν ὅτι σφέων ἡ χώρα καὶ ἡ πόλις ἐδηιώθη. ἀλλὰ τοῦτο οὐ διὰ ταύτην τὴν αἰτίην δοκέω γενέσθαι.

7.134

τοῖσι δὲ ὧν Λακεδαιμονίοισι μῆνις κατέσκηψε Ταλθυβίου τοῦ Ἀγαμέμνονος κήρυκος. ἐν γὰρ Σπάρτῃ ἐστὶ Ταλθυβίου ἱρόν, εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ ἀπόγονοι Ταλθυβιάδαι καλεόμενοι, τοῖσι αἱ κηρυκῆαι αἱ ἐκ Σπάρτης πᾶσαι γέρας δέδονται. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα τοῖσι Σπαρτιήτησι

7.133

ἐς δὲ Ἀθήνας καὶ Σπάρτην οὐκ |send away Ξέρξης ἐπὶ
 γῆς |request, κήρυκας τῶνδε εἵνεκα· πρότερον Δαρείου
 |demand
 πέμψαντος ἐπ' αὐτὸ τοῦτο, οἳ μὲν αὐτῶν τοὺς αἰτέοντας
 ἐς τὸ |gulf, pit οἳ δ' ἐς |well ἐμβαλόντες ἐκέλευον γῆν
 τε καὶ ὕδωρ ἐκ τούτων φέρειν παρὰ βασιλέα. τούτων
 μὲν εἵνεκα οὐκ ἔπεμψε Ξέρξης τοὺς αἰτήσοντας· ὅ τι δὲ
 τοῖσι Ἀθηναίοισι ταῦτα ποιήσασι τοὺς κήρυκας συνήνεικε
 |unwelcome γενέσθαι, οὐκ ἔχω εἰπαί τι, πλὴν ὅτι σφέων ἡ
 χώρα καὶ ἡ πόλις |δηλώ?: harm, kill; or το οὐ διὰ ταύτην τὴν
 |δηλώ?: harm, kill
 αἰτίην δοκέω γενέσθαι.

7.134

τοῖσι δὲ ὦν Λακεδαιμονίοισι |rage |fall upon Ταλθυβίου
 τοῦ Ἀγαμέμνονος κήρυκος. ἐν γὰρ Σπάρτῃ ἐστὶ
 Ταλθυβίου ἱρόν, εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ |descended from ἑθυβιάδαι
 καλούμενοι, τοῖσι αἱ κηρυκῆαι αἱ ἐκ Σπάρτης πᾶσαι
 |reward, ἔδονται. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα τοῖσι Σπαρτιήτησι
 |honor

7.133

Thus ran the oath which was taken by the Hellenes: Xerxes however had not sent to Athens or to Sparta heralds to demand the gift of earth, and for this reason, namely because at the former time when Dareios had sent for this very purpose, the one people threw the men who made the demand into the pit and the others into a well, and bade them take from thence earth and water and bear them to the king. For this reason Xerxes did not send men to make this demand. And what evil thing came upon the Athenians for having done this to the heralds, I am not able to say, except indeed that their land and city were laid waste; but I do not think that this happened for that cause:

7.134

On the Lacedemonians however the wrath fell of Talthybios, the herald of Agamemnon; for in Sparta there is a temple of Talthybios, and there are also descendants of Talthybios called Talthybiads, to whom have been given as a right all the missions of heralds which go from Sparta; and after this event it was not possible for

vocabulary

ἄλιος of the sea; fruitless
ἁλίσκομαι be captured ~helix
ἀνήκω reach up to; belong
ἀποπέμπω send away ~pomp
ἄχθομαι be burdened with
ἐθελοντής -οῦ (m, 1) a volunteer
ἑστία hearth ~Hestia
θύω (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω
θῶμα a wonder, feeling of surprise
 ~theater
ἱστίον sail ~stand
καλλιερῶ have good signs
κήρυγμα -τος (n, 3) proclamation
ξεινίζω be host, treat as a guest
ξείνιος of hospitality
παραθαλάσσιος by the sea

πέρθω sack, ravage, plunder
Πέρσης Persian
ποινή blood-price ~penalty
προτίθημι prefer, set out ~thesis
σοῦσον lily
συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion
συμφορά collecting; accident, misfortune
συχνός long; many; extensive
τίνω (ι) pay, atone for; (mp) punish
τοιόσδε such
ὑποδύω (mp) get under; play a character
φύσις -εως (f) nature (of a thing)
 ~physics
φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics

καλλιεργῆσαι θυομένοισι οὐκ ἔδύνατο· τοῦτο δ' ἐπὶ χρόνον
 συχνὸν ἦν σφι. ἀχθομένων δὲ καὶ συμφορῇ χρεωμένων
 Λακεδαιμονίων, ἀλῆς τε πολλάκις συλληγομένης
 καὶ κήρυγμα τοιόνδε ποιευμένων, εἴ τις βούλοιτο
 Λακεδαιμονίων πρὸ τῆς Σπάρτης ἀποθνήσκειν, Σπερθίης
 τε ὁ Ἀνηρίστου καὶ Βούλις ὁ Νικόλεω, ἄνδρες Σπαρτιῆται
 φύσι τε γεγονότες εἶδ' καὶ χρήμασι ἀνήκοντες ἐς τὰ πρῶτα,
 ἐθέλονται ὑπέδυσαν ποινὴν τίσαι Ξέρξῃ τῶν Δαρείου
 κηρύκων τῶν ἐν Σπάρτῃ ἀπολομένων. οὕτω Σπαρτιῆται
 τούτους ὥς ἀποθανευμένους ἐς Μήδους ἀπέπεμψαν.

7.135

αὕτη τε ἡ τόλμα τούτων τῶν ἀνδρῶν θώματος ἀξίη
 καὶ τάδε πρὸς τούτοις τὰ ἔπεα. πορευόμενοι γὰρ ἐς
 Σοῦσα ἀπικνέονται παρὰ Ὑδάρνεα· ὁ δὲ Ὑδάρνης ἦν
 μὲν γένος Πέρσης, στρατηγὸς δὲ τῶν παραθαλασσίων
 ἀνθρώπων τῶν ἐν τῇ Ἀσίῃ· ὅς σφεας ξείνια προθέμενος
 ἰστία, ξεινίζων δὲ εἴρετο τάδε. «ἄνδρες Λακεδαιμόνιοι, τί
 δὴ φεύγετε βασιλεῖ φίλοι γενέσθαι; ὁρᾶτε γὰρ ὡς

|have good signs|rush; sacrifice ἵκ' ἐδύνατο· τοῦτο δ' ἐπὶ χρόνον
 |long; many; σφι. |be burdened with ..αὶ συμφορῇ χρεωμένων
 |extensive
 Λακεδαιμονίων, ἀλῆς τε πολλάκις |collect, assemble
 καὶ |proclama- |such ποιευμένων, εἴ τις βούλοιτο
 |tion
 Λακεδαιμονίων πρὸ τῆς Σπάρτης ἀποθνήσκειν, Σπερθίης
 τε ὁ Ἀνηρίστου καὶ Βούλις ὁ Νικόλεω, ἄνδρες Σπαρτιῆται
 φύσι τε γεγονότες εὖ καὶ χρήμασι |reach up to; belong . ρῶτα,
 |a volunteer |(mp) get un-|blood-price; (mp) punish ἦν Δαρείου
 |der; play a |character
 κηρύκων τῶν ἐν Σπάρτῃ ἀπολομένων. οὕτω Σπαρτιῆται
 τούτους ὡς ἀποθανευμένους ἐς Μήδους |send away .

7.135

αὕτη τε ἡ τόλμα τούτων τῶν ἀνδρῶν |wonder, ἀξίη
 |surprise
 καὶ τάδε πρὸς τούτοισι τὰ ἔπεα. πορευόμενοι γὰρ ἐς
 |lily ἀπικνέονται παρὰ Ὑδάρνεα· ὁ δὲ Ὑδάρνης ἦν
 μὲν γένος Πέρσης, στρατηγὸς δὲ τῶν |by the sea
 ἀνθρώπων τῶν ἐν τῇ Ἀσίῃ· ὅς σφεας |of hos-|prefer, set out
 |pitality
 ἰστία, |be host δὲ εἶρετο τάδε. «ἄνδρες Λακεδαιμόνιοι, τί
 δὴ φεύγετε βασιλεί φῖλοι γενέσθαι; ὁράτε γὰρ ὡς

the Spartans when they sacrificed to obtain favourable omens. This was the case with them for a long time; and as the Lacedemonians were grieved and regarded it as a great misfortune, and general assemblies were repeatedly gathered together and proclamation made, asking if any one of the Lacedemonians was willing to die for Sparta, at length Sperthias the son of Aneristos and Bulis the son of Nicolaos, Spartans of noble birth and in wealth attaining to the first rank, voluntarily submitted to pay the penalty to Xerxes for the heralds of Dareios which had perished at Sparta. Thus the Spartans sent these to the Medes to be put to death.

7.135

And not only the courage then shown by these men is worthy of admiration, but also the following sayings in addition: for as they were on their way to Susa they came to Hydarnes (now Hydarnes was a Persian by race and commander of those who dwelt on the sea coasts of Asia), and he offered them hospitality and entertained them; and while they were his guests he asked them as follows: "Lacedemonians, why is it that ye flee from becoming friends to the king?

*vocabulary***ἄπειρος** untested; infinite**ἀποβλέπω** stare at, adore**γλυκύς** sweet, pleasant ~glycerine**δοξόω** (mp) have the character of**δορυφόρος** spear-bearing**ἐλευθερία** freedom**ἐνθεῦτεν** thence**ἐξεπίσταμαι** know well**οὐδαμός** not anyone**οὐκω** no longer**ὄψις** ὄψεως (f) sight, view

~thanatopsis

πέλεκυς ax (for war or woodcutting)**προσκυνέω** kow tow to; kiss**προσπίπτω** attack; befall; kow-tow**σοῦσον** lily**συμβουλευώ** give advice; (mid) consult

~volunteer

συμβουλίη advice; consultation**τείνω** stretch, tend ~tense**ὑποκρίνομαι** (i) answer; pretend**ώθέω** push

ἐπίσταται βασιλεὺς ἄνδρας ἀγαθοὺς τιμᾶν, ἐς ἐμέ τε καὶ τὰ ἐμὰ πρήγματα ἀποβλέποντες. οὕτω δὲ καὶ ὑμεῖς εἰ δοίητε ὑμέας αὐτοὺς βασιλεί, δεδόξωσθε γὰρ πρὸς αὐτοῦ ἄνδρες εἶναι ἀγαθοί, ἕκαστος ἂν ὑμέων ἄρχοι γῆς Ἑλλάδος δόντος βασιλέος.» πρὸς ταῦτα ὑπεκρίναντο τάδε. «Ὑδαρνες, οὐκ ἐξ ἴσου γίνεται ἡ συμβουλίη ἢ ἐς ἡμέας τείνουσα. τοῦ μὲν γὰρ πεπειρημένος συμβουλευείς, τοῦ δὲ ἄπειρος ἐών· τὸ μὲν γὰρ δοῦλος εἶναι ἐξεπίστεται, ἐλευθερίας δὲ οὐκω ἐπειρήθης, οὔτ' εἰ ἔστι γλυκὺ οὔτ' εἰ μῆ. εἰ γὰρ αὐτῆς πειρήσαιο, οὐκ ἂν δόρασι συμβουλευοῖς ἡμῶν περὶ αὐτῆς μάχεσθαι, ἀλλὰ καὶ πελέκεσι.»

7.136

ταῦτα μὲν Ὑδάρνεα ἀμείψαντο. ἐνθεῦτεν δὲ ὥς ἀνέβησαν ἐς Σοῦσα καὶ βασιλεί ἐς ὄψιν ἦλθον, πρῶτα μὲν τῶν δορυφόρων κελευόντων καὶ ἀνάγκην σφι προσφερόντων προσκυνέειν βασιλέα προσπίπτοντας, οὐκ ἔφασαν ὠθεόμενοι ὑπ' αὐτῶν ἐπὶ κεφαλὴν ποιήσειν ταῦτα οὐδαμά· οὔτε γὰρ σφίσι ἐν νόμῳ εἶναι ἄνθρωπον προσκυνέειν οὔτε

ἐπίστ|kow tow to; kiss Ἴνδρας ἀγαθοὺς τιμᾶν, ἐς ἐμέ τε καὶ
 τὰ ἐμὰ πρήγματα |stare at, adore . οὕτω δὲ καὶ ὑμεῖς
 εἰ δοίητε ὑμέας αὐτοὺς βασιλεί, |(mp) have the, ἀρ πρὸς
 αὐτοῦ ἄνδρες εἶναι ἀγαθοί, ἕκαστος ἂν ὑμέων ἄρχοι γῆς
 Ἑλλάδος δόντος βασιλέος.» πρὸς ταῦτα |answer;
 |pretend
 τάδε. «Ὑδαρνες, οὐκ ἐξ ἴσου γίνεται ἡ |advice; consultation
 ἡμέας |stretch, tend. οὐ μὲν γὰρ πεπειρημένους |give advice;,
 |(mid) consult
 τοῦ δὲ |untested; ἐών· τὸ μὲν γὰρ δοῦλος εἶναι ἐξεπίστεται,
 |infinite
 ἐλευθερίας δὲ |no longer ἱρήθης, οὐτ' εἰ ἔστι |sweet, οὐτ' εἰ
 |pleasant
 μή. εἰ γὰρ αὐτῆς πειρήσαιο, οὐκ ἂν δόρασι |give advice;
 |(mid) consult
 ἡμῖν περὶ αὐτῆς μάχεσθαι, ἀλλὰ καὶ |ax .»

7.136

ταῦτα μὲν Ὑδάρνεα ἀμείψαντο. δὲ ὡς
 ἀνέβησαν ἐς καὶ βασιλεί ἐς |thence
 μὲν τῶν |lily κελυόντων |sight καὶ ἀνάγκην σφι
 προσφερόντων |spear-bearing βασιλέα, οὐκ
 ἔφασαν |kow tow to; kiss ὑπ' αὐτῶν ἐπὶ |attack; befall;
 |kow-tow
 ταῦτα οὐδαμὰ |push οὔτε γὰρ σφίσι ἐν νόμῳ εἶναι ἄνθρωπον
 οὔτε

for ye may see that the king knows how to honour good men, when ye look at me and at my fortunes. So also ye, Lacedemonians, if ye gave yourselves to the king, since ye have the reputation with him already of being good men, would have rule each one of you over Hellenic land by the gift of the king.” To this they made answer thus: “Hydarnes, thy counsel with regard to us is not equally balanced, for thou givest counsel having made trial indeed of the one thing, but being without experience of the other: thou knowest well what it is to be a slave, but thou hast never yet made trial of freedom, whether it is pleasant to the taste or no; for if thou shouldest make trial of it, thou wouldest then counsel us to fight for it not with spears only but also with axes.”

7.136

Thus they answered Hydarnes; and then, after they had gone up to Susa and had come into the presence of the king, first when the spearmen of the guard commanded them and endeavoured to compel them by force to do obeisance to the king by falling down before him, they said that they would not do any such deed, though they should be pushed down by them head foremost; for it was not their custom to do obeisance to a man, and it was not for

*vocabulary***ἀπομάχομαι** fight off**ἀπονοστέω** go home**ἐπεγείρω** wake up**ἐπιπλήσσω** attack, chide ~plectrum**καίπερ** even if**κατασκήπτω** fall upon**μετέπειτα** afterward, next**μῆνις** -ος (f) rage**νόμιμος** customary, legal, natural**παραυτίκα** immediately**ποινή** blood-price ~penalty**συγχέω** entangle, destroy, confound**τίνω** (i) pay, atone for; (mp) punish**τίω** value, honor; mp: exact

recompense for

τοιόσδε such

κατὰ ταῦτα ἤκειν. ὥς δὲ ἀπεμαχέσαντο τοῦτο, δεύτερά σφι λέγουσι τάδε καὶ λόγου τοιοῦδε ἐχόμενα «ὦ βασιλεῦ Μήδων, ἔπεμψαν ἡμέας Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἀντὶ τῶν ἐν Σπάρτῃ ἀπολομένων κηρύκων ποινὴν ἐκείνων τίσοντας,» λέγουσι δὲ αὐτοῖσι ταῦτα Ξέρξης ὑπὸ μεγαλοφροσύνης οὐκ ἔφη ὅμοιος ἔσεσθαι Λακεδαιμονίοισι· κείνους μὲν γὰρ συγχέαι τὰ πάντων ἀνθρώπων νόμιμα ἀποκτείναντας κήρυκας, αὐτὸς δὲ τὰ ἐκείνοισι ἐπιπλήσσει ταῦτα οὐ ποιήσῃν, οὐδὲ ἀνταποκτείνας ἐκείνους ἀπολύσειν Λακεδαιμονίους τῆς αἰτίας.

7.137

οὕτω ἡ Ταλθυβίου μῆνις καὶ ταῦτα ποιησάντων Σπαρτιητέων ἐπαύσατο τὸ παραυτίκα, καίπερ ἀπονοστησάντων ἐς Σπάρτην Σπερθιέω τε καὶ Βούλιος. χρόνῳ δὲ μετέπειτα πολλῶ ἐπηγέρθη κατὰ τὸν Πελοποννησίων καὶ Ἀθηναίων πόλεμον, ὥς λέγουσι Λακεδαιμόνιοι. τοῦτο μοι ἐν τοῖσι θεióτατον φαίνεται γενέσθαι. ὅτι μὲν γὰρ κατέσκηψε ἐς ἀγγέλους ἡ Ταλθυβίου

κατὰ ταῦτα ἤκειν. ὥς δὲ |fight off τοῦτο, δεύτερά
 σφι λέγουσι τάδε καὶ λόγου |such ἐχόμενα «ὦ βασιλεῦ
 Μήδων, ἔπεμψαν ἡμέας Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἀντὶ τῶν ἐν
 Σπάρτῃ ἀπολομένων κηρύκων |blood-price εἰνων τίσοντας,»
 λέγουσι δὲ αὐτοῖσι ταῦτα Ξέρξης ὑπὸ μεγαλοφροσύνης
 οὐκ ἔφη ὅμοιος ἔσεσθαι Λακεδαιμονίοισι· κείνους μὲν γὰρ
 |entangle, . . . |de-άντων ἀνθρώπων νόμιμα ἀποκτείναντας
 |stroy, confound
 κήρυκας, αὐτὸς δὲ τὰ ἐκείνοισι |attack, chide ταῦτα
 οὐ ποιήσῃν, οὐδὲ ἀνταποκτείνας ἐκείνους ἀπολύσειν
 Λακεδαιμονίους τῆς αἰτίας.

7.137

οὕτω ἡ Ταλθυβίου |rage καὶ ταῦτα ποιησάντων
 Σπαρτιητέων ἐπαύσατο τὸ |immediately , |even if
 |go home ἐς Σπάρτην Σπερθιέω τε καὶ
 Βούλιος. χρόνῳ δὲ |afterward, next ἁλῶ |wake up κατὰ
 τὸν Πελοποννησίων καὶ Ἀθηναίων πόλεμον, ὥς λέγουσι
 Λακεδαιμόνιοι. τοῦτο μοι ἐν τοῖσι θειότατον φαίνεται
 γενέσθαι. ὅτι μὲν γὰρ |fall upon ἐς ἀγγέλους ἡ Ταλθυβίου

this that they had come. Then when they had resisted this, next they spoke these words or words to this effect: “O king of the Medes, the Lacedemonians sent us in place of the heralds who were slain in Sparta, to pay the penalty for their lives.” When they said this, Xerxes moved by a spirit of magnanimity replied that he would not be like the Lacedemonians; for they had violated the rules which prevailed among all men by slaying heralds, but he would not do that himself which he blamed them for having done, nor would he free the Lacedemonians from their guilt by slaying these in return.

7.137

Thus the wrath of Talthybios ceased for the time being, even though the Spartans had done no more than this and although Sperthias and Bulis returned back to Sparta; but a long time after this it was roused again during the war between the Peloponnesians and Athenians, as the Lacedemonians report. This I perceive to have been most evidently the act of the Deity: for in that the wrath of

*vocabulary***ἀπάγω** lead away, back ~demagogue**ἐπάνειμι** return**εὖς** good, brave, noble**ἡλόω** sharpen**καθαπλόω** spread over**καθίημι** (τι) speed down upon; take down ~jet**καταπλώω** land**μῆνις** -ος (f) rage**ὀλκᾶς** -δος (f, 3) towed merchant ship**ὄον** οὗ type of fruit**πλήρης** full, complete; (+gen) full of ~plethora**προδίδωμι** betray**στρατηλασίη** expedition, campaign**συμπίτνω** fall together, happen

μῆνις οὐδὲ ἐπαύσατο πρὶν ἢ ἐξῆλθε, τὸ δίκαιον οὕτω ἔφερε· τὸ δὲ συμπεσεῖν ἐς τοὺς παῖδας τῶν ἀνδρῶν τούτων τῶν ἀναβάντων πρὸς βασιλέα διὰ τὴν μῆνιν, ἐς Νικόλαν τε τὸν Βούλιος καὶ ἐς Ἀνήριστον τὸν Σπερθίεω, ὃς εἶλε Ἀλίας τοὺς ἐκ Τίρυνθος ὀλκάδι καταπλώσας πλήρεϊ ἀνδρῶν, δῆλον ὦν μοι ὅτι θεῖον ἐγένετο τὸ πρῆγμα ἐκ τῆς μῆνιος· οἱ γὰρ πεμφθέντες ὑπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων ἄγγελοι ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην, προδοθέντες δὲ ὑπὸ Σιτάλκεω τοῦ Τήρεω Θρηίκων βασιλέος καὶ Νυμφοδώρου τοῦ Πύθew ἀνδρὸς Ἀβδηρίτεω, ἤλωσαν κατὰ Βισάνθην τὴν ἐν Ἑλλησπόντῳ, καὶ ἀπαχθέντες ἐς τὴν Ἀττικὴν ἀπέθανον ὑπὸ Ἀθηναίων, μετὰ δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ Ἀριστέας ὁ Ἀδειμάντου Κορίνθιος ἀνὴρ. ταῦτα μὲν νυν πολλοῖσι ἔτεσι ὕστερον ἐγένετο τοῦ βασιλέος στόλου, ἐπάνειμι δὲ ἐπὶ τὸν πρότερον λόγον.

7.138

ἡ δὲ στρατηλασίῃ ἡ βασιλέος οὖνομα μὲν εἶχε ὥς ἐπ' Ἀθήνας ἐλαύνει, κατίετο δὲ ἐς πᾶσαν τὴν Ἑλλάδα.

|rage οὐδὲ ἐπαύσατο πρὶν ἢ ἐξῆλθε, τὸ δίκαιον οὕτως
 ἔφερε· τὸ δὲ |fall together, 's τὸς παῖδας τῶν ἀνδρῶν τούτων
 |happen
 τῶν ἀναβάντων πρὸς βασιλέα διὰ τὴν |rage , ἐς Νικόλαν
 τε τὸν Βούλιος καὶ ἐς Ἀνήριστον τὸν Σπερθίεω, ὃς εἶλε
 Ἀλίας τοὺς ἐκ Τίρυνθος |towed :αταπλώσας |full, complete;
 |merchant |(+gen) full of
 ἀνδρῶν, δῆλον ὦν μοι ὅτι θείον ἐγένετο τὸ πρῆγμα ἐκ τῆς
 |rage οἱ γὰρ πεμφθέντες ὑπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων ἄγγελοι
 ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην, |betray δὲ ὑπὸ Σιτάλκεω τοῦ Τήρεω
 Θρηίκων βασιλέος καὶ Νυμφοδώρου τοῦ Πύθεω ἀνδρὸς
 Ἀβδηρίτεω, |sharpen κατὰ Βισάνθην τὴν ἐν Ἑλλησπόντῳ,
 καὶ |lead away, back τὴν Ἀττικὴν ἀπέθανον ὑπὸ Ἀθηναίων,
 μετὰ δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ Ἀριστέας ὁ Ἀδεϊμάντου Κορίνθιος
 ἀνὴρ. ταῦτα μὲν νυν πολλοῖσι ἔτεσι ὕστερον ἐγένετο τοῦ
 βασιλέος στόλου, |return δὲ ἐπὶ τὸν πρότερον λόγον.

7.138

ἡ δὲ |expedition, ἡ βασιλέος οὐνομα μὲν εἶχε ὥς ἐπ'
 |campaign
 Ἀθήνας ἐλαύνει, |speed down upon; ἴσαν τὴν Ἑλλάδα.
 |take down

Talthybios fell upon messengers and did not cease until it had been fully satisfied, so much was but in accordance with justice; but that it happened to come upon the sons of these men who went up to the king on account of the wrath, namely upon Nicolaos the son of Bulis and Aneristos the son of Sperthias (the same who conquered the men of Halieis, who came from Tiryns, by sailing into their harbour with a merchant ship filled with fighting men), — by this it is evident to me that the matter came to pass by the act of the Deity caused by this wrath. For these men, sent by the Lacedemonians as envoys to Asia, having been betrayed by Sitalkes the son of Teres king of the Thracians and by Nymphodoros the son of Pythes a man of Abdera, were captured at Bisanthe on the Hellespont; and then having been carried away to Attica they were put to death by the Athenians, and with them also Aristeas the son of Adeimantos the Corinthian. These things happened many years after the expedition of the king; and I return now to the former narrative.

7.138

Now the march of the king's army was in name against Athens, but in fact it was going against all Hellas:

vocabulary

ἀντάπτομαι grapple, seize
ἀντιόω meet, fight, join
ἀξιόμαχος well matched for war
ἀποδείκνυμι (ὁ) show, point out;
 appoint; (mid) declare
ἀποδέχομαι accept ~doctrine
ἀριθμός number
ἄτε as if; since
ἄχαρις -δος (f) ungracious
δεῖμα -τος (n, 3) fear
ἐκλείπω leave out, pass over
Ἑλλην Greek

ἐνθαῦτα there, here
ἐξέργω shut out; prevent; force to
ἐπέχω hold, cover; offer; assail
ἐπίφθονος jealous
ἥπειρος (f) mainland, continent
θάρσος boldness, over-boldness
καταρρωδέω fear, dread
οὐδαμὸς not anyone
Πέρσης Persian
πρόθυμος (ὁ) willing, eager ~fume
σφέτερος their
τοιόσδε such

πνυθανόμενοι δὲ ταῦτα πρὸ πολλοῦ οἱ Ἕλληνες οὐκ ἐν
 ὁμοίῳ πάντες ἐποιεύντο. οἱ μὲν γὰρ αὐτῶν δόντες γῆν
 καὶ ὕδωρ τῷ Πέρσῃ εἶχον θάρσος ὥς οὐδὲν πεισόμενοι
 ἄχαρι πρὸς τοῦ βαρβάρου· οἱ δὲ οὐ δόντες ἐν δείματι
 μεγάλῳ κατέστασαν, ἅτε οὔτε νεῶν ἐουσέων ἐν τῇ
 Ἑλλάδι ἀριθμὸν ἀξιομάχων δέκεσθαι τὸν ἐπιόντα, οὔτε
 βουλομένων τῶν πολλῶν ἀντάπτεσθαι τοῦ πολέμου,
 μηδιζόντων δὲ προθύμως.

7.139

ἐνθαῦτα ἀναγκαίῃ ἐξέργομαι γνώμην ἀποδέξασθαι
 ἐπίφθονον μὲν πρὸς τῶν πλεόνων ἀνθρώπων, ὅμως δὲ τῇ
 γέ μοι φαίνεται εἶναι ἀληθὲς οὐκ ἐπισχήσω. εἰ Ἀθηναῖοι
 καταρρωδήσαντες τὸν ἐπιόντα κίνδυνον ἐξέλιπον τὴν
 σφετέρην, ἣ καὶ μὴ ἐκλιπόντες ἀλλὰ μέιναντες ἔδοσαν
 σφέας αὐτοὺς Ξέρξῃ, κατὰ τὴν θάλασσαν οὐδαμοὶ ἂν
 ἐπειρῶντο ἀντιούμενοι βασιλεί. εἰ τοίνυν κατὰ τὴν
 θάλασσαν μηδεὶς ἡντιοῦτο Ξέρξῃ, κατὰ γε ἂν τὴν ἡπειρον
 τοιάδε ἐγίνετο· εἰ καὶ πολλοὶ τειχέων κιθῶνες ἦσαν

πυνθανόμενοι δὲ ταῦτα πρὸ πολλοῦ οἱ |Greek οὐκ ἐν
 ὁμοίῳ πάντες ἐποιεῦντο. οἱ μὲν γὰρ αὐτῶν δόντες γῆν
 καὶ ὕδωρ τῷ Πέρσῃ εἶχον |boldness ὥς οὐδὲν πεισόμενοι
 |ungracious ἰς τοῦ βαρβάρου· οἱ δὲ οὐ δόντες ἐν |fear
 μεγάλῳ κατέστασαν, |as if; since νεῶν ἐουσέων ἐν τῇ
 Ἑλλάδι |number |well matched for war ἢ τὸν ἐπιόντα, οὔτε
 βουλομένων τῶν πολλῶν ἀντάπτεσθαι τοῦ πολέμου,
 μηδιζόντων δὲ |willing,
 |eager

7.139

|there, here ἀναγκαίῃ |shut out; pre- /νώμην ἀποδέξασθαι
 |jealous μὲν πρὸς τῶν πλεόνων ἀνθρώπων, ὅμως δὲ τῇ
 γέ μοι φαίνεται εἶναι ἀληθὲς οὐκ |hold, cover; εἰ Ἀθηναῖοι
 |offer; assail
 |fear, dread τὸν ἐπιόντα κίνδυνον |leave out, pass over
 |their , ἣ καὶ μὴ |leave out, pass over μείναντες ἔδοσαν
 σφέας αὐτοὺς Ξέρξῃ, κατὰ τὴν θάλασσαν |not anyone
 ἐπειρῶντο |meet, fight, βασιλεί. εἰ τοίνυν κατὰ τὴν
 |join
 θάλασσαν μηδεὶς |meet, Ξέρξῃ, κατὰ γε ἂν τὴν |mainland,
 |fight, join |continent
 |such ἐγίνετο· εἰ καὶ πολλοὶ τειχέων κιθῶνες ἦσαν

and the Hellenes being informed of this long before were not all equally affected by it; for some of them having given earth and water to the Persian had confidence, supposing that they would suffer no hurt from the Barbarian; while others not having given were in great terror, seeing that there were not ships existing in Hellas which were capable as regards number of receiving the invader in fight, and seeing that the greater part of the States were not willing to take up the war, but adopted readily the side of the Medes.

7.139

And here I am compelled by necessity to declare an opinion which in the eyes of most men would seem to be invidious, but nevertheless I will not abstain from saying that which I see evidently to be the truth. If the Athenians had been seized with fear of the danger which threatened them and had left their land, or again, without leaving their land, had stayed and given themselves up to Xerxes, none would have made any attempt by sea to oppose the king. If then none had opposed Xerxes by sea, it would have happened on the land somewhat thus: — even if many tunics of walls had been thrown across the Isthmus by

*vocabulary***ἄλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix**ἀναγκαίη** of necessity, by force**ἀναγκαῖος** coerced, coercing, slavery**ἄνωθέω** put out to sea**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ὅ) show, point out;

appoint; (mid) declare

ἀποδέχομαι accept ~doctrine**γενναῖος** noble, sincere ~genesis**ἐκὼν** willingly, on purpose; giving in
too easily**ἐλεύθερος** not enslaved**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἐπεγείρω** wake up**ἐπικρατέω** rule over**ὁμολογίη** agreement, consent**ὁπότερος** which of two, either of two**περίειμι** be superior to; be left over;
still exist**Πέρσης** Persian**προδίδωμι** betray**ῥέπω** incline or sink downwards**στρατός** common people/soldiers
~strategy**στρατώω** be on a campaign ~strategy**σωτήρ** -ος (m) savior**φοβερός** frightful, afraid **χρηστήριον** oracle, response**ὠφέλεια** -ίας profit

ἐληλαμένοι διὰ τοῦ Ἴσθμοῦ Πελοποννησίοισι, προδοθέντες
 ἂν Λακεδαιμόνιοι ὑπὸ τῶν συμμάχων οὐκ ἐκόντων ἀλλ'
 ὑπ' ἀναγκαίης, κατὰ πόλιν ἀλικομένων ὑπὸ τοῦ ναυτικοῦ
 στρατοῦ τοῦ βαρβάρου, ἐμουνώθησαν, μουνωθέντες δὲ
 ἂν καὶ ἀποδεξάμενοι ἔργα μεγάλα ἀπέθανον γενναίως.
 ἢ ταῦτα ἂν ἔπαθον, ἢ πρὸ τοῦ ὀρώντες ἂν καὶ τοὺς
 ἄλλους Ἑλλήνας μηδίζοντας ὁμολογίῃ ἂν ἐχρήσαντο
 πρὸς Ξέρξην. καὶ οὕτω ἂν ἐπ' ἀμφοτέρα ἢ Ἑλλὰς ἐγίνετο
 ὑπὸ Πέρσῃσι. τὴν γὰρ ὠφελίην τὴν τῶν τειχέων τῶν
 διὰ τοῦ Ἴσθμοῦ ἐληλαμένων οὐ δύναμαι πυθέσθαι ἥτις
 ἂν ἦν, βασιλέος ἐπικρατέοντος τῆς θαλάσσης. νῦν δὲ
 Ἀθηναίους ἂν τις λέγων σωτήρας γενέσθαι τῆς Ἑλλάδος
 οὐκ ἂν ἀμαρτάνοι τὸ ἀληθές. οὗτοι γὰρ ἐπὶ ὁκότερα τῶν
 πρηγμάτων ἐτράποντο, ταῦτα ῥέψειν ἔμελλε· ἐλόμενοι
 δὲ τὴν Ἑλλάδα περιεῖναι ἐλευθέρην, τοῦτο τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν
 πᾶν τὸ λοιπόν, ὅσον μὴ ἐμήδισε, αὐτοὶ οὗτοι ἦσαν οἱ
 ἐπεγείραντες καὶ βασιλέα μετὰ γε θεοὺς ἀνωσάμενοι. οὐδὲ
 σφέας χρηστήρια φοβερὰ ἐλθόντα ἐκ Δελφῶν καὶ

ἐληλαμένοι διὰ τοῦ Ἰσθμοῦ Πελοποννησίοις, |betray
 ἂν Λακεδαιμόνιοι ὑπὸ τῶν συμμάχων οὐκ |willingly ἀλλ'
 ὑπ' ἀναγκαίης, κατὰ πόλιν |be captured ὑπὸ τοῦ ναυτικοῦ
 στρατοῦ τοῦ βαρβάρου, ἐμουνώθησαν, μουνωθέντες δὲ
 ἂν καὶ ἀποδεξάμενοι ἔργα μεγάλα ἀπέθανον |noble,
 ἡ ταῦτα ἂν ἔπαθον, ἡ πρὸ τοῦ ὀρώντες ἂν καὶ τοὺς
 ἄλλους |Greek μηδίζοντας |agreement, ἂν ἐχρήσαντο
 |consent πρὸς Ξέρξην. καὶ οὕτω ἂν ἐπ' ἀμφοτέρα ἡ Ἑλλὰς ἐγίνετο
 ὑπὸ Πέρσῃσι. τὴν γὰρ |profit τὴν τῶν τειχέων τῶν
 διὰ τοῦ Ἰσθμοῦ ἐληλαμένων οὐ δύναμαι πυθέσθαι ἥτις
 ἂν ἦν, βασιλέος |rule over τῆς θαλάσσης. νῦν δὲ
 Ἀθηναίους ἂν τις λέγων |savior γενέσθαι τῆς Ἑλλάδος
 οὐκ ἂν ἀμαρτάνοι τὸ ἀληθές. οὗτοι γὰρ ἐπὶ |which of two, '
 |either of two πρηγμάτων ἐτράποντο, ταῦτα |incline or sink
 |downwards ἐλόμενοι δὲ τὴν Ἑλλάδα |be superior|not enslaved
 |to; be left πᾶν τὸ λοιπόν, |over; still ἂν μὴ ἐμήδισε, αὐτοὶ οὗτοι ἦσαν οἱ
 |exist |wake up καὶ βασιλέα μετὰ γε θεοὺς ἀνωσάμενοι. οὐδὲ
 σφέας |oracle, |frightful, ἐλθόντα ἐκ Δελφῶν καὶ
 |response |afraid

the Peloponnesians, the Lacedemonians would have been deserted by their allies, not voluntarily but of necessity, since these would have been conquered city after city by the naval force of the Barbarian, and so they would have been left alone: and having been left alone and having displayed great deeds of valour, they would have met their death nobly. Either they would have suffered this fate, or before this, seeing the other Hellenes also taking the side of the Medes, they would have made an agreement with Xerxes; and thus in either case Hellas would have come to be under the rule of the Persians: for as to the good to be got from the walls thrown across the Isthmus, I am unable to discover what it would have been, when the king had command of the sea. As it is however, if a man should say that the Athenians proved to be the saviours of Hellas, he would not fail to hit the truth; for to whichever side these turned, to that the balance was likely to incline: and these were they who, preferring that Hellas should continue to exist in freedom, roused up all of Hellas which remained, so much, that is, as had not gone over to the Medes, and (after the gods at least) these were they who repelled the king. Nor did fearful oracles, which came

*vocabulary***ἄκρα** at the edge, extreme ~acute**ἄκρη** at the edge, extreme**ἄκρις** -ός (f) hilltop ~acute**ἄκρον** crest, extremity ~acute**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**δεῖμα** -τος (n, 3) fear**δέμω** build ~domicile**ἐκλείπω** leave out, pass over**ἐμπεδος** solid, constant, (pl) one after another ~pedal**ἐρείπω** pull down; fall ~reap**ἐσχατάω** be at the edge**ἐσχατος** farthest, last**ἐτοῖμος** ready; fulfilled**εὖς** good, brave, noble**θεοπρόπος** seer ~theology**ἰδρώς** sweat ~exude**ἵζω** to seat ~sit**κάρηνον** head, top, mountaintop, citadel ~cranium**καταμένω** stay; not change**μαλερός** raging, devouring**μέλεος** vain, idle, useless**μῖν** him, her, it**νέατος** lowest, outermost**νηός** temple, shrine**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**πάλλω** shake, brandish ~Pallas**τροχοειδής** round, circular**χρηστηριάζω** prophesy

ἐς δεῖμα βαλόντα ἔπεισε ἐκλιπεῖν τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ἀλλὰ καταμείναντες ἀνέσχοντο τὸν ἐπιόντα ἐπὶ τὴν χώραν δέξασθαι.

7.140

πέμψαντες γὰρ οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἐς Δελφοὺς θεοπρόπους χρηστηριάζεσθαι ἦσαν ἔτοιμοι· καί σφι ποιήσασι περὶ τὸ ἱρὸν τὰ νομιζόμενα, ὥς ἐς τὸ μέγαρον ἐσελθόντες ἴζοντο, χρᾶ ἢ Πυθίῃ, τῇ οὖνομα ἦν Ἀριστονίκη, τάδε.

ὦ μέλεοι, τί κάθησθε; λιπὼν φεῦγ' ἔσχατα γαίης δώματα καὶ πόλιος τροχοειδέος ἄκρα κάρηνα. οὔτε γὰρ ἡ κεφαλὴ μένει ἔμπεδον οὔτε τὸ σῶμα, οὔτε πόδες νέατοι οὔτ' ὦν χέρες, οὔτε τι μέσσης λείπεται, ἀλλ' ἄζηλα πέλει· κατὰ γάρ μιν ἐρείπει πῦρ τε καὶ ὄξυς Ἄρης, Συριηγενὲς ἄρμα διώκων.

πολλὰ δὲ κᾶλλ' ἀπολεῖ πυργώματα κου' τὸ σὸν οἶον, πολλοὺς δ' ἀθανάτων νηοὺς μαλερῶ πυρὶ δώσει, οἳ που νῦν ἰδρῶτι ρεοῦμενοι ἐστήκασι, δείματι παλλόμενοι, κατὰ

ἐς δειµα βαλόντα ἔπεισε |leave out, pass over ἰάδα, ἀλλὰ
|stay; not change ἀνέσχοντο τὸν ἐπίοντα ἐπὶ τὴν χώραν
δέξασθαι.

7.140

πέµψαντες γὰρ οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἐς Δελφοὺς |seer
|prophecy ἦσαν ἔτοιμοι· καί σφι ποιήσασι περὶ τὸ
ἱρὸν τὰ νομιζόμενα, ὥς ἐς τὸ μέγαρον ἐσελθόντες |to seat ,
χρᾶ ἡ Πυθίῃ, τῇ οὖνομα ἦν Ἀριστονίκη, τάδε.

ὦ |vain, idle. ἰ κάθησθε; λιπὼν φεῦγ' ἔσχατα γαίης δώματα
καὶ πόλιος |round, ἄκρα |head, top οὔτε γὰρ ἡ κεφαλὴ
|circular
μένει |solid, οὔτε τὸ σῶμα, οὔτε πόδες |lowest, ὅτ' ὦν
|constant |outermost
χέρες, οὔτε τι μέσσης λείπεται, ἀλλ' ἄζηλα πέλει· κατὰ
γάρ μιν |pull down; fall. ἰ καὶ ὄξυς Ἄρης, Συριηγενὲς |chariot
διώκων.

πολλὰ δὲ κάλλ' ἀπολεῖ πυργώματα κου' τὸ σὸν οἶον,
πολλοὺς δ' ἀθανάτων |temple |raging, ὑπὲρ δώσει, οἳ που
|devouring
νῦν |sweat ῥεοῦµενοι ἐστήκασι, |fear |shake, , κατὰ
|brandish

from Delphi and cast them into dread, induce them to leave Hellas, but they stayed behind and endured to receive the invader of their land.

7.140

For the Athenians had sent men to Delphi to inquire and were preparing to consult the Oracle; and after these had performed the usual rites in the sacred precincts, when they had entered the sanctuary and were sitting down there, the Pythian prophetess, whose name was Aristonike, uttered to them this oracle:

“Why do ye sit, O ye wretched? Flee thou to the uttermost limits, Leaving thy home and the heights of the wheel-round city behind thee! Lo, there remaineth now nor the head nor the body in safety,— Neither the feet below nor the hands nor the middle are left thee,— All are destroyed together; for fire and the passionate War-god, Urging the Syrian car to speed, doth hurl them to ruin. Not thine alone, he shall cause many more great strongholds to perish, Yes, many temples of gods to the ravening fire shall deliver,— Temples which stand now surely with sweat of their terror down-streaming, Quaking with dread; and

*vocabulary***ἄδυτον** inner sanctum**αἰδέομαι** respect, be ashamed**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme ~acute**δόκιμος** trustworthy; excellent**ἐξιλάσκομαι** propitiate, atone**ἐπικίδνημι** spread over**θεοπρόπος** seer ~theology**ἱκετήριος** of a supplication**ἱκέτης** -ου (m, 1) suppliant, refugee**κακότης** -τος (f, 3) badness

~cacophony

λίσσομαι beg, beseech ~litany**ὄροφος** thatching**προβάλλω** throw before; propose;

(mp) pretend, abandon, nominate

~ballistic

πρόμαντις prophet**πρόοιδα** foresee**συμβουλευώ** give advice; (mid) consult

~volunteer

συμφορά collecting; accident,

misfortune

χρηστήριον oracle, response

δ' ἀκροτάτοις ὁρόφοισι αἷμα μέλαν κέχνται, προΐδὸν
κακότητος ἀνάγκας. ἀλλ' ἔτον ἐξ ἀδύτοιο, κακοῖς δ'
ἐπικίδνατε θυμόν.

7.141

ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες οἱ τῶν Ἀθηναίων θεοπρόποι συμφορῇ
τῇ μεγίστῃ ἐχρέωντο. προβάλλουσι δὲ σφέας αὐτοὺς ὑπὸ
τοῦ κακοῦ τοῦ κεχρησμένου, Τίμων ὁ Ἀνδροβούλου, τῶν
Δελφῶν ἀνὴρ δόκιμος ὅμοια τῷ μάλιστα, συνεβούλευέ
σφι ἱκετηρίην λαβοῦσι δεύτερα αὐτὶς ἐλθόντας χρᾶσθαι
τῷ χρηστηρίῳ ὥς ἱκέτας. πειθομένοισι δὲ ταῦτα τοῖσι
Ἀθηναίοισι καὶ λέγουσι «ὦναξ, χρῆσον ἡμῖν ἄμεινόν τι
περὶ τῆς πατρίδος, αἰδεσθεὶς τὰς ἱκετηρίας τάσδε τάς τοι
ἤκομεν φέροντες, ἢ οὐ τοι ἄπιμεν ἐκ τοῦ ἀδύτου, ἀλλ'
αὐτοῦ τῇδε μενέομεν ἔστ' ἂν καὶ τελευτήσωμεν,» ταῦτα
δὲ λέγουσι ἢ πρόμαντις χρᾶ δεύτερα τάδε.

οὐ δύναται Παλλὰς Δι' Ὀλύμπιον ἐξιλάσασθαι λισσομένη
πολλοῖσι λόγοις καὶ μήτιδι πυκνῇ. σοὶ δὲ τόδ' αὐτὶς ἔπος

δ' |at the edge, ex-|thatching αἶμα μέλαν κέχυται, |foresee
|treme
|badness ἀνάγκας. ἀλλ' ἔτον ἐξ |inner , κακοῖς δ'
|sanctum
|spread over θυμόν.

7.141

ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες οἱ τῶν Ἀθηναίων |seer συμφορῇ
τῇ μεγίστῃ ἐχρέωντο. |throw before; propose; (mp) 'τοὺς ὑπὸ
|pretend, abandon, nominate
τοῦ κακοῦ τοῦ κεχρησμένου, Τίμων ὁ Ἀνδροβούλου, τῶν
Δελφῶν ἀνὴρ |trustworthy;...ια τῷ μάλιστα, |give advice;
|excellent (mid) consult
σφι ἱκετηρίην λαβοῦσι δεύτερα αὐτὶς ἐλθόντας χρᾶσθαι
τῷ |oracle, ὥς |suppliant, τειθομένοισι δὲ ταῦτα τοῖσι
|response |refugee
Ἀθηναίοισι καὶ λέγουσι «ᾧναξ, χρῆσον ἡμῖν ἄμεινόν τι
περὶ τῆς πατρίδος, |respect, be ashamed. ἡρίας τάσδε τάς τοι
ἤκομεν φέροντες, ἣ οὐ τοι ἄπιμεν ἐκ τοῦ |inner , ἀλλ'
|sanctum
αὐτοῦ τῇδε μενέομεν ἔστ' ἂν καὶ τελευτήσωμεν,» ταῦτα
δὲ λέγουσι ἢ |prophet χρᾶ δεύτερα τάδε.

οὐ δύναται Παλλὰς Δι' Ὀλύμπιον |propitiate, |beg
|atone
πολλοῖσι λόγοις καὶ μήτιδι πυκνῇ. σοὶ δὲ τόδ' αὐτὶς ἔπος

lo! from the topmost roof to the pavement Dark blood trickles, forecasting the dire unavoidable evil. Forth with you, forth from the shrine, and steep your soul in the sorrow!"

7.141

Hearing this the men who had been sent by the Athenians to consult the Oracle were very greatly distressed; and as they were despairing by reason of the evil which had been prophesied to them, Timon the son of Androbulos, a man of the Delphians in reputation equal to the first, counselled them to take a suppliant's bough and to approach the second time and consult the Oracle as suppliants. The Athenians did as he advised and said: "Lord, we pray thee utter to us some better oracle about our native land, having respect to these suppliant boughs which we have come to thee bearing; otherwise surely we will not depart away from the sanctuary, but will remain here where we are now, even until we bring our lives to an end." When they spoke these words, the prophetess gave them a second oracle as follows:

"Pallas cannot prevail to appease great Zeus in Olympos, Though she with words very many and wiles close-woven entreat

vocabulary

ἀκρόπολις -εως (f) citadel, high part of a city ~acute
ἀλίσκομαι be captured ~helix
ἀπαγγέλλω announce, order, promise ~angel
ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be freed, depart
ἀπόρθητος not pillaged
δίζυμαι seek ~zeal
ἐντός within
ἐπιστρέφω turn towards ~atrophy
εὐρύοπα far-sounding
ζάθεος holy
ἡπειρος (f) mainland, continent
ἥπιος kind (adj)
ἥσυχος quiet
θεοπόπος seer ~theology
ἵπποσύνη horsemanship ~hippo
κευθμών -ος (m, 3) innermost part ~cuticle
μαντεῖον prophetic warning ~mantis
μετεξέτεροι (+gen) some ones of
νῶτον back of the body; rear of an

army; top of a box
νῶτος back of the body; rear of an army; top of a box
ξύλινος wooden
ὀνέω help, please, be available
ὄνησις -ος (f) benefit
ὀνίνημι help, please, be available
ὄνομαι blame ~name
πελάζω bring/come to, near, into contact with
περίειμι be superior to; be left over; still exist
πότε when?
σχίδνημι spread something, be spread
στρατός common people/soldiers ~strategy
συγγράφω write down
σύνειμι be with; have sex ~ion
συνίημι send together; hear, notice, understand ~jet
τελέθω turn out, come around ~apostle
ὑποχωρέω recoil ~heir

ἐρέω ἀδάμαντι πελάσσας. τῶν ἄλλων γὰρ ἀλισκομένων
 ὅσα Κέκροπος οὖρος ἐντὸς ἔχει κευθμών τε Κιθαιρῶνος
 ζαθέοιο, τείχος Τριτογενεῖ ξύλινον διδοῖ εὐρύοπα Ζεὺς
 μοῦνον ἀπόρθητον τελέθειν, τὸ σὲ τέκνα τ' ὀνήσει.

μηδὲ σύ γ' ἵπποσύνην τε μένειν καὶ πεζὸν ἰόντα πολλὸν
 ἀπ' ἡπείρου στρατὸν ἥσυχος, ἀλλ' ὑποχωρεῖν νῶτον
 ἐπιστρέψας· ἔτι τοι ποτε κἀντίος ἔσση. ὦ θεῇ Σαλαμῖς,
 ἀπολεῖς δὲ σὺ τέκνα γυναικῶν ἧ που σκιδναμένης
 Δημήτερος ἧ συνιούσης.

7.142

ταῦτα σφι ἡπιώτερα γὰρ τῶν προτέρων καὶ ἦν καὶ ἐδόκεε
 εἶναι, συγγραψάμενοι ἀπαλλάσσοντο ἐς τὰς Ἀθήνας. ὥς
 δὲ ἀπελθόντες οἱ θεοπρόποι ἀπήγγελλον ἐς τὸν δῆμον,
 γινῶμαι καὶ ἄλλαι πολλαὶ γίνονται διζημένων τὸ μαντήιον
 καὶ αἶδε συνεστηκυῖαι μάλιστα. τῶν πρεσβυτέρων ἔλεγον
 μετεξέτεροι δοκέειν σφίσι τὸν θεὸν τὴν ἀκρόπολιν χρῆσαι
 περιέσεσθαι. ἡ γὰρ ἀκρόπολις

ἐρέω ἀδάμαντι |bring/come to, near, ἄλλων γὰρ |be captured
 into contact with
 ὅσα Κέκροπος οὔρος |within ἔχει |innermost part Ἰθαιρώνος
 |holy , τεῖχος Τριτογενεῖ |wooden διδοῖ |far-sounding ὕς
 μούνον |not pillaged |turn out , τὸ σὲ τέκνα τ' ὀνήσει.

μηδὲ σύ γ' |horsemanship : μένειν καὶ πεζὸν ἰόντα πολλὸν
 ἀπ' |mainland, |army |quiet , ἀλλ' |recoil νῶτον
 |continent
 |turn towards ἔτι τοι ποτε κἀντίος ἔσση. ὦ θεῖη Σαλαμῖς,
 ἀπολεῖς δὲ σὺ τέκνα γυναικῶν ἧ που |spread
 Δημήτερος ἧ συνιούσης.

7.142

ταῦτα σφί |kind (adj) γὰρ τῶν προτέρων καὶ ἦν καὶ ἐδόκεε
 εἶναι, |write down |free from, remove; ὁ τὰς Ἀθήνας. ὥς
 |be freed, depart
 δὲ ἀπελθόντες οἱ |seer |announce, or- ἐς τὸν δῆμον,
 |der, promise
 γινώμαι καὶ ἄλλαι πολλαὶ γίνονται |seek τὸ |prophetic
 |warning
 καὶ αἶδε συνεστηκυῖαι μάλιστα. τῶν πρεσβυτέρων ἔλεγον
 |(+gen) some ones of ὅ σφίσι τὸν θεὸν τὴν |citadel χρῆσαι
 |be superior to; ὅ |be left |citadel
 |over; still exist

him. But I will tell thee this more, and will clench it with steel adamantine: Then when all else shall be taken, whatever the boundary of Kecrops Holdeth within, and the dark ravines of divinest Kithairon, A bulwark of wood at the last Zeus grants to the Trito-born goddess Sole to remain unwasted, which thee and thy children shall profit. Stay thou not there for the horsemen to come and the footmen unnumbered; Stay thou not still for the host from the mainland to come, but retire thee, Turning thy back to the foe, for yet thou shalt face him hereafter. Salamis, thou the divine, thou shalt cause sons of women to perish, Or when the grain is scattered or when it is gathered together.”

7.142

This seemed to them to be (as in truth it was) a milder utterance than the former one; therefore they had it written down and departed with it to Athens; and when the messengers after their return made report to the people, many various opinions were expressed by persons inquiring into the meaning of the oracle, and among them these, standing most in opposition to one another:—some of the elder men said they thought that the god had prophesied to them that the Acropolis should

vocabulary

ἐύς good, brave, noble
ἡσάομαι (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat
ναυμαχία naval warfare
ξύλινος wooden
ὄον οὔ type of fruit
πάλαι long ago ~paleo
παλαίω wrestle ~Pallas
πάλη wrestling ~Pallas
πάλλω shake, brandish ~Pallas
παραρτέομαι get something ready
σημαίνω give orders to; show; mark

~semaphore

σπίδνημι spread something, be spread
συγχέω entangle, destroy, confound
συμβάλλω pit against; compare; mp: meet, fall in with ~ballistic
σύνειμι be with; have sex ~ion
συνίημι send together; hear, notice, understand ~jet
σφάλλω overthrow, balk, stagger
τελευταῖος last, final
τοιόσδε such
φράσσω fence in, protect
χρησμολόγος prophesying

τὸ πάλαι τῶν Ἀθηναίων ῥήχῳ ἐπέφρακτο. οἱ μὲν δὴ κατὰ τὸν φραγμὸν συνεβάλλοντο τοῦτο τὸ ξύλινον τεῖχος εἶναι, οἱ δ' αὖ ἔλεγον τὰς νέας σημαίνειν τὸν θεόν, καὶ ταύτας παραρτέεσθαι ἐκέλευον τὰ ἄλλα ἀπέντας. τοὺς ὧν δὴ τὰς νέας λέγοντας εἶναι τὸ ξύλινον τεῖχος ἔσφαλλε τὰ δύο τὰ τελευταῖα ῥηθέντα ὑπὸ τῆς Πυθίης, ὧ θείῃ Σαλαμῖς, ἀπολείς δὲ σὺ τέκνα γυναικῶν ἣ που σκιδναμένης Δημήτερος ἢ συνιούσης.

κατὰ ταῦτα τὰ ἔπεα συνεχέοντο αἱ γνώμαι τῶν φαμένων τὰς νέας τὸ ξύλινον τεῖχος εἶναι· οἱ γὰρ χρησμολόγοι ταύτῃ ταῦτα ἐλάμβανον, ὥς ἀμφὶ Σαλαμῖνα δεῖ σφεας ἐσσωθῆναι ναυμαχίην παρασκευασαμένους.

7.143

ἦν δὲ τῶν τις Ἀθηναίων ἀνὴρ ἐς πρώτους νεωστὶ παριών, τῷ οὖνομα μὲν ἦν Θεμιστοκλέης, παῖς δὲ Νεοκλέος ἐκαλέετο. οὗτος ὦν ἄνθρωπος οὐκ ἔφη πᾶν ὀρθῶς τοὺς χρησμολόγους συμβάλλεσθαι, λέγων τοιάδε· εἰ

τὸ πάλαι τῶν Ἀθηναίων ῥήχῳ |fence in, protect ἵ μὲν δὴ
κατὰ τὸν φραγμὸν |pit against; comparē; mp;|wooden τείχος
|meet, fall in with
εἶναι, οἱ δ' αὖ ἔλεγον τὰς νέας |give orders to; ἵν θεόν,
|show; mark
καὶ ταύτας |get something ready ἄλουν τὰ ἄλλα ἀπέντας.
τοὺς ὧν δὴ τὰς νέας λέγοντας εἶναι τὸ |wooden τείχος
|overthrow, balk ὅ τὰ |last, final ῥηθέντα ὑπὸ τῆς Πυθίης,
ὦ θείη Σαλαμῖς, ἀπολείς δὲ σὺ τέκνα γυναικῶν ἣ που
|spread Δημήτερος ἣ συνιούσης.

κατὰ ταῦτα τὰ ἔπεα |entangle, de- γινώμαι τῶν φαμένων
|stroy, confound
τὰς νέας τὸ |wooden τείχος εἶναι· οἱ γὰρ |prophesying
ταύτῃ ταῦτα ἐλάμβανον, ὥς ἀμφὶ Σαλαμῖνα δεῖ σφεας
|(pass) be weaker, be over- παρασκευασαμένους.
|come; (active) defeat

7.143

ἦν δὲ τῶν τις Ἀθηναίων ἀνὴρ ἐς πρώτους νεωστὶ
παριών, τῷ οὖνομα μὲν ἦν Θεμιστοκλῆς, παῖς δὲ
Νεοκλέος ἐκαλέετο. οὗτος ὠνήρ οὐκ ἔφη πᾶν ὀρθῶς τοὺς
|prophesying |pit against; comparē; mp;|such εἶ
|meet, fall in with

survive; for the Acropolis of the Athenians was in old time fenced with a thorn hedge; and they conjectured accordingly that this saying about the “bulwark of wood” referred to the fence: others on the contrary said that the god meant by this their ships, and they advised to leave all else and get ready these. Now they who said that the ships were the bulwark of wood were shaken in their interpretation by the two last verses which the prophetess uttered:

“Salamis, thou the divine, thou shalt cause sons of women to perish, Or when the grain is scattered or when it is gathered together.”

In reference to these verses the opinions of those who said that the ships were the bulwark of wood were disturbed; for the interpreters of oracles took these to mean that it was fated for them, having got ready for a sea-fight, to suffer defeat round about Salamis.

7.143

Now there was one man of the Athenians who had lately been coming forward to take a place among the first, whose name was Themistocles, called son of Neocles. This man said that the interpreters of oracles did not make right conjecture of the whole, and he spoke as follows,

*vocabulary***αίρετός** takeable, desirable ~heresy**ἀνταείρω** raise against**ἀποφαίνω** display, declare**ἀριστεύω** be the best ~aristocrat**ἀρτέομαι** be ready**ἐκλείπω** leave out, pass over**εὖς** good, brave, noble**ἥπιος** kind (adj)**λαγχάνω** be allotted; (esp. λελα-
forms) allot; receive**μεταλλάω** interrogate, ask about**μέταλλον** mine; mineral**μίν** him, her, it**ναυμαχία** naval warfare**ξύλινος** wooden**οικήτωρ** inhabitant**οικίζω** colonize, settle**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**συλλαμβάνω** seize, capture;

understand ~epilepsy

συμβουλευώ give advice; (mid) consult

~volunteer

σύμπας (ᾱ) all together**σχέτλιος** tough, sound, stubborn, cruel

~ischemia

χρησμολόγος prophesying**χρηστήριον** oracle, response

ἐς Ἀθηναίους εἶχε τὸ ἔπος εἰρημένον ἐόντως, οὐκ ἂν οὕτω μιν δοκέειν ἡπίως χρησθῆναι, ἀλλὰ ὧδε «ὦ σχετλίη Σαλαμὶς» ἀντὶ τοῦ «ὦ θείη Σαλαμὶς,» εἴ πέρ γε ἔμελλον οἱ οἰκήτορες ἀμφ’ αὐτῇ τελευτήσειν· ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἐς τοὺς πολεμίους τῷ θεῷ εἰρηῇσθαι τὸ χρηστήριον συλλαμβάνοντι κατὰ τὸ ὀρθόν, ἀλλ’ οὐκ ἐς Ἀθηναίους· παρασκευάζεσθαι ὧν αὐτοὺς ὡς ναυμαχήσοντας συνεβούλευε, ὡς τούτου ἐόντος τοῦ ξυλίνου τείχεος. ταύτῃ Θεμιστοκλέος ἀποφαινομένου Ἀθηναῖοι ταῦτα σφίσι ἔγνωσαν αἰρετώτερα εἶναι μᾶλλον ἢ τὰ τῶν χρησμολόγων, οἳ οὐκ ἔων ναυμαχίην ἀρτέεσθαι, τὸ δὲ σύμπαν εἰπεῖν οὐδὲ χεῖρας ἀνταείρεσθαι, ἀλλὰ ἐκλιπόντας χώραν τὴν Ἀττικὴν ἄλλην τινὰ οἰκίζειν.

7.144

ἐτέρη τε Θεμιστοκλεί γνώμη ἔμπροσθε ταύτης ἐς καιρὸν ἡρίστευσε, ὅτε Ἀθηναίοισι γενομένων χρημάτων μεγάλων ἐν τῷ κοινῷ, τὰ ἐκ τῶν μετάλλων σφι προσήλθε τῶν ἀπὸ Λαυρείου, ἔμελλον λάξεσθαι ὀρχηδὸν ἕκαστος

ἐς Ἀθηναίους εἶχε τὸ ἔπος εἰρημένον ἐόντως, οὐκ ἂν
 οὕτω μιν δοκέειν |kind (adj)|, ἡσθῆναι, ἀλλὰ ὧδε «ὦ
 |tough, sound,| αμῖς» ἀντὶ τοῦ «ὦ θεῖη Σαλαμῖς,» εἴ
 |stubborn, cruel|
 πέρ γε ἔμελλον οἱ |inhabitant| ἀμφ' αὐτῇ τελευτήσειν·
 ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἐς τοὺς πολεμίους τῷ θεῷ εἰρηῆσθαι τὸ
 |oracle,| |seize, capture; un-| κατὰ τὸ ὀρθόν, ἀλλ'
 |response| |derstand|
 οὐκ ἐς Ἀθηναίους· παρασκευάζεσθαι ὦν αὐτοὺς ὡς
 ναυμαχήσοντας |give advice;| ὡς τούτου ἐόντος τοῦ
 |(mid) consult|
 |wooden| τείχεος. ταύτῃ Θεμιστοκλέος |display, declare|
 Ἀθηναῖοι ταῦτα σφίσι ἔγνωσαν |takeable,| εἶναι μᾶλλον
 |desirable|
 ἢ τὰ τῶν |prophesying|, οἳ οὐκ ἔων ναυμαχίην |be ready|,
 τὸ δὲ |all together| πείν οὐδὲ χεῖρας ἀνταίρεσθαι, ἀλλὰ
 |leave out, pass over,| τὴν Ἀττικὴν ἄλλην τινὰ |colonize,|
 |settle|

7.144

ἐτέρῃ τε Θεμιστοκλεί γνῶμη ἔμπροσθε ταύτης ἐς καιρὸν
 |be the best|, ὅτε Ἀθηναίοισι γενομένων χρημάτων μεγάλων
 ἐν τῷ κοινῷ, τὰ ἐκ τῶν μετάλλων σφί προσήλθε τῶν ἀπὸ
 Λαυρείου, ἔμελλον |be allotted; (esp,| ἡλαστος
 |forms) allot; receive|

saying that if these words that had been uttered referred really to the Athenians, he did not think it would have been so mildly expressed in the oracle, but rather thus, "Salamis, thou the merciless," instead of "Salamis, thou the divine," at least if its settlers were destined to perish round about it: but in truth the oracle had been spoken by the god with reference to the enemy, if one understood it rightly, and not to the Athenians: therefore he counselled them to get ready to fight a battle by sea, for in this was their bulwark of wood. When Themistocles declared his opinion thus, the Athenians judged that this was to be preferred by them rather than the advice of the interpreters of oracles, who bade them not make ready for a sea-fight, nor in short raise their hands at all in opposition, but leave the land of Attica and settle in some other.

7.144

Another opinion too of Themistocles before this one proved the best at the right moment, when the Athenians, having got large sums of money in the public treasury, which had come in to them from the mines which are at Laureion, were intending to share it among themselves, taking each in turn

vocabulary

ἀναγιγνώσκω recognize, read,
understand, persuade

δραχμή drachma

Ἕλληγν Greek

ἐνθαῦτα there, here

θαλάσσιος marine, maritime

καταλλάσσω exchange; make up with

πανδημεί the masses

προποιέω do beforehand

συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion

χρηστήριον oracle, response

δέκα δραχμάς· τότε Θεμιστοκλῆς ἀνέγνωσε Ἀθηναίους τῆς διαιρέσιος ταύτης παυσαμένους νέας τούτων τῶν χρημάτων ποιήσασθαι διηκοσίας ἐς τὸν πόλεμον, τὸν πρὸς Αἰγινήτας λέγων. οὗτος γὰρ ὁ πόλεμος συστὰς ἔσωσε ἐς τὸ τότε τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ἀναγκάσας θαλασσίους γενέσθαι Ἀθηναίους. αἱ δὲ ἐς τὸ μὲν ἐποιήθησαν οὐκ ἐχρήσθησαν, ἐς δέον δὲ οὕτω τῇ Ἑλλάδι ἐγένοντο. αὐταί τε δὴ αἱ νέες τοῖσι Ἀθηναίοισι προποιεθεῖσαι ὑπῆρχον, ἑτέρας τε ἔδεε προσναυπηγέεσθαι. ἔδοξέ τέ σφι μετὰ τὸ χρηστήριον βουλευομένοισι ἐπιόντα ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα τὸν βάρβαρον δέκεσθαι τῇσι νηυσὶ πανδημεί, τῷ θεῷ πειθομένους, ἅμα Ἑλλήνων τοῖσι βουλομένοισι.

7.145

τὰ μὲν δὴ χρηστήρια ταῦτα τοῖσι Ἀθηναίοισι ἐγεγόνεε. συλλεγομένων δὲ ἐς τὸντὸ τῶν περὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα Ἑλλήνων τῶν τὰ ἀμείνω φρονεόντων καὶ διδόντων σφίσι λόγον καὶ πίστιν, ἐνθαῦτα ἔδόκεε βουλευομένοισι αὐτοῖσι πρῶτον μὲν χρημάτων πάντων καταλλάσσεσθαι τάς

δέκα |drachma τότε Θεμιστοκλέης |read Ἀθηναίους
 τῆς διαιρέσιος ταύτης παυσαμένους νέας τούτων τῶν
 χρημάτων ποιήσασθαι διηκοσίας ἐς τὸν πόλεμον, τὸν
 πρὸς Αἰγινήτας λέγων. οὗτος γὰρ ὁ πόλεμος συστάς
 ἔσωσε ἐς τὸ τότε τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ἀναγκάσας |marine,
 |maritime γενέσθαι Ἀθηναίους. αἱ δὲ ἐς τὸ μὲν ἐποιήθησαν οὐκ
 ἐχρήσθησαν, ἐς δέον δὲ οὕτω τῇ Ἑλλάδι ἐγένοντο. αὗται
 τε δὴ αἱ νέες τοῖσι Ἀθηναίοισι |do beforehand ὑπῆρχον,
 ἑτέρας τε ἔδεε προσναυπηγέεσθαι. ἔδοξέ τέ σφι μετὰ
 τὸ |oracle, |response βουλευομένοισι ἐπιόντα ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα
 τὸν βάρβαρον δέκεσθαι τῇσι νηυσὶ |the masses, τῷ θεῷ
 πειθομένους, ἅμα |Greek τοῖσι βουλομένοισι.

7.145

τὰ μὲν δὴ |oracle, |response ταῦτα τοῖσι Ἀθηναίοισι ἐγεγόνεε.
 |collect, assemble δὲ ἐς τὸ αὐτὸ τῶν περὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα
 |Greek τῶν τὰ ἀμείνω φρονεόντων καὶ διδόντων σφίσι
 λόγον καὶ πίστιν, |there, here ὅκεε βουλευομένοισι αὐτοῖσι
 πρῶτον μὲν χρημάτων πάντων |exchange; make up τὰς
 |with

the sum of ten drachmas. Then Themistocles persuaded the Athenians to give up this plan of division and to make for themselves with this money two hundred ships for the war, meaning by that the war with the Eginetans: for this war having arisen proved in fact the salvation of Hellas at that time, by compelling the Athenians to become a naval power. And the ships, not having been used for the purpose for which they had been made, thus proved of service at need to Hellas. These ships then, I say, the Athenians had already, having built them beforehand, and it was necessary in addition to these to construct others. They resolved then, when they took counsel after the oracle was given, to receive the Barbarian invading Hellas with their ships in full force, following the commands of the god, in combination with those of the Hellenes who were willing to join them.

7.145

These oracles had been given before to the Athenians: and when those Hellenes who had the better mind about Hellas came together to one place, and considered their affairs and interchanged assurances with one another, then deliberating together they thought it well first of all things to reconcile the enmities

*vocabulary***ἄρος** ἄρεος (n, 3) bane, harm; prayer**Ἕλληγ** Greek**εὖς** good, brave, noble**ἐχθρη** hate**καταμανθάνω** examine, observe**κατάσκοπος** spy, inspector**ὄον** ὄ type of fruit**οὐδαμὸς** not anyone**Πέρσης** Persian**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

στρατόω be on a campaign ~strategy**συγκύπτω** go in a huddle**συντίθημι** hearken, mark ~thesis

τε ἔχθρας καὶ τοὺς κατ' ἀλλήλους ἐόντας πολέμους· ἦσαν δὲ πρὸς τινὰς καὶ ἄλλους ἐγκεκρημένοι, ὁ δὲ ὦν μέγιστος Ἀθηναίοισι τε καὶ Αἰγινήτησι. μετὰ δὲ πυνθανόμενοι Ξέρξην σὺν τῷ στρατῷ εἶναι ἐν Σάρδισι, ἐβουλεύσαντο κατασκόπους πέμπειν ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην τῶν βασιλέος πρηγμάτων, ἐς Ἄρος τε ἀγγέλους ὁμαιχμὴν συνθηγομένους πρὸς τὸν Πέρσην, καὶ ἐς Σικελίην ἄλλους πέμπειν παρὰ Γέλωνα τὸν Δεινομένεος ἔς τε Κέρκυραν κελεύσοντας βοηθεῖν τῇ Ἑλλάδι καὶ ἐς Κρήτην ἄλλους, φρονήσαντες εἴ πως ἐν τε γένοιτο τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν καὶ εἰ συγκύψαντες τῶντὸ πρήσσοιεν πάντες, ὥς δεινῶν ἐπιόντων ὁμοίως πᾶσι Ἕλλησι. τὰ δὲ Γέλωνος πρήγματα μεγάλα ἐλέγετο εἶναι, οὐδαμῶν Ἑλληνικῶν τῶν οὐ πολλὸν μέζω.

7.146

ὥς δὲ ταῦτα σφί ἔδοξε, καταλυσάμενοι τὰς ἔχθρας πρῶτα μὲν κατασκόπους πέμπουσι ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην ἄνδρας τρεῖς. οἱ δὲ ἀπικόμενοί τε ἐς Ξάρδεις καὶ καταμαθόντες τὴν

τε |hate καὶ τοὺς κατ' ἀλλήλους ἐόντας πολέμους·
 ἦσαν δὲ πρὸς τινὰς καὶ ἄλλους ἐγκεκρημένοι, ὁ δὲ
 ὦν μέγιστος Ἀθηναίοισι τε καὶ Αἰγινήτησι. μετὰ δὲ
 πυνθανόμενοι Ξέρξην σὺν τῷ στρατῷ εἶναι ἐν Σάρδισι,
 ἐβουλεύσαντο |spy, inspector πέμπειν ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην τῶν
 βασιλέος πρηγμάτων, ἐς |bane; τε ἀγγέλους ὁμαιχμίων
 |prayer
 συνθησομένους πρὸς τὸν Πέρσην, καὶ ἐς Σικελίην ἄλλους
 πέμπειν παρὰ Γέλωνα τὸν Δεινομένεος ἔς τε Κέρκυραν
 κελεύσοντας βοηθεῖν τῇ Ἑλλάδι καὶ ἐς Κρήτην ἄλλους,
 φρονήσαντες εἴ πως ἔν τε γένοιτο τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν καὶ
 εἰ |συγκύπτω?: go in a huddle; οἷοιοιεν πάντες, ὡς δεινῶν
 |συγκύπτω?: go in a huddle
 ἐπιόντων ὁμοίως πᾶσι |Greek . τὰ δὲ Γέλωνος πρήγματα
 μεγάλα ἐλέγετο εἶναι, |not anyone Ἑλληνικῶν τῶν οὐ
 πολλὸν μέζω.

7.146

ὥς δὲ ταῦτα σφί ἔδοξε, καταλυσάμενοι τὰς |hate πρῶτα
 μὲν |spy, inspector πέμπουσι ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην ἄνδρας τρεῖς. οἱ
 δὲ ἀπικόμενοί τε ἐς Ξάρδεις καὶ |examine, observe τὴν

and bring to an end the wars which they had with one another. Now there were wars engaged between others also, and especially between the Athenians and the Eginetans. After this, being informed that Xerxes was with his army at Sardis, they determined to send spies to Asia to make observation of the power of the king; and moreover they resolved to send envoys to Argos to form an alliance against the Persian, and to send others to Sicily to Gelon the son of Deinomenes and also to Corcyra, to urge them to come to the assistance of Hellas, and others again to Crete; for they made it their aim that if possible the Hellenic race might unite in one, and that they might join all together and act towards the same end, since dangers were threatening all the Hellenes equally. Now the power of Gelon was said to be great, far greater than any other Hellenic power.

7.146

When they had thus resolved, they reconciled their enmities and then sent first three men as spies to Asia. These having come to Sardis and having got knowledge about the king's army, were

vocabulary

ἀπάγω lead away, back ~demagogue
ἀποπέμπω send away ~pomp
ἄσινής unharmed
βασανίζω interrogate, test, torture
δορυφόρος spear-bearer
Ἑλλήν Greek
ἐνθεῦτεν thence
ἐντέλλω (mp) command
ἐπάιστος heard of, perceived
ἐπιδείκνυμι (ῥ) display, exhibit
ἐπιλέγω say re, say also; choose; (mid)
 think over
θηέομαι look at, behold, consider
 ~theater
κατακρίνω sentence, condemn
καταλαμβάνω seize, understand, catch,

overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy
κατάσκοπος spy, inspector
μέμφομαι blame; reject
νοστέω go home
ὄψις ὄψεως (f) sight, view
 ~thanatopsis
περιάγω lead around
περίειμι be superior to; be left over;
 still exist
πλήρης full, complete; (+gen) full of
 ~plethora
προπυνθάνομαι learn in advance
σίνομαι (ῥ) rob, damage
στρατιά army ~strategy
στρατός common people/soldiers
 ~strategy
στρατώ be on a campaign ~strategy

βασιλέος στρατιήν, ὥς ἐπαίστοι ἐγένοντο, βασανισθέντες
 ὑπὸ τῶν στρατηγῶν τοῦ πεζοῦ στρατοῦ ἀπήγοντο ὥς
 ἀπολεόμενοι. καὶ τοῖσι μὲν κατεκέκριτο θάνατος, Ξέρξης
 δὲ ὥς ἐπύθετο ταῦτα, μεμφθεὶς τῶν στρατηγῶν τὴν
 γνώμην πέμπει τῶν τινας δορυφόρων, ἐντειλάμενος,
 ἥν καταλάβωσι τοὺς κατασκόπους ζῶντας, ἄγειν παρ'
 ἑωυτόν. ὥς δὲ ἔτι περιέοντας αὐτοὺς κατέλαβον καὶ
 ἤγον ἐς ὄψιν τὴν βασιλέος, τὸ ἐνθεῦτεν πυθόμενος ἐπ'
 οἷσι ἦλθον, ἐκέλευε σφέας τοὺς δορυφόρους περιάγοντας
 ἐπιδείκνυσθαι πάντα τε τὸν πεζὸν στρατὸν καὶ τὴν ἵππον,
 ἐπεὰν δὲ ταῦτα θεγύμενοι ἔωσι πλήρεις, ἀποπέμπειν ἐς
 τὴν ἂν αὐτοὶ ἐθέλωσι χώραν ἀσινέας.

7.147

ἐπιλέγων δὲ τὸν λόγον τόνδε ταῦτα ἐνετέλλετο, ὥς
 εἰ μὲν ἀπώλοντο οἱ κατάσκοποι, οὔτ' ἂν τὰ ἑωυτοῦ
 πρήγματα προεπύθοντο οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔοντα λόγου μέζω,
 οὔτ' ἂν τι τοὺς πολεμίους μέγα ἐσίναντο, ἄνδρας τρεῖς
 ἀπολέσαντες· νοστησάντων δὲ τούτων ἐς τὴν Ἑλλάδα

βασιλέος στρατὴν, ὥς |heard of, perceived |interrogate, test, torture
 ὑπὸ τῶν στρατηγῶν τοῦ πεζοῦ στρατοῦ |lead away, back
 ἀπολεόμενοι. καὶ τοῖσι μὲν |sentence, condemn θάνατος, Ξέρξης
 δὲ ὥς ἐπύθετο ταῦτα, |blame; reject τῶν στρατηγῶν τὴν
 γνώμην πέμπει τῶν τινας |spear-brearing ἐντειλάμενος,
 ἣν |seize, understand, spy, inspector ζῶντας, ἄγειν παρ'
 |catch, overtake; (mp)
 ἐαυτοῖς, ὥς δὲ ἔτι |be superior to; be left |seize, understand, catch, over-
 |over; still exist |take; (mp) happen
 ἦγον ἐς |sight τὴν βασιλέος, τὸ |thence πυθόμενος ἐπ'
 οἷσι ἦλθον, ἐκέλευε σφέας τοὺς |spear-brearing |lead around
 |display, exhibit πάντα τε τὸν πεζὸν |army καὶ τὴν ἵππον,
 ἐπεὰν δὲ ταῦτα |look at, behold, full, com- |send away ἐς
 |consider |plete;
 τὴν ἂν αὐτοὶ ἐθέλωσι χώραν |unharmed full
 |of

7.147

|say, choose, δὲ τὸν λόγον τόνδε ταῦτα ἐνετέλλετο, ὥς
 |think over
 εἰ μὲν ἀπώλοντο οἱ |spy, inspector, οὐτ' ἂν τὰ ἐαυτοῦ
 πρήγματα |learn in advance |Greek ἔοντα λόγου μέζω,
 οὐτ' ἂν τι τοὺς πολεμίους μέγα |rob, damage ἄνδρας τρεῖς
 ἀπολέσαντες |go home δὲ τούτων ἐς τὴν Ἑλλάδα

discovered, and after having been examined by the generals of the land-army were being led off to die. For these men, I say, death had been determined; but Xerxes, being informed of this, found fault with the decision of the generals and sent some of the spearmen of his guard, enjoining them, if they should find the spies yet alive, to bring them to his presence. So having found them yet surviving they brought them into the presence of the king; and upon that Xerxes, being informed for what purpose they had come, commanded the spearmen to lead them round and to show them the whole army both foot and horse, and when they should have had their fill of looking at these things, to let them go unhurt to whatsoever land they desired.

7.147

Such was the command which he gave, adding at the same time this saying, namely that if the spies had been put to death, the Hellenes would not have been informed beforehand of his power, how far beyond description it was; while on the other hand by putting to death three men they would not very greatly

*vocabulary***ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot**δήτα** emphatic δῆ**ἐλευθερία** freedom**Ἕλληγν** Greek**ἐξαρτύω** (ὑ) train, equip**ἐτοιμός** ready; fulfilled**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider

~theater

κατάσκοπος spy, inspector**νοστέω** go home**ὅπη** wherever, however**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,
recommend, encourage**πάρεδρος** assessor**σιταγωγός** (ἰ) grain-carrying**στρατηλατέω** lead an army**ὑπολαμβάνω** take under one's
support, seize; speak up; imagine

~epilepsy

δοκέειν ἔφη ἀκούσαντας τοὺς Ἑλληνας τὰ ἑαυτοῦ
 πράγματα πρὸ τοῦ στόλου τοῦ γινομένου παραδώσειν
 σφέας τὴν ἰδίην ἐλευθερίην, καὶ οὕτω οὐδὲ δεήσειν ἐπ’
 αὐτοὺς στρατηλατέοντας πράγματα ἔχειν. οἴκε δὲ αὐτοῦ
 αὕτη ἡ γνώμη τῇ γε ἄλλῃ. ἑὼν γὰρ ἐν Ἀβύδῳ ὁ
 Ξέρξης εἶδε πλοῖα ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου σιταγωγὰ διεκπλώοντα
 τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον, ἔς τε Αἶγναν καὶ Πελοπόννησον
 κομιζόμενα. οἱ μὲν δὴ πάρεδροι αὐτοῦ ὥς ἐπύθοντο
 πολέμια εἶναι τὰ πλοῖα, ἔτοιμοι ἦσαν αἰρέειν αὐτά,
 ἐσβλέποντες ἐς τὸν βασιλέα ὁκότε παραγγελέει. ὁ δὲ
 Ξέρξης εἶρετο αὐτοὺς ὅκη πλέοιεν· οἱ δὲ εἶπαν «ἐς τοὺς
 σοὺς πολεμίους, ὦ δέσποτα, σίτον ἄγοντες.» ὁ δὲ
 ὑπολαβὼν ἔφη «οὐκῶν καὶ ἡμεῖς ἐκεῖ πλέομεν ἔνθα περ
 οὗτοι, τοῖσί τε ἄλλοισι ἐξηρτυμένοι καὶ σίτῳ; τί δῆτα
 ἀδικέουσι οὗτοι ἡμῖν σιτία παρακομίζοντες;»

7.148

οἱ μὲν νυν κατάσκοποι οὕτω θεησάμενοί τε καὶ
 ἀποπεμφθέντες ἐνόστησαν ἐς τὴν Εὐρώπην, οἱ δὲ

δοκέειν ἔφη ἀκούσαντας τοὺς |Greek τὰ ἑωυτοῦ
 πρήγματα πρὸ τοῦ στόλου τοῦ γινομένου παραδώσειν
 σφέας τὴν ἰδίην ἐλευθερίην, καὶ οὕτω οὐδὲ δεήσειν ἐπ’
 αὐτοὺς |lead an army πρήγματα ἔχειν. οἴκε δὲ αὐτοῦ
 αὕτη ἡ γνώμη τῇ γε ἄλλῃ. ἐὼν γὰρ ἐν Ἀβύδῳ ὁ
 Ξέρξης εἶδε πλοῖα ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου |grain-carrying|εκπλώοντα
 τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον, ἔς τε Αἴγιναν καὶ Πελοπόννησον
 κομιζόμενα. οἱ μὲν δὲ |assessor αὐτοῦ ὥς ἐπύθοντο
 πολέμα εἶναι τὰ πλοῖα, ἔτοιμοι ἦσαν αἰρέειν αὐτά,
 ἐσβλέποντες ἐς τὸν βασιλέα ὁκότε |transmit; order, summon, recom-
 mend, encourage
 Ξέρξης εἶρετο αὐτοὺς |wherever, however
 |however
 σοὺς πολεμίους, ᾧ |master, |, σίτον ἄγοντες.» ὁ δὲ
 |despot
 |take under one's support, | καὶ ἡμεῖς ἐκεῖ πλέομεν ἔνθα περ
 |seize; speak up; imagine
 οὔτοι, τοῖσί τε ἄλλοισι |train, equip καὶ σίτω; τί |emphatic δὴ
 ἀδικέουσι οὔτοι ἡμῖν σιτία παρακομίζοντες;»

7.148

οἱ μὲν νυν |spy, inspector οὕτω θεησάμενοί τε καὶ
 |send away |go home ἐς τὴν Εὐρώπην, οἱ δὲ

have damaged the enemy; but when these returned back to Hellas, he thought it likely that the Hellenes, hearing of his power, would deliver up their freedom to him themselves, before the expedition took place which was being set in motion; and thus there would be no need for them to have the labour of marching an army against them. This opinion of his is like his manner of thinking at other times; for when Xerxes was in Abydos, he saw vessels which carried corn from the Pontus sailing out through the Hellespont on their way to Egina and the Peloponnese. Those then who sat by his side, being informed that the ships belonged to the enemy, were prepared to capture them, and were looking to the king to see when he would give the word; but Xerxes asked about them whither the men were sailing, and they replied: "Master, to thy foes, conveying to them corn": he then made answer and said: "Are we not also sailing to the same place as these men, furnished with corn as well as with other things necessary? How then do these wrong us, since they are conveying provisions for our use?"

7.148

The spies then, having thus looked at everything and after that having been dismissed, returned back to Europe: and meanwhile those of the Hellenes

*vocabulary***βουλευτήριον** council chamber**Ἕλληγ** Greek**ἐντέλλω** (mp) command**ἑξακισχίλιοι** 6000**ἐπείρομαι** ask as well; ask then**ἐπειρωτέω** consult, ask**θεοπρόπος** seer ~theology**κάρα** (αᾶ) head (n) ~cranium**κατάσκοπος** spy, inspector**κείρω** shave, sever, raze; devour, use
up**Πέρσης** Persian**συνωμότης** -ου (m, 1) confederate

συνωμόται Ἑλλήνων ἐπὶ τῷ Πέρσῃ μετὰ τὴν ἀπόπεμψιν
 τῶν κατασκόπων δεύτερα ἔπεμπον εἰς Ἄργος ἀγγέλους.
 Ἀργεῖοι δὲ λέγουσι τὰ κατ' ἐωυτοὺς γενέσθαι ὧδε.
 πυθέσθαι γὰρ αὐτίκα κατ' ἀρχὰς τὰ ἐκ τοῦ βαρβάρου
 ἐγειρόμενα ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, πυθόμενοι δέ, καὶ μαθόντες
 ὥς σφέας οἱ Ἕλληνες πειρήσονται παραλαμβάνοντες
 ἐπὶ τὸν Πέρσῃ, πέμψαι θεοπρόπους εἰς Δελφοὺς τὸν
 θεὸν ἐπειρησομένους ὥς σφι μέλλει ἄριστον ποιεῖν
 γενέσθαι· νεωστὶ γὰρ σφέων τεθνάναι ἑξακισχιλίους ὑπὸ
 Λακεδαιμονίων καὶ Κλεομένους τοῦ Ἀναξανδρίδew· τῶν
 δὴ εἵνεκα πέμπειν. τὴν δὲ Πυθίην ἐπειρωτῶσι αὐτοῖσι
 ἀνελεῖν τάδε.

Ἐχθρὲ περικτιόνεσσι, φίλ' ἀθανάτοισι θεοῖσιν, εἴσω
 τὸν προβόλαιον ἔχων πεφυλαγμένος ἦσο καὶ κεφαλὴν
 πεφύλαξο· κάρη δὲ τὸ σῶμα σαώσει.

Ταῦτα μὲν τὴν Πυθίην χρῆσαι πρότερον· μετὰ δὲ ὥς
 ἐλθεῖν τοὺς ἀγγέλους εἰς δὴ τὸ Ἄργος, ἐπελθεῖν ἐπὶ τὸ
 βουλευτήριον καὶ λέγειν τὰ ἐντεταλμένα. τοὺς δὲ

|confederate |Greek ἐπὶ τῷ Πέρσῃ μετὰ τὴν ἀπόπεμψιν
 τῶν |spy, inspector δεύτερα ἔπεμπον ἐς Ἄργος ἀγγέλους.
 Ἀργεῖοι δὲ λέγουσι τὰ κατ' ἐωυτοὺς γενέσθαι ὧδε.
 πυθέσθαι γὰρ αὐτίκα κατ' ἀρχὰς τὰ ἐκ τοῦ βαρβάρου
 ἐγειρόμενα ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, πυθόμενοι δέ, καὶ μαθόντες
 ὥς σφέας οἱ |Greek πειρήσονται παραλαμβάνοντες
 ἐπὶ τὸν Πέρσῃ, πέμψαι |seer ἐς Δελφοὺς τὸν
 θεὸν ἐπειρησομένους ὥς σφί μελλεῖ ἄριστον ποιέουσι
 γενέσθαι· νεωστὶ γὰρ σφέων τεθνάναι |6000 ὑπὸ
 Λακεδαιμονίων καὶ Κλεομένεος τοῦ Ἀναξανδρίδου· τῶν
 δὴ εἵνεκα πέμπειν. τὴν δὲ Πυθίην |consult, ask αὐτοῖσι
 ἀνελεῖν τάδε.

Ἐχθρὲ περικτιόνεσσι, φίλ' ἀθανάτοισι θεοῖσιν, εἴσω
 τὸν προβόλαιον ἔχων πεφυλαγμένος ἦσο καὶ κεφαλὴν
 πεφύλαξο· κάρη δὲ τὸ σῶμα σαώσῃ.

Ταῦτα μὲν τὴν Πυθίην χρῆσαι πρότερον· μετὰ δὲ ὥς
 ἐλθεῖν τοὺς ἀγγέλους ἐς δὴ τὸ Ἄργος, ἐπελθεῖν ἐπὶ τὸ

|council
 |chamber καὶ λέγειν τὰ ἐντεταλμένα. τοὺς δὲ

who had sworn alliance against the Persian, after the sending forth of the spies proceeded to send envoys next to Argos. Now the Argives report that the matters concerning themselves took place as follows:—They were informed, they say, at the very first of the movement which was being set on foot by the Barbarian against Hellas; and having been informed of this and perceiving that the Hellenes would endeavour to get their alliance against the Persians, they had sent messengers to inquire of the god at Delphi, and to ask how they should act in order that it might be best for themselves: because lately there had been slain of them six thousand men by the Lacedemonians and by Cleomenes the son of Anaxandrides, and this in fact was the reason that they were sending to inquire: and when they inquired, the Pythian prophetess made answer to them as follows:

“Thou to thy neighbours a foe, by the gods immortal beloved, Keep thou thy spear within bounds, and sit well-guarded behind it: Guard well the head, and the head shall preserve the limbs and the body.”

Thus, they say, the Pythian prophetess had replied to them before this; and afterwards when the messengers of the Hellenes came, as I said, to Argos, they entered the Council-chamber and spoke that which had been enjoined to them; and to that which was said the

*vocabulary***ἀναφέρω** bring up ~bear**ἀπαγορεύω** forbid; fail, be worn out**ἀποχράω** suffice; abuse**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἐπιλέγω** say re, say also; choose; (mid) think over**ἑτοῖμος** ready; fulfilled**ἡγεμονία** authority, rule**ἡμισυς** half ~hemisphere**καίπερ** even if**καίτοι** and yet; and in fact; although**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy**Πέρσης** Persian**σπένδω** libate; (mid) make a treaty ~spontaneous**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous**σπουδή** zeal; (dat) with difficulty, hastily ~repudiate**συμμαχία** alliance**ὑπήκοος** heeding, subject**ὑποκρίνομαι** (i) answer; pretend **χρηστήριον** oracle, response

πρὸς τὰ λεγόμενα ὑποκρίνασθαι ὡς ἔτοιμοι εἰσὶ Ἀργεῖοι ποίειν ταῦτα, τριήκοντα ἔτεα εἰρήνην σπεισάμενοι Λακεδαιμονίοισι καὶ ἡγεόμενοι κατὰ τὸ ἥμισυ πάσης τῆς συμμαχίης. καίτοι κατὰ γε τὸ δίκαιον γίνεσθαι τὴν ἡγεμονίην ἑωυτῶν· ἀλλ' ὅμως σφίσι ἀποχρᾶν κατὰ τὸ ἥμισυ ἡγεομένοισι.

7.149

ταῦτα μὲν λέγουσι τὴν βουλὴν ὑποκρίνασθαι, καίπερ ἀπαγορεύοντός σφι τοῦ χρηστηρίου μὴ ποίεεσθαι τὴν πρὸς τοὺς Ἕλληνας συμμαχίην· σπουδὴν δὲ ἔχειν σπονδὰς γενέσθαι τριηκοντοέτιδας καίπερ τὸ χρηστήριον φοβεόμενοι, ἵνα δὴ σφι οἱ παῖδες ἀνδρωθέωσι ἐν τούτοις τοῖσι ἔτεσι· μὴ δὲ σπονδέων ἐουσέων ἐπιλέγεσθαι, ἣν ἄρα σφέας καταλάβῃ πρὸς τῷ γεγονότι κακῷ ἄλλο πταῖσμα πρὸς τὸν Πέρσην, μὴ τὸ λοιπὸν ἔωσι Λακεδαιμονίων ὑπήκοοι. τῶν δὲ ἀγγέλων τοὺς ἀπὸ τῆς Σπάρτης πρὸς τὰ ῥηθέντα ἐκ τῆς βουλῆς ἀμείψασθαι τοῖσιδε· περὶ μὲν σπονδέων ἀνοίσειν ἐς τοὺς πλεῦνας, περὶ

πρὸς τὰ λεγόμενα |answer; pretend ὥς ἔτοιμοι εἰσὶ Ἀργεῖοι
 ποιέειν ταῦτα, τριήκοντα ἔτεα εἰρήνην |libate; (mid)
 |make a treaty
 Λακεδαιμονίοισι καὶ ἡγεόμενοι κατὰ τὸ |half πάσης τῆς
 συμμαχίης. |and yet; and in γε τὸ δίκαιον γίνεσθαι τὴν
 |fact; although
 |authority, rule νῦν ὅμως σφίσι |suffice; κατὰ τὸ
 |abuse
 |half ἡγεομένοισι.

7.149

ταῦτα μὲν λέγουσι τὴν βουλὴν |answer; pretend, |even if
 |forbid; fail, be σφί τοῦ |oracle, μὴ ποιέεσθαι τὴν
 |worn out |response
 πρὸς τοὺς |Greek συμμαχίην· |zeal; (dat) ὡς ἔχειν
 |difficulty, hastily
 |libation, γενέσθαι τριηκοντοέτιδας |even if τὸ |oracle,
 |treaty |response
 φοβεόμενοι, ἵνα δὴ σφί οἱ παῖδες ἀνδρωθέωσι ἐν τούτοις
 τοῖσι ἔτεσι· μὴ δὲ |libation, εὐσεύων |say, choose, ἣν ἄρα
 |treaty |think over
 σφέας |seize, understand, catch, ἐγονότι κακῶ ἄλλο πταῖσμα
 |overtake; (mp) happen
 πρὸς τὸν Πέρσην, μὴ τὸ λοιπὸν ἔωσι Λακεδαιμονίων
 |heeding, . τῶν δὲ ἀγγέλων τοὺς ἀπὸ τῆς Σπάρτης πρὸς
 |subject
 τὰ ῥηθέντα ἐκ τῆς βουλῆς ἀμείψασθαι τοῖσιδε· περὶ μὲν
 |libation, |bring up ἐς τοὺς πλεῦνας, περὶ
 |treaty

Council replied that the Argives were ready to do as they were requested, on condition that they got peace made with the Lacedemonians for thirty years and that they had half the leadership of the whole confederacy: and yet by strict right (they said) the whole leadership fell to their share, but nevertheless it was sufficient for them to have half.

7.149

Thus they report that the Council made answer, although the oracle forbade them to make the alliance with the Hellenes; and they were anxious, they say, that a truce from hostilities for thirty years should be made, although they feared the oracle, in order, as they allege, that their sons might grow to manhood in these years; whereas if a truce did not exist, they had fear that, supposing another disaster should come upon them in fighting against the Persian in addition to that which had befallen them already, they might be for all future time subject to the Lacedemonians. To that which was spoken by the Council those of the envoys who were of Sparta replied, that as to the truce they would refer the matter to their public assembly, but as

vocabulary

ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be
freed, depart

ἐντέλλω (mp) command

ἡγεμονία authority, rule

οὐδέτερος neither

οὐκῶ no longer

περιέπω treat, handle

Πέρσης Persian

προείπον foretell, proclaim, order
before

σφέτερος their

ὑπείκω yield, withdraw ~victor

ὑποκρίνομαι (i) answer; pretend

δὲ ἡγεμονίης αὐτοῖσι ἐντετάλθαι ὑποκρίνασθαι, καὶ δὴ λέγειν, σφίσι μὲν εἶναι δύο βασιλέας, Ἀργείοισι δὲ ἓνα· οὐκ ὄν δυνάτὸν εἶναι τῶν ἐκ Σπάρτης οὐδέτερον παῦσαι τῆς ἡγεμονίης, μετὰ δὲ δύο τῶν σφετέρων ὁμόψηφον τὸν Ἀργεῖον εἶναι κωλύειν οὐδέν. οὕτω δὴ οἱ Ἀργεῖοι φασὶ οὐκ ἀνασχέσθαι τῶν Σπαρτιητέων τὴν πλεονεξίην, ἀλλ' ἐλέσθαι μᾶλλον ὑπὸ τῶν βαρβάρων ἄρχεσθαι ἢ τι ὑπεῖξαι Λακεδαιμονίοισι, προειπεῖν τε τοῖσι ἀγγέλοισι πρὸ δύντος ἡλίου ἀπαλλάσσεσθαι ἐκ τῆς Ἀργείων χώρας, εἰ δὲ μή, περιέψεσθαι ὥς πολεμίους.

7.150

αὐτοὶ μὲν Ἀργεῖοι τοσαῦτα τούτων πέρι λέγουσι· ἔστι δὲ ἄλλος λόγος λεγόμενος ἀνὰ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ὡς Ξέρξης ἔπεμψε κήρυκα ἐς Ἄργος πρότερον ἢ περ ὀρμῆσαι στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα· ἐλθόντα δὲ τοῦτον λέγεται εἰπεῖν «ἄνδρες Ἀργεῖοι, βασιλεὺς Ξέρξης τάδε ὑμῖν λέγει. ἡμεῖς νομίζομεν Πέρσῃν εἶναι ἀπ' οὗ ἡμεῖς γεγόναμεν παῖδα Περσέος τοῦ Δανάης, γεγονότα

δὲ |authority, rule ἵτοῖσι ἐντετάλθαι |answer; pretend, καὶ δὴ
λέγειν, σφίσι μὲν εἶναι δύο βασιλέας, Ἀργείοισι δὲ ἓνα·
|no longer· νατὸν εἶναι τῶν ἐκ Σπάρτης |neither παῦσαι
τῆς |authority, rule τὰ δὲ δύο τῶν |their ὁμόψηφον τὸν
Ἀργεῖον εἶναι κωλύειν οὐδέν. οὕτω δὴ οἱ Ἀργεῖοι φασὶ
οὐκ ἀνασχέσθαι τῶν Σπαρτιητέων τὴν πλεονεξίην, ἀλλ’
ἐλέσθαι μᾶλλον ὑπὸ τῶν βαρβάρων ἄρχεσθαι ἢ τι |yield,
|withdraw
Λακεδαιμονίοισι, |foretell, proclaim, ἵσι ἀγγέλοισι πρὸ δύντος
|order before
ἡλίου |free from, remove; ἐκ τῆς Ἀργείων χώρης, εἰ δὲ μή,
|be freed, depart
περιέψεσθαι ὡς πολέμους.

7.150

αὐτοὶ μὲν Ἀργεῖοι τοσαῦτα τούτων πέρι λέγουσι· ἔστι
δὲ ἄλλος λόγος λεγόμενος ἀνὰ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ὡς Ξέρξης
ἔπεμψε κήρυκα ἐς Ἄργος πρότερον ἢ περ ὀρμῆσαι
στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα· ἐλθόντα δὲ τοῦτον λέγεται
εἰπεῖν «ἄνδρες Ἀργεῖοι, βασιλεὺς Ξέρξης τάδε ὑμῖν λέγει.
ἡμεῖς νομίζομεν Πέρσῃν εἶναι ἀπ’ οὗ ἡμεῖς γεγόναμεν
παῖδα Περσέος τοῦ Δανάης, γεγονότα

to the leadership they had themselves been commissioned to make reply, and did in fact say this, namely that they had two kings, while the Argives had one; and it was not possible to remove either of the two who were of Sparta from the leadership, but there was nothing to prevent the Argive king from having an equal vote with each of their two. Then, say the Argives, they could not endure the grasping selfishness of the Spartans, but chose to be ruled by the Barbarians rather than to yield at all to the Lacedemonians; and they gave notice to the envoys to depart out of the territory of the Argives before sunset, or, if not, they would be dealt with as enemies.

7.150

The Argives themselves report so much about these matters: but there is another story reported in Hellas to the effect that Xerxes sent a herald to Argos before he set forth to make an expedition against Hellas, and this herald, they say, when he had come, spoke as follows: “Men of Argos, king Xerxes says to you these things:—We hold that Perses, from whom we are descended, was the son of Perseus, the son of Danae, and was born of the daughter of

*vocabulary***ἀντίξοος** opposed to**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise

~angel

ἀπόγονος descended from

Ἕλληνα Greek

εὖς good, brave, noble**ἡσυχία** peace and quiet**μεταδίδωμι** give part of ~donate**μεταιτέω** demand one's share; beg from**ὄον** ὄν type of fruit**οὐδαμὸς** not anyone**παραχρῆμα** on the spot**πρόγονος** elder, ancestor ~genus**πρόφασις** -εως (f) pretext; motive;

prediction ~fame

σοῦσον lily**συνπίτνω** fall together, happen**τιμωρέω** (ι) (+dat) take vengeance,

punish; aid one who has been attacked

ἐκ τῆς Κηφέας θυγατρὸς Ἀνδρομέδης. οὕτω ἂν ὦν εἶημεν ὑμέτεροι ἀπόγονοι. οὔτε ὦν ἡμέας οἶκός ἐπὶ τοὺς ἡμετέρους προγόνους στρατεύεσθαι, οὔτε ὑμέας ἄλλοισι τιμωρόντας ἡμῖν ἀντιξόους γίνεσθαι, ἀλλὰ παρ' ὑμῖν αὐτοῖσι ἡσυχίην ἔχοντας κατῆσθαι. ἦν γὰρ ἐμοὶ γένηται κατὰ νόον, οὐδαμὸς μέζονας ὑμέων ἄξω.» ταῦτα ἀκούσαντας Ἀργεῖους λέγεται πρῆγμα ποιήσασθαι, καὶ παραχρῆμα μὲν οὐδὲν ἐπαγγελλομένους μεταίτεειν, ἐπεὶ δὲ σφέας παραλαμβάνειν τοὺς Ἕλληνας, οὕτω δὲ ἐπισταμένους ὅτι οὐ μεταδώσουσι τῆς ἀρχῆς Λακεδαιμόνιοι μεταίτεειν, ἵνα ἐπὶ προφάσιος ἡσυχίην ἄγωσι.

7.151

συμπεσεῖν δὲ τούτοις καὶ τόνδε τὸν λόγον λέγουσι τινὲς Ἑλλήνων πολλοῖσι ἔτεσι ὕστερον γενόμενον τούτων. τυχεῖν ἐν Σούσοις τοῖσι Μεμνονίοις ἐόντας ἐτέρου πρήγματος εἵνεκα ἀγγέλους Ἀθηναίων Καλλίην τε τὸν Ἴππονίκου καὶ τοὺς μετὰ τούτου ἀναβάντας, Ἀργεῖους

ἐκ τῆς Κηφέας θυγατρὸς Ἀνδρομέδης. οὕτω ἂν ὦν
εἶημεν ὑμέτεροι |descended from ὅτε ὦν ἡμέας οἰκὸς ἐπὶ
τοὺς ἡμετέρους |elder, στρατεύεσθαι, οὔτε ὑμέας
|ancestor
ἄλλοισι |take vengeance, ἡμῖν |opposed to γίνεσθαι, ἀλλὰ
|punish, aid
παρ' ὑμῖν αὐτοῖσι |peace and quiet τας κατῆσθαι. ἦν
γὰρ ἐμοὶ γένηται κατὰ νόον, |not anyone μέζονας ὑμέων
ἄξω.» ταῦτα ἀκούσαντας Ἀργεῖους λέγεται πρῆγμα
ποιήσασθαι, καὶ |on the spot μὲν οὐδὲν ἐπαγγελλομένους
|demand one's ἰ δὲ σφέας παραλαμβάνειν τοὺς |Greek
|share; beg from
οὕτω δὴ ἐπισταμένους ὅτι οὐ |give part of τῆς ἀρχῆς
Λακεδαιμόνιοι |demand one's α ἐπὶ |pretext;
|share; beg from |motive;
|prediction
ἄγωσι.
|peace and quiet

7.151

|fall together, δὲ τούτοις καὶ τόνδε τὸν λόγον λέγουσι
|happen
τινὲς |Greek πολλοῖσι ἔτεσι ὕστερον γενόμενον τούτων.
τυχεῖν ἐν |lily τοῖσι Μεμνονίοις ἐόντας ἑτέρου
πρήγματος εἵνεκα ἀγγέλους Ἀθηναίων Καλλίην τε τὸν
Ἴππονίκου καὶ τοὺς μετὰ τούτου ἀναβάντας, Ἀργεῖους

Kepheus, Andromeda; and according to this it would seem that we are descended from you. It is not fitting then that we should go forth on an expedition against those from whom we trace our descent, nor that ye should set yourselves in opposition to us by rendering assistance to others; but it is fitting that ye keep still and remain by yourselves: for if things happen according to my mind, I shall not esteem any people to be of greater consequence than you.” Having heard this the Argives, it is said, considered it a great matter; and therefore at first they made no offer of help nor did they ask for any share; but afterwards, when the Hellenes tried to get them on their side, then, since they knew well that the Lacedemonians would not give them a share in the command, they asked for this merely in order that they might have a pretext for remaining still.

7.151

Also some of the Hellenes report that the following event, in agreement with this account, came to pass many years after these things:—there happened, they say, to be in Susa the city of Memnon envoys of the Athenians come about some other matter, namely Callias the son of Hipponicos and the others who went

*vocabulary***αἰσχρός** shameful**ἀλλάσσω** trade, transform**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp**ἀποφαίνω** display, declare**ἀποφέρω** carry off, carry back ~bear**ἀσπάσιος** gladly, with glad welcome**ἀτρεκής** precise, certain**εἰσφέρω** carry into, carry along ~bear**ἐκκύπτω** peep out**ἐμμένω** stay put, be faithful, fixed**ἐπειρωτάω** consult, ask**ὀφείλω** owe, should, if only**παντάπασι** altogether; yes, certainly**πέλας** near, close**σοῦσον** lily**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient;

agree; (mp) happen ~bear

φίλιος friendly

δὲ τὸν αὐτὸν τοῦτον χρόνον πέμψαντας καὶ τούτους
 ἐς Σοῦσα ἀγγέλους εἰρωτᾶν Ἄρτοξέρξεα τὸν Ξέρξεω
 εἴ σφι ἔτι ἐμμένει ἐθέλουσι τὴν πρὸς Ξέρξην φιλίην
 συνεκράσαντο, ἣ νομιζοίατο πρὸς αὐτοῦ εἶναι πολέμιοι·
 βασιλέα δὲ Ἄρτοξέρξεα μάλιστα ἐμμένειν φάναι, καὶ
 οὐδεμίαν νομίζειν πόλιν Ἄργεος φιλιωτέραν.

7.152

εἰ μὲν νυν Ξέρξης τε ἀπέπεμψε ταῦτα λέγοντα κήρυκα
 ἐς Ἄργος καὶ Ἀργείων ἄγγελοι ἀναβάντες ἐς Σοῦσα
 ἐπειρώτων Ἄρτοξέρξεα περὶ φιλίας, οὐκ ἔχω ἀτρεκέως
 εἰπεῖν, οὐδέ τινα γνώμην περὶ αὐτῶν ἀποφαίνομαι ἄλλην
 γὰρ ἢ τὴν περ αὐτοῖς Ἀργεῖοι λέγουσι· ἐπίσταμαι δὲ
 τοσοῦτο ὅτι εἰ πάντες ἄνθρωποι τὰ οἰκῆα κακὰ ἐς μέσον
 συνενείκαιεν ἀλλάξασθαι βουλόμενοι τοῖσι πλησίοις,
 ἐγκύψαντες ἂν ἐς τὰ τῶν πέλας κακὰ ἀσπασίως ἕκαστοι
 αὐτῶν ἀποφεροίατο ὀπίσω τὰ ἐσενεκαίατο. οὕτω δὲ οὐδ'
 Ἀργείοις αἰσχιστα πεποίηται. ἐγὼ δὲ ὀφείλω λέγειν τὰ
 λεγόμενα, πείθεσθαι γὰρ μὲν οὐ παντάπασιν

δὲ τὸν αὐτὸν τοῦτον χρόνον πέμψαντας καὶ τούτους
 ἐς |lily ἀγγέλους εἰρωτᾶν Ἀρτοξέρξεα τὸν Ξέρξεω
 εἴ σφι ἔτι |stay put, be'ουσι τὴν πρὸς Ξέρξην |friendly
 |faithful, fixed
 συνεκεράσαντο, ἣ νομιζοίατο πρὸς αὐτοῦ εἶναι πολέμιοι·
 βασιλέα δὲ Ἀρτοξέρξεα μάλιστα |stay put, be'ναι, καὶ
 |faithful, fixed
 οὐδεμίαν νομίζειν πόλιν Ἀργεος |friendly .

7.152

εἰ μὲν νυν Ξέρξης τε |send away ταῦτα λέγοντα κήρυκα
 ἐς Ἄργος καὶ Ἀργείων ἄγγελοι ἀναβάντες ἐς |lily
 |consult, ask Ἀρτοξέρξεα περὶ |friendly οὐκ ἔχω |precise,
 |certain
 εἰπεῖν, οὐδέ τινα γνώμην περὶ αὐτῶν |display, declare ἄλλην
 γε ἢ τὴν περ αὐτοὶ Ἀργεῖοι λέγουσι· ἐπίσταμαι δὲ
 τοσοῦτο ὅτι εἰ πάντες ἄνθρωποι τὰ οἰκῆα κακὰ ἐς μέσον
 συνενείκαιεν |trade, βουλόμενοι τοῖσι πλησίοις,
 |transform
 |peep out ἂν ἐς τὰ τῶν |near, κακὰ |glad, welcoming· |στοι
 |close
 αὐτῶν |carry off ὀπίσω τὰ |carry into, οὕτω δὲ οὐδ'
 |carry along
 Ἀργείοις |shameful πεποιήται. ἐγὼ δὲ |owe, should, if only
 λεγόμενα, πείθεσθαι γε μὲν οὐ |altogether;
 |yes, certainly

up with him; and the Argives at that very time had also sent envoys to Susa, and these asked Artoxerxes the son of Xerxes, whether the friendship which they had formed with Xerxes still remained unbroken, if they themselves desired to maintain it, or whether they were esteemed by him to be enemies; and king Artoxerxes said that it most certainly remained unbroken, and that there was no city which he considered to be more his friend than Argos.

7.152

Now whether Xerxes did indeed send a herald to Argos saying that which has been reported, and whether envoys of the Argives who had gone up to Susa inquired of Artoxerxes concerning friendship, I am not able to say for certain; nor do I declare any opinion about the matters in question other than that which the Argives themselves report: but I know this much, that if all the nations of men should bring together into one place the evils which they have suffered themselves, desiring to make exchange with their neighbours, each people of them, when they had examined closely the evils suffered by their fellows, would gladly carry away back with them those which they had brought. Thus it is not the Argives who have acted most basely of all. I however am bound to report that which is reported, though I am

vocabulary

αἰχμή spear point ~acute
ἀπόγονος descended from
διατελέω accomplish; keep doing
 ~apostle
ἐπικαλέω call upon
εὖς good, brave, noble
ἡσάομαι (pass) be weaker, be
 overcome; (active) defeat
κατάγω lead down/home; land
 ~demagogue

κτάομαι acquire, possess
κτίζω found, populate ~oxytocin
λύπη distress
ὄον οὖ type of fruit
ὀφείλω owe, should, if only
Πέρσης Persian
πρόγονος elder, ancestor ~genus
ρόδον rose
στάσις -εως (f) placing; faction
συμμίγνυμι mix with ~mix
τοιόσδε such

ὀφείλω, καί μοι τοῦτο τὸ ἔπος ἔχέτω ἐς πάντα λόγον·
 ἐπεὶ καὶ ταῦτα λέγεται, ὥς ἄρα Ἀργεῖοι ἦσαν οἱ
 ἐπικαλεσάμενοι τὸν Πέρσῃ ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ἐπειδὴ σφι
 πρὸς τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους κακῶς ἡ αἰχμὴ ἐστήκεε, πᾶν
 δὴ βουλόμενοι σφίσι εἶναι πρὸ τῆς παρεούσης λύπης.

7.153

τὰ μὲν περὶ Ἀργείων εἴρηται· ἐς δὲ τὴν Σικελίην ἄλλοι
 τε ἀπίκατο ἄγγελοι ἀπὸ τῶν συμμάχων συμμίζοντες
 Γέλωνι καὶ δὴ καὶ ἀπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων Σύαγρος. τοῦ δὲ
 Γέλωνος τούτου πρόγονος, οἰκήτωρ ὁ ἐν Γέλῃ, ἦν ἐκ νήσου
 Τήλου τῆς ἐπὶ Τριοπίῳ κειμένης· ὃς κτιζομένης Γέλῃς ὑπὸ
 Λινδίων τε τῶν ἐκ Ῥόδου καὶ Ἀντιφήμου οὐκ ἐλείφθη.
 ἀνὰ χρόνον δὲ αὐτοῦ οἱ ἀπόγονοι γενόμενοι ἱροφάνται
 τῶν χθονίων θεῶν διετέλεον ἑόντες, Τηλίνεω ἑνός τευ
 τῶν προγόνων κτησαμένου τρόπῳ τοιῷδε. ἐς Μακτώριον
 πόλιν τὴν ὑπὲρ Γέλῃς οἰκημένην ἔφυγον ἄνδρες Γελῶν
 στάσι ἐσσωθέντες· τούτους ὦν ὁ Τηλίνης κατήγαγε ἐς
 Γέλην, ἔχων οὐδεμίαν ἀνδρῶν δύναμιν ἀλλὰ ἱρὰ τούτων

|owe, should, if only οὗτο τὸ ἔπος ἔχέτω ἐς πάντα λόγον·
 ἐπεὶ καὶ ταῦτα λέγεται, ὥς ἄρα Ἀργεῖοι ἦσαν οἱ
 |call upon τὸν Πέρσην ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ἐπειδὴ σφι
 πρὸς τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους κακῶς ἢ |spear |point ἐστήκεε, πᾶν
 δὴ βουλόμενοι σφίσι εἶναι πρὸ τῆς παρεούσης |distress

7.153

τὰ μὲν περὶ Ἀργείων εἴρηται· ἐς δὲ τὴν Σικελίην ἄλλοι
 τε ἀπίκατο ἄγγελοι ἀπὸ τῶν συμμάχων |mix with
 Γέλωνι καὶ δὴ καὶ ἀπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων Σύαγρος. τοῦ δὲ
 Γέλωνος τούτου |elder, |ancestor , οἰκίτωρ ὁ ἐν Γέλῃ, ἦν ἐκ νήσου
 Τήλου τῆς ἐπὶ Τριοπίῳ κειμένης· ὃς |found, |populate Γέλῃς ὑπὸ
 Λινδίων τε τῶν ἐκ |rose καὶ Ἀντιφήμου οὐκ ἐλείφθη.
 ἀνὰ χρόνον δὲ αὐτοῦ οἱ |descended from ἴμενοι ἱροφάνται
 τῶν χθονίων θεῶν |accomplish; |keep doing ὄντες, Τηλίνεω ἐνός τευ
 τῶν |elder, |ancestor κτησαμένου τρόπῳ |such . ἐς Μακτώριον
 πόλιν τὴν ὑπὲρ Γέλῃς οἰκημένην ἔφυγον ἄνδρες Γελῶν
 |placing; |faction; (pass) be weaker, be over- ὧν ὁ Τηλίνης |lead down/home; land
 |come; (active) defeat
 Γέλην, ἔχων οὐδεμίαν ἀνδρῶν δύναμιν ἀλλὰ ἱρὰ τούτων

not bound altogether to believe it; and let this saying be considered to hold good as regards every narrative in the history: for I must add that this also is reported, namely that the Argives were actually those who invited the Persian to invade Hellas, because their war with the Lacedemonians had had an evil issue, being willing to suffer anything whatever rather than the trouble which was then upon them.

7.153

That which concerns the Argives has now been said: and meanwhile envoys had come to Sicily from the allies, to confer with Gelon, among whom was also Syagros from the Lacedemonians. Now the ancestor of this Gelon, he who was at Gela as a settler, was a native of the island of Telos, which lies off Triopion; and when Gela was founded by the Lindians of Rhodes and by Antiphemos, he was not left behind. Then in course of time his descendants became and continued to be priests of the mysteries of the Earth goddesses, an office which was acquired by Telines one of their ancestors in the following manner:—certain of the men of Gela, being worsted in a party struggle, had fled to Mactorion, the city which stands above Gela: these men Telines brought back to Gela from exile with no force of men but only with the sacred

*vocabulary***ἀναλαμβάνω** take up, recover, resume**ἀνδρηΐη** courage**ἀνδρήϊος** of a man, manly**ἀπόγονος** descended from**γέρας** -ως (n, 3) reward, honor**ἐνθαῦτα** there, here**εὖς** good, brave, noble**θῶμα** a wonder, feeling of surprise

~theater

κατάγω lead down/home; land

~demagogue

κατεργάζομαι achieve; cultivate; get;
kill**κτάομαι** acquire, possess**μαλακός** soft**μουναρχίη** monarchy**οικήτωρ** inhabitant**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**πίσυνος** trusting in, relying on (+dat)**ῥώμη** strength, might**τυραννεύω** be an absolute ruler**τυραννίς** -δος (f) tyranny**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics

τῶν θεῶν· ὅθεν δὲ αὐτὰ ἔλαβε ἢ αὐτὸς ἐκτήσατο, τοῦτο δὲ οὐκ ἔχω εἰπεῖν· τούτοισι δ' ὦν πίσυνος ἐὼν κατήγαγε, ἐπ' ᾧ τε οἱ ἀπόγονοι αὐτοῦ ἱροφάνται τῶν θεῶν ἔσσονται. θῶμά μοι ὦν καὶ τοῦτο γέγονε πρὸς τὰ πυνθάνομαι, κατεργάσασθαι Τηλίνην ἔργον τοσοῦτον· τὰ τοιαῦτα γὰρ ἔργα οὐ πρὸς τοῦ ἅπαντος ἀνδρὸς νενόμικα γίνεσθαι, ἀλλὰ πρὸς ψυχῆς τε ἀγαθῆς καὶ ῥώμης ἀνδρηίης· ὁ δὲ λέγεται πρὸς τῆς Σικελίης τῶν οἰκητόρων τὰ ὑπεναντία τούτων πεφυκέναι θηλυδρίης τε καὶ μαλακώτερος ἀνὴρ.

7.154

οὗτος μὲν νυν ἐκτήσατο τοῦτο τὸ γέρας· Κλεάνδρου δὲ τοῦ Παντάρεος τελευτήσαντος τὸν βίον, ὃς ἐτυράννευσε μὲν Γέλῃς ἐπτὰ ἔτεα, ἀπέθανε δὲ ὑπὸ Σαβύλλου ἀνδρὸς Γελῶν, ἐνθαῦτα ἀναλαμβάνει τὴν μοναρχίην Ἴπποκράτης Κλεάνδρου ἐὼν ἀδελφεός. ἔχοντας δὲ Ἴπποκράτεος τὴν τυραννίδα, ὁ Γέλων ἐὼν Τηλίνεω τοῦ ἱροφάντεω ἀπόγονος, πολλῶν μετ' ἄλλων καὶ Αἰνησιδήμου τοῦ Παταίκου... ὃς ἦν

τῶν θεῶν· ὅθεν δὲ αὐτὰ ἔλαβε ἢ αὐτὸς ἐκτίσατο, τοῦτο
 δὲ οὐκ ἔχω εἰπεῖν· τούτοισι δ' ὦν |trusting ἔων |lead down/home; land
 ἐπ' ᾧ τε οἱ |descended from ὦ ἱροφάνται τῶν θεῶν ἔσσονται.
 |wonder, |surprise, οἱ ὦν καὶ τοῦτο γέγονε πρὸς τὰ πυνθάνομαι,
 |achieve; cultivate; Τηλίνην ἔργον τοσοῦτον· τὰ τοιαῦτα γὰρ
 |get; kill
 ἔργα οὐ πρὸς τοῦ ἅπαντος ἀνδρὸς νενόμικα γίνεσθαι,
 ἀλλὰ πρὸς ψυχῆς τε ἀγαθῆς καὶ |strength, |might, ἰνδρηίης· ὁ δὲ
 λέγεται πρὸς τῆς Σικελίης τῶν |inhabitant τὰ ὑπεναντία
 τούτων πεφυκέναι θηλυδριῆς τε καὶ |soft ἀνῆρ.

7.154

οὗτος μὲν νυν ἐκτίσατο τοῦτο τὸ |reward, Κλεάνδρου δὲ
 |honor
 τοῦ Παντάρεος τελευτήσαντος τὸν βίον, ὃς |be an absolute ruler
 μὲν Γέλῃς ἐπὶ ἔτεα, ἀπέθανε δὲ ὑπὸ Σαβύλλου
 ἀνδρὸς Γελώου, |there, here |take up, re- τὴν |monarchy
 |cover, resume
 Ἴπποκράτης Κλεάνδρου ἐὼν ἀδελφεός. ἔχοντας δὲ
 Ἴπποκράτεος τὴν |tyranny , ὁ Γέλων ἐὼν Τηλίνεω
 τοῦ ἱροφάντεω |descended from ἁλλῶν μετ' ἄλλων καὶ
 Αἰνησιδήμου τοῦ Παταίκου... ὃς ἦν

rites of these goddesses; but from whom he received them, or whether he obtained them for himself, this I am not able to say; trusting in these however, he brought the men back from exile, on the condition that his descendants should be priests of the mysteries of the goddesses. To me it has caused wonder also that Telines should have been able to perform so great a deed, considering that which I am told; for such deeds, I think, are not apt to proceed from every man, but from one who has a brave spirit and manly vigour, whereas Telines is said by the dwellers in Sicily to have been on the contrary a man of effeminate character and rather poor spirit.

7.154

He then had thus obtained the privilege of which I speak: and when Cleander the son of Pantares brought his life to an end, having been despot of Gela for seven years and being killed at last by Sabyllus a man of Gela, then Hippocrates succeeded to the monarchy, who was brother of Cleander. And while Hippocrates was despot, Gelon, who was a descendant of Telines the priest of the mysteries, was spearman of the guard to Hippocrates with many others and among

*vocabulary***ἀποδέχομαι** accept ~doctrine**ἀρχαῖος** ancient, from the beginning

~oligarch

διαφεύγω escape, survive**δορυφόρος** spear-bearing**δουλοσύνη** slavery**ἵππαρχος** horse-ruling (epithet of

Poseidon) ~hippo

καταλαμβάνω seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy**καταλλάσσω** exchange; make up with**λαμπρός** brilliant ~lamp**συχνός** long; many; extensive**τυραννεύω** be an absolute ruler

δορυφόρος Ἴπποκράτεος. μετὰ δὲ οὐ πολλὸν χρόνον δι' ἀρετὴν ἀπεδέχθη πάσης τῆς ἵππου εἶναι ἵππαρχος· πολιορκέοντος γὰρ Ἴπποκράτεος Καλλιπολίτας τε καὶ Ναξίους καὶ Ζαγκλαίους τε καὶ Λεοντίους καὶ πρὸς Συρηκοσίους τε καὶ τῶν βαρβάρων συχνούς, ἀνὴρ ἐφαίνετο ἐν τούτοις τοῖσι πολέμοις ἔων ὁ Γέλων λαμπρότατος. τῶν δὲ εἶπον πολίων τουτέων πλὴν Συρηκουσέων οὐδεμία διέφυγε δουλосύνην πρὸς Ἴπποκράτεος· Συρηκοσίους δὲ Κορίνθιοί τε καὶ Κερκυραῖοι ἐρρύσαντο μάχῃ ἐσσωθέντας ἐπὶ ποταμῷ Ἐλώρῳ, ἐρρύσαντο δὲ οὗτοι ἐπὶ τοῖσιδε καταλλάξαντες, ἐπ' ᾧ τε Ἴπποκράτει Καμάριναν Συρηκοσίους παραδοῦναι. Συρηκοσίων δὲ ἦν Καμάρινα τὸ ἀρχαῖον.

7.155

ὥς δὲ καὶ Ἴπποκράτεια τυραννέσαντα ἴσα ἔτεα τῷ ἀδελφεῷ Κλεάνδρῳ κατέλαβε ἀποθανεῖν πρὸς πόλιν Ὑβλῆν στρατευσάμενον ἐπὶ τοὺς Σικελούς, οὕτω δὲ ὁ Γέλων τῷ

|spear-bearing Ἰπποκράτεος. μετὰ δὲ οὐ πολλὸν χρόνον
 δι' ἀρετὴν |accept πάσης τῆς ἵππου εἶναι |horse-ruling
 πολιορκέοντος γὰρ Ἰπποκράτεος Καλλιπολίτας τε
 καὶ Ναξίους καὶ Ζαγκλαίους τε καὶ Λεοντίους καὶ
 πρὸς Συρηκοσίους τε καὶ τῶν βαρβάρων |long; many;
 |extensive ἀνὴρ ἐφαίνετο ἐν τούτοις τοῖσι πολέμοις ἐὼν ὁ
 Γέλων |brilliant . τῶν δὲ εἶπον πολλῶν τουτέων
 πλὴν Συρηκουσέων οὐδεμία |escape, |slavery
 |survive πρὸς Ἰπποκράτεος· Συρηκοσίους δὲ Κορίνθιοί τε
 καὶ Κερκυραῖοι ἐρρύσαντο μάχῃ ἐσωθέντας ἐπὶ
 ποταμῷ Ἐλώρῳ, ἐρρύσαντο δὲ οὗτοι ἐπὶ τοῖσιδε
 |exchange; make, ἐπ' ᾧ τε Ἰπποκράτει· Καμάριναν
 |up with Συρηκοσίους παραδοῦναι. Συρηκοσίων δὲ ἦν Καμάρινα
 τὸ |ancient, from
 |the beginning

7.155

ὥς δὲ καὶ Ἰπποκράτεια |be an absolute ruler... α ἔτεα τῷ
 ἀδελφεῷ Κλεάνδρῳ |seize, understand, catch, ρὸς πόλιν ὕβλη
 |overtake; (mp) happen στρατευσάμενον ἐπὶ τοὺς Σικελούς, οὕτω δὲ ὁ Γέλων τῷ

them Ainesidemus the son of Pataicos. Then after no long time he was appointed by reason of valour to be commander of the whole cavalry; for when Hippocrates besieged successively the cities of Callipolis, Naxos, Zancle, Leontini, and also Syracuse and many towns of the Barbarians, in these wars Gelon showed himself a most brilliant warrior; and of the cities which I just now mentioned, not one except Syracuse escaped being reduced to subjection by Hippocrates: the Syracusans however, after they had been defeated in battle at the river Eloros, were rescued by the Corinthians and Corcyreans; these rescued them and brought the quarrel to a settlement on this condition, namely that the Syracusans should deliver up Camarina to Hippocrates. Now Camarina used in ancient time to belong to the men of Syracuse.

7.155

Then when it was the fate of Hippocrates also, after having been despot for the same number of years as his brother Cleander, to be killed at the city of Hybla, whither he had gone on an expedition against the Sikelians, then Gelon made a

*vocabulary***ἀποστερέω** despoil, defraud**βλαστάνω** bud, sprout**ἐκπίπτω** fall out of ~petal**ἐπικεράννυμι** (ῥ) mix ~crater**ἐπικρατέω** rule over**ἐπικρατής** overpoweringly, strongly

~democracy

ἐπιτρέπω entrust, decide, allow

~trophy

εὔρημα invention; windfall**κατάγω** lead down/home; land

~demagogue

κατήκοος hearing; obedient**κρατύνω** strengthen**παραυτίκα** immediately**σφέτερος** their**τιμωρέω** (ι) (+dat) take vengeance,

punish; aid one who has been attacked

τρέχω run, spin

λόγω τιμωρέων τοῖσι Ἱπποκράτεος παισὶ Εὐκλείδῃ τε καὶ Κλεάνδρῳ, οὐ βουλομένων τῶν πολιητέων κατηκόων ἔτι εἶναι, τῷ ἔργῳ, ὥς ἐπεκράτησε μάχῃ τῶν Γελῶν, ἦρχε αὐτὸς ἀποστερήσας τοὺς Ἱπποκράτεος παῖδας. μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο τὸ εὔρημα τοὺς γαμόρους καλομένους τῶν Συρηκοσίων ἐκπεσόντας ὑπὸ τε τοῦ δήμου καὶ τῶν σφετέρων δούλων, καλομένων δὲ Κυλλυρίων, ὁ Γέλων καταγαγὼν τούτους ἐκ Κασμένης πόλιος ἐς τὰς Συρηκούσας ἔσχε καὶ ταύτας· ὁ γὰρ δῆμος ὁ τῶν Συρηκοσίων ἐπιόντι Γέλωνι παραδιδοῖ τὴν πόλιν καὶ ἑωυτόν.

7.156

ὁ δὲ ἐπεῖτε παρέλαβε τὰς Συρηκούσας, Γέλῃς μὲν ἐπικρατέων λόγον ἐλάσσω ἐποιέετο, ἐπιτρέψας αὐτὴν Ἰέρωνι ἀδελφεῷ ἑωυτοῦ, ὁ δὲ τὰς Συρηκούσας ἐκράτυνε, καὶ ἦσαν οἱ πάντα αἱ Συρήκουσαι· αἱ δὲ παραντίκα ἀνά τ' ἔδραμον καὶ ἔβλαστον. τοῦτο μὲν γὰρ Καμαριναίους ἅπαντας ἐς τὰς Συρηκούσας ἀγαγὼν

λόγῳ |take vengeance, punish, aid, τι Ἰπποκράτεος παισὶ Εὐκλείδῃ τε
 καὶ Κλεάνδρῳ, οὐ βουλομένων τῶν πολιητέων |hearing; obedient
 ἔτι εἶναι, τῷ ἔργῳ, ὥς |rule over μάχῃ τῶν Γελῶν,
 ἦρχε αὐτὸς |despoil, defraud τοὺς Ἰπποκράτεος παῖδας.
 μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο τὸ |invention; οὐς γαμόρους καλεομένους
 |windfall
 τῶν Συρηκοσίων |fall out of ὑπὸ τε τοῦ δήμου καὶ
 τῶν |their δούλων, καλεομένων δὲ Κυλλυρίων, ὁ
 Γέλων |lead down/home; land ἐκ Κασμένης πόλιος ἐς τὰς
 Συρηκούσας ἔσχε καὶ ταύτας· ὁ γὰρ δῆμος ὁ τῶν
 Συρηκοσίων ἐπιόντι Γέλωνι παραδιδοῖ τὴν πόλιν καὶ
 ἑωυτόν.

7.156

ὁ δὲ ἐπεῖτε παρέλαβε τὰς Συρηκούσας, Γέλῃς μὲν
 ἐπικρατέων λόγον ἐλάσσω ἐποιέετο, |entrust, de- αὐτὴν
 |cide, allow
 Ἰέρωνι ἀδελφεῷ ἑωυτοῦ, ὁ δὲ τὰς Συρηκούσας |strengthen,
 καὶ ἦσαν οἱ πάντα αἱ Συρήκουσαι· αἱ δὲ |immediately ἀνά
 τ' |run, spin καὶ |bud, sprout τοῦτο μὲν γὰρ Καμαριναίους
 ἅπαντας ἐς τὰς Συρηκούσας ἀγαγὼν

pretence of helping the sons of Hippocrates, Eucleides and Cleander, when the citizens were no longer willing to submit; but actually, when he had been victorious in a battle over the men of Gela, he robbed the sons of Hippocrates of the power and was ruler himself. After this stroke of fortune Gelon restored those of the Syracusans who were called “land-holders,” after they had been driven into exile by the common people and by their own slaves, who were called Kylyrians, these, I say, he restored from the city of Casmene to Syracuse, and so got possession of this last city also, for the common people of Syracuse, when Gelon came against them, delivered up to him their city and themselves.

7.156

So after he had received Syracuse into his power, he made less account of Gela, of which he was ruler also in addition, and he gave it in charge to Hieron his brother, while he proceeded to strengthen Syracuse. So forthwith that city rose and shot up to prosperity; for in the first place he brought all those of Camarina to Syracuse and

*vocabulary***διακρίνω** (ιῖ) separate, sort ~critic**Ἕλλην** Greek**ἐξαγωγή** going out, export**μεταίτιος** accessory**ὁμολογίη** agreement, consent**παχύς** thick, stout, clotted ~pachyderm**προσδέχομαι** await, expect; suppose**προσδοκάω** expect**προσχωρέω** go to, join, support**τύραννος** tyrant**ὕπερήμεισυς** mostly

πολιήτας ἐποίησε, Καμαρίνης δὲ τὸ ἄστυ κατέσκαψε, τοῦτο δὲ Γελῶν ὑπερημίσεας τῶν ἀστών τῶντὸ τοῖσι Καμαριναίοισι ἐποίησε· Μεγαρέας τε τοὺς ἐν Σικελίῃ, ὥς πολιορκεόμενοι ἐς ὁμολογίην προσεχώρησαν, τοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν παχέας, ἀειραμένους τε πόλεμον αὐτῷ καὶ προσδοκῶντας ἀπολέσθαι διὰ τοῦτο, ἀγαγὼν ἐς τὰς Συρηκούσας πολιήτας ἐποίησε· τὸν δὲ δῆμον τῶν Μεγαρέων οὐκ ἐόντα μεταίτιον τοῦ πολέμου τούτου οὐδὲ προσδεκόμενον κακὸν οὐδὲν πείσεσθαι, ἀγαγὼν καὶ τούτους ἐς τὰς Συρηκούσας ἀπέδοτο ἐπ' ἐξαγωγῇ ἐκ Σικελίης. τῶντὸ δὲ τοῦτο καὶ Εὐβοέας τοὺς ἐν Σικελίῃ ἐποίησε διακρίνας. ἐποίεε δὲ ταῦτα τούτους ἀμφοτέρους νομίσας δῆμον εἶναι συνοίκημα ἀχαριτώτατον.

7.157

τοιούτῳ μὲν τρόπῳ τύραννος ἐγεγόνεε μέγας ὁ Γέλων· τότε δ' ὥς οἱ ἄγγελοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἀπίκατο ἐς τὰς Συρηκούσας, ἐλθόντες αὐτῷ ἐς λόγους ἔλεγον τάδε. «ἔπεμψαν ἡμέας Λακεδαιμόνιοι καὶ οἱ τούτων σύμμαχοι

πολιήτας ἐποίησε, Καμαρίνης δὲ τὸ ἄστν κατέσκαψε,
 τοῦτο δὲ Γελῶν |mostly τῶν ἀστῶν τῶντὸ τοῖσι
 Καμαριναίοισι ἐποίησε· Μεγαρέας τε τοὺς ἐν Σικελίῃ,
 ὡς πολιορκέομενοι ἐς |agreement, |go to, join, support τοὺς
 |consent
 μὲν αὐτῶν |thick, stout, |ειραμένους τε πόλεμον αὐτῶ
 |clotted
 καὶ |expect ἀπολέεσθαι διὰ τοῦτο, ἀγαγὼν ἐς
 τὰς Συρηκούσας πολιήτας ἐποίησε· τὸν δὲ δῆμον τῶν
 Μεγαρέων οὐκ ἔοντα |accessory τοῦ πολέμου τούτου
 οὐδὲ |await, expect; κακὸν οὐδὲν πείσεσθαι, ἀγαγὼν καὶ
 |suppose
 τούτους ἐς τὰς Συρηκούσας ἀπέδοτο ἐπ' |going out, export
 Σικελίης. τῶντὸ δὲ τοῦτο καὶ Εὐβοέας τοὺς ἐν Σικελίῃ
 ἐποίησε |separate, sort ἵποιε δὲ ταῦτα τούτους ἀμφοτέρους
 νομίσας δῆμον εἶναι συνοίκημα ἀχαριτώτατον.

7.157

τοιούτῳ μὲν τρόπῳ |tyrant ἐγεγόνεε μέγας ὁ Γέλων·
 τότε δ' ὡς οἱ ἄγγελοι τῶν |Greek ἀπίκατο ἐς τὰς
 Συρηκούσας, ἐλθόντες αὐτῷ ἐς λόγους ἔλεγον τάδε.
 «ἔπεμψαν ἡμέας Λακεδαιμόνιοι καὶ οἱ τούτων σύμμαχοι

made them citizens, and razed to the ground the city of Camarina; then secondly he did the same to more than half of the men of Gela, as he had done to those of Camarina: and as regards the Megarians of Sicily, when they were besieged and had surrendered by capitulation, the well to do men of them, though they had stirred up war with him and expected to be put to death for this reason, he brought to Syracuse and made them citizens, but the common people of the Megarians, who had no share in the guilt of this war and did not expect that they would suffer any evil, these also he brought to Syracuse and sold them as slaves to be carried away from Sicily: and the same thing he did moreover to the men of Euboia in Sicily, making a distinction between them: and he dealt thus with these two cities because he thought that a body of commons was a most unpleasant element in the State.

7.157

In the manner then which has been described Gelon had become a powerful despot; and at this time when the envoys of the Hellenes had arrived at Syracuse, they came to speech with him and said as follows: “The Lacedemonians and their allies sent

vocabulary

ἅλῃς crowded; all together
ἄξιόμαχος well matched for war
ἐλάχιστος smallest, shortest, fewest
ἐλευθερόω set free
ἐπάγω drive game; induce belief
 ~demagogue
ζεύγνυμι (ῥ) yoke, join ~zygote
καταπροδίδωμι betray completely
καταστρέφω overturn, subdue
 ~catastrophe
μέτεimi be among, go, follow ~ion
οὐκί intensified 'not'

πάντως by all means
πέρθω sack, ravage, plunder
Πέρσης Persian
πρόσχημα -τος (n, 3) screen, pretext, appearance, ornament
στρατηλατέω lead an army
στρατός common people/soldiers
 ~strategy
συνελευθερόω join in freeing from
τιμωρέω (ι) (+dat) take vengeance, punish; aid one who has been attacked
ὕγιαίνω be healthy

παραλαμφομένους σε πρὸς τὸν βάρβαρον· τὸν γὰρ
 ἐπιόντα ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα πάντως κου πυνθάνεαι,
 ὅτι Πέρσης ἀνὴρ μέλλει, ζεύξας τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον
 καὶ ἐπάγων πάντα τὸν ἡῶν στρατὸν ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας,
 στρατηλατήσειν ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, πρόσχημα μὲν
 ποιούμενος ὡς ἐπ' Ἀθήνας ἐλαύνει, ἐν νόῳ δὲ ἔχων πᾶσαν
 τὴν Ἑλλάδα ὑπ' ἐωυτῷ ποιήσασθαι. σὺ δὲ δυνάμιός
 τε γὰρ ἦκεις μεγάλως καὶ μοῖρά τοι τῆς Ἑλλάδος οὐκ
 ἐλαχίστη μέτα ἄρχοντί γε Σικελίης, βοήθεέ τε τοῖσι
 ἐλευθεροῦσι τὴν Ἑλλάδα καὶ συνελευθέρου. ἀλῆς μὲν
 γὰρ γενομένη πᾶσα ἡ Ἑλλὰς χεὶρ μεγάλη συνάγεται, καὶ
 ἀξιόμαχοι γινόμεθα τοῖσι ἐπιοῦσι· ἦν δὲ οἱ μὲν ἡμέων
 καταπροδιδῶσι οἱ δὲ μὴ θέλωσι τιμωρέειν, τὸ δὲ ὑγιαῖνον
 τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἦ ὀλίγον, τοῦτο δὲ ἤδη δεινὸν γίνεται
 μὴ πέση πᾶσα ἡ Ἑλλὰς. μὴ γὰρ ἐλπίσης, ἦν ἡμέας
 καταστρέψῃται ὁ Πέρσης μάχῃ κρατήσας, ὡς οὐκ ἦξει
 παρὰ σέ γε, ἀλλὰ πρὸ τούτου φύλαξαι· βοηθέων γὰρ
 ἡμῖν σεωυτῷ τιμωρέεις. τῷ δὲ εὖ βουλευθέντι πρήγματι

παραλαμφομένους σε πρὸς τὸν βάρβαρον· τὸν γὰρ
 ἐπιόντα ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα |by all means...| πυνθάνει,
 ὅτι Πέρσης ἀνὴρ μέλλει, |yoke, join| ὃν Ἑλλήσποντον
 καὶ |drive game; induce belief| ἔντα τὸν ἡῶν |army| ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίης,
 |lead an army| ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, |screen, pretext, appearance, ornament|
 ποιούμενος ὡς ἐπ' Ἀθήνας ἐλαύνει, ἐν νόῳ δὲ ἔχων πᾶσαν
 τὴν Ἑλλάδα ὑπ' ἐνωτῷ ποιήσασθαι. σὺν δὲ δυνάμιος
 τε γὰρ ἥκεις μεγάλως καὶ μοῖρά τοι τῆς Ἑλλάδος οὐκ
 |smallest, shortest, fewest| α ἄρχοντί γε Σικελίης, βοήθεέ τε τοῖσι
 |set free| τὴν Ἑλλάδα καὶ συνελευθέρου. |crowded; all together|
 γὰρ γενομένη πᾶσα ἡ Ἑλλὰς χεῖρ |big, great, marvelous| νάγεται, καὶ
 |well matched for war| τοῖσι ἐπιούσι· ἦν δὲ οἱ μὲν ἡμέων
 |betray completely| οἱ δὲ μὴ θέλωσι |take vengeance, be healthy|
 |punish, aid| τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἢ ὀλίγον, τοῦτο δὲ ἤδη δεινὸν γίνεται
 μὴ πέσῃ πᾶσα ἡ Ἑλλάς. μὴ γὰρ ἐλπίσης, ἦν ἡμέας
 |overturn, subdue| ὁ Πέρσης μάχῃ κρατήσας, ὡς |intensified| 'not'
 παρὰ σέ γε, ἀλλὰ πρὸ τούτου φύλαξαι· βοηθέων γὰρ
 ἡμῖν σεωυτῷ |take vengeance, punish, aid| δὲ εὖ βουλευθέντι πρήγματι

us to get thee to be on our side against the Barbarian; for we suppose that thou art certainly informed of him who is about to invade Hellas, namely that a Persian is designing to bridge over the Hellespont, and to make an expedition against Hellas, leading against us out of Asia all the armies of the East, under colour of marching upon Athens, but in fact meaning to bring all Hellas to subjection under him. Do thou therefore, seeing that thou hast attained to a great power and hast no small portion of Hellas for thy share, being the ruler of Sicily, come to the assistance of those who are endeavouring to free Hellas, and join in making her free; for if all Hellas be gathered together in one, it forms a great body, and we are made a match in fight for those who are coming against us; but if some of us go over to the enemy and others are not willing to help, and the sound portion of Hellas is consequently small, there is at once in this a danger that all Hellas may fall to ruin. For do not thou hope that if the Persian shall overcome us in battle he will not come to thee, but guard thyself against this beforehand; for in coming to our assistance thou art helping thyself; and the matter which is wisely

vocabulary

ἀτιμία (τι) dishonor

βαρβαρικός non-Greek

ἔγκειμαι lie wrapped in

Ἑλλήν Greek

ἐμπόριον immigrant, metic, trading
post

ἐπιγίγνομαι succeed, come after

~genus

ἐπίπαν =ἐπί

ἐπισκήπτω lay something on

ἐτοῖμος ready; fulfilled

Καρχηδόνιος Carthaginian

κυρέω come upon, come up against;
obtain

μνήστις -δος (f) thought, mindfulness

~mnemonic

νεῖκος -εος (n, 3) quarrel, battle

νέμω to allot, to pasture ~nemesis

ὁμοιόω assimilate, liken ~homoerotic

περιέρχομαι go around; come next to

στρατός common people/soldiers

~strategy

στρατόω be on a campaign ~strategy

συνάπτω join, partake; adjoin; consult;
fight ~haptic

συνελευθερόω join in freeing from

τελευτή conclusion, fulfilment ~apostle

τοιόσδε such

χρηστός useful; brave, worthy

ὠφέλεια -ίας profit

τελευτή ὡς τὸ ἐπίπαν χρηστή ἐθέλει ἐπιγίνεσθαι.»

7.158

οἱ μὲν ταῦτα ἔλεγον, Γέλων δὲ πολλὸς ἐνέκειτο λέγων τοιάδε. «ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, λόγον ἔχοντες πλεονέκτην ἐτολμήσατε ἐμὲ σύμμαχον ἐπὶ τὸν βάρβαρον παρακαλέοντες ἔλθεῖν· αὐτοὶ δὲ ἐμεῦ πρότερον δεηθέντος βαρβαρικοῦ στρατοῦ συνεπάψασθαι, ὅτε μοι πρὸς Καρχηδονίους νεῖκος συνήπτο, ἐπισκήπτοντός τε τὸν Δωριέος τοῦ Ἀναξανδρίδew πρὸς Ἐγεσταίων φόνον ἐκπρήξασθαι, ὑποτείνοντός τε τὰ ἐμπόρια συνελευθεροῦν ἀπ' ὧν ὑμῖν μεγάλοι ὠφελίαι τε καὶ ἐπαυρέσιες γεγόνασι, οὔτε ἐμεῦ εἵνεκα ἤλθετε βοηθήσοντες οὔτε τὸν Δωριέος φόνον ἐκπρηξόμενοι, τό τε κατ' ὑμέας τάδε ἅπαντα ὑπὸ βαρβάροισι νέμεται. ἀλλὰ εὖ γὰρ ἡμῖν καὶ ἐπὶ τὸ ἄμεινον κατέστη. νῦν δὲ ἐπειδὴ περιελήλυθε ὁ πόλεμος καὶ ἀπῖκται ἐς ὑμέας, οὕτω δὴ Γέλωνος μνήστις γέγονε. ἀτιμῆς δὲ πρὸς ὑμέων κυρήσας οὐκ ὁμοιώσομαι ὑμῖν, ἀλλ' ἔτοιμος εἰμὶ βοηθεῖν παρεχόμενος διηκοσίας τε

|conclusion, fulfilment|=ἐπί
|useful; brave, worthy|ἐπιγίνεσθαι.»

7.158

οἱ μὲν ταῦτα ἔλεγον, Γέλων δὲ πολλὸς |lie wrapped in
λέγων |such . «ἄνδρες |Greek , λόγον ἔχοντες
πλεονέκτην ἐτολμήσατε ἐμὲ σύμμαχον ἐπὶ τὸν βάρβαρον
παρακαλέοντες ἐλθεῖν· αὐτοὶ δὲ ἐμεῦ πρότερον δεηθέντος
|non-Greek στρατοῦ συνεπάψασθαι, ὅτε μοι πρὸς
Καρχηδονίους |quarrel, |join, par-|lay something on τε τὸν
|battle |take; adjoin;
Δωριέος τοῦ Ἀναξανδριδεῶ |consult; fight πρὸς Ἐγεσταίων φόνον
ἐκπρήξασθαι, ὑποτείνοντός τε τὰ |immi- |join in freeing from
|grant,
ἀπ' ὧν ὑμῖν μεγάλαι |profit τε καὶ ἐπιπράξεις γεγόνασι,
|metic,
οὔτε ἐμεῦ εἵνεκα ἦλθετε βοηθήσοντες οὔτε τὸν Δωριέος
|trading
φόνον ἐκπρηξόμενοι, τό τε κατ' ὑμέας τάδε ἅπαντα ὑπὸ
|post
βαρβάροισι |distribute ἀλλὰ εὖ γὰρ ἡμῖν καὶ ἐπὶ τὸ ἄμεινον
κατέστη. νῦν δὲ ἐπειδὴ |go around; ὁ πόλεμος καὶ ἀπῖκται
|come next to
ἐς ὑμέας, οὕτω δὴ Γέλωνος |thought, , ' ,ονε. ἀτιμίας δὲ
|mindfulness
πρὸς ὑμέων |come upon ἔκ |liken ὑμῖν, ἀλλ' ἑτοιμος
εἰμι βοηθεῖν παρεχόμενος διηκοσίας τε

planned has for the most part a good issue afterwards.”

7.158

The envoys spoke thus; and Gelon was very vehement with them, speaking to them as follows: “Hellenes, a selfish speech is this, with which ye have ventured to come and invite me to be your ally against the Barbarian; whereas ye yourselves, when I in former time requested of you to join with me in fighting against an army of Barbarians, contention having arisen between me and the Carthaginians, and when I charged you to exact vengeance of the men of Egesta for the death of Dorieos the son of Anaxandrides, while at the same time I offered to help in setting free the trading-places, from which great advantages and gains have been reaped by you,—ye, I say, then neither for my own sake came to my assistance, nor in order to exact vengeance for the death of Dorieos; and, so far as ye are concerned, all these parts are even now under the rule of Barbarians. But since it turned out well for us and came to a better issue, now that the war has come round and reached you, there has at last arisen in your minds a recollection of Gelon. However, though I have met with contempt at your hands, I will not act like you; but I am prepared to come to your assistance, supplying two hundred

vocabulary

ἀφαιρέω take away ~heresy
 διαπολεμέω carry a war through
 δικάιόω demand/make justice
 δισμύριοι (ῥ) 20,000
 δισχίλιοι 2000 ~kilo-
 Ἑλλήν Greek
 ἡγεμονία authority, rule
 ἵππóδρομος race track ~hippo

μηκέτι no more
 οἰμῶζω wail
 στρατιά army ~strategy
 σφενδονήτης -ου (m, 1) slinger
 τοιόσδε such
 τοξότης -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic
 ὑπίσχομαι promise, agree to do
 ὑποδέχομαι welcome, accept, suffer
 φιλός (ι) naked, bare ~epsilon

τριήρεας καὶ δισφυρίους ὀπλίτας καὶ δισχιλίην ἵππον
καὶ δισχιλίους τοξότας καὶ δισχιλίους σφενδονήτας καὶ
δισχιλίους ἵπποδρόμους ψιλούς· σῖτόν τε ἀπάσῃ τῇ
Ἑλλήνων στρατιῇ, ἔστ' ἂν διαπολεμήσωμεν, ὑποδέκομαι
παρέξειν. ἐπὶ δὲ λόγῳ τοιῶδε τάδε ὑπίσχομαι, ἐπ' ᾧ
στρατηγός τε καὶ ἡγεμὼν τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔσομαι πρὸς τὸν
βάρβαρον. ἐπ' ἄλλῳ δὲ λόγῳ οὐτ' ἂν αὐτὸς ἔλθοιμι οὐτ'
ἂν ἄλλους πέμψαιμι.»

7.159

ταῦτα ἀκούσας οὐτε ἠνέσχετο ὁ Σύαγρος εἰπέ τε τάδε.
«ἦ κε μέγ' οἰμώξειε ὁ Πελοπίδης Ἀγαμέμνων πυθόμενος
Σπαρτιότηας τὴν ἡγεμονίην ἀπαιρηθῆναι ὑπὸ Γέλωνός
τε καὶ Συρηκοσίων. ἀλλὰ τούτου μὲν τοῦ λόγου μηκέτι
μνησθῆς, ὅκως τὴν ἡγεμονίην τοι παραδώσομεν, ἀλλ'
εἰ μὲν βούλει βοηθέειν τῇ Ἑλλάδι, ἴσθι ἀρξόμενος ὑπὸ
Λακεδαιμονίων· εἰ δ' ἄρα μὴ δικαιοῖς ἄρχεσθαι, σὺ δὲ μηδὲ
βοήθειε.»

τριήρας καὶ |20,000 ὀπλίτας καὶ |2000 ἵππων
καὶ |2000 |archer καὶ |2000 |slinger καὶ
|2000 |race track |naked, bare ἵτόν τε ἀπάσῃ τῇ
|Greek στρατιῇ, ἔστ' ἂν |carry a war through, |welcome, ac-
|cept, suffer
παρέξιν. ἐπὶ δὲ λόγῳ |such τάδε |promise, , ἐπ' ὧ
|agree
στρατηγός τε καὶ ἡγεμῶν τῶν |Greek ἔσομαι πρὸς τὸν
βάρβαρον. ἐπ' ἄλλῳ δὲ λόγῳ οὗτ' ἂν αὐτὸς ἔλθοιμι οὗτ'
ἂν ἄλλους πέμψαιμι.»

7.159

ταῦτα ἀκούσας οὐτε ἠνέσχετο ὁ Σύαγρος εἰπέ τε τάδε.
«ἦ κε μέγ' |wail ὁ Πελοπίδης Ἀγαμέμνων πυθόμενος
Σπαρτιήτας τὴν |authority, |take away ὑπὸ Γέλωνός
|rule
τε καὶ Συρηκοσίων. ἀλλὰ τούτου μὲν τοῦ λόγου |no more
μνησθῆς, ὅκως τὴν |authority, rule « παραδώσομεν, ἀλλ'
εἰ μὲν βούλει βοηθέειν τῇ Ἑλλάδι, ἴσθι ἀρξόμενος ὑπὸ
Λακεδαιμονίων· εἰ δ' ἄρα μὴ |demand/make justice, ἢ δὲ μηδὲ
βοήθεε.»

triremes and twenty thousand hoplites, with two thousand horsemen, two thousand bowmen, two thousand slingers and two thousand light-armed men to run beside the horsemen; and moreover I will undertake to supply corn for the whole army of the Hellenes, until we have finished the war. These things I engage to supply on this condition, namely that I shall be commander and leader of the Hellenes against the Barbarian; but on any other condition I will neither come myself nor will I send others.”

7.159

Hearing this Syagros could not contain himself but spoke these words: “Deeply, I trow, would Agamemnon son of Pelops lament, if he heard that the Spartans had had the leadership taken away from them by Gelon and by the Syracusans. Nay, but make thou no further mention of this condition, namely that we should deliver the leadership to thee; but if thou art desirous to come to the assistance of Hellas, know that thou wilt be under the command of the Lacedemonians; and if thou dost indeed claim not to be under command, come not thou to our help at all.”

*vocabulary***ἀμοιβή** requital, compensation

~amoeba

ἀποδείκνυμι (ὁ) show, point out;

appoint; (mid) declare

ἀποδέχομαι accept ~doctrine**ἀποστρέφω** turn back, turn off course

~atrophy

ἀρέσκω please, satisfy; make amends**ἀρχαῖος** ancient, from the beginning

~oligarch

ἀσχήμων ugly, shameful**γελάω** laugh, smile, laugh at**ἐκφαίνω** bring to light ~photon**ἐπανάγω** sit up, bring up; retreat; set sail**ἐρῆμος** empty**ἐρημώω** raze, bereave; desert, isolate**ἡγεμονεύω** lead ~hegemony**ἡγεμονία** authority, rule**ἡδονή** pleasure**κάτειμι** go down, disembark ~ion**ὄνειδος** -εος (n, 3) blame; insult**περιέχω** (mid) protect**πολλαπλήσιος** many times more**προτείνω** hold out, offer**στρατιά** army ~strategy**τελευταῖος** last, final**τοιόσδε** such**ὕβρισμα** -τος (n, 3) outrage, insolence**ὕποείκω** yield, withdraw**φθάζω** do first, outstrip**φθάνω** (ᾱ) do first, outstrip

7.160

πρὸς ταῦτα ὁ Γέλων, ἐπειδὴ ὥρα ἀπεστραμμένους τοὺς λόγους τοῦ Συνάγρου, τὸν τελευταῖόν σφι τόνδε ἐξέφαινε λόγον. «ὦ ξεῖνε Σπαρτιῆτα, ὀνειδέα κατιόντα ἀνθρώπων φιλέει ἐπανάγειν τὸν θυμόν· σὺ μέντοι ἀποδεξάμενος ὑβρίσματα ἐν τῷ λόγῳ οὗ με πείσεις ἀσχήμονα ἐν τῇ ἀμοιβῇ γενέσθαι. ὅκου δὲ ὑμεῖς οὕτω περιέχεσθε τῆς ἡγεμονίης, οἰκὸς καὶ ἐμὲ μᾶλλον ὑμέων περιέχεσθαι, στρατιῆς τε ἔοντα πολλαπλησίης ἡγεμόνα καὶ νεῶν πολλὸν πλεύνων. ἀλλ' ἐπεῖτε ὑμῖν ὁ λόγος οὕτω προσάντης κατίσταται, ἡμεῖς τι ὑπέιζομεν τοῦ ἀρχαίου λόγου· εἰ τοῦ μὲν πεζοῦ ὑμεῖς ἡγέοισθε, τοῦ δὲ ναυτικοῦ ἐγώ. εἰ δὲ ὑμῖν ἡδονὴ τοῦ κατὰ θάλασσαν ἡγεμονεύειν, τοῦ πεζοῦ ἐγὼ θέλω. καὶ ἢ τούτοισι ὑμέας χρεόν ἐστι ἀρέσκεσθαι ἢ ἀπιέναι συμμάχων τοιῶνδε ἐρήμους.»

7.161

Γέλων μὲν δὴ ταῦτα προετείνετο, φθάσας δὲ ὁ Ἀθηναίων

7.160

To this Gelon, seeing that the speech of Syagros was adverse, set forth to them his last proposal thus: "Stranger from Sparta, reproaches sinking into the heart of a man are wont to rouse his spirit in anger against them; thou however, though thou hast uttered insults against me in thy speech, wilt not bring me to show myself unseemly in my reply. But whereas ye so strongly lay claim to the leadership, it were fitting that I should lay claim to it more than ye, seeing that I am the leader of an army many times as large and of ships many more. Since however this condition is so distasteful to you, we will recede somewhat from our former proposal. Suppose that ye should be leaders of the land-army and I of the fleet; or if it pleases you to lead the sea-forces, I am willing to be leader of those on land; and either ye must be contented with these terms or go away without the alliance which I have to give."

7.161

Gelon, I say, made these offers, and the envoy of the Athenians, answering before

*vocabulary***ἀντιτείνω** resist**ἀπελαύνω** expel, exclude, ward off;
(intrans) ride away**ἀπολογέομαι** defend one's conduct**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp**ἀρχαῖος** ancient, from the beginning
~oligarch**γλίχομαι** cling to, long for**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἐξαρκέω** be enough; be satisfied**εὖς** good, brave, noble**ἐφίημι** (τι) send at, let fly; mp: rush at,
spring upon ~jet**ἡγεμονία** authority, rule**ἡσυχία** peace and quiet**μάτην** in vain, randomly**μετανάστης** -ου (m, 1) outcast
~nostalgia**μίν** him, her, it**ναυαρχέω** be admiral**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**πάραλος** seaside**παραλύω** detach, disable**προφαίνω** show; pass: appear
~photon**στρατηγέω** be a general**στρατιά** army ~strategy**στρατός** common people/soldiers
~strategy**στρατώω** be on a campaign ~strategy**συγχωρέω** accede, concede

ἄγγελος τὸν Λακεδαιμονίων ἀμείβετό μιν τοῖσιδε. «ὦ βασιλεῦ Συρηκοσίων, οὐκ ἡγεμόνος δεομένη ἡ Ἑλλὰς ἀπέπεμψε ἡμέας πρὸς σέ, ἀλλὰ στρατιῆς. σὺ δὲ ὅπως μὲν στρατιὴν πέμψεις μὴ ἡγούμενος τῆς Ἑλλάδος οὐ προφαίνεις, ὥς δὲ στρατηγήσεις αὐτῆς γλίχῃαι. ὅσον μὲν νυν παντὸς τοῦ Ἑλλήνων στρατοῦ ἐδέεο ἡγέεσθαι, ἐξήρκεε ἡμῖν τοῖσι Ἀθηναίοισι ἡσυχίην ἄγειν, ἐπισταμένοισι ὥς ὁ Λάκων ἱκανός τοι ἔμελλε ἔσεσθαι καὶ ὑπὲρ ἀμφοτέρων ἀπολογούμενος· ἐπεῖτε δὲ ἀπάσης ἀπελαννόμενος δέεαι τῆς ναυτικῆς ἄρχειν, οὕτω ἔχει τοι· οὐδ' ἦν ὁ Λάκων ἐπιῇ τοι ἄρχειν αὐτῆς, ἡμεῖς ἐπήσομεν· ἡμετέρη γὰρ ἐστὶ αὕτη γε, μὴ αὐτῶν βουλομένων Λακεδαιμονίων. τούτοισι μὲν ὦν ἡγέεσθαι βουλομένοισι οὐκ ἀντιτείνομεν, ἄλλω δὲ παρήσομεν οὐδενὶ ναυαρχείειν. μάτην γὰρ ἂν ὦδε πάραλον Ἑλλήνων στρατὸν πλείστον εἴημεν ἐκτημένοι, εἰ Συρηκοσίοισι ἐόντες Ἀθηναῖοι συγχωρήσομεν τῆς ἡγεμονίης, ἀρχαιότατον μὲν ἔθνος παρεχόμενοι, μῦνοι δὲ ἐόντες οὐ μετανάσται Ἑλλήνων· τῶν καὶ Ὅμηρος ὁ

ἄγγελος τὸν Λακεδαιμονίων ἀμείβετό μιν τοῖσιδε. «ὦ
 βασιλεῦ Συρηκοσίων, οὐκ ἡγεμόνος δεομένη ἡ Ἑλλὰς
 |send away ἡμέας πρὸς σέ, ἀλλὰ στρατιῆς. σὺ δὲ ὅπως
 μὲν στρατιὴν πέμψεις μὴ ἡγεύμενος τῆς Ἑλλάδος οὐ
 |show; pass: appear⁷ |be a general αὐτῆς |cling to, long for, ἐν
 νυν παντὸς τοῦ |Greek στρατοῦ ἐδέεο ἡγέεσθαι, |be enough;
 |be satisfied
 ἡμῖν τοῖσι Ἀθηναίοισι |peace and quiet, ἐπισταμένοισι ὥς ὁ
 Λάκων ἰκανός τοι ἔμελλε ἔσεσθαι καὶ ὑπὲρ ἀμφοτέρων
 |defend one's conduct⁸ εἴτε δὲ ἀπάσης |expel, exclude, ward off; (intrans) ride
 |away
 τῆς ναυτικῆς ἄρχειν, οὕτω ἔχει τοι· οὐδ' ἦν ὁ Λάκων
 ἐπιῆ τοι ἄρχειν αὐτῆς, ἡμεῖς |send flying at⁹, μετέρη γὰρ ἐστὶ
 αὕτη γε, μὴ αὐτῶν βουλομένων Λακεδαιμονίων. τούτοις
 μὲν ὦν ἡγέεσθαι βουλομένοις οὐκ |resist, ἄλλω
 δὲ παρήσομεν οὐδενὶ |be admiral. μάτην γὰρ ἂν ὦδε
 πάραλον |Greek |army πλείστον εἴημεν ἐκτημένοι,
 εἰ Συρηκοσίοις ἐόντες Ἀθηναῖοι |accede, concede τῆς
 |authority, |ancient, from μὲν ἔθνος παρεχόμενοι, μῦνοι δὲ
 |rule |the beginning
 ἐόντες οὐ |outcast |Greek τῶν καὶ Ὅμηρος ὁ

that of the Lacedemonians, replied to him as follows: "O king of the Syracusans, it was not of a leader that Hellas was in want when it sent us to thee, but of an army. Thou however dost not set before us the hope that thou wilt send an army, except thou have the leadership of Hellas; and thou art striving how thou mayest become commander of the armies of Hellas. So long then as it was thy demand to be leader of the whole army of the Hellenes, it was sufficient for us Athenians to keep silence, knowing that the Lacedemonian would be able to make defence even for us both; but now, since being repulsed from the demand for the whole thou art requesting to be commander of the naval force, we tell that thus it is:—not even if the Lacedemonian shall permit thee to be commander of it, will we permit thee; for this at least is our own, if the Lacedemonians do not themselves desire to have it. With these, if they desire to be the leaders, we do not contend; but none others beside ourselves shall we permit to be in command of the ships: for then to no purpose should we be possessors of a sea-force larger than any other which belongs to the Hellenes, if, being Athenians, we should yield the leadership to Syracusans, we who boast of a race which is the most ancient of all and who are of all the Hellenes the only people who have not changed from one land to another; to whom also belonged a man

*vocabulary***ἄγγέλλω** carry a message, announce

~angel

ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be freed, depart**διακοσμέω** marshal ~cosmos**δόκιμος** trustworthy; excellent**ἔαρ** -ος (n) spring (season)**εἰκάζω** liken; conjecture**Ἑλλην** Greek**ἐξαιρέω** pick, steal; dedicate; destroy

~heresy

ἐποποιός epic poet**εὖς** good, brave, noble**ὄνειδος** -εος (n, 3) blame; insult**ὄον** οὗ type of fruit**στερέω** steal, take**στρατιά** army ~strategy**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

συμμαχία alliance**ὕφίημι** lower; admit; slack off ~jet**φθάνω** (ᾱ) do first, outstrip

ἐποποιὸς ἄνδρα ἄριστον ἔφησε ἐς Ἴλιον ἀπικέσθαι τάξαι
τε καὶ διακοσμήσαι στρατόν. οὕτω οὐκ ὄνειδος οὐδὲν ἡμῖν
ἐστι λέγειν ταῦτα.»

7.162

ἀμείβετο Γέλων τοῖσιδε. «ξείνε Ἀθηναῖε, ὑμεῖς οἴκατε
τοὺς μὲν ἄρχοντας ἔχειν, τοὺς δὲ ἀρξομένους οὐκ ἔχειν.
ἐπεὶ τοίνυν οὐδὲν ὑπιέντες ἔχειν τὸ πᾶν ἐθέλετε, οὐκ
ἂν φθάνοιτε τὴν ταχίστην ὀπίσω ἀπαλλασσόμενοι καὶ
ἀγγέλλοντες τῇ Ἑλλάδι ὅτι ἐκ τοῦ ἐνιαυτοῦ τὸ ἔαρ
αὐτῇ ἐξαραιρήται.» οὗτος δὲ ὁ νόος τοῦ ῥήματος τὸ
ἐθέλει λέγειν· δηλα γὰρ ὡς ἐν τῷ ἐνιαυτῷ ἐστὶ τὸ
ἔαρ δοκιμώτατον, τῆς δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατιῆς τὴν
έωντοῦ στρατιήν· στερισκομένην ὦν τὴν Ἑλλάδα τῆς
έωντοῦ συμμαχίης εἵκαζε ὡς εἰ τὸ ἔαρ ἐκ τοῦ ἐνιαυτοῦ
ἐξαραιρημένον εἴη.

7.163

οἱ μὲν δὴ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἄγγελοι τοιαῦτα τῷ Γέλωνι

|epic poet ἄνδρα ἄριστον ἔφησε ἐς Ἴλιον ἀπικέσθαι τάξαι
 τε καὶ |marshal |army οὕτω οὐκ |blame; οὐδὲν ἡμῖν
 |insult
 ἐστι λέγειν ταῦτα.»

7.162

ἀμείβετο Γέλων τοῖσιδε. «ξεῖνε Ἀθηναίε, ὑμεῖς οἴκατε
 τοὺς μὲν ἄρχοντας ἔχειν, τοὺς δὲ ἀρξομένους οὐκ ἔξειν.
 ἐπεὶ τοίνυν οὐδὲν |lower; admit; εἰν τὸ πᾶν ἐθέλετε, οὐκ
 |slack off
 ἂν |be first τὴν ταχίστην ὀπίσω |free from, remove; καὶ
 |be freed, depart
 |carry a message, τῇ Ἑλλάδι ὅτι ἐκ τοῦ ἐνιαυτοῦ τὸ |spring (season)
 |announce
 αὐτῇ |pick, steal; dedi- οὗτος δὲ ὁ νόος τοῦ ῥήματος τὸ
 |cate; destroy
 ἐθέλει λέγειν· δηλα γὰρ ὡς ἐν τῷ ἐνιαυτῷ ἐστὶ τὸ
 |spring; trustworthy; , τῆς δὲ τῶν |Greek στρατιῆς τὴν
 (sea-|excellent
 son)
 ἐωυτοῦ στρατιήν· στερισκομένην ὦν τὴν Ἑλλάδα τῆς
 ἐωυτοῦ συμμαχίης |liken; εἰ τὸ |spring (season)᾽ |αυτοῦ
 |conjecture
 |pick, steal; dedi- εἴη.
 |cate; destroy

7.163

οἱ μὲν δὴ τῶν |Greek ἄγγελοι τοιαῦτα τῷ Γέλωνι

whom Homer the Epic poet said was the best of all who came to Ilion in drawing up an army and setting it in array. Thus we are not justly to be reproached if we say these things.”

7.162

To this Gelon made answer thus: “Stranger of Athens, it would seem that ye have the commanders, but that ye will not have the men to be commanded. Since then ye will not at all give way, but desire to have the whole, it were well that ye should depart home as quickly as possible and report to the Hellenes that the spring has been taken out of their year.” Now this is the meaning of the saying:—evidently the spring is the noblest part of the year; and so he meant to say that his army was the noblest part of the army of the Hellenes: for Hellas therefore, deprived of his alliance, it was, he said, as if the spring had been taken out of the year.

7.163

The envoys of the Hellenes, having thus had conference with Gelon, sailed away; and Gelon upon

vocabulary

ἀμελέω disregard; (impers.) of course
ἀνασχετός enduring
ἀπάγω lead away, back ~demagogue
ἀποπλέω sail away ~float
διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis
ἐκών willingly, on purpose; giving in
 too easily
Ἕλλην Greek
καραδοκέω (ᾱ) wait for the outcome of

κατατίθηναι put down, deposit, lay
 aside ~thesis
παραδείκνυμι (ο) receive, admit
πεντηκόντερος (f) ship with 50 oars
Πέρσης Persian
τυραννίς -δος (f) tyranny
τύραννος tyrant
ὑπερβάλλω cause to go beyond; delay
 ~ballistic
φίλιος friendly

χρηματισάμενοι ἀπέπλεον· Γέλων δὲ πρὸς ταῦτα δείσας
 μὲν περὶ τοῖσι Ἑλλησι μὴ οὐ δύνανται τὸν βάρβαρον
 ὑπερβαλέσθαι, δεινὸν δὲ καὶ οὐκ ἀνασχετὸν ποιησάμενος
 ἐλθὼν ἐς Πελοπόννησον ἄρχεσθαι ὑπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων
 ἐὼν Σικελίης τύραννος, ταύτην μὲν τὴν ὁδὸν ἡμέλησε,
 ὁ δὲ ἄλλης εἵχετο. ἐπεῖτε γὰρ τάχιστα ἐπύθετο
 τὸν Πέρσῃν διαβεβηκότα τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον, πέμπει
 πεντηκοντέροισι τρισὶ Κάδμον τὸν Σκύθεω ἄνδρα Κῶον
 ἐς Δελφούς, ἔχοντα χρήματα πολλὰ καὶ φιλίους λόγους,
 καραδοκήσοντα τὴν μάχην τῇ πεσέεται, καὶ ἣν μὲν ὁ
 βάρβαρος νικᾷ, τά τε χρήματα αὐτῷ διδόναι καὶ γῆν τε
 καὶ ὕδωρ τῶν ἄρχει ὁ Γέλων, ἣν δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες, ὀπίσω
 ἀπάγειν.

7.164

ὁ δὲ Κάδμος οὗτος πρότερον τούτων παραδεξάμενος παρὰ
 πατρὸς τυραννίδα Κῶων εὖ βεβηκυῖαν, ἐκὼν τε εἶναι καὶ
 δεινοῦ ἐπιόντος οὐδενὸς ἀλλὰ ὑπὸ δικαιοσύνης ἐς μέσον
 Κῶοισι καταθεὶς τὴν ἀρχὴν οἶχετο ἐς Σικελίην,

χρηματισάμενοι |sail away Γέλων δὲ πρὸς ταῦτα δείσας
 μὲν περὶ τοῖσι |Greek μὴ οὐ δύνωνται τὸν βάρβαρον
 |cause to go be-, δεινὸν δὲ καὶ οὐκ |endurable ποιησάμενος
 |yond; delay ἐλθὼν ἐς Πελοπόννησον ἄρχεσθαι ὑπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων
 ἐὼν Σικελίης |tyrant , ταύτην μὲν τὴν ὁδὸν |disregard ,
 ὁ δὲ ἄλλης εἵχετο. ἐπεῖτε γὰρ τάχιστα ἐπύθετο
 τὸν Πέρσην |pass over, cross τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον, πέμπει
 |ship with 50 oars τρισὶ Κάδμον τὸν Σκύθειω ἄνδρα Κῶνον
 ἐς Δελφούς, ἔχοντα χρήματα πολλὰ καὶ |friendly λόγους,
 |wait for the out- τὴν μάχην τῇ πεσέεται, καὶ ἦν μὲν ὁ
 |come of βάρβαρος νικᾷ, τά τε χρήματα αὐτῷ διδόναι καὶ γῆν τε
 καὶ ὕδωρ τῶν ἄρχει ὁ Γέλων, ἦν δὲ οἱ |Greek , ὁπίσω
 |lead away, back

7.164

ὁ δὲ Κάδμος οὗτος πρότερον τούτων παραδεξάμενος παρὰ
 πατρὸς |tyranny Κῶων εὖ βεβηκυῖαν, |willingly εἶναι καὶ
 δεινοῦ ἐπιόντος οὐδενὸς ἀλλὰ ὑπὸ δικαιοσύνης ἐς μέσον
 Κῶοισι |put down τὴν ἀρχὴν οἵχετο ἐς Σικελίην,

this, fearing on the one hand about the Hellenes, lest they should not be able to overcome the Barbarian, and on the other hand considering it monstrous and not to be endured that he should come to Peloponnesus and be under the command of the Lacedemonians, seeing that he was despot of Sicily, gave up the thought of this way and followed another: for so soon as he was informed that the Persian had crossed over the Hellespont, he sent Cadmos the son of Skythes, a man of Cos, with three fifty-oared galleys to Delphi, bearing large sums of money and friendly proposals, to wait there and see how the battle would fall out: and if the Barbarian should be victorious, he was to give him the money and also to offer him earth and water from those over whom Gelon had rule; but if the Hellenes should be victorious, he was bidden to bring it back.

7.164

Now this Cadmos before these events, having received from his father in a prosperous state the government of the people of Cos, had voluntarily and with no danger threatening, but moved merely by uprightness of nature, placed the government in the hands of the people

*vocabulary***ἀπελαύνω** expel, exclude, ward off;

(intrans) ride away

ἐλάχιστος smallest, shortest, fewest**Ἕλληγν** Greek**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic**ἐπάγω** drive game; induce belief

~demagogue

ἐπικρατέω rule over**ἐπιτρέπω** entrust, decide, allow

~trophy

μεταβάλλω alter, transform**μούναρχος** monarch**ναυμαχία** naval warfare**σύνοιδα** know about someone; think

proper

τύραννος tyrant

ἔνθα παρὰ Σαμίων ἔσχε τε καὶ κατοίκησε πόλιν
 Ζάγκλην τὴν ἐς Μεσσήνην μεταβαλοῦσαν τὸ οὔνομα.
 τοῦτον δὴ ὁ Γέλων τὸν Κάδμον καὶ τοιούτῳ τρόπῳ
 ἀπικόμενον διὰ δικαιοσύνην, τὴν οἱ αὐτὸς ἄλλην συνήδεε
 εἶναι, ἔπεμπε· ὃς ἐπὶ τοῖσι ἄλλοισι δικαίοις τοῖσι ἐξ
 ἐωυτοῦ ἐργασμένοις καὶ τόδε οὐκ ἐλάχιστον τούτων
 ἐλίπετο. κρατήσας γὰρ μεγάλων χρημάτων τῶν οἱ Γέλων
 ἐπετράπετο, παρεὸν κατασχέσθαι οὐκ ἠθέλησε, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ
 οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπεκράτησαν τῇ ναυμαχίῃ καὶ Ξέρξης οἰχώκεε
 ἀπελαύνων, καὶ δὴ καὶ ἐκεῖνος ἀπύκετο ἐς τὴν Σικελίην
 ἀπὸ πάντα τὰ χρήματα ἄγων.

7.165

λέγεται δὲ καὶ τάδε ὑπὸ τῶν ἐν τῇ Σικελίᾳ οἰκημένων,
 ὥς ὅμως καὶ μέλλων ἄρχεσθαι ὑπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων ὁ
 Γέλων ἐβοήθησε ἂν τοῖσι Ἕλλησι, εἰ μὴ ὑπὸ Θήρωνος
 τοῦ Αἰνησιδήμου Ἀκραγαντίνων μουνάρχου ἐξελασθεὶς ἐξ
 Ἰμέρης Τήριλλος ὁ Κρινίππου τύραννος ἐὼν Ἰμέρης ἐπῆγε
 ὑπ' αὐτὸν τὸν χρόνον τοῦτον Φοινίκων καὶ Λιβύων

ἔνθα παρὰ Σαμίων ἔσχε τε καὶ κατοίκησε πόλιν
 Ζάγκλην τὴν ἐς Μεσσήνην |alter, transform τὸ οὔνομα.
 τοῦτον δὴ ὁ Γέλων τὸν Κάδμον καὶ τοιούτῳ τρόπῳ
 ἀπικόμενον διὰ δικαιοσύνην, τὴν οἱ αὐτὸς ἄλλην |know about some-
 |one; think proper
 εἰσὶν, ἔπεμπε· ὅς ἐπὶ τοῖσι ἄλλοισι δικαίοις τοῖσι ἐξ
 ἑωυτοῦ ἐργασμένοις καὶ τόδε οὐκ |smallest, short- ὑτῶν
 |est, fewest
 ἐλίπετο. κρατήσας γὰρ μεγάλων χρημάτων τῶν οἱ Γέλων
 |entrust, de-, παρεὼν κατασχέσθαι οὐκ ἠθέλησε, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ
 |cide, allow
 οἱ |Greek |rule over τῇ ναυμαχίῃ καὶ Ξέρξης οἰχώκεε
 |expel, exclude, ward off; καὶ ἐκεῖνος ἀπύκετο ἐς τὴν Σικελίην
 |(intrans) ride away
 ἀπὸ πάντα τὰ χρήματα ἄγων.

7.165

λέγεται δὲ καὶ τάδε ὑπὸ τῶν ἐν τῇ Σικελίῃ οἰκημένων,
 ὥς ὅμως καὶ μέλλων ἄρχεσθαι ὑπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων ὁ
 Γέλων ἐβοήθησε ἂν τοῖσι |Greek , εἰ μὴ ὑπὸ Θήρωνος
 τοῦ Αἰνησιδήμου Ἀκραγαντίνων |monarch |drive out ἐξ
 Ἰμέρης Τήριλλος ὁ Κρινίππου |tyrant ἐὼν Ἰμέρης |drive game; in-
 |duce belief
 ὑπ' αὐτὸν τὸν χρόνον τοῦτον Φοινίκων καὶ Λιβύων

of Cos and had departed to Sicily, where he took from the Samians and newly colonised the city of Zancle, which had changed its name to Messene. This same Cadmos, having come thither in such manner as I have said, Gelon was now sending, having selected him on account of the integrity which in other matters he had himself found to be in him; and this man, in addition to the other upright acts which had been done by him, left also this to be remembered, which was not the least of them: for having got into his hands that great sum of money which Gelon entrusted to his charge, though he might have taken possession of it himself he did not choose to do so; but when the Hellenes had got the better in the sea-fight and Xerxes had marched away and departed, he also returned to Sicily bringing back with him the whole sum of money.

7.165

The story which here follows is also reported by those who dwell in Sicily, namely that, even though he was to be under the command of the Lacedemonians, Gelon would have come to the assistance of the Hellenes, but that Terillos, the son of Crinippos and despot of Himera, having been driven out of Himera by Theron the son of Ainesidemos the ruler of the Agrigentines, was just at this very time bringing in

vocabulary

ἀναγιγνώσκω recognize, read,
 understand, persuade
ἀνδραγαθία bravery
ἀποπέμπω send away ~pomp
βασιλεύω be king
Ἕλλην Greek
ἐπάγω drive game; induce belief
 ~demagogue
Καρχηδόνιος Carthaginian
μητρόθεν from the mother

μυριάς -δος (ῥ, f, 3) countless, myriad
ξείνιος of hospitality
ὄμηρος insurance, hostage
πενθερός father in law ~Nepenthe
Πέρσης Persian
προθυμία (ῥ) zeal, alacrity ~fume
συμβολή encounter; contribution
τιμωρέω (ι) (+dat) take vengeance,
 punish; aid one who has been attacked
τύραννος tyrant

καὶ Ἰβήρων καὶ Λιγύων καὶ Ἐλισύκων καὶ Σαρδονίων
καὶ Κυρνίων τριήκοντα μυριάδας καὶ στρατηγὸν αὐτῶν
Ἀμίλκαν τὸν Ἄννωνος, Καρχηδονίων ἐόντα βασιλέα,
κατὰ ξεινίην τε τὴν ἑωυτοῦ ὁ Τήριλλος ἀναγνώσας καὶ
μάλιστα διὰ τὴν Ἀναξίλειω τοῦ Κρητίνεω προθυμίην, ὃς
Ῥηγίου ἐὼν τύραννος τὰ ἑωυτοῦ τέκνα δοὺς ὁμήρους
Ἀμίλκα ἐπήγε ἐπὶ τὴν Σικελίην τιμωρέων τῷ πενθερῷ·
Τηρίλλου γὰρ εἶχε θυγατέρα Ἀναξίλειως, τῇ οὖνομα ἦν
Κυδίππη. οὕτω δὴ οὐκ οἶόν τε γενόμενον βοηθέειν
τὸν Γέλωνα τοῖσι Ἑλλήσι ἀποπέμπειν ἐς Δελφοὺς τὰ
χρήματα.

7.166

πρὸς δὲ καὶ τάδε λέγουσι, ὡς συνέβη τῆς αὐτῆς ἡμέρης
ἐν τε τῇ Σικελίᾳ Γέλωνα καὶ Θήρωνα νικᾶν Ἀμίλκαν
τὸν Καρχηδόνιον καὶ ἐν Σαλαμῖνι τοὺς Ἑλλήνας τὸν
Πέρσην. τὸν δὲ Ἀμίλκαν Καρχηδόνιον ἐόντα πρὸς
πατρός, μητρόθεν δὲ Συρηκόσιον, βασιλεύσαντά τε κατ'
ἀνδραγαθίην Καρχηδονίων, ὡς ἡ συμβολή τε ἐγένετο καὶ

καὶ Ἰβήρων καὶ Λιγύων καὶ Ἑλισύκων καὶ Σαρδονίων
καὶ Κυρνίων τριήκοντα |countless, |myriad καὶ στρατηγὸν αὐτῶν
Ἀμίλκαν τὸν Ἄννωνος, Καρχηδονίων ἐόντα βασιλέα,
κατὰ ξεινίην τε τὴν ἐωυτοῦ ὁ Τήριλλος |read καὶ
μάλιστα διὰ τὴν Ἀναξίλειω τοῦ Κρητίνεω προθυμίην, ὃς
Ῥηγίου ἐὼν |tyrant τὰ ἐωυτοῦ τέκνα δοὺς |insurance, |hostage
Ἀμίλκα |drive game; |induce belief ἦν Σικελίην |take vengeance, |father in law
|punish, aid
Τηρίλλου γὰρ εἶχε θυγατέρα Ἀναξίλειως, τῇ οὖνομα ἦν
Κυδίππη. οὕτω δὲ οὐκ οἶόν τε γενόμενον βοηθέειν
τὸν Γέλωνα τοῖσι |Greek |send away ἐς Δελφοὺς τὰ
χρήματα.

7.166

πρὸς δὲ καὶ τάδε λέγουσι, ὥς συνέβη τῆς αὐτῆς ἡμέρης
ἔν τε τῇ Σικελίῃ Γέλωνα καὶ Θήρωνα νικᾶν Ἀμίλκαν
τὸν Καρχηδόσιον καὶ ἐν Σαλαμῖνι τοὺς |Greek τὸν
Πέρσην. τὸν δὲ Ἀμίλκαν Καρχηδόσιον ἐόντα πρὸς
πατρός, |from the mother Ἰρηκόσιον, |be king τε κατ'
ἀνδραγαθίην Καρχηδονίων, ὥς ἡ |encounter; |contribution ἐγένετο καὶ

an army of Phenicians, Libyans, Iberians, Ligurians, Elisycans, Sardinians and Corsicans, to the number of thirty myriads, with Amilcas the son of Annon king of the Carthaginians as their commander, whom Terillos had persuaded partly by reason of his own guest-friendship, and especially by the zealous assistance of Anaxilaos the son of Cretines, who was despot of Rhegion, and who to help his father in law endeavoured to bring in Amilcas to Sicily, and had given him his sons as hostages; for Anaxilaos was married to the daughter of Terillos, whose name was Kydippe. Thus it was, they say, that Gelon was not able to come to the assistance of the Hellenes, and sent therefore the money to Delphi.

7.166

In addition to this they report also that, as it happened, Gelon and Theron were victorious over Amilcas the Carthaginian on the very same day when the Hellenes were victorious at Salamis over the Persian. And this Amilcas, who was a Carthaginian on the father's side but on the mother's Syracusan, and who had become king of the Carthaginians by merit, when the engagement took place and he was

vocabulary

ἀφανίζω do away with, make off with;
(pass) disappear

δείλη afternoon ~diem

δίζημαι seek ~zeal

Ἑλληγν Greek

ἐπεξέρχομαι sally

ἐπισπένδω pour over

ἐσσόμαι (pass) be weaker, be
overcome; (active) defeat

θύω (ō) rush; sacrifice ~θύω

καλλιερέω have good signs

Καρχηδόνιος Carthaginian

καταγίζω devote, dedicate

κατακαίω burn down ~caustic

μνημα -τος (n, 3) reminder, memorial
~mnemonic

οὐδαμοῦ nowhere

οὔς οὔατος (n) ear

ὄψιος late, in evening

πάσσω sprinkle; insert in a web

πυρά pyre ~pyre

τροπή rout, turning of an enemy
~trophy

ώθέω push

ὥς ἐσσοῦτο τῇ μάχῃ, ἀφανισθῆναι πυνθάνομαι· οὔτε γὰρ ζῶντα οὔτε ἀποθανόντα φανῆναι οὐδαμοῦ γῆς· τὸ πᾶν γὰρ ἐπεξελθεῖν διζήμενον Γέλωνα.

7.167

ἔστι δὲ ὑπ' αὐτῶν Καρχηδονίων ὅδε λόγος λεγόμενος, οἰκότι χρεωμένων, ὥς οἱ μὲν βάρβαροι τοῖσι Ἑλλήσι ἐν τῇ Σικελίῃ ἐμάχοντο ἐξ ἡοῦς ἀρξάμενοι μέχρι δειλῆς ὀψίης ἐπὶ τοσοῦτο γὰρ λέγεται ἐλκύσαι τὴν σύστασιν, ὃ δὲ Ἀμίλκας ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ μένων ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ ἐθύετο καὶ ἐκαλλιερέετο ἐπὶ πυρῆς μεγάλης σώματα ὅλα καταγίζων, ἰδὼν δὲ τροπὴν τῶν ἑωυτοῦ γινομένην, ὥς ἔτυχε ἐπισπένδων τοῖσι ἱροῖσι, ὥσε ἑωυτὸν ἐς τὸ πῦρ· οὕτω δὲ κατακαυθέντα ἀφανισθῆναι. ἀφανισθέντι δὲ Ἀμίλκα τρόπῳ εἴτε τοιούτῳ ὥς Φοίνικες λέγουσι, εἴτε ἐτέρῳ ὥς Καρχηδόνιοι καὶ Συρηκόσιοι, τοῦτο μὲν οἱ θύουσι, τοῦτο δὲ μνήματα ἐποίησαν ἐν πάσῃσι τῇσι πόλινσι τῶν ἀποικίδων, ἐν αὐτῇ τε μέγιστον Καρχηδόνη.

ὥς | (pass) be weaker, be | do away with, make off | μαι· οὔτε γὰρ
 overcome; (active) de- | with; (pass) disappear
 ζῶντα οὔτε ἀποθανόντα φανῆναι | nowhere γῆς· τὸ πᾶν
 γὰρ | sally | seek Γέλωνα.

7.167

ἔστι δὲ ὑπ' αὐτῶν Καρχηδονίων ὅδε λόγος λεγόμενος,
 οἰκότηι χρεωμένων, ὥς οἱ μὲν βάρβαροι τοῖσι | Greek
 ἐν τῇ Σικελίῃ ἐμάχοντο ἐξ ἡοῦς ἀρξάμενοι μέχρι | afternoon
 | late, in evening οὗτο γὰρ λέγεται ἐλκύσαι τὴν σύστασιν, ὃ
 δὲ Ἀμίλκας ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ μένων ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ
 | rush; sacri- | have good signs ᾧ τὴν | pyre μεγάλης σώματα ὅλα
 | fice
 | devote, , ἰδὼν δὲ | rout, τῶν ἐωυτοῦ γινομένην, ὥς
 | dedicate | turning
 ἔτυχε ἐπισπένδων τοῖσι ἱροῖσι, ὥσε ἐωυτὸν ἐς τὸ πῦρ·
 οὕτω δὲ | burn down | do away with, | do away with, make off with;
 | make off with; (pass) disappear
 Ἀμίλκα τρόπῳ εἴτε τοιούτῳ ὥς Φοῖνικες λέγουσι, εἴτε
 (pass) disappear
 ἐτέρῳ ὥς Καρχηδόνιοι καὶ Συρηκόσιοι, τοῦτο μὲν οἱ
 | rush; sacrifice ἡ δὲ | reminder, ἐποίησαν ἐν | sprinkle τῇσι πόλιν
 | memorial
 τῶν ἀποικίδων, ἐν αὐτῇ τε μέγιστον Καρχηδόνη.

being worsted in the battle, disappeared, as I am informed; for neither alive nor dead did he appear again anywhere upon the earth, though Gelon used all diligence in the search for him.

7.167

Moreover there is also this story reported by the Carthaginians themselves, who therein relate that which is probable in itself, namely that while the Barbarians fought with the Hellenes in Sicily from the early morning till late in the afternoon (for to such a length the combat is said to have been protracted), during this time Amilcas was remaining in the camp and was making sacrifices to get good omens of success, offering whole bodies of victims upon a great pyre: and when he saw that there was a rout of his own army, he being then, as it chanced, in the act of pouring a libation over the victims, threw himself into the fire, and thus he was burnt up and disappeared. Amilcas then having disappeared, whether it was in such a manner as this, as it is reported by the Phenicians, or in some other way, the Carthaginians both offer sacrifices to him now, and also they made memorials of him then in all the cities of their colonies, and the greatest in Carthage itself.

vocabulary

ἀελπτέω to despair ~voluptuary
ἀνακωχεύω hold back, still
δουλεύω serve, be a slave
Ἕλληγν Greek
ἑξήκοντα sixty
ἐπιτηδές enough; purposely
εὖς good, brave, noble
καραδοκέω (ᾱ) wait for the outcome of
μόγισ with difficulty, barely
ὄον οὖ type of fruit
παραιτίκα immediately

περιοράω look around; watch; permit
Πέρσης Persian
προσιίγνυμι reach out to, approach
σφάλλω overthrow, balk, stagger
τιμωρέω (ι) (+dat) take vengeance,
 punish; aid one who has been attacked
τοιόσδε such
ὑπερβάλλω cause to go beyond; delay
 ~ballistic
ὑπίσχομαι promise, agree to do
ὑποκρίνομαι (ι) answer; pretend

7.168

τὰ μὲν ἀπὸ Σικελίης τοσαῦτα. Κερκυραῖοι δὲ τάδε ὑποκρινάμενοι τοῖσι ἀγγέλοισι τοιάδε ἐποίησαν· καὶ γὰρ τούτους παρελάμβανον οἱ αὐτοὶ οἷ περ ἐς Σικελίην ἀπίκοντο, λέγοντες τοὺς αὐτοὺς λόγους τοὺς καὶ πρὸς Γέλωνα ἔλεγον. οἷ δὲ παραυτίκα μὲν ὑπίσχοντο πέμψειν τε καὶ ἀμυνέειν, φράζοντες ὥς οὐ σφί περιοπτή ἐστὶ ἡ Ἑλλὰς ἀπολλυμένη· ἦν γὰρ σφαλῇ, σφεῖς γε οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ δουλεύσουσι τῇ πρώτῃ τῶν ἡμερέων· ἀλλὰ τιμωρητέον εἴη ἐς τὸ δυνατώτατον. ὑπεκρίναντο μὲν οὕτω εὐπρόσωπα· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔδει βοηθέειν, ἄλλα νοέοντες ἐπλήρωσαν νέας ἐξήκοντα, μόγις δὲ ἀναχθέντες προσέμιξαν τῇ Πελοποννήσῳ, καὶ περὶ Πύλον καὶ Ταίναρον γῆς τῆς Λακεδαιμονίων ἀνεκώχεον τὰς νέας, караδοκέοντες καὶ οὗτοι τὸν πόλεμον τῇ πεσέεται, ἀελπτέοντες μὲν τοὺς Ἑλληνας ὑπερβαλέεσθαι, δοκέοντες δὲ τὸν Πέρσῃν κατακρατήσαντα πολλὸν ἄρξειν πάσης τῆς Ἑλλάδος. ἐποίουν ὦν ἐπίτηδες, ἵνα ἔχωσι πρὸς

7.168

τὰ μὲν ἀπὸ Σικελίης τοσαῦτα. Κερκυραῖοι δὲ τάδε
 |answer; pretend τοῖσι ἀγγέλοισι |such ἐποίησαν· καὶ γὰρ
 τούτους παρελάβανον οἱ αὐτοὶ οἷ περ ἐς Σικελίην
 ἀπίκοντο, λέγοντες τοὺς αὐτοὺς λόγους τοὺς καὶ πρὸς
 Γέλωνα ἔλεγον. οἷ δὲ |immediately μὲν |promise,
 |agree
 πέμψειν τε καὶ ἀμυνέειν, φράζοντες ὥς οὐ σφι |look around;
 |watch; permit
 ἐστὶ ἡ Ἑλλὰς ἀπολλυμένη· ἦν γὰρ |overthrow, balk γε
 οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ |serve, be a slave ἢ πρώτη τῶν ἡμερέων·
 ἀλλὰ τιμωρητέον εἴη ἐς τὸ δυνατώτατον. |answer;
 |pretend
 μὲν οὕτω εὐπρόσωπα· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔδει βοηθέειν, ἄλλα
 νοέοντες ἐπλήρωσαν νέας |sixty , |with difficulty, χθέντες
 |barely
 |reach out to, τῇ Πελοποννήσῳ, καὶ περὶ Πύλον καὶ
 |approach
 Ταίναρον γῆς τῆς Λακεδαιμονίων |hold back, still ἄς νέας,
 |wait for the out- καὶ οὗτοι τὸν πόλεμον τῇ πεσέεται,
 |come of
 |to despair μὲν τοὺς |Greek |cause to go be- δοκέοντες
 |yond; delay
 δὲ τὸν Πέρσην κατακρατήσαντα πολλὸν ἄρξειν πάσης τῆς
 Ἑλλάδος. ἐποίουν ὦν ἐπίτηδες, ἵνα ἔχῃσι πρὸς

7.168

So far of the affairs of Sicily: and as for the Corcyreans, they made answer to the envoys as follows, afterwards acting as I shall tell: for the same men who had gone to Sicily endeavoured also to obtain the help of these, saying the same things which they said to Gelon; and the Corcyreans at the time engaged to send a force and to help in the defence, declaring that they must not permit Hellas to be ruined without an effort on their part, for if it should suffer disaster, they would be reduced to subjection from the very first day; but they must give assistance so far as lay in their power. Thus speciously they made reply; but when the time came to send help, they manned sixty ships, having other intentions in their minds, and after making much difficulty they put out to sea and reached Peloponnese; and then near Pylos and Tainaron in the land of the Lacedemonians they kept their ships at anchor, waiting, as Gelon did, to see how the war would turn out: for they did not expect that the Hellenes would overcome, but thought that the Persian would gain the victory over them with ease and be ruler of all Hellas. Accordingly they were acting of set purpose, in order that they might be able

*vocabulary***αἰτιάομαι** blame ~etiology**ἀποθύμιος** (ῥ) unpleasant ~fume**διακρούω** (mp) evade**ἐλάχιστος** smallest, shortest, fewest**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἐναντιόομαι** oppose, contradict**ἐξήκοντα** sixty**ἐπειρωτάω** consult, ask**θεοπρόπος** seer ~theology**κακότης** -τος (f, 3) badness

~cacophony

ναυμαχία naval warfare**Πέρσης** Persian**σκήψις** excuse**τοιόσδε** such**ὑπερβάλλω** cause to go beyond; delay

~ballistic

τὸν Πέρσῃν λέγειν τοιάδε. «ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἡμεῖς, παραλαμβανόντων τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἡμέας ἐς τὸν πόλεμον τοῦτον, ἔχοντες δύναμιν οὐκ ἐλαχίστην οὐδὲ νέας ἐλαχίστας παρασχόντες ἂν ἀλλὰ πλείστας μετὰ γε Ἀθηναίους, οὐκ ἠθελήσαμεν τοι ἐναντιοῦσθαι οὐδέ τι ἀποθύμιον ποιῆσαι.» τοιαῦτα λέγοντες ἡλπίζον πλέον τι τῶν ἄλλων οἴσεσθαι· τά περ ἂν καὶ ἐγένετο, ὥς ἐμοὶ δοκέει. πρὸς δὲ τοὺς Ἑλληνάς σφι σκῆψις ἐπεποιήτο, τῇ περ δὴ καὶ ἐχρήσαντο. αἰτιωμένων γὰρ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ὅτι οὐκ ἐβοήθεον, ἔφασαν πληρῶσαι μὲν ἐξήκοντα τριήρας, ὑπὸ δὲ ἐτησιέων ἀνέμων ὑπερβαλεῖν Μαλέην οὐκ οἰοί τε γενέσθαι· οὕτω οὐκ ἀπικέσθαι ἐς Σαλαμῖνα, καὶ οὐδεμὴ κακότητι λειφθῆναι τῆς ναυμαχίης.

7.169

οὔτοι μὲν οὕτω διεκρούσαντο τοὺς Ἑλληνας. Κρήτες δέ, ἐπεῖτε σφέας παρελάμβανον οἱ ἐπὶ τούτοισι ταχθέντες Ἑλλήνων, ἐποίησαν τοιόνδε· πέμψαντες κοινῇ θεοπρόπους ἐς Δελφοὺς τὸν θεὸν ἐπειρώτων

τὸν Πέρσῃν λέγειν |such . «ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἡμεῖς,
 παραλαμβανόντων τῶν |Greek ἡμέας ἐς τὸν πόλεμον
 τοῦτον, ἔχοντες δύναμιν οὐκ |smallest, short- ἰδὲ νέας
 |est, fewest |smallest, short- ιρασχόντες ἂν ἀλλὰ πλείστας μετὰ γε
 |est, fewest Ἀθηναίους, οὐκ ἠθελήσαμεν τοι |oppose, οὐδέ τι
 |contradict |unpleasant ποιῆσαι.» τοιαῦτα λέγοντες ἡλπιζον πλεόν
 τι τῶν ἄλλων οἴσεσθαι· τά περ ἂν καὶ ἐγένετο, ὥς ἐμοὶ
 δοκέει. πρὸς δὲ τοὺς |Greek σφι |excuse ἐπεποιήτο, τῇ
 περ δὴ καὶ ἐχρήσαντο. |blame γὰρ τῶν |Greek ὅτι
 οὐκ ἐβοήθειον, ἔφασαν πληρῶσαι μὲν |sixty τριήρας,
 ὑπὸ δὲ ἐτῆσιέων ἀνέμων |cause to go be-³ Μαλέην οὐκ οἰοί τε
 |yond; delay γενέσθαι· οὕτω οὐκ ἀπικέσθαι ἐς Σαλαμῖνα, καὶ οὐδεμιῇ
 |badness λειφθῆναι τῆς ναυμαχίης.

7.169

οὗτοι μὲν οὕτω |(mp) evade τοὺς |Greek . Κρήτες
 δέ, ἐπεῖτε σφέας παρελάμβανον οἱ ἐπὶ τούτοις
 ταχθέντες |Greek , ἐποίησαν |such πέμψαντες
 κουνῇ |seer ἐς Δελφοὺς τὸν θεὸν |consult, ask

to say to the Persian some such words as these: “O king, when the Hellenes endeavoured to obtain our help for this war, we, who have a power which is not the smallest of all, and could have supplied a contingent of ships in number not the smallest, but after the Athenians the largest, did not choose to oppose thee or to do anything which was not to thy mind.” By speaking thus they hoped that they would obtain some advantage over the rest, and so it would have happened, as I am of opinion: while they had for the Hellenes an excuse ready made, that namely of which they actually made use: for when the Hellenes reproached them because they did not come to help, they said that they had manned sixty triremes, but had not been able to get past Malea owing to the Etesian Winds; therefore it was that they had not come to Salamis, nor was it by any want of courage on their part that they had been left of the sea-fight.

7.169

These then evaded the request of the Hellenes thus: but the Cretans, when those of the Hellenes who had been appointed to deal with these endeavoured to obtain their help, did thus, that is to say, they joined together and sent men to inquire of the

*vocabulary***ἀποφέρω** carry off, carry back ~bear**ἀρπάζω** carry off, seize ~harpoon**βίαιος** by force**ἐπιμέμφομαι** blame**ἐποτρύνω** (ὑ) urge, stir, dispatch**ζήτησις** -εως (f) search, inquiry**λιμός** (ι, f) famine**μηνιάω** be enraged at**μῆνις** -ος (f) rage**μηνίω** be enraged at**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis**παραμένω** stay with ~remain**τιμωρέω** (ι) (+dat) take vengeance, punish; aid one who has been attacked**τιμωρία** (ιι) vengeance, punishment**ὑποκρίνομαι** (ι) answer; pretend**ὑπολαμβάνω** take under one's support, seize; speak up; imagine

~epilepsy

εἴ σφι ἄμεινον τιμωρέουσι γίνεται τῇ Ἑλλάδι. ἡ δὲ Πυθίη ὑπεκρίνατο «ὦ νήπιοι, ἐπιμέμφεσθε ὅσα ὑμῖν ἐκ τῶν Μενελάου τιμωρημάτων Μίνως ἔπεμψε μηνίων δακρύματα, ὅτι οἱ μὲν οὐ συνεξεπρήξαντο αὐτῷ τὸν ἐν Καμικῷ θάνατον γενόμενον, ὑμεῖς δὲ ἐκείνοισι τὴν ἐκ Σπάρτης ἀρπασθεῖσαν ὑπ' ἀνδρὸς βαρβάρου γυναῖκα.» ταῦτα οἱ Κρήτες ὡς ἀπειχθέντα ἤκουσαν, ἔσχοντο τῆς τιμωρίας.

7.170

λέγεται γὰρ Μίνων κατὰ ζήτησιν Δαιδάλου ἀπικόμενον ἐς Σικανίην τὴν νῦν Σικελίην καλυμένην ἀποθανεῖν βιαίῳ θανάτῳ. ἀνὰ δὲ χρόνον Κρήτας, θεοῦ σφι ἐποτρύναντος, πάντας πλὴν Πολιχιντέων τε καὶ Πραισίων ἀπικομένους στόλῳ μεγάλῳ ἐς Σικανίην πολιορκεῖν ἐπ' ἔτεα πέντε πόλιν Καμικόν, τὴν κατ' ἐμὲ Ἀκραγαντῖνοι ἐνέμοντο· τέλος δὲ οὐ δυναμένους οὔτε ἐλεῖν οὔτε παραμένειν λιμῷ συνεστεῶτας, ἀπολιπόντας οἴχεσθαι. ὡς δὲ κατὰ Ἰηπυγίην γενέσθαι πλέοντας, ὑπολαβόντα σφέας

εἶ σφι ἄμεινον |take vengeance, |punish, aid ἵνεται τῇ Ἑλλάδι. ἡ δὲ
 Πυθίη |answer; |pretend «ὦ νήπιοι, |blame ὅσα ὑμῖν
 ἐκ τῶν Μενελάου τιμωρημάτων Μίνως ἔπεμψε μηνίων
 δακρύματα, ὅτι οἱ μὲν οὐ συνεξεπρήξαντο αὐτῷ τὸν ἐν
 Καμικῷ θάνατον γενόμενον, ὑμεῖς δὲ ἐκείνοισι τὴν ἐκ
 Σπάρτης |carry off, seize ὑπ' ἀνδρὸς βαρβάρου γυναῖκα.»
 ταῦτα οἱ Κρήτες ὥς |carry off ἤκουσαν, ἔσχοντο τῆς
 τιμωρίας.

7.170

λέγεται γὰρ Μίνων κατὰ |search, |inquiry Δαιδάλου ἀπικόμενον ἐς
 Σικανίην τὴν νῦν Σικελίην καλευμένην ἀποθανεῖν |by force
 θανάτῳ. ἀνὰ δὲ χρόνον Κρήτας, θεοῦ σφι |urge, stir ,
 πάντας πλὴν Πολιχνιτέων τε καὶ Πραισίων ἀπικομένους
 στόλῳ μεγάλῳ ἐς Σικανίην πολιορκεῖν ἐπ' ἕτα πέντε
 πόλιν Καμικόν, τὴν κατ' ἐμὲ Ἀκραγαντῖνοι |distribute
 τέλος δὲ οὐ δυναμένους οὔτε ἐλεῖν οὔτε |stay with
 |famine νυνεστεῶτας, ἀπολιπόντας οἴχεσθαι. ὥς δὲ κατὰ
 Ἰηπυγίην γενέσθαι πλέοντας, |take under one's, |support,
 |seize; speak up; imagine

god at Delphi whether it would be better for them if they gave assistance to Hellas: and the Pythian prophetess answered: “Ye fools, do ye think those woes too few, which Minos sent upon you in his wrath, because of the assistance that ye gave to Menelaos? seeing that, whereas they did not join with you in taking vengeance for his death in Camicos, ye nevertheless joined with them in taking vengeance for the woman who by a Barbarian was carried off from Sparta.” When the Cretans heard this answer reported, they abstained from the giving of assistance.

7.170

For the story goes that Minos, having come to Sicania, which is now called Sicily, in search of Daidalos, died there by a violent death; and after a time the Cretans, urged thereto by a god, all except the men of Polichne and Praisos, came with a great armament to Sicania and besieged for seven years the city of Camicos, which in my time was occupied by the Agrigentines; and at last not being able either to capture it or to remain before it, because they were hard pressed by famine, they departed and went away. And when, as they sailed, they came to be off the coast of Iapygia, a great storm

vocabulary

ἀνατίθῃμι consecrate, lay on, impute;
(mp) reproach

ἀνδριάς -ντος (m, 3) portrait, statue

ἀριθμός number

ἐκπίπτω fall out of ~petal

ἐνθαῦτα there, here

ἐξάνιστημι raise, bring/send out

ἐπίτροπος agent, officer

ἡπειρώτης -ιδος (f) landsman

καταμένω stay; not change

κομιδή care, tending, providing for

κτίζω found, populate ~oxytocin

μεταβάλλω alter, transform

νησιώτης -ου (m, 1) insular

οἰκέτης -ου (m, 1) household; house
slave

οἰκίζω colonize, settle

προσπταίω batter; be set back

συναράσσω smash together

τιμωρός (ι) avenging

τρισχίλιοι 3000 ~kilo-

χειμών -ος (m, 3) winter, storm

χοῖρος young fattened pig

χειμῶνα μέγαν ἐκβαλεῖν ἐς τὴν γῆν· συναραχθέντων δὲ τῶν πλοίων, οὐδεμίαν γάρ σφι ἔτι κομιδὴν ἐς Κρήτην φαίνεσθαι, ἐνθαῦτα Ὑρίην πόλιν κτίσαντας καταμεῖναι τε καὶ μεταβαλόντας ἀντὶ μὲν Κρητῶν γενέσθαι Ἰήπυγας Μεσσαπίους, ἀντὶ δὲ εἶναι νησιώτας ἡπειρώτας. ἀπὸ δὲ Ὑρίης πόλιος τὰς ἄλλας οἰκίσαι, τὰς δὲ Ταραντῖνοι χρόνῳ ὕστερον πολλῶ ἐξανιστάντες προσέπταισαν μεγάλως, ὥστε φόνος Ἑλληνικὸς μέγιστος οὗτος δὴ ἐγένετο πάντων τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν, αὐτῶν τε Ταραντίνων καὶ Ῥηγίνων, οἳ ὑπὸ Μικύθου τοῦ Χοίρου ἀναγκαζόμενοι τῶν ἀστῶν καὶ ἀπικόμενοι τιμωροὶ Ταραντίνουσι ἀπέθανον τρισχίλιοι οὕτω· αὐτῶν δὲ Ταραντίνων οὐκ ἐπὴν ἀριθμός. ὁ δὲ Μίκυθος οἰκέτης ἐὼν Ἀναξίλειω ἐπίτροπος Ῥηγίου καταλέλειπτο, οὗτος ὅς περ ἐκπεσὼν ἐκ Ῥηγίου καὶ Τεγέην τὴν Ἀρκάδων οἰκήσας ἀνέθηκε ἐν Ὀλυμπίῃ τοὺς πολλοὺς ἀνδριάντας.

7.171

ἀλλὰ τὰ μὲν κατὰ Ῥηγίνους τε καὶ Ταραντίνους

|winter, μέγαν ἐκβαλεῖν ἐς τὴν γῆν· |smash together
 |storm
 δὲ τῶν πλοίων, οὐδεμίαν γάρ σφι ἔτι |care, ἐς
 |tending
 Κρήτην φαίνεσθαι, |there, here Ὑρίην πόλιν |found,
 |populate
 |stay; not change καὶ |alter, transform ἀντὶ μὲν Κρητῶν
 γενέσθαι Ἰήπυγας Μεσσαπίους, ἀντὶ δὲ εἶναι |insular
 |landsman . ἀπὸ δὲ Ὑρίης πόλιος τὰς ἄλλας |colonize,
 |settle
 τὰς δὲ Ταραντῖνοι χρόνῳ ὕστερον πολλῶ |raise, bring/send
 |out
 |batter; be set back γάλως, ὥστε φόνος Ἑλληνικὸς μέγιστος
 οὗτος δὲ ἐγένετο πάντων τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν, αὐτῶν
 τε Ταραντίνων καὶ Ῥηγίνων, οἱ ὑπὸ Μικύθου τοῦ
 |young ἰναγκαζόμενοι τῶν ἀστῶν καὶ ἀπικόμενοι |avenging
 |fattened
 |pig Ταραντίνοισι ἀπέθανον |3000 οὕτω· αὐτῶν δὲ
 Ταραντίνων οὐκ ἐπὴν |number . ὁ δὲ Μίκυθος |household;
 |house slave
 ἐὼν Ἀναξίλειω |agent, Ῥηγίου καταλέλειπτο, οὗτος ὅς
 |officer
 περ |fall out of ἐκ Ῥηγίου καὶ Τεγέην τὴν Ἀρκάδων οἰκήσας
 |consecrate, lay ὄν, im-, τοὺς πολλοὺς |portrait,
 |pute; (mp) reproach |statue

7.171

ἀλλὰ τὰ μὲν κατὰ Ῥηγίους τε καὶ Ταραντίνους

seized them and cast them away upon the coast; and their vessels being dashed to pieces, they, since they saw no longer any way of coming to Crete, founded there the city of Hyria; and there they stayed and were changed so that they became instead of Cretans, Messapians of Iapygia, and instead of islanders, dwellers on the mainland: then from the city of Hyria they founded those other settlements which the Tarentines long afterwards endeavoured to destroy and suffer great disaster in that enterprise, so that this in fact proved to be the greatest slaughter of Hellenes that is known to us, and not only of the Tarentines themselves but of those citizens of Rhegion who were compelled by Mikythos the son of Choiros to go to the assistance of the Tarentines, and of whom there were slain in this manner three thousand men: of the Tarentines themselves however, who were slain there, there was no numbering made. This Mikythos, who was a servant of Anaxilaos, had been left by him in charge of Rhegion; and he it was who after being driven out of Rhegion took up his abode at Tegea of the Arcadians and dedicated those many statues at Olympia.

7.171

This of the men of Rhegion and of the Tarentines has been an episode

*vocabulary***ἀλίζω** gather, assemble**ἄλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix**ἀναγκαίη** of necessity, by force**ἀναγκαῖος** coerced, coercing, slavery**ἀνδάνω** please ~hedonism**ἀπονοστέω** go home**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis**διαδέχομαι** be next, succeed ~doctrine**εἰσοικίζω** settle**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἐρημόω** raze, bereave; desert, isolate**λιμός** (l, f) famine**λοιμός** plague**μηχανάομαι** build, contrive

~mechanism

νέμω to allot, to pasture ~nemesis**παρενθήκη** an aside, addition

~parentheses

Πέρσης Persian**πρόβατον** cattle, flocks, herds**τιμωρέω** (t) (+dat) take vengeance,

punish; aid one who has been attacked

τιμωρός (t) avenging**ὑπόλοιπος** left over**ὑπομνήσκω** remind of ~mnemonic**φλαῦρος** trifling

τοῦ λόγου μοι παρενθήκη γέγονε· ἐς δὲ τὴν Κρήτην ἐρημωθείσαν, ὡς λέγουσι Πραῖσιοι, ἐσοικίζεσθαι ἄλλους τε ἀνθρώπους καὶ μάλιστα Ἑλλήνας, τρίτη δὲ γενεὴ μετὰ Μίνων τελευτήσαντα γενέσθαι τὰ Τρωικά, ἐν τοῖσι οὐ φλαυροτάτους φαίνεσθαι ἔοντας Κρήτας τιμωροὺς Μενέλεω. ἀπὸ τούτων δέ σφι ἀπονοστήσασι ἐκ Τροίης λιμόν τε καὶ λοιμόν γενέσθαι καὶ αὐτοῖσι καὶ τοῖσι προβάτοισι, ἔστε τὸ δεύτερον ἐρημωθείσης Κρήτης μετὰ τῶν ὑπολοίπων τρίτους αὐτὴν νῦν νέμεσθαι Κρήτας. ἢ μὲν δὴ Πυθίη ὑπομνήσασα ταῦτα ἔσχε βουλομένους τιμωρέειν τοῖσι Ἑλλησι.

7.172

Θεσσαλοὶ δὲ ὑπὸ ἀναγκαίης τὸ πρῶτον ἐμήδισαν, ὡς διέδεξαν, ὅτι οὐ σφι ἦνδανε τὰ οἱ Ἀλευάδαι ἐμηχανῶντο. ἐπεῖτε γὰρ ἐπύθοντο τάχιστα μέλλοντα διαβαίνειν τὸν Πέρσην ἐς τὴν Εὐρώπην, πέμπουσι ἐς τὸν Ἴσθμὸν ἀγγέλους· ἐν δὲ τῷ Ἴσθμῳ ἦσαν ἀλισμένοι πρόβουλοι τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἀραιρημένοι ἀπὸ τῶν πολίων τῶν τὰ ἀμείνω

τοῦ λόγου μοι |an aside, addition, νε· ἐς δὲ τὴν Κρήτην

|raze, bereave; ὥς λέγουσι Πραῖσιοι, |settle ἄλλους
|desert, isolate

τε ἀνθρώπους καὶ μάλιστα |Greek , τρίτη δὲ γενεῇ

μετὰ Μίνων τελευτήσαντα γενέσθαι τὰ Τρωικά, ἐν τοῖσι

οὐ |trifling φαίνεσθαι ἐόντας Κρήτας |avenging

Μενέλεω. ἀπὸ τούτων δέ σφι |go home ἐκ Τροίης

|famine τε καὶ |plague γενέσθαι καὶ αὐτοῖσι καὶ τοῖσι

|cattle, flocks, ἔστε τὸ δεύτερον |raze, bereave; Κρήτης μετὰ
|herds |desert, isolate

τῶν |left over τρίτους αὐτὴν νῦν |distribute Κρήτας.

ἡ μὲν δὲ Πυθίη |remind of ταῦτα ἔσχε βουλομένους

|take vengeance, |Greek .
|punish, aid

7.172

Θεσσαλοὶ δὲ ὑπὸ ἀναγκαίης τὸ πρῶτον ἐμήδισαν, ὥς

|be next, succeed Ἵ σφι |please τὰ οἱ Ἀλευάδαι |build, contrive

ἐπεῖτε γὰρ ἐπύθοντο τάχιστα μέλλοντα |pass over, cross.

Πέρσῃ ἐς τὴν Εὐρώπην, πέμπουσι ἐς τὸν Ἴσθμὸν

ἀγγέλους· ἐν δὲ τῷ Ἴσθμῳ ἦσαν ἀλισμένοι πρόβουλοι τῆς

Ἑλλάδος ἀραιοημένοι ἀπὸ τῶν πολίων τῶν τὰ ἀμείνω

in my narrative: in Crete however, as the men of Praisos report, after it had been thus stripped of inhabitants, settlements were made by various nations, but especially by Hellenes; and in the next generation but one after the death of Minos came the Trojan war, in which the Cretans proved not the most contemptible of those who came to assist Menelaos. Then after this, when they had returned home from Troy, famine and pestilence came upon both the men and their cattle, until at last Crete was stripped of its inhabitants for the second time, and a third population of Cretans now occupy it together with those which were left of the former inhabitants. The Pythian prophetess, I say, by calling these things to their minds stopped them from giving assistance to the Hellenes, though they desired to do so.

7.172

As for the Thessalians, they at first had taken the side of the Persians against their will, and they gave proof that they were not pleased by that which the Aleuadai were designing; for so soon as they heard that the Persian was about to cross over into Europe, they sent envoys to the Isthmus: now at the Isthmus were assembled representatives of Hellas chosen by the cities which had the better

*vocabulary***ἀδυνασία** inability, weakness**ἀναγκαίη** of necessity, by force**ἀναγκαῖος** coerced, coercing, slavery**εἰσβολή** -ωβόλης invasion, an entrance

~ballistic

Ἕλλην Greek**ἔτοιμος** ready; fulfilled**μηχανάομαι** build, contrive

~mechanism

οὐδαμὸς not anyone**Πέρσης** Persian**προκαθέζομαι** preside; besiege**προκάθηναι** sit before; preside**σκέπας** -ως (n) shelter**σκέπη** shelter, protection**σκέπω** cover, seal**στρατιά** army ~strategy**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion**σύμπας** (ᾱ) all together**σωτηρία** saving, preservation**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics

φρονεουσέων περὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα. ἀπικόμενοι δὲ ἐπὶ τούτους τῶν Θεσσαλῶν οἱ ἄγγελοι ἔλεγον Ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, δεῖ φυλάσσεσθαι τὴν ἐσβολὴν τὴν Ὀλυμπικὴν, ἵνα Θεσσαλίη τε καὶ ἡ σύμπασα ἡ Ἑλλὰς ἐν σκέπῃ τοῦ πολέμου. ἡμεῖς μὲν νυν ἔτοιμοι εἰμὲν συμφυλάσσειν, πέμπειν δὲ χρὴ καὶ ὑμέας στρατιὴν πολλήν, ὥς, εἰ μὴ πέμψετε, ἐπίστασθε ἡμέας ὁμολογήσειν τῷ Πέρσῃ· οὐ γάρ τι προκατημένους τοσοῦτο πρὸ τῆς ἄλλης Ἑλλάδος μούνους πρὸ ὑμέων δεῖ ἀπολέσθαι. βοηθέειν δὲ οὐ βουλόμενοι ἀναγκαίην ἡμῖν οὐδεμίαν οἰοί τε ἐστὲ προσφέρειν· οὐδαμὰ γὰρ ἀδυνασίης ἀνάγκη κρέσσων ἔφν. ἡμεῖς δὲ πειρησόμεθα αὐτοὶ τινα σωτηρίην μηχανώμενοι.»

7.173

ταῦτα ἔλεγον οἱ Θεσσαλοί. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες πρὸς ταῦτα ἐβουλεύσαντο ἐς Θεσσαλίην πέμπειν κατὰ θάλασσαν πεζὸν στρατὸν φυλάζοντα τὴν ἐσβολήν. ὥς δὲ συνελέχθη ὁ στρατός, ἔπλεε δι' Εὐρίπου· ἀπικόμενος δὲ τῆς Ἀχαιίης ἐς Ἄλον, ἀποβαὺς ἐπορεύετο ἐς

φρονεουσέων περὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα. ἀπικόμενοι δὲ ἐπὶ τούτους
 τῶν Θεσσαλῶν οἱ ἄγγελοι ἔλεγον Ἄνδρες |Greek , δεῖ
 φυλάσσεσθαι τὴν |invasion, an. |ἐν Ὀλυμπικῇ, ἵνα Θεσσαλίῃ
 |entrance
 τε καὶ ἡ |all together |, Ἑλλάς ἐν σκέπῃ τοῦ πολέμου. ἡμεῖς
 μὲν νυν ἔτοιμοι εἰμὲν συμφυλάσσειν, πέμπειν δὲ χρὴ καὶ
 ὑμέας στρατιὴν πολλήν, ὥς, εἰ μὴ πέμψετε, ἐπίστασθε
 ἡμέας ὁμολογήσειν τῷ Πέρσῃ· οὐ γάρ τι προκατημένους
 τοσοῦτο πρὸ τῆς ἄλλης Ἑλλάδος μούνους πρὸ ὑμέων δεῖ
 ἀπολέσθαι. βοηθέειν δὲ οὐ βουλόμενοι ἀναγκαίην ἡμῖν
 οὐδεμίαν οἰοί τε ἐστὲ προσφέρειν· οὐδαμὰ γὰρ |inability,
 |weakness
 ἀνάγκη κρέσσων |produce, |, δὲ πειρησόμεθα αὐτοὶ τινα
 |beget; clasp
 σωτηρίην |build, contrive .»

7.173

ταῦτα ἔλεγον οἱ Θεσσαλοί. οἱ δὲ |Greek πρὸς ταῦτα
 ἐβουλεύσαντο ἐς Θεσσαλίην πέμπειν κατὰ θάλασσαν
 πεζὸν |army φυλάξοντα τὴν |invasion, an. |ὧς δὲ |collect,
 |entrance |assemble
 ὁ |army , ἔπλεε δι' Εὐρίπου· ἀπικόμενος δὲ τῆς Ἀχαΐης
 ἐς Ἄλωνα, ἀποβὰς ἐπορεύετο ἐς

mind about Hellas: having come then to these, the envoys of the Thessalians said: “Hellenes, ye must guard the pass by Olympos, in order that both Thessaly and the whole of Hellas may be sheltered from the war. We are prepared to join with you in guarding it, but ye must send a large force as well as we; for if ye shall not send, be assured that we shall make agreement with the Persian; since it is not right that we, standing as outposts so far in advance of the rest of Hellas, should perish alone in your defence: and not being willing to come to our help, ye cannot apply to us any force to compel inability; but we shall endeavour to devise some means of safety for ourselves.”

7.173

Thus spoke the Thessalians; and the Hellenes upon this resolved to send to Thessaly by sea an army of men on foot to guard the pass: and when the army was assembled it set sail through Euripos, and having come to Alos in

vocabulary

ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be freed, depart

ἄρρωδίη terror

βασιλῆιος kingly

εἰσβολή -ωβόλης invasion, an entrance
~ballistic

Ἕλλην Greek

ἐνθαῦτα there, here

εὖνοος kindly; favorable

κάρηνον head, top, mountaintop, citadel ~cranium

καταπατέω trample

μεταξύ between

μυρίος (ὅ) 10,000 ~myriad

ὀρρωδία terror

πολέμαρχος chief

πρόσειμι approach, draw near; add
~ion

σημαίνω give orders to; show; mark
~semaphore

στρατηγέω be a general

στρατιά army ~strategy

στρατοπεδεύω encamp or take up station ~strategy

στρατός common people/soldiers
~strategy

στρατόω be on a campaign ~strategy

συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion

συμβουλευώ give advice; (mid) consult
~volunteer

χρηστός useful; brave, worthy

Θεσσαλίην, τὰς νέας αὐτοῦ καταλιπών, καὶ ἀπίκητο
 ἐς τὰ Τέμπεα ἐς τὴν ἐσβολὴν ἣ περ ἀπὸ Μακεδονίης
 τῆς κάτω ἐς Θεσσαλίην φέρει παρὰ ποταμὸν Πηνειόν,
 μεταξὺ δὲ Ὀλύμπου τε ὄρεος ἔοντα καὶ τῆς Ὀσσης.
 ἐνθαῦτα ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο τῶν Ἑλλήνων κατὰ μυρίους
 ὀπλίτας συλλεγέστες, καὶ σφί προσῆν ἡ Θεσσαλῶν
 ἵππος· ἐστρατήγεε δὲ Λακεδαιμονίων μὲν Εὐαίνετος
 ὁ Καρήνου ἐκ τῶν πολεμάρχων ἀραιρημένος, γένεος
 μέντοι ἔων οὐ τοῦ βασιλῆιου, Ἀθηναίων δὲ Θεμιστοκλῆς
 ὁ Νεοκλέος. ἔμειναν δὲ ὀλίγας ἡμέρας ἐνθαῦτα·
 ἀπικόμενοι γὰρ ἄγγελοι παρὰ Ἀλεξάνδρου τοῦ Ἀμύντεω
 ἀνδρὸς Μακεδόνος συνεβούλευόν σφί ἀπαλλάσσεσθαι
 μὴδὲ μένοντας ἐν τῇ ἐσβολῇ καταπατηθῆναι ὑπὸ τοῦ
 στρατοῦ τοῦ ἐπιόντος, σημαίνοντες τὸ πλῆθος τε τῆς
 στρατιῆς καὶ τὰς νέας. ὥς δὲ οὗτοί σφί ταῦτα
 συνεβούλευον, χρηστὰ γὰρ ἐδόκεον συμβουλεύειν καὶ σφί
 εὖνοος ἐφαίνετο ἔων ὁ Μακεδών, ἐπείθοντο. δοκέειν δὲ
 μοι, ἀρρωδίῃ ἦν τὸ πείθον, ὥς ἐπύθοντο καὶ ἄλλην ἐοῦσαν

Θεσσαλίην, τὰς νέας αὐτοῦ καταλιπὼν, καὶ ἀπῖκετο
 ἐς τὰ Τέμπεα ἐς τὴν |invasion, an' |περ ἀπὸ Μακεδονίης
 |entrance
 τῆς κάτω ἐς Θεσσαλίην φέρει παρὰ ποταμὸν Πηνειόν,
 |between δὲ Ὀλύμπου τε ὄρεος ἐόντα καὶ τῆς Ὀσσης.
 |there, here|encamp or take up τῶν |Greek κατὰ μυρίου
 |station
 ὀπλίτας |collect, , καί σφι προσῆν ἢ Θεσσαλῶν
 |assemble
 ἵππος· |be a general δὲ Λακεδαιμονίων μὲν Εὐαίνετος
 ὁ |head, top ἐκ τῶν |chief ἀραιρημένος, γένεος
 μέντοι ἐὼν οὐ τοῦ |kingly , Ἀθηναίων δὲ Θεμιστοκλέης
 ὁ Νεοκλέος. ἔμειναν δὲ ὀλίγας ἡμέρας |there, here
 ἀπικόμενοι γὰρ ἄγγελοι παρὰ Ἀλεξάνδρου τοῦ Ἀμύντεω
 ἀνδρὸς Μακεδόνος |give advice; σφι |free from, remove;
 |(mid) consult |be freed, depart
 μηδὲ μένοντας ἐν τῇ |inva- |trample ὑπὸ τοῦ
 |sion, an
 στρατοῦ τοῦ ἐπιόντος, |entrance
 |give orders to; τὸ πλήθος τε τῆς
 |show; mark
 στρατῆς καὶ τὰς νέας. ὥς δὲ οὗτοί σφι ταῦτα
 |give advice; (mid)|useful; brave, ἐδόκεον |give advice; καί σφι
 |consult |worthy |(mid) consult
 |kindly; ᾧφαίνετο ἐὼν ὁ Μακεδών, ἐπείθοντο. δοκέειν δὲ
 |favorable
 μοι, ἀρρωδίῃ ἦν τὸ πείθον, ὥς ἐπύθοντο καὶ ἄλλην εὐούσαν

the Achaian land, it disembarked there and marched into Thessaly leaving the ships behind at Alos, and arrived at Tempe, the pass which leads from lower Macedonia into Thessaly by the river Peneios, going between the mountains of Olympus and Ossa. There the Hellenes encamped, being assembled to the number of about ten thousand hoplites, and to them was added the cavalry of the Thessalians; and the commander of the Lacedemonians was Euainetos the son of Carenos, who had been chosen from the polemarchs, not being of the royal house, and of the Athenians Themistocles the son of Neocles. They remained however but few days here, for envoys came from Alexander the son of Amyntas the Macedonian, who advised them to depart thence and not to remain in the pass and be trodden under foot by the invading host, signifying to them at the same time both the great numbers of the army and the ships which they had. When these gave them this counsel, they followed the advice, for they thought that the counsel was good, and the Macedonian was evidently well-disposed towards them. Also, as I think, it was fear that persuaded them to it, when they were informed that

vocabulary

ἄνω (ᾱ) accomplish, pass, waste;
upwards, out to sea

διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis

εἰσβάλλω throw into ~ballistic

εἰσβολή -ωβόλης invasion, an entrance
~ballistic

Ἑλλην Greek

ἐρημόω raze, bereave; desert, isolate

πρόθυμος (υ) willing, eager ~fume

προσδοκάω expect

στρατηγή expedition, campaign

στρατιά army ~strategy

χρήσιμος useful

χῶρος place ~heir

ἐσβολὴν ἐς Θεσσαλοὺς κατὰ τὴν ἄνω Μακεδονίην διὰ Περραιβῶν κατὰ Γόννον πόλιν, τῇ περ δὴ καὶ ἐσέβαλε ἡ στρατιὴ ἡ Ξέρξεω. καταβάντες δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπὶ τὰς νέας ὀπίσω ἐπορεύοντο ἐς τὸν Ἴσθμόν.

7.174

αὕτη ἐγένετο ἡ ἐς Θεσσαλίην στρατιή, βασιλέος τε μέλλοντος διαβαίνειν ἐς τὴν Εὐρώπην ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας καὶ ἑόντος ἤδη ἐν Ἀβύδῳ. Θεσσαλοὶ δὲ ἐρημωθέντες συμμάχων οὕτω δὴ ἐμήδισαν προθύμως οὐδ' ἔτι ἐνδοιαστῶς, ὥστε ἐν τοῖσι πρήγμασι ἐφαίνοντο βασιλεί ἄνδρες ἑόντες χρησιμώτατοι.

7.175

οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἐπεῖτε ἀπίκατο ἐς τὸν Ἴσθμόν, ἐβουλευόντο πρὸς τὰ λεχθέντα ἐξ Ἀλεξάνδρου τῇ τε στήσονται τὸν πόλεμον καὶ ἐν οἷοισι χώροισι. ἡ νικῶσα δὲ γνώμη ἐγένετο τὴν ἐν Θερμοπύλῃσι ἐσβολὴν φυλάξαι· στεινοτέρη γὰρ ἐφαίνετο ἐοῦσα τῆς ἐς Θεσσαλίην καὶ ἅμα ἀγχοτέρη τῆς

|invasion, an' entrance Θεσσαλοὺς κατὰ τὴν ἄνω Μακεδονίην διὰ
Περραιβῶν κατὰ Γόννον πόλιν, τῇ περ δὴ καὶ ἐσέβαλε
ἡ στρατιὴ ἡ Ξέρξεω. καταβάντες δὲ οἱ |Greek ἐπὶ τὰς
νέας ὀπίσω ἐπορεύοντο ἐς τὸν Ἴσθμόν.

7.174

αὕτη ἐγένετο ἡ ἐς Θεσσαλίην |expedition, campaign βασιλέος τε
μέλλοντος |pass over, cross τὴν Εὐρώπην ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας
καὶ ἐόντος ἤδη ἐν Ἀβύδῳ. Θεσσαλοὶ δὲ |raze, bereave; desert, isolate
συμμάχων οὕτω δὴ ἐμήδισαν |willing, eager οὐδ' ἔτι
ἐνδοιαστῶς, ὥστε ἐν τοῖσι πρήγμασι ἐφαίνοντο βασιλεῖ
ἄνδρες ἐόντες |useful

7.175

οἱ δὲ |Greek ἐπείτε ἀπίκατο ἐς τὸν Ἴσθμόν, ἐβουλεύοντο
πρὸς τὰ λεχθέντα ἐξ Ἀλεξάνδρου τῇ τε στήσονται τὸν
πόλεμον καὶ ἐν οἴοισι |place ἡ νικῶσα δὲ γνώμη ἐγένετο
τὴν ἐν Θερμοπύλῃσι |invasion, an' entrance ὑλάξαι· στεινοτέρη γὰρ
ἐφαίνετο ἐοῦσα τῆς ἐς Θεσσαλίην καὶ ἅμα ἀγχοτέρη τῆς

there was another pass besides this to the Thessalian land by upper Macedonia through the Perraiibians and by the city of Gonnos, the way by which the army of Xerxes did in fact make its entrance. So the Hellenes went down to their ships again and made their way back to the Isthmus.

7.174

Such was the expedition to Thessaly, which took place when the king was about to cross over from Asia to Europe and was already at Abydos. So the Thessalians, being stripped of allies, upon this took the side of the Medes with a good will and no longer half-heartedly, so that in the course of events they proved very serviceable to the king.

7.175

When the Hellenes had returned to the Isthmus, they deliberated, having regard to that which had been said by Alexander, where and in what regions they should set the war on foot: and the opinion which prevailed was to guard the pass at Thermopylai; for it was seen to be narrower than that leading into Thessaly, and at the same time it was single, and nearer also to their own

*vocabulary***ἀγχοῦ** near, nigh; like ~angina**αἰγιαλός** beach, shore**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix**ἀμαξιτός** road**ἀτραπός** ἀταρπιτοῦ (f) trail**εἰσβολή** -ωβόλης invasion, an entrance

~ballistic

Ἑλλην Greek**ἔσοδος** entrance**εὖς** good, brave, noble**ἡλόω** sharpen**ἡμίπλεθρον** 15 meters**ἡπειρος** (f) mainland, continent**μεταξύ** between**ὄον** οὓ type of fruit**ὀπισθεν** behind, hereafter**παρίημι** dangle; pass over, allow ~jet**πέλαγος** -ους (n, 3) the open sea

~pelagic

πόρος way, bridge ~fare**πόρω** aor. give, pf. be fated**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

χῶρος place ~heir

έωντων· τήν δέ ἀτραπόν, δι' ἥλωσαν οἱ ἀλόντες Ἑλλήνων
 ἐν Θερμοπύλῃσι, οὐδὲ ἤδεσαν ἐοῦσαν πρότερον ἢ περ
 ἀπικόμενοι ἐς Θερμοπύλας ἐπύθοντο Τρηχινίων. ταύτην
 ὦν ἐβουλεύσαντο φυλάσσοντες τήν ἐσβολήν μὴ παρίεναι
 ἐς τήν Ἑλλάδα τὸν βάρβαρον, τὸν δὲ ναυτικὸν στρατὸν
 πλέειν γῆς τῆς Ἰστιαιώτιδος ἐπὶ Ἀρτεμίσιον. ταῦτα
 γὰρ ἀγχοῦ τε ἀλλήλων ἐστὶ ὥστε πυνθάνεσθαι τὰ κατὰ
 ἐκατέρους ἐόντα, οἳ τε χώροι οὕτω ἔχουσι.

7.176

τοῦτο μὲν τὸ Ἀρτεμίσιον· ἐκ τοῦ πελάγεος τοῦ Θρηκίου ἐξ
 εὐρέος συνάγεται ἐς στεινὸν ἐόντα τὸν πόρον τὸν μεταξὺ
 νήσου τε Σκιάθου καὶ ἡπείρου Μαγνησίης· ἐκ δὲ τοῦ
 στεينوῦ τῆς Εὐβοίης ἤδη τὸ Ἀρτεμίσιον δέκεται αἰγιαλός,
 ἐν δὲ Ἀρτέμιδος ἱρόν. ἡ δὲ αὖ διὰ Τρηχίνος ἔσοδος ἐς τήν
 Ἑλλάδα ἐστὶ τῇ στεινοτάτῃ ἡμίπλεθρον. οὐ μέντοι κατὰ
 τοῦτό γε ἐστὶ τὸ στεινότατον τῆς χώρας τῆς ἄλλης, ἀλλ'
 ἔμπροσθέ τε Θερμοπυλέων καὶ ὄπισθε, κατὰ τε Ἀλπηνοὺς
 ὄπισθε ἐόντας ἐοῦσα ἀμαξιτὸς μούνη, καὶ ἔμπροσθε κατὰ

έωντων· τήν δέ |trail , δι' |sharpen οἱ |be cap-|Greek
|tured
ἐν Θερμοπύλῃσι, οὐδὲ ἤδεσαν ἐοῦσαν πρότερον ἢ περ
ἀπικόμενοι ἐς Θερμοπύλας ἐπύθοντο Τρηχινίων. ταύτην
ὦν ἐβουλεύσαντο φυλάσσοντες τήν |invasion, , ἀν|dangle; pass
|entrance |over, allow
ἐς τήν Ἑλλάδα τὸν βάρβαρον, τὸν δὲ ναυτικὸν |army
πλέειν γῆς τῆς Ἰσθμιαῖδος ἐπὶ Ἀρτεμίσιον. ταῦτα
γὰρ |near, nigh; like ἄλλων ἐστὶ ὥστε πυνθάνεσθαι τὰ κατὰ
ἐκατέρους ἐόντα, οἳ τε |place οὕτω ἔχουσι.

7.176

τοῦτο μὲν τὸ Ἀρτεμίσιον· ἐκ τοῦ |the open sea ὁ Θρηκίου ἐξ
εὐρέος συνάγεται ἐς στεινὸν ἐόντα τὸν πόρον τὸν |between
νήσου τε Σκιάθου καὶ |mainland, Μαγνησίδος· ἐκ δὲ τοῦ
|continent
στεينوῦ τῆς Εὐβοίης ἤδη τὸ Ἀρτεμίσιον δέκεται |beach,
|shore
ἐν δὲ Ἀρτέμιδος ἱρόν. ἡ δὲ αὖ διὰ Τρηχίνος |entrance ἔς τὴν
Ἑλλάδα ἐστὶ τῇ στεινοτάτῃ |15 meters . οὐ μέντοι κατὰ
τοῦτό γε ἐστὶ τὸ στεινότατον τῆς χώρας τῆς ἄλλης, ἀλλ'
ἐμπροσθὲ τε Θερμοπυλέων καὶ ὅπισθε, κατὰ τε Ἀλπηνοὺς
ὅπισθε ἐόντας ἐοῦσα |road μούνη, καὶ ἐμπροσθε κατὰ

land; and as for the path by means of which were taken those of the Hellenes who were taken by the enemy at Thermopylai, they did not even know of its existence until they were informed by the people of Trachis after they had come to Thermopylai. This pass then they resolved to guard, and not permit the Barbarian to go by into Hellas; and they resolved that the fleet should sail to Artemision in the territory of Histiaia: for these points are near to one another, so that each division of their forces could have information of what was happening to the other. And the places are so situated as I shall describe.

7.176

As to Artemision first, coming out of the Thracian Sea the space is contracted from great width to that narrow channel which lies between the island of Skiathos and the mainland of Magnesia; and after the strait there follows at once in Euboea the sea-beach called Artemision, upon which there is a temple of Artemis. Then secondly the passage into Hellas by Trechis is, where it is narrowest, but fifty feet wide: it is not here however that the narrowest part of this whole region lies, but in front of Thermopylai and also behind it, consisting of a single wheel-track only both by Alpenoi, which lies behind Thermopylai and again by

vocabulary

ἄβατος untrodden; impassable
ἀγγοτάτω nearest
ἀγγοῦ near, nigh; like ~angina
ἀμαξιτός road
ἀνατείνω lift, reach out, threaten
ἀπόκρημνος sheer, precipitous
ἀρχαῖος ancient, from the beginning
 ~oligarch
ἄτε as if; since
βωμός altar; stand, pedestal
δέμω build ~domicile
εἰσβάλλω throw into ~ballistic
εἰσβολή -ωβόλης invasion, an entrance
 ~ballistic
ἐπιχώριος native
ἔσοδος entrance
ἐσπέρα evening, west
ἐφέζομαι sit on; bring aboard ~sit

ἐφίημι (τι) send at, let fly; mp: rush at, spring upon ~jet
θάλλω bloom, flourish, abound
 ~thallium
θερμός warm, hot ~thermos
ἰδρύω establish
καταστρέφω overturn, subdue
 ~catastrophe
κώμη village
λουτρόν bathing water
μηχανάομαι build, contrive
 ~mechanism
ὀρθόω stand up
προφυλάσσω guard the front
τέναγος -εος (n, 3) shoal, shallows
ὑποδέχομαι welcome, accept, suffer
χαραδρόομαι be full of gullies
χώρος place ~heir

Φοίνικα ποταμὸν ἀγχοῦ Ἀνθήλης πόλιος ἄλλη ἀμαξιτὸς
 μούνη. τῶν δὲ Θερμοπυλέων τὸ μὲν πρὸς ἐσπέρης ὄρος
 ἄβατόν τε καὶ ἀπόκρημνον, ὑψηλόν, ἀνατεῖνον ἐς τὴν
 Οἷτην· τὸ δὲ πρὸς τὴν ἡῶ τῆς ὁδοῦ θάλασσα ὑποδέκεται
 καὶ τευάγεα. ἔστι δὲ ἐν τῇ ἐσόδῳ ταύτῃ θερμὰ λουτρά,
 τὰ Χύτρος καλέουσι οἱ ἐπιχώριοι, καὶ βωμὸς ἴδρυται
 Ἡρακλέος ἐπ' αὐτοῖσι. ἐδέδμητο δὲ τεῖχος κατὰ ταύτας
 τὰς ἐσβολάς, καὶ τό γε παλαιὸν πύλαι ἐπῆσαν. ἔδειμαν
 δὲ Φωκέες τὸ τεῖχος δείσαντες, ἐπεὶ Θεσσαλοὶ ἦλθον ἐκ
 Θεσπρωτῶν οἰκήσοντες γῆν τὴν Αἰολίδα τὴν νῦν ἐκτέαται.
 ἄτε δὴ πειρωμένων τῶν Θεσσαλῶν καταστρέφεσθαι
 σφέας, τοῦτο προεφυλάξαντο οἱ Φωκέες, καὶ τὸ ὕδωρ τὸ
 θερμὸν τότε ἐπῆκαν ἐπὶ τὴν ἔσοδον, ὥς ἂν χαραδρωθείη
 ὁ χώρος, πᾶν μηχανώμενοι ὅπως μὴ σφί ἐσβάλοιεν οἱ
 Θεσσαλοὶ ἐπὶ τὴν χώραν. τὸ μὲν νυν τεῖχος τὸ ἀρχαῖον ἐκ
 παλαιοῦ τε ἐδέδμητο καὶ τὸ πλέον αὐτοῦ ἤδη ὑπὸ χρόνου
 ἔκειτο· τοῖσι δὲ αὖτις ὀρθώσασι ἔδοξε ταύτῃ ἀπαμύνειν
 ἀπὸ τῆς Ἑλλάδος τὸν βάρβαρον. κώμη δὲ ἐστὶ ἀγχοτάτῳ

Φοίνικα ποταμὸν |near, nigh; like` |s πόλιος ἄλλη |road
 μούνη. τῶν δὲ Θερμοπυλέων τὸ μὲν πρὸς ἐσπέρης ὄρος
 |untrodden; - καὶ |sheer, precipitous ἤλόν, |lift, reach`S τὴν
 |impassable |out, threaten
 Οἴτην· τὸ δὲ πρὸς τὴν ἡῶ τῆς ὁδοῦ |bloom, |welcome, ac-
 |flourish. |cept, suffer
 καὶ |shoal, ἔστι δὲ ἐν τῇ |entrance αὐτῇ |warm, |bathing
 |shallows |hot |water
 τὰ Χύτρος καλέουσι οἱ |native , καὶ |altar |establish
 Ἡρακλέος ἐπ' αὐτοῖσι. ἐδέδμητο δὲ τεῖχος κατὰ ταύτας
 τὰς |invasion, an αὶ τό γε παλαιὸν πύλαι ἐπήσαν. |build
 |entrance
 δὲ Φωκέες τὸ τεῖχος δείσαντες, ἐπεὶ Θεσσαλοὶ ἦλθον ἐκ
 Θεσπρωτῶν οἰκήσοντες γῆν τὴν Αἰολίδα τὴν νῦν ἐκτέαται.
 |as if; siñce |ειρωμένων τῶν Θεσσαλῶν |overturn, subdue
 σφέας, τοῦτο |guard the front οἱ Φωκέες, καὶ τὸ ὕδωρ τὸ
 |warm, hot ἔτε ἐπήκαν ἐπὶ τὴν |entrance ὥς ἂν |be full of gullies
 ὁ |place , πᾶν |build, contrive ὅκως μὴ σφι |throw into οἱ
 Θεσσαλοὶ ἐπὶ τὴν χώραν. τὸ μὲν νυν τεῖχος τὸ |ancient, from
 |the beginning
 παλαιοῦ τε ἐδέδμητο καὶ τὸ πλέον αὐτοῦ ἤδη ὑπὸ χρόνου
 ἔκειτο· τοῖσι δὲ αὖτις |stand up ἔδοξε ταύτῃ ἀπαμύνειν
 ἀπὸ τῆς Ἑλλάδος τὸν βάρβαρον. κώμη δὲ ἐστὶ |nearest

the river Phoinix near the town of Anthela there is no space but a single wheel-track only: and on the West of Thermopylai there is a mountain which is impassable and precipitous, rising up to a great height and extending towards the range of Oite, while on the East of the road the sea with swampy pools succeeds at once. In this passage there are hot springs, which the natives of the place call the "Pots," and an altar of Heracles is set up near them. Moreover a wall had once been built at this pass, and in old times there was a gate set in it; which wall was built by the Phokians, who were struck with fear because the Thessalians had come from the land of the Thesprotians to settle in the Aiolian land, the same which they now possess. Since then the Thessalians, as they supposed, were attempting to subdue them, the Phokians guarded themselves against this beforehand; and at that time they let the water of the hot springs run over the passage, that the place might be converted into a ravine, and devised every means that the Thessalians might not make invasion of their land. Now the ancient wall had been built long before, and the greater part of it was by that time in ruins from lapse of time; the Hellenes however resolved to set it up again, and at this spot to repel the Barbarian from Hellas: and very near

*vocabulary***διαλύω** break up; relax, weaken**διατάσσω** arrange, array**Ἕλλην** Greek**ἐπισιτίζομαι** (ἰττ.) take supplies**λογίζομαι** reckon, consider**μαντεῖον** prophetic warning ~mantis**Πέρσης** Persian**τάχος** -ους (n, 3) speed ~tachometer**χρηστηριάζω** prophesy**χῶρος** place ~heir

τῆς ὁδοῦ Ἀλπηνοὶ οὖνομα· ἐκ ταύτης δὲ ἐπισιτιεῖσθαι ἐλογίζοντο οἱ Ἕλληνες.

7.177

οἱ μὲν νυν χῶροι οὗτοι τοῖσι Ἕλλησι εἶναι ἐφαίνοντο ἐπιτήδευοι· πάντα γὰρ προσκεψάμενοι καὶ ἐπιλογισθέντες ὅτι οὔτε πλήθει ἔξουσι χρᾶσθαι οἱ βάρβαροι οὔτε ἵππῳ, ταύτῃ σφι ἔδοξε δέκεσθαι τὸν ἐπιόντα ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα. ὥς δὲ ἐπύθοντο τὸν Πέρσῃν ἔοντα ἐν Πιερίῃ, διαλυθέντες ἐκ τοῦ Ἰσθμοῦ ἐστρατεύοντο αὐτῶν οἱ μὲν ἐς Θερμοπύλας πεζῇ, ἄλλοι δὲ κατὰ θάλασσαν ἐπ' Ἀρτεμίσιον.

7.178

οἱ μὲν δὴ Ἕλληνες κατὰ τάχος ἐβοήθειον διαταχθέντες, Δελφοὶ δ' ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ ἐχρηστηριάζοντο τῷ θεῷ ὑπὲρ ἑωυτῶν καὶ τῆς Ἑλλάδος καταρρωδηκότες, καί σφι ἐχρήσθη ἀνέμοισι εὔχεσθαι· μεγάλους γὰρ τούτους ἔσεσθαι τῇ Ἑλλάδι συμμάχους. Δελφοὶ δὲ δεξάμενοι τὸ μαντήιον πρῶτα μὲν Ἑλλήνων τοῖσι βουλομένοισι

τῆς ὁδοῦ Ἀλπηνοὶ οὖνομα· ἐκ ταύτης δὲ |take supplies

|reckon, οἱ |Greek
|consider

7.177

οἱ μὲν νυν |place οὔτοι τοῖσι |Greek εἶναι ἐφαίνοντο
ἐπιτήδεοι· πάντα γὰρ προσκεψάμενοι καὶ ἐπιλογισθέντες
ὅτι οὔτε πλήθει ἔξουσι χρᾶσθαι οἱ βάρβαροι οὔτε ἵππῳ,
ταύτῃ σφι ἔδοξε δέκεσθαι τὸν ἐπιόντα ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα.
ὥς δὲ ἐπύθοντο τὸν Πέρσῃν ἔοντα ἐν Πιερίῃ, |break up; re-
|lax, weaken
ἐκ τοῦ Ἰσθμοῦ ἐστρατεύοντο αὐτῶν οἱ μὲν ἐς Θερμοπύλας
πεζῇ, ἄλλοι δὲ κατὰ θάλασσαν ἐπ' Ἀρτεμίσιον.

7.178

οἱ μὲν δὴ |Greek κατὰ |speed ἐβόηθρον |arrange, array ,
Δελφοὶ δ' ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ |prophecy τῷ θεῷ
ὑπὲρ ἑωυτῶν καὶ τῆς Ἑλλάδος καταρρωδηκότες, καί
σφι ἐχρήσθη ἀνέμοισι εὔχεσθαι· μεγάλους γὰρ τούτους
ἔσεσθαι τῇ Ἑλλάδι συμμάχους. Δελφοὶ δὲ δεξάμενοι τὸ

|prophetic πρῶτα μὲν |Greek τοῖσι βουλομένοισι
|warning

the road there is a village called Alpenoi, from which the Hellenes counted on getting supplies.

7.177

These places then the Hellenes perceived to be such as their purpose required; for they considered everything beforehand and calculated that the Barbarians would not be able to take advantage either of superior numbers or of cavalry, and therefore they resolved here to receive the invader of Hellas: and when they were informed that the Persian was in Pieria, they broke up from the Isthmus and set forth for the campaign, some going to Thermopylai by land, and others making for Artemision by sea.

7.178

The Hellenes, I say, were coming to the rescue with speed, having been appointed to their several places: and meanwhile the men of Delphi consulted the Oracle of the god on behalf of themselves and on behalf of Hellas, being struck with dread; and a reply was given them that they should pray to the Winds, for these would be powerful helpers of Hellas in fight. So the Delphians, having accepted the oracle, first reported the answer which had been given them to those of

vocabulary

ἀποδείκνυμι (ō) show, point out;
 appoint; (mid) declare
ἀποδέχομαι accept ~doctrine
βωμός altar; stand, pedestal
ἐλεύθερος not enslaved
ἐξαγγέλλω bring news out ~angel
ἐπωνύμιος called, named
ἐφέπω drive, meet, follow ~sequel
θερμαίνω heat ~thermos
θυσία sacrifice
ἱλάσκομαι appease
καταρρωδέω fear, dread
κατατίθημι put down, deposit, lay

aside ~thesis
μεταίσσω jump on, rush after
μετατίθηναι set or cause among ~thesis
μέτεμι be among, go, follow ~ion
παραβάλλω put at risk ~ballistic
πρόοιδα foresee
προοράω see before oneself
προφυλάσσω guard the front
στρατός common people/soldiers
 ~strategy
τέμενος -εος (n, 3) non-common land
φυγή flight, means of escape ~fugitive
χρηστήριον oracle, response
χῶρος place ~heir

εἶναι ἐλευθέροισι ἐξήγγειλαν τὰ χρησθέντα αὐτοῖσι, καί σφι δεινῶς καταρρωδέουσι τὸν βάρβαρον ἐξαγγείλαντες χάριν ἀθάνατον κατέθεντο. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα οἱ Δελφοὶ τοῖσι ἀνέμοισι βωμόν τε ἀπέδεξαν ἐν Θυίῃ, τῇ περ τῆς Κηφισοῦ θυγατρὸς Θυίης τὸ τέμενος ἐστί, ἐπ' ἧς καὶ ὁ χώρος οὗτος τὴν ἐπωνυμίην ἔχει, καὶ θυσίῃσι σφέας μετήσαν.

7.179

Δελφοὶ μὲν δὴ κατὰ τὸ χρηστήριον ἔτι καὶ νῦν τοὺς ἀνέμους ἰλάσκονται. ὁ δὲ ναυτικὸς Ξέρξεω στρατὸς ὁρμώμενος ἐκ Θέρμης πόλιος παρέβαλε νηυσὶ τῇσι ἄριστα πλεούσῃσι δέκα ἰθὺ Σκιάθου, ἔνθα ἦσαν προφυλάσσευσαι νέες τρεῖς Ἑλληνίδες, Τροιζηνή τε καὶ Αἰγιναίη καὶ Ἀττική. προιδόντες δὲ οὗτοι τὰς νέας τῶν βαρβάρων ἐς φυγὴν ὄρμησαν.

7.180

τὴν μὲν δὴ Τροιζηνίην, τῆς ἡρχε Πρηξίνος, αὐτίκα αἰρέουσι ἐπισπόμενοι οἱ βάρβαροι, καὶ ἔπειτα τῶν

εἶναι |not enslaved |bring news out ἔχρησθέντα αὐτοῖσι, καί
 σφι δεινῶς |fear, dread τὸν βάρβαρον |bring news out
 χάριν ἀθάνατον |put down . μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα οἱ Δελφοὶ τοῖσι
 ἀνέμοισι |altar τε ἀπέδεξαν ἐν Θυίῃ, τῇ περ τῆς Κηφισοῦ
 θυγατρὸς Θυίης τὸ |non-common land ᾧ καὶ ὁ |place οὗτος
 τὴν |called,
 |named ἔχει, καὶ θυσίῃσι σφέας μετήσαν.

7.179

Δελφοὶ μὲν δὴ κατὰ τὸ |oracle, ἔτι καὶ νῦν τοὺς
 |response
 ἀνέμους |appease . ὁ δὲ ναυτικὸς Ξέρξεω |army
 ὁρμώμενος ἐκ Θέρμης πόλιος |put at risk νηυσὶ τῇσι ἄριστα
 πλεούσῃσι δέκα ἰθὺ Σκιάθου, ἔνθα ἦσαν |guard the front
 νέες τρεῖς Ἑλληνίδες, Τροιζηνίη τε καὶ Αἰγιναίη καὶ
 Ἀττική. προιδόντες δὲ οὗτοι τὰς νέας τῶν βαρβάρων ἐς
 |flight, means,σαν.
 |of escape

7.180

τὴν μὲν δὴ Τροιζηνίην, τῆς ἡρχε Πρηξίνος, αὐτίκα
 αἰρέουσι |drive, meet, follow, ἰρβαροι, καὶ ἔπειτα τῶν

the Hellenes who desired to be free; and having reported this to them at a time when they were in great dread of the Barbarian, they laid up for themselves an immortal store of gratitude: then after this the men of Delphi established an altar for the Winds in Thuia, where is the sacred enclosure of Thuia the daughter of Kephisos, after whom moreover this place has its name; and also they approached them with sacrifices.

7.179

The Delphians then according to the oracle even to this day make propitiary offerings to the Winds: and meanwhile the fleet of Xerxes setting forth from the city of Therma had passed over with ten of its ships, which were those that sailed best, straight towards Skiathos, where three Hellenic ships, a Troizenian, an Eginetan and an Athenian, were keeping watch in advance. When the crews of these caught sight of the ships of the Barbarians, they set off to make their escape:

7.180

And the ship of Troizen, of which Prexinos was in command, was pursued and captured at once by the Barbarians; who upon that took the man who was most distinguished

vocabulary

ἁλίσκομαι be captured ~helix
ἀντέχω hold up as protection against
 ~ischemia
βύσσινος of linen; bandage
ἐκπαγλέομαι be amazed
ἔλκος -εος (n, 3) wound ~ulcer
Ἑλλήν Greek
ἐπαυρέω touch, get one's hands on,
 incur ~eureka
ἐπιβατεύω move into, go aboard
ἐπιδείκνυμι (ῥ) display, exhibit
θόρυβος noise, clamor
ἰάομαι (ι) cure ~pediatrician

καθελίσσω wrap around and around
καλλιστεύω be the best
μίν him, her, it
περιέπω treat, handle
περιποιέω preserve; obtain
Πέρσης Persian
πρῶρα bow, prow ~prolog
σινδών -όνος (f, 3) linen
σμύρνα myrrh
στρατιά army ~strategy
σφαγιάζομαι sacrifice an animal
σφάζω cut the throat
τριηραρχέω command a trireme

ἐπιβατέων αὐτῆς τὸν καλλιστεύοντα ἀγαγόντες ἐπὶ τῆς
 πρῶρης τῆς νεὸς ἔσφαξαν, διαδέξιον ποιούμενοι τὸν
 εἶλον τῶν Ἑλλήνων πρῶτον καὶ κάλλιστον. τῷ δὲ
 σφαγιασθέντι τούτῳ οὖνομα ἦν Λέων· τάχα δ' ἂν τι καὶ
 τοῦ οὐνόματος ἐπαύροιτο.

7.181

ἡ δὲ Αἰγιναίη, τῆς ἐτρηράρχεε Ἀσωνίδης, καὶ τινά σφι
 θόρυβον παρέσχε, Πυθέω τοῦ Ἰσχενόου ἐπιβατεύοντος,
 ἀνδρὸς ἀρίστου γενομένου ταύτην τὴν ἡμέρην· ὃς ἐπειδὴ
 ἡ νηὺς ἡλίσκετο ἐς τοῦτο ἀντείχε μαχόμενος ἐς ὃ
 κατεκρεουργήθη ἅπας. ὥς δὲ πεσὼν οὐκ ἀπέθανε
 ἀλλ' ἦν ἔμπνοος, οἱ Πέρσαι, οἳ περ ἐπεβάτευον ἐπὶ
 τῶν νεῶν, δι' ἀρετὴν τὴν ἐκείνου περιποιῆσαί μιν περὶ
 πλείστου ἐποιήσαντο, σμύρνησί τε ἰώμενοι τὰ ἔλκεα καὶ
 σινδόνας βυσσίνης τελαμῶσι κατελίσσοντες· καί μιν, ὥς
 ὀπίσω ἀπίκοντο ἐς τὸ ἐωυτῶν στρατόπεδον, ἐπεδείκνυσαν
 ἐκπαγλεόμενοι πάσῃ τῇ στρατιῇ περιέποντες εὖ. τοὺς δὲ
 ἄλλους τοὺς ἔλαβον ἐν τῇ νηὶ ταύτῃ περιείπον ὥς

ἐπιβατέων αὐτῆς τὸν |be the best ἀγαγόντες ἐπὶ τῆς
 |bow, prow τῆς νεὸς |cut the throat ἀδέξιον ποιούμενοι τὸν
 εἶλον τῶν |Greek πρῶτον καὶ κάλλιστον. τῷ δὲ
 |sacrifice an animal ἵτω οὖνομα ἦν Λέων· τάχα δ' ἂν τι καὶ
 τοῦ οὐνόματος |touch, get one's
 |hands on, incur

7.181

ἡ δὲ Αἰγιναίη, τῆς |command a trireme ἰδίης, καὶ τινὰ σφι
 |noise, παρέσχε, Πυθέω τοῦ Ἰσχενόου |move into, go aboard
 |clamor ἀνδρὸς ἀρίστου γενομένου ταύτην τὴν ἡμέρην· ὃς ἐπειδὴ
 ἡ νηὺς |be captured ἐς τοῦτο |hold up as pro-έμενος ἐς ὃ
 |tection against κατεκρεουργήθη ἅπας. ὥς δὲ πεσὼν οὐκ ἀπέθανε
 ἀλλ' ἦν ἔμπνοος, οἱ Πέρσαι, οἳ περ |move into, go aboard
 τῶν νεῶν, δι' ἀρετὴν τὴν ἐκείνου |preserve; μιν περὶ
 |obtain πλείστου ἐποίησαντο, |myrrh τε |cure τὰ |wound καὶ
 |linen |of linen; bandage ὧσι κατειλίσσοντες· καί μιν, ὥς
 ὀπίσω ἀπίκοντο ἐς τὸ ἐωυτῶν στρατόπεδον, |display, exhibit
 |be amazed πάσῃ τῇ στρατιῇ περιέποντες εὖ. τοὺς δὲ
 ἄλλους τοὺς ἔλαβον ἐν τῇ νηὶ ταύτῃ περιεῖπον ὥς

by beauty among the fighting-men on board of her, and cut his throat at the prow of the ship, making a good omen for themselves of the first of the Hellenes whom they had captured who was pre-eminent for beauty. The name of this man who was sacrificed was Leon, and perhaps he had also his name to thank in some degree for what befell him.

7.181

The ship of Egina however, of which Asonides was master, even gave them some trouble to capture it, seeing that Pytheas the son of Ischenoös served as a fighting-man on board of her, who proved himself a most valiant man on this day; for when the ship was being taken, he held out fighting until he was hacked all to pieces: and as when he had fallen he did not die, but had still breath in him, the Persians who served as fighting-men on board the ships, because of his valour used all diligence to save his life, both applying unguents of myrrh to heal his wounds and also wrapping him up in bands of the finest linen; and when they came back to their own main body, they showed him to all the army, making a marvel of him and giving him good treatment; but the rest whom they had taken in this ship they treated as

*vocabulary***ἀνδράποδον** -ς slave ~androgynous**ἀποθρόσκω** jump off of**ἐκβολή** throwing out**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἐνθαῦτα** there, here**ἐπελαύνω** beat out ~elastic**ἔρμα** -τος (n, 3) prop; earring**ἡμεροσκόπος** watching by day**καταρρωδέω** fear, dread**μεθορμίζω** move anchorage**μεταξύ** between**μύρμηξ** ant**πυρρός** signal fire ~pyre**σκάφος** (τό) hull, ship; (ό) digging**στήλη** post, column**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up
station ~strategy**τριηραρχέω** command a trireme**χειρόω** dominate, subdue

ἀνδράποδα.

7.182

αἱ μὲν δὴ δύο τῶν νεῶν οὕτω ἐχειρώθησαν· ἡ δὲ τρίτη, τῆς ἐτρηιράρχεε Φόρμος ἀνὴρ Ἀθηναῖοις, φεύγουσα ἐξοκέλλει ἐς τὰς ἐκβολὰς τοῦ Πηνειοῦ, καὶ τοῦ μὲν σκάφους ἐκράτησαν οἱ βάρβαροι, τῶν δὲ ἀνδρῶν οὐ· ὥς γὰρ δὴ τάχιστα ἐπώκειλαν τὴν νέα οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι, ἀποθορόντες κατὰ Θεσσαλίην πορευόμενοι ἐκομίσθησαν ἐς Ἀθήνας.

7.183

ταῦτα οἱ Ἕλληνες οἱ ἐπ' Ἀρτεμισίῳ στρατοπεδεύόμενοι πυνθάνονται παρὰ πυρσῶν ἐκ Σκιάθου· πυθόμενοι δὲ καὶ καταρρωδήσαντες ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἀρτεμισίου μετορμίζοντο ἐς Χαλκίδα, φυλάξοντες μὲν τὸν Εὐριπον, λείποντες δὲ ἡμεροσκόπους περὶ τὰ ὑψηλὰ τῆς Εὐβοίης. τῶν δὲ δέκα νεῶν τῶν βαρβάρων τρεῖς ἐπήλασαν περὶ τὸ ἔρμα τὸ μεταξὺ ἐὼν Σκιάθου τε καὶ Μαγνησίης, καλεόμενον δὲ Μύρμηκα. ἐνθαῦτα οἱ βάρβαροι ἐπειδὴ στήλην λίθου

|slave

7.182

αἱ μὲν δὴ δύο τῶν νεῶν οὕτω |χειρόω?: dominate, subdue; or |S
 |χειρόω?: dominate, subdue
 |command a trireme, os ἀνὴρ Ἀθηναίοις, φεύγουσα ἔξοκέλλει
 ἐς τὰς |throwing out_υ Πηνειοῦ, καὶ τοῦ μὲν σκάφους
 ἐκράτησαν οἱ βάρβαροι, τῶν δὲ ἀνδρῶν οὗ· ὥς γὰρ δὴ
 τάχιστα ἐπώκειλαν τὴν νέα οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι, |jump off of
 κατὰ Θεσσαλίην πορευόμενοι ἐκομίσθησαν ἐς Ἀθήνας.

7.183

ταῦτα οἱ |Greek οἱ ἐπ' Ἀρτεμισίῳ |encamp or take up sta-
 tion
 πυνθάνονται παρὰ |signal fire ἐκ Σκιάθου· πυθόμενοι δὲ
 καὶ |fear, dread ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἀρτεμισίου |move anchorage
 ἐς Χαλκίδα, φυλάξοντες μὲν τὸν Εὐριπον, λείποντες δὲ
 |watching by day περὶ τὰ ὑψηλὰ τῆς Εὐβοίης. τῶν δὲ δέκα
 νεῶν τῶν βαρβάρων τρεῖς |beat out περὶ τὸ |prop; ὃ
 |earring
 |between ἐὼν Σκιάθου τε καὶ Μαγνησίης, καλεόμενον δὲ
 |ant |there, here· βάρβαροι ἐπειδὴ |post, λίθου
 |column

slaves.

7.182

Two of the three ships, I say, were captured thus; but the third, of which Phormos an Athenian was master, ran ashore in its flight at the mouth of the river Peneios; and the Barbarians got possession of the vessel but not of the crew; for so soon as the Athenians had run the ship ashore, they leapt out of her, and passing through Thessaly made their way to Athens.

7.183

Of these things the Hellenes who were stationed at Artemision were informed by fire-signals from Skiathos; and being informed of them and being struck with fear, they removed their place of anchorage from Atermision to Chalkis, intending to guard the Euripos, but leaving at the same time watchers by day on the heights of Euboea. Of the ten ships of the Barbarians three sailed up to the reef called Myrmex, which lies between Skiathos and Magnesia; and when the Barbarians had there erected a stone pillar, which for that purpose they brought

vocabulary

αἰγιαλός beach, shore

ἀκτὴ beach; cereal grain

ἀπαθής unaffected, impassive

ἀρχαῖος ancient, from the beginning
~oligarch

διακόσιοι (ἄ) two hundred

ἐμποδών getting in the way

ἐνδεκα eleven ~decimal

ἐξανύω bring to pass; slay

ἐξέλασις expulsion; expedition

ἐπιβατεύω move into, go aboard

ἐπιπλέω sail on, over ~float

ἐπιχώριος native

ἔρμα -τος (n, 3) prop; earring

θερμαίνω heat ~thermos

καθαρός clean, pure

καθηγέομαι lead

λογίζομαι reckon, consider

μεταξύ between

μυριάς -δος (ῥ, f, 3) countless, myriad

ὄμιλος (ι) crowd, throng ~homily

πάσσω sprinkle; insert in a web

πείρω pierce, run through ~pierce

Πέρσης Persian

πόρος way, bridge ~fare

στρατός common people/soldiers
~strategyσυμβάλλω pit against; compare; mp:
meet, fall in with ~ballistic

τετρακόσιοι 400

τηνικαῦτα at that time, in that case

χιλιάς -δος (ι, f, 3) 1000

χίλιοι (ι) thousand ~kilo-

χωρίς separately; except, other than
~heir

χῶρος place ~heir

ἐπέθηκαν κομίσαντες ἐπὶ τὸ ἔρμα, ὀρμηθέντες αὐτοὶ ἐκ Θέρμης, ὥς σφι τὸ ἐμποδὼν ἐγεγόνεε καθαρὸν, ἐπέπλεον πάσῃσι τῇσι νηυσί, ἔνδεκα ἡμέρας παρέντες μετὰ τὴν βασιλέος ἐξέλασιν ἐκ Θέρμης. τὸ δὲ ἔρμα σφι κατηγήσατο ἐὼν ἐν πόρῳ μάλιστα Πάμμων Σκύριος. πανημερὸν δὲ πλέοντες οἱ βάρβαροι ἐξανύουσι τῆς Μαγνησίης χώρας ἐπὶ Σηπιάδα τε καὶ τὸν αἰγιαλὸν τὸν μεταξὺ Κασθαναίης τε πόλιος ἐόντα καὶ Σηπιάδος ἀκτῆς.

7.184

μέχρι μὲν νυν τούτου τοῦ χώρου καὶ Θερμοπυλέων ἀπαθῆς τε κακῶν ἦν ὁ στρατός, καὶ πλῆθος ἦν τηνικαῦτα ἔτι, ὥς ἐγὼ συμβαλλόμενος εὐρίσκω, τῶν μὲν ἐκ τῶν νεῶν τῶν ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίης, εἰκοσίων ἐπτὰ καὶ διηκοσίων καὶ χιλίων, τὸν μὲν ἀρχαῖον ἐκάστων τῶν ἐθνέων ἐόντα ὄμιλον τέσσερας καὶ εἴκοσι μυριάδας καὶ πρὸς χιλιάδα τε καὶ τετρακοσίους, ὥς ἀνὰ διηκοσίους ἄνδρας λογιζόμενοισι ἐν ἐκάστη νηί. ἐπεβάτευον δὲ ἐπὶ τουτέων τῶν νεῶν, χωρὶς ἐκάστων τῶν ἐπιχωρίων ἐπιβατέων, Περσέων τε καὶ Μήδων καὶ

ἐπέθηκαν κομίσαντες ἐπὶ τὸ |prop; ῥιμηθέντες αὐτοὶ ἐκ
|earring
Θέρμης, ὥς σφι τὸ |getting in the way -- |clean, pure |sail on, over
|sprinkle τῇσι νηυσί, |eleven ἡμέρας |pierce μετὰ τὴν
βασιλέος |expulsion; ἔκ Θέρμης. τὸ δὲ |prop; φι κατηγγήσατο
|expedition |earring
ἐὼν ἐν |way, bridge στα Πάμμων Σκύριος. πανημερὸν δὲ
πλέοντες οἱ βάρβαροι |bring to pass; slay ἀγνησίης χώρης
ἐπὶ Σηπιάδα τε καὶ τὸν |beach, τὸν |between Κασθαναίης
|shore
τε πόλιος ἐόντα καὶ Σηπιάδος |beach;
|grain

7.184

μέχρι μὲν νυν τούτου τοῦ |place καὶ Θερμοπυλέων |unaffected,
|impassive
τε κακῶν ἦν ὁ |army , καὶ πλῆθος ἦν |at that time, ἔτι, ὥς
|in that case
ἐγὼν |pit against; compare; ἴσκω, τῶν μὲν ἐκ τῶν νεῶν τῶν ἐκ
|mp: meet, fall in with
τῆς Ἀσίης, ἐουσέων ἐπτὰ καὶ |two hundred καὶ χιλίων, τὸν
μὲν |ancient, from ἱππων τῶν ἐθνέων ἐόντα |crowd τέσσερας
|the beginning
καὶ εἴκοσι |countless, καὶ πρὸς |1000 τε καὶ |400
|myriad
ὥς ἀνὰ |two hundred Ἰνδρας |reckon, consider ἐν ἐκάστη νηί.
|move into, go aboard νυτέων τῶν νεῶν, |separately; ἕξ- τῶν
|cept, other than
|native ἐπιβατέων, Περσέων τε καὶ Μήδων καὶ

to the reef, they set forth with their main body from Therma, the difficulties of the passage having now been cleared away, and sailed thither with all their ships, having let eleven days go by since the king set forth on his march from Therma. Now of this reef lying exactly in the middle of the fairway they were informed by Pammon of Skyros. Sailing then throughout the day the Barbarians accomplished the voyage to Sepias in Magnesia and to the sea-beach which is between the city of Casthanaia and the headland of Sepias.

7.184

So far as this place and so far as Thermopylai the army was exempt from calamity; and the number was then still, as I find by computation, this: — Of the ships which came from Asia, which were one thousand two hundred and seven, the original number of the crews supplied by the several nations I find to have been twenty-four myriads and also in addition to them one thousand four hundred, if one reckons at the rate of two hundred men to each ship: and on board of each of these ships there served as fighting-men, besides the fighting-men belonging to its own nation in

vocabulary

ἄνευ away from; not having; not
needing ~Sp. sin

ἀνίημι urge, impel; release ~jet

ἀριθμός number

ἄρμα -τος (n, 3) chariot

δεκάς -δος (f, 3) decade, group of ten
~decimal

διακόσιοι (ᾱ) two hundred

δισμύριοι (ὅ) 20,000

ἐβδομήκοντα 70

ἐκατοντάς 100

ἐνιμι be in ~ion

ἕξ six ~hexagon

ἑξακισχίλιοι 6000

ἑξανάγω (mp) set sail

εὖς good, brave, noble

κάμηλος (f) camel

μυριάς -δος (ὅ, f, 3) countless, myriad

ὀγδῶκοντα eighty

ὀκτώ eight ~octopus

ὄμιλος (ῑ) crowd, throng ~homily

ὄον οὖ type of fruit

πεντηκόντερος (f) ship with 50 oars

προσδοκάω expect

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion

σύμπας (ᾱ) all together

συντίθημι hearken, mark ~thesis

τρισμύριοι (ὅ) 30,000

τρισχίλιοι 3000 ~kilo-

χιλιάς -δος (ῑ, f, 3) 1000

Σακέων τριήκοντα ἄνδρες. οὗτος ἄλλος ὄμιλος γίνεται
 τρισμύριοι καὶ ἑξακισχίλιοι καὶ πρὸς διηκόσιοί τε καὶ δέκα.
 προσθήσω δ' ἔτι τούτῳ καὶ τῷ προτέρῳ ἀριθμῷ τοὺς
 ἐκ τῶν πεντηκοντέρων, ποιήσας, ὅ τι πλέον ἦν αὐτῶν
 ἢ ἔλασσον, ἀν' ὀγδώκοντα ἄνδρας ἐνεῖναι. συνελέχθη
 δὲ ταῦτα τὰ πλοῖα, ὥς καὶ πρότερον εἰρέθη, τρισχίλια.
 ἤδη ὦν ἄνδρες ἂν εἶεν ἐν αὐτοῖσι τέσσερες μυριάδες καὶ
 εἵκοσι. τοῦτο μὲν δὴ τό ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας ναυτικὸν ἦν, σύμπαν
 ἐὼν πεντήκοντα μυριάδες καὶ μία, χιλιάδες δὲ ἔπεισι ἐπὶ
 ταύτησι ἑπτὰ καὶ πρὸς ἑκατοντάδες ἕξ καὶ δεκάς. τοῦ
 δὲ πεζοῦ ἑβδομήκοντα καὶ ἑκατὸν μυριάδες ἐγένοντο, τῶν
 δὲ ἱππέων ὀκτὼ μυριάδες. προσθήσω δ' ἔτι τούτοισι τὰς
 καμήλους τοὺς ἐλαύνοντας Ἀραβίους καὶ τοὺς τὰ ἄρματα
 Λίβυας, πλῆθος ποιήσας δισμυρίους ἄνδρας. καὶ δὴ τό τε
 ἐκ τῶν νεῶν καὶ τοῦ πεζοῦ πλῆθος συντιθέμενον γίνεται
 διηκόσιαί τε μυριάδες καὶ τριήκοντα καὶ μία, καὶ πρὸς
 χιλιάδες ἑπτὰ καὶ ἑκατοντάδες ἕξ καὶ δεκάς. τοῦτο μὲν τὸ
 ἐξ αὐτῆς τῆς Ἀσίας στράτευμα ἐξαναχθὲν εἴρηται, ἄνευ τε

Σακέων τριήκοντα ἄνδρες. οὗτος ἄλλος |crowd γίνεται
 |30,000 καὶ |6000 καὶ πρὸς |two hundred_ καὶ δέκα.
 προσθήσω δ' ἔτι τούτῳ καὶ τῷ προτέρῳ |number τοὺς
 ἐκ τῶν |ship with 50 oars , ποιήσας, ὅ τι πλέον ἦν αὐτῶν
 ἢ ἔλασσον, ἀν' |eighty ἄνδρας |be in |collect,
 |assemble
 δὲ ταῦτα τὰ πλοῖα, ὡς καὶ πρότερον εἰρέθη, |3000 .
 ἤδη ὦν ἄνδρες ἂν εἶεν ἐν αὐτοῖσι τέσσερες |countless, καὶ
 |myriad
 εἴκοσι. τοῦτο μὲν δὴ τό ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας ναυτικὸν ἦν, |all together
 ἐὼν πεντήκοντα |countless, καὶ μία, |1000 δὲ ἔπεισι ἐπὶ
 |myriad
 ταύτησι ἑπτὰ καὶ πρὸς |100 ἕξ καὶ |decade τοῦ
 δὲ πεζοῦ |70 καὶ ἑκατὸν |countless, ἐγένοντο, τῶν
 |myriad
 δὲ ἱππέων |eight |countless, προσθήσω δ' ἔτι τούτοισι τὰς
 |myriad
 |camel τοὺς ἐλαύνοντας Ἀραβίους καὶ τοὺς τὰ |chariot
 Λίβυας, πλήθος ποιήσας |20,000 ἄνδρας. καὶ δὴ τό τε
 ἐκ τῶν νεῶν καὶ τοῦ πεζοῦ πλήθος |hearken, mark γίνεται
 διηκόσιαί τε |countless, καὶ τριήκοντα καὶ μία, καὶ πρὸς
 |myriad
 |1000 ἑπτὰ καὶ |100 ἕξ καὶ |decade τοῦτο μὲν τὸ
 ἐξ αὐτῆς τῆς Ἀσίας |army ἐξαναχθὲν εἴρηται, ἄνευ τε

each case, thirty men who were Persians, Medes, or Sacans; and this amounts to three myriads six thousand two hundred and ten in addition to the others. I will add also to this and to the former number the crews of the fifty-oared galleys, assuming that there were eighty men, more or less, in each one. Of these vessels there were gathered together, as was before said, three thousand: it would follow therefore that there were in them four and twenty myriads of men. This was the naval force which came from Asia, amounting in all to fifty-one myriads and also seven thousand six hundred and ten in addition. Then of the footmen there had been found to be a hundred and seventy myriads, and of the horsemen eight myriads: and I will add also to these the Arabian camel-drivers and the Libyan drivers of chariots, assuming them to amount to twenty thousand men. The result is then that the number of the ships' crews combined with that of the land-army amounts to two hundred and thirty-one myriads and also in addition seven thousand six hundred and ten. This is the statement of the Army which was brought up out of Asia itself, without counting

vocabulary

δεκάς -δος (f, 3) decade, group of ten
~decimal

δισμύριοι (ὅ) 20,000

έκατοντάς 100

έκκαίδεκα 16

Έλλην Greek

έμπλέω sail in

έξαριθμέω count up; recount

έξήκοντα sixty

έπίκειμαι impose; shut a door

εύς good, brave, noble

θεραπήη service, tending

μάχιμος warlike

μυριάς -δος (ὅ, f, 3) countless, myriad

νέμω to allot, to pasture ~nemesis

ὄον οὖ type of fruit

παράλιος seaside

προσλογίζομαι include, count as well

σιταγωγός (ῖ) grain-carrying

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

τετρακισχίλιοι 4000 ~kilo-

τῆς θεραπείης τῆς ἐπομένης καὶ τῶν σιταγωγῶν πλοίων
καὶ ὅσοι ἐνέπλεον τούτοισι.

7.185

τὸ δὲ δὴ ἐκ τῆς Εὐρώπης ἀγόμενον στράτευμα ἔτι
προσλογιστέα τούτῳ παντὶ τῷ ἐξηριθμημένῳ· δόκησιν δὲ
δεῖ λέγειν. νέας μὲν νυν οἱ ἀπὸ Θρηίκης Ἑλληνες καὶ οἱ
ἐκ τῶν νήσων τῶν ἐπικειμενέων τῇ Θρηίκῃ παρείχοντο
εἴκοσι καὶ ἑκατόν· ἐκ μὲν νυν τούτων τῶν νεῶν ἄνδρες
τετρακισχίλιοι καὶ δισμύριοι γίνονται. πεζοῦ δὲ τὸν
Θρηίκες παρείχοντο καὶ Παῖονες καὶ Ἑορδοὶ καὶ Βοττιαῖοι
καὶ τὸ Χαλκιδικὸν γένος καὶ Βρύγοι καὶ Πίερες καὶ
Μακεδόνες καὶ Περραιβοὶ καὶ Ἐνιῆνες καὶ Δόλοπες καὶ
Μάγνητες καὶ Ἀχαιοὶ καὶ ὅσοι τῆς Θρηίκης τὴν παραλίνην
νέμονται, τούτων τῶν ἐθνέων τριήκοντα μυριάδας δοκέω
γενέσθαι. αὗται ὧν αἱ μυριάδες ἐκείνησι προστεθεῖσαι
τῇσι ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας, γίνονται αἱ πᾶσαι ἀνδρῶν αἱ μάχιμοι
μυριάδες διηκόσιαι καὶ ἐξήκοντα καὶ τέσσερες, ἔπεισι δὲ
ταύτησι ἑκατοντάδες ἑκκαίδεκα καὶ δεκάς.

τῆς θεραπείης τῆς ἐπομένης καὶ τῶν σιταγωγῶν πλοίων
καὶ ὅσοι |sail in τούτοισι.

7.185

τὸ δὲ δὴ ἐκ τῆς Εὐρώπης ἀγόμενον |army ἔτι
προσλογιστέα τούτῳ παντὶ τῷ |count up; recount ὅκησιν δὲ
δεῖ λέγειν. νέας μὲν νυν οἱ ἀπὸ Θρηίκης |Greek καὶ οἱ
ἐκ τῶν νήσων τῶν |impose; shut a door ῥηίκῃ παρείχοντο
εἴκοσι καὶ ἑκατόν· ἐκ μὲν νυν τουτέων τῶν νεῶν ἄνδρες
|4000 καὶ |20,000 γίνονται. πεζοῦ δὲ τὸν
Θρήικες παρείχοντο καὶ Παῖονες καὶ Ἑορδοὶ καὶ Βοττιαῖοι
καὶ τὸ Χαλκιδικὸν γένος καὶ Βρύγοι καὶ Πίερες καὶ
Μακεδόνες καὶ Περραιβοὶ καὶ Ἐνιῆνες καὶ Δόλοπες καὶ
Μάγνητες καὶ Ἀχαιοὶ καὶ ὅσοι τῆς Θρηίκης τὴν |seaside
|distribute , τούτων τῶν ἐθνέων τριήκοντα |countless, δοκέω
|myriad
γενέσθαι. αὗται ὦν αἱ |countless, ἐκείνησι προστεθείσαι
|myriad
τῇσι ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας, γίνονται αἱ πᾶσαι ἀνδρῶν αἱ |warlike
|countless, διηκόσiai καὶ |sixty καὶ τέσσερες, ἔπεισι δὲ
|myriad
ταύτῃσι |100 |16 καὶ |decade

the attendants which accompanied it or the corn-transporters and the men who sailed in these.

7.185

There is still to be reckoned, in addition to all this which has been summed up, the force which was being led from Europe; and of this we must give a probable estimate. The Hellenes of Thrace and of the islands which lie off the coast of Thrace supplied a hundred and twenty ships; from which ships there results a sum of twenty-four thousand men: and as regards the land-force which was supplied by the Thracians, Paionians, Eordians, Bottiaians, the race which inhabits Chalkidike, the Brygians, Pierians, Macedonians, Perraiians, Enianians, Dolopians, Magnesians, Achaians, and all those who dwell in the coast-region of Thrace, of these various nations I estimate that there were thirty myriads. These myriads then added to those from Asia make a total sum of two hundred and sixty-four myriads of fighting men and in addition to these sixteen hundred and ten.

vocabulary

ἄκατος (f) boat

ἀριθμός number

ἀτρεκής precise, certain

δεκάς -δος (f, 3) decade, group of ten

~decimal

ἐκατοντάς 100

ἐκπληρόω fill, fulfill

ἐξισόω equalize

εὐνοῦχος eunuch

θεραπήνη service, tending

κτῆνος -ους (n, 3) herd animal

μάχιμος warlike

μυριάς -δος (ῥ, f, 3) countless, myriad

ὀκτώ eight ~octopus

παλλακή sex slave

πεντακόσιοι 500

σιταγωγός (ῖ) grain-carrying

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

στρατιά army ~strategy

συνάπας (αᾶ) all together

ὑποζύγιον beast of burden ~zygote

χιλιάς -δος (ῖ, f, 3) 1000

7.186

τοῦ μαχίμου δὲ τούτου ἐόντος ἀριθμὸν τοσούτου, τὴν
 θεραπήην τὴν ἐπομένην τούτοισι καὶ τοὺς ἐν τοῖσι
 σιταγωγοῖσι ἀκάτοισι ἐόντας καὶ μάλα ἐν τοῖσι ἄλλοισι
 πλοίοισι τοῖσι ἅμα πλέουσι τῇ στρατιῇ, τούτους τῶν
 μαχίμων ἀνδρῶν οὐ δοκέω εἶναι ἐλάσσονας ἀλλὰ πλεῦνας.
 καὶ δὴ σφεας ποιέω ἴσους ἐκείνοισι εἶναι καὶ οὔτε
 πλεῦνας οὔτε ἐλάσσονας οὐδέν· ἐξισούμενοι δὲ οὔτοι τῷ
 μαχίμῳ ἐκπληροῦσι τὰς ἴσας μυριάδας ἐκείνοισι. οὕτω
 πεντακοσίας τε μυριάδας καὶ εἴκοσι καὶ ὀκτὼ καὶ χιλιάδας
 τρεῖς καὶ ἑκατοντάδας δύο καὶ δεκάδας δύο ἀνδρῶν ἤγαγε
 Ξέρξης ὁ Δαρείου μέχρι Σηπιάδος καὶ Θερμοπυλέων.

7.187

οὗτος μὲν δὴ τοῦ συνάπαντος τοῦ Ξέρξεω στρατεύματος
 ἀριθμός, γυναικῶν δὲ σιτοποιῶν καὶ παλλακέων καὶ
 εὐνούχων οὐδεὶς ἂν εἴποι ἀτρεκέα ἀριθμόν· οὐδ' αὖ
 ὑποζυγίων τε καὶ τῶν ἄλλων κτηνέων τῶν ἀχθοφόρων

7.186

τοῦ |warlike δὲ τούτου ἐόντος |number τοσούτου, τὴν
 θεραπήην τὴν ἐπομένην τούτοις καὶ τοὺς ἐν τοῖσι
 |grain-carrying |boat ἐόντας καὶ μάλα ἐν τοῖσι ἄλλοις
 πλοίοις τοῖσι ἅμα πλέουσι τῇ στρατιῇ, τούτους τῶν
 |warlike ἀνδρῶν οὐ δοκέω εἶναι ἐλάσσονας ἀλλὰ πλεῖνας.
 καὶ δὴ σφεας ποιέω ἴσους ἐκείνοις εἶναι καὶ οὔτε
 πλεῖνας οὔτε ἐλάσσονας οὐδέν· |equalize δὲ οὗτοι τῶ
 |warlike |fill, fulfill τὰς ἴσας |countless, ἐκείνοις. οὕτως
 |500 τὴν |countless, καὶ ἑκοσι καὶ |eight καὶ |1000
 |myriad
 τρεῖς καὶ |100 δύο καὶ |decade δύο ἀνδρῶν ἡγαγε
 Ξέρξης ὁ Δαρείου μέχρι Σηπιάδος καὶ Θερμοπυλέων.

7.187

οὗτος μὲν δὴ τοῦ συνάπαντος τοῦ Ξέρξεω |army
 |number , γυναικῶν δὲ σιτοποιῶν καὶ |sex slave καὶ
 |eunuch οὐδεὶς ἂν εἴποι |precise, |number οὐδ' αὖ
 |certain
 |beast of burden :αὶ τῶν ἄλλων |herd animal ὃν ἀχθοφόρων

7.186

Such being the number of this body of fighting-men, the attendants who went with these and the men who were in the small vessels which carried corn, and again in the other vessels which sailed with the army, these I suppose were not less in number but more than the fighting men. I assume them to be equal in number with these, and neither at all more nor less; and so, being supposed equal in number with the fighting body, they make up the same number of myriads as they. Thus five hundred and twenty-eight myriads three thousand two hundred and twenty was the number of men whom Xerxes son of Dareios led as far as Sepias and Thermopylai.

7.187

This is the number of the whole army of Xerxes; but of the women who made bread for it, and of the concubines and eunuchs no man can state any exact number, nor again of the draught-animals and other beasts of burden

vocabulary

ἄγκυρα (ῥ) anchor
αἰγιαλός beach, shore
ἄκτῃ beach; cereal grain
ἄξιόνικος (ιῡ) worthy of winning
ἀριθμός number
ἅτε as if; since
ἐνδεκα eleven ~decimal
εὐνοῦχος eunuch
θῶμα a wonder, feeling of surprise
 ~theater
κάλλος -εος (n, 3) beauty
 ~kaleidoscope
λογίζομαι reckon, consider
μέγαθος tall, big (person)
μέδιμνος bushel

μεταξύ between
μυριάς -δος (ῥ, f, 3) countless, myriad
ὀρμέω be anchored
προδίδωμι betray
πυρά pyre ~pyre
πυρός (ῥ) wheat
πυρόω burn something
ῥεῖθρον stream ~rheostat
στρατός common people/soldiers
 ~strategy
συμβάλλω pit against; compare; mp:
 meet, fall in with ~ballistic
τριηκόσιοι three hundred
ὑποζύγιον beast of burden ~zygote
χοῖνιξ -κος (f) liter; shackle

καὶ κυνῶν Ἰνδικῶν τῶν ἐπομένων, οὐδ' ἂν τούτων ὑπὸ
 πλήθεος οὐδείς ἂν εἴποι ἀριθμόν. ὥστε οὐδέν μοι θῶμα
 παρίσταται προδοῦναι τὰ ῥέεθρα τῶν ποταμῶν ἔστι
 ὦν, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ὅκως τὰ σιτία ἀντέχρησε θῶμά μοι
 μυριάσι τοσαύτησι. εὐρίσκω γὰρ συμβαλλόμενος, εἰ
 χοίνικα πυρῶν ἕκαστος τῆς ἡμέρης ἐλάμβανε καὶ μηδὲν
 πλέον, ἔνδεκα μυριάδας μεδίμνων τελομένηας ἐπ' ἡμέρῃ
 ἐκάστη καὶ πρὸς τριηκοσίους τε ἄλλους μεδίμνους καὶ
 τεσσαράκοντα· γυναιξὶ δὲ καὶ εὐνούχοισι καὶ ὑπόζυγίοισι
 καὶ κυσὶ οὐ λογιζομαι. ἀνδρῶν δὲ ἐουσέων τοσουτέων
 μυριάδων, κάλλεός τε εἵνεκα καὶ μεγάθεος οὐδείς αὐτῶν
 ἀξιονικότερος ἦν αὐτοῦ Ξέρξῳ ἔχειν τοῦτο τὸ κράτος.

7.188

ὁ δὲ δὴ ναυτικὸς στρατὸς ἐπείτε ὀρμηθεὶς ἔπλεε καὶ
 κατέσχε τῆς Μαγνησίης χώρας ἐς τὸν αἰγιαλὸν τὸν
 μεταξὺ Κασθαναίης τε πόλιος ἐόντα καὶ Σηπιιάδος ἀκτῆς,
 αἱ μὲν δὴ πρῶται τῶν νεῶν ὄρμεον πρὸς γῇ, ἄλλαι δ' ἐπ'
 ἐκείνησι ἐπ' ἀγκυρέων· ἅτε γὰρ τοῦ αἰγιαλοῦ ἐόντος οὐ

καὶ κυνῶν Ἰνδικῶν τῶν ἐπομένων, οὐδ' ἂν τούτων ὑπὸ
 πλήθεος οὐδεὶς ἂν εἴποι |number . ὥστε οὐδέν μοι |wonder,
 |surprise
 παρίσταται |betray τὰ |stream τῶν ποταμῶν ἔστι
 ὦν, ἀλλὰ μάλλον ὅκως τὰ σιτία ἀντέχρησε |wonder, |oi
 |surprise
 |countless, τοσαύτησι. εὐρίσκω γὰρ |pit against; compare; mp: meet, fall
 |myriad |in with
 |liter; πυρῶν ἕκαστος τῆς ἡμέρης ἐλάμβανε καὶ μηδὲν
 |shackle
 πλέον, |eleven |countless, |bushel τελομένας ἐπ' ἡμέρῃ
 |myriad
 ἐκάστη καὶ πρὸς |three τε ἄλλους |bushel καὶ
 |hundred
 τεσσεράκοντα· γυναιξὶ δὲ καὶ |eunuch καὶ |beast of burden
 καὶ κυσὶ οὐ |reckon, . ἀνδρῶν δὲ ἐουσέων τοσουτέων
 |consider
 |countless, , |beauty τε εἵνεκα καὶ |tall, big οὐδεὶς αὐτῶν
 |myriad
 |worthy of winning αὐτοῦ Ξέρξῳ ἔχειν τοῦτο τὸ κράτος.

7.188

ὁ δὲ δὴ ναυτικὸς |army ἐπείτε ὀρμηθεὶς ἔπλεε καὶ
 κατέσχε τῆς Μαγνησίης χώρας ἐς τὸν |beach,
 |shore
 |between Κασθαναίης τε πόλιος ἐόντα καὶ Σηπιάδος |beach; ,
 |grain
 αἱ μὲν δὴ πρῶται τῶν νεῶν |be anchored `s γῇ, ἄλλαι δ' ἐπ'
 ἐκείνησι ἐπ' |anchor |as if; since οὐ |beach,
 |shore ἐόντος οὐ

or of the Indian hounds, which accompanied it, could any one state the number by reason of their multitude: so that it does not occur to me to wonder that the streams of some rivers should have failed them, but I wonder rather how the provisions were sufficient to feed so many myriads; for I find on computation that if each man received a quart of wheat every day and nothing more, there would be expended every day eleven myriads of medimnoi and three hundred and forty medimnoi besides: and here I am not reckoning anything for the women, eunuchs, baggage-animals, or dogs. Of all these men, amounting to so many myriads, not one was for beauty and stature more worthy than Xerxes himself to possess this power.

7.188

The fleet, I say, set forth and sailed: and when it had put in to land in the region of Magnesia at the beach which is between the city of Casthanaia and the headland of Sepias, the first of the ships which came lay moored by the land and the others rode at anchor behind them; for, as the beach was not large in extent, they lay

*vocabulary***αἰγιαλός** beach, shore**αἰθρία** clear air**ἀνασπάω** draw again ~spatula**ἀπηνλιώτης** -ου (m, 1) east wind**ἀφηνλιώτης** -ου (m, 1) east wind**ἀφόρητος** unendurable; irresistible**βορέας** -οῦ (m, 1) north, north wind**γαμβρός** son-in-law, brother-in-law

~bigamy

ἐκφέρω carry off ~bear**ἐπικαλέω** call upon**ἐπίκουρος** ally; mercenary ~cereal**ἐπιπίπτω** fall upon, attack**εὐφρόνη** euphemism for night**ζέω** boil ~eczema**θεοπρόπιον** prophecy ~theology**νηνέμιος** still, windless ~anemometer**ὀκτώ** eight ~octopus**ὄρθρος** dawn**ὀρμέω** be anchored**ὄρμος** cord, chain, anchorage**περίειμι** be superior to; be left over;
still exist**περιπίπτω** embrace; fall in with**πρόκροσσοι** row after row**φθάνω** (ᾱ) do first, outstrip**χειμών** -ος (m, 3) winter, storm **χρηστήριον** oracle, response

μεγάλου, πρόκροσσαι ὀρμέοντο ἐς πόντον καὶ ἐπὶ ὀκτὼ νέας. ταύτην μὲν τὴν εὐφρόνην οὕτω, ἅμα δὲ ὄρθρω ἐξ αἰθρίας τε καὶ νηνεμίας τῆς θαλάσσης ζεσάσης ἐπέπεσέ σφι χειμών τε μέγας καὶ πολλὸς ἄνεμος ἀπηλιώτης, τὸν δὴ Ἑλλησποντίην καλέουσι οἱ περὶ ταῦτα τὰ χωρία οἰκημένοι. ὅσοι μὲν νυν αὐτῶν αὐξόμενον ἔμαθον τὸν ἄνεμον καὶ τοῖσι οὕτω εἶχε ὄρμου, οἱ δ' ἔφθησαν τὸν χειμῶνα ἀνασπάσαντες τὰς νέας, καὶ αὐτοὶ τε περιῆσαν καὶ αἱ νέες αὐτῶν· ὅσας δὲ τῶν νεῶν μεταρσίας ἔλαβε, τὰς μὲν ἐξέφερε πρὸς Ἴπνους καλεομένους τοὺς ἐν Πηλίῳ, τὰς δὲ ἐς τὸν αἰγιαλόν· αἱ δὲ περὶ αὐτὴν τὴν Σηπιάδα περιέπιπτον, αἱ δὲ ἐς Μελίβοιαν πόλιν, αἱ δὲ ἐς Κασθαναίην ἐξεβράσσοντο· ἦν τε τοῦ χειμῶνος χρῆμα ἀφόρητον.

7.189

λέγεται δὲ λόγος ὡς Ἀθηναῖοι τὸν Βορέην ἐκ θεοπροπίου ἐπεκαλέσαντο, ἐλθόντος σφι ἄλλου χρηστηρίου τὸν γαμβρὸν ἐπίκουρον καλέσασθαι. Βορέης δὲ κατὰ τὸν

μεγάλου, |row after row |be anchored ὃ πόντον καὶ ἐπὶ |eight
 νέας. ταύτην μὲν τὴν |euphemism for night αὐτὰ δὲ |dawn ἔξ
 αἰθρίης τε καὶ |still, |τῆς θαλάσσης |boil |fall upon, attack
 |windless
 σφι |winter, |τε μέγας καὶ πολλὸς ἄνεμος ἀπηλιώτης,
 |storm
 τὸν δὲ Ἑλλησποντὴν καλέουσι οἱ περὶ ταῦτα τὰ χωρία
 οἰκημένοι. ὅσοι μὲν νυν αὐτῶν αὐξόμενον ἔμαθον τὸν
 ἄνεμον καὶ τοῖσι οὕτω εἶχε |cord, chain, ἂν-|be first τὸν
 |chorage
 |winter, |draw again τὰς νέας, καὶ αὐτοὶ τε |be superior to; be left
 |storm |over; still exist
 καὶ αἱ νέες αὐτῶν ὅσας δὲ τῶν νεῶν μεταρσίας ἔλαβε,
 τὰς μὲν |carry off πρὸς Ἴπνους καλεομένους τοὺς ἐν
 Πηλίῳ, τὰς δὲ ἐς τὸν |beach, αἱ δὲ περὶ αὐτὴν τὴν
 |shore
 Σηπιάδα |embrace; fall, αἱ δὲ ἐς Μελίβοιαν πόλιν, αἱ δὲ
 |in with
 ἐς Κασθαναίην ἐξεβράσσοντο ἦν τε τοῦ |winter, |χρῆμα
 |storm
 |unendurable;
 |irresistible

7.189

λέγεται δὲ λόγος ὡς Ἀθηναῖοι τὸν Βορέην ἐκ |prophecy

|call upon , ἐλθόντος σφι ἄλλου |oracle, τὸν
 |response
 |an in-law |ally; mercenary ἔσασθαι. |north, δὲ κατὰ τὸν
 |north
 |wind

at anchor with prows projecting towards the sea in an order which was eight ships deep. For that night they lay thus; but at early dawn, after clear sky and windless calm, the sea began to be violently agitated and a great storm fell upon them with a strong East Wind, that wind which they who dwell about those parts call Hellespontias. Now as many of them as perceived that the wind was rising and who were so moored that it was possible for them to do so, drew up their ships on land before the storm came, and both they and their ships escaped; but as for those of the ships which it caught out at sea, some it cast away at the place called Ipnai in Pelion and others on the beach, while some were wrecked on the headland of Sepias itself, others at the city of Meliboia, and others were thrown up on shore at Casthanaia: and the violence of the storm could not be resisted.

7.189

There is a story reported that the Athenians had called upon Boreas to aid them, by suggestion of an oracle, because there had come to them another utterance of the god bidding them call upon their brother by marriage to be their helper. Now according to

vocabulary

ἀναρίθμητος countless
ἄφθονος ungrudging, plentiful
γαμβρός son-in-law, brother-in-law
 ~bigamy
ἐλάχιστος smallest, shortest, fewest
Ἑλλήν Greek
ἐπικαλέω call upon
ἐπιπίπτω fall upon, attack
εὖς good, brave, noble
θύω (ō) rush; sacrifice ~θύω
ἰδρύω establish
κατεργάζομαι achieve; cultivate; get;
 kill

κῆδος -εος (n, 3) sorrow ~heinous
ναυηγία shipwreck
ναυλοχέω lie in wait in a harbor
ὄον οὖ type of fruit
ὀρμέω be anchored
συμβάλλω pit against; compare; mp:
 meet, fall in with ~ballistic
τετρακόσιοι 400
τιμωρέω (i) (+dat) take vengeance,
 punish; aid one who has been attacked
φάτις -τος (f) report, rumor ~fame
χειμών -ος (m, 3) winter, storm
χρηστός useful; brave, worthy

Ἑλλήνων λόγον ἔχει γυναῖκα Ἀττικήν, Ὀρειθυῖν τὴν Ἐρεχθέος. κατὰ δὴ τὸ κῆδος τοῦτο οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι, ὥς φάτις ὄρμηται, συμβαλλόμενοι σφίσι τὸν Βορέην γαμβρὸν εἶναι, ναυλοχέοντες τῆς Εὐβοίης ἐν Χαλκίδι ὥς ἔμαθον αὐξόμενον τὸν χειμῶνα ἢ καὶ πρὸ τούτου, ἐθύοντό τε καὶ ἐπεκαλέοντο τὸν τε Βορέην καὶ τὴν Ὀρειθυῖν τιμωρῆσαι σφίσι καὶ διαφθεῖραι τῶν βαρβάρων τὰς νέας, ὥς καὶ πρότερον περὶ Ἄθων. εἰ μὲν νυν διὰ ταῦτα τοῖσι βαρβάροισι ὀρμέουσι Βορέης ἐπέπεσε, οὐκ ἔχω εἰπεῖν· οἱ δ' ὦν Ἀθηναῖοι σφίσι λέγουσι βοηθήσαντα τὸν Βορέην πρότερον καὶ τότε ἐκεῖνα κατεργάσασθαι, καὶ ἱρὸν ἀπελθόντες Βορέω ιδρύσαντο παρὰ ποταμὸν Ἴλισσόν.

7.190

ἐν τούτῳ τῷ πόνῳ νέας οἱ ἐλαχίστας λέγουσι διαφθαρῆναι τετρακοσιέων οὐκ ἐλάσσονας, ἄνδρας τε ἀναριθμήτους χρημάτων τε πλῆθος ἄφθονον. ὥστε Ἀμεινοκλεί τῳ Κρητίνεω ἀνδρὶ Μάγνητι γηοχέοντι περὶ Σηπιάδα μεγάλως ἢ ναυηγίῃ αὕτη ἐγένετο χρηστή· ὃς πολλὰ μὲν

|Greek λόγον ἔχει γυναῖκα Ἀττικὴν, Ὠρειθυίην τὴν
 Ἐρεχθέος. κατὰ δὲ τὸ |sorrow τοῦτο οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι, ὡς
 |report, ῥρμηται, |pit against; compare; ἵπτον Βορέην |an in-law
 |rumor |mp: meet, fall in with
 εἶναι, |lie in wait in a τῆς Εὐβοίης ἐν Χαλκίδι ὡς ἔμαθον
 |harbor
 αὐξόμενον τὸν |winter, ἢ καὶ πρὸ τούτου, |rush; sacrifice
 |storm
 τε καὶ |call upon τὸν τε Βορέην καὶ τὴν Ὠρειθυίην
 |take vengeance, ἵσι καὶ διαφθεῖραι τῶν βαρβάρων τὰς νέας,
 |punish, aid
 ὡς καὶ πρότερον περὶ Ἀθων. εἰ μὲν νυν διὰ ταῦτα
 τοῖσι βαρβάροισι |be anchored Ὀρέης |fall upon, attack ἔχω
 εἰπεῖν· οἱ δ' ὦν Ἀθηναῖοι σφίσι λέγουσι βοηθήσαντα τὸν
 Βορέην πρότερον καὶ τότε ἐκεῖνα |achieve; cultivate; καὶ ἱρὸν
 |get; kill
 ἀπελθόντες Βορέω |establish παρὰ ποταμὸν Ἴλισσόν.

7.190

ἐν τούτῳ τῷ πόνῳ νέας οἷ |smallest, short-, οὐσι διαφθαρῆναι
 |est, fewest
 |400 οὐκ ἐλάσσονας, ἄνδρας τε |countless
 χρημάτων τε πλήθος |ungrudging, ὥστε Ἀμεινοκλεί
 |plentiful
 τῷ Κρητίνεω ἀνδρὶ Μάγνητι γηοχέοντι περὶ Σηπιάδα
 μεγάλως ἢ |shipwreck ὕτη ἐγένετο |useful; brave, πολλὰ μὲν
 |worthy

the story of the Hellenes Boreas has a wife who is of Attica, Oreithuia the daughter of Erechththeus. By reason of this affinity, I say, the Athenians, according to the tale which has gone abroad, conjectured that their “brother by marriage” was Boreas, and when they perceived the wind rising, as they lay with their ships at Chalkis in Euboea, or even before that, they offered sacrifices and called upon Boreas and Oreithuia to assist them and to destroy the ships of the Barbarians, as they had done before round about mount Athos. Whether it was for this reason that the wind Boreas fell upon the Barbarians while they lay at anchor, I am not able to say; but however that may be, the Athenians report that Boreas had come to their help in former times, and that at this time he accomplished those things for them of which I speak; and when they had returned home they set up a temple dedicated to Boreas by the river Ilissos.

7.190

In this disaster the number of the ships which were lost was not less than four hundred, according to the report of those who state the number which is lowest, with men innumerable and an immense quantity of valuable things; insomuch that to Ameinocles the son of Cretines, a Magnesian who held lands about Sepias, this shipwreck proved very gainful; for

*vocabulary***ἄκτῃ** beach; cereal grain**ἀργύρεος** silver ~Argentina**ἀριθμός** number**ἀρπάζω** carry off, seize ~harpoon**ἄχαρις** -δος (f) ungracious**ἐντομος** cut up; (pl) sacrificial victims**ἐρκος** -εος (n, 3) bulwark ~oath**εὕρημα** invention; windfall**εὐτυχής** fortunate**θησαυρός** treasury ~treasure**θύω** (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω**κακώω** harm, disfigure ~cacophony**λυπέω** (ῥ) annoy, distress**ναυήγιον** wreckage**ὀλκός** -δος (f, 3) towed merchant ship**παιδοφόνος** child killer**περιβάλλω** act: excel; mid: put on clothing ~ballistic**Πέρσης** Persian**ποτήριον** cup**σιταγωγός** (ῥ) grain-carrying**στρατός** common people/soldiers ~strategy**στρατώω** be on a campaign ~strategy**συμφορά** collecting; accident, misfortune**τέταρτος** fourth ~trapezoid**χειμάζω** overwinter**χῶρος** place ~heir

χρύσεια ποτήρια ὑστέρω χρόνῳ ἐκβρασσόμενα ἀνείλετο
πολλὰ δὲ ἀργύρεα, θησαυρούς τε τῶν Περσέων εὔρε, ἅλλα
τε ἄφατα χρήματα περιεβάλετο. ἀλλ' ὁ μὲν τᾶλλα οὐκ
εὐτυχέων εὐρήμασι μέγα πλούσιος ἐγένετο· ἦν γάρ τις καὶ
τοῦτον ἄχαρις συμφορὴ λυπεῦσα παιδοφόνος.

7.191

σιταγωγῶν δὲ ὀλκάδων καὶ τῶν ἄλλων πλοίων
διαφθειρομένων οὐκ ἐπὴν ἀριθμός. ὥστε δέισαντες οἱ
στρατηγοὶ τοῦ ναυτικοῦ στρατοῦ μή σφι κεκακωμένοισι
ἐπιθέωνται οἱ Θεσσαλοί, ἔρκος ὑψηλὸν ἐκ τῶν ναυηγίων
περιεβάλοντο· ἡμέρας γὰρ δὴ ἐχέιμαζε τρεῖς. τέλος δὲ
ἔντομά τε ποιεῦντες καὶ καταείδοντες γόησι οἱ Μάγοι τῷ
ἀνέμῳ, πρὸς τε τούτοισι καὶ τῇ Θέτι καὶ τῇσι Νηρηίσι
θύοντες, ἔπαυσαν τετάρτη ἡμέρῃ, ἣ ἄλλως κως αὐτὸς
ἐθέλων ἐκόπασε. τῇ δὲ Θέτι ἔθνον πυθόμενοι παρὰ τῶν
Ἰώνων τὸν λόγον. ὥς ἐκ τοῦ χώρου τούτου ἀρπασθείῃ
ὑπὸ Πηλέος, εἴη τε ἅπασα ἡ ἀκτὴ ἡ Σηπιάς ἐκείνης τε
καὶ τῶν ἀλλέων Νηρηίδων.

χρύσεια |cup ὑστέρω χρόνῳ ἐκβρασσόμενα ἀνείλετο
 πολλὰ δὲ |silver , |treasury τε τῶν Περσέων εὔρε, ἄλλα
 τε ἄφατα χρήματα |excel; don . ἀλλ' ὁ μὲν τὰλλα οὐκ
 |fortunate |invention; μέγα πλούσιος ἐγένετο· ἦν γάρ τις καὶ
 |windfall
 τοῦτον |ungracious , |φορῇ |annoy, |child killer
 |distress

7.191

σιταγωγῶν δὲ |towed καὶ τῶν ἄλλων πλοίων
 |merchant
 διαφθειρομένων οὐκ ἐπὶ |ship |number ὥστε δείσαντες οἱ
 στρατηγοὶ τοῦ ναυτικοῦ στρατοῦ μὴ σφί |harm, disfigure
 ἐπιθέωνται οἱ Θεσσαλοί, |bulwark' |ηλὸν ἐκ τῶν |wreckage
 |excel; don ἡμέρας γὰρ δὴ |overwinter :ρεῖς. τέλος δὲ
 |cut up; (pl) sac- ὕντες καὶ καταεῖδοντες γόησι οἱ Μάγοι τῷ
 |rificial victims
 ἀνέμῳ, πρὸς τε τούτοις καὶ τῇ Θέτι καὶ τῇσι Νηρηίδι
 |rush; sacrifice υσαν |fourth ἡμέρῃ, ἣ ἄλλως κως αὐτὸς
 ἐθέλων ἐκόπασε. τῇ δὲ Θέτι |rush; sacrifice...νοι παρὰ τῶν
 Ἰώνων τὸν λόγον. ὥς ἐκ τοῦ |place τούτου |carry off, seize
 ὑπὸ Πηλέος, εἷη τε ἅπαντα ἢ |beach; ἢ Σηπιάς ἐκείνης τε
 |grain
 καὶ τῶν ἀλλέων Νηρηίδων.

he picked up many cups of gold which were thrown up afterwards on the shore, and many also of silver, and found treasure-chests which had belonged to the Persians, and made acquisition of other things of gold more than can be described. This man however, though he became very wealthy by the things which he found, yet in other respects was not fortunate; for he too suffered misfortune, being troubled by the slaying of a child.

7.191

Of the corn-transporters and other vessels which perished there was no numbering made; and so great was the loss that the commanders of the fleet, being struck with fear lest the Thessalians should attack them now that they had been brought into an evil plight, threw round their camp a lofty palisade built of the fragments of wreck. For the storm continued during three days; but at last the Magians, making sacrifice of victims and singing incantations to appease the Wind by enchantments, and in addition to this, offering to Thetis and the Nereïds, caused it to cease on the fourth day, or else for some other reason it abated of its own will. Now they offered sacrifice to Thetis, being informed by the Ionians of the story that she was carried off from the place by Peleus, and that the whole headland of Sepias belonged to her and to the other Nereïds.

*vocabulary***ἄκρα** at the edge, extreme ~acute**ἄκρον** crest, extremity ~acute**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme ~acute**ἀντίξοος** opposed to**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἐπείγω** weigh upon, drive; (mid) hurry**ἐπωνύμιος** called, named**ἡμεροσκόπος** watching by day**ἡπειρος** (f) mainland, continent**κάμπτω** bend, bend in exhaustion**κατασπάω** pull down**κατατρέχω** overrun; trash talk**κόλπος** bosom, lap-fold; gulf**ναυηγία** shipwreck**ναυλοχέω** lie in wait in a harbor**προχέω** stream toward; pour out**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark

~semaphore

σπονδή libation, treaty ~spontaneous**στόρνυμι** (ῥ) smooth out**σωτήρ** -ος (m) savior**τέταρτος** fourth ~trapezoid**χειμών** -ος (m, 3) winter, storm

7.192

ὁ μὲν δὴ τετάρτῃ ἡμέρῃ ἐπέπαυτο· τοῖσι δὲ Ἑλλησι οἱ ἡμεροσκόποι ἀπὸ τῶν ἄκρων τῶν Εὐβοϊκῶν καταδραμόντες δευτέρῃ ἡμέρῃ ἀπ' ἧς ὁ χειμὼν ὁ πρῶτος ἐγένετο, ἐσήμαινον πάντα τὰ γενόμενα περὶ τὴν ναυηγίην. οἱ δὲ ὥς ἐπύθοντο, Ποσειδέωνι σωτῆρι εὐξάμενοι καὶ σπονδὰς προχέαντες τὴν ταχίστην ὀπίσω ἠπείγοντο ἐπὶ τὸ Ἄρτεμίσιον, ἐλπίσαντες ὀλίγας τινὰς σφι ἀντιζόους ἔσσεσθαι νέας.

7.193

οἱ μὲν δὴ τὸ δεύτερον ἐλθόντες περὶ τὸ Ἄρτεμίσιον ἐναυλόχουν, Ποσειδέωνος σωτῆρος ἐπωνυμίην ἀπὸ τούτου ἔτι καὶ ἐς τόδε νομίζοντες. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι, ὥς ἐπαύσατό τε ὁ ἄνεμος καὶ τὸ κῦμα ἔστρωτο, κατασπάσαντες τὰς νέας ἔπλεον παρὰ τὴν ἡπειρον, κάμψαντες δὲ τὴν ἄκρην τῆς Μαγνησίης ἰθέαν ἔπλεον ἐς τὸν κόλπον τὸν ἐπὶ Παγασέων φέροντα. ἔστι δὲ

7.192

ὁ μὲν δὴ |fourth ἡμέρῃ ἐπέπαυτο· τοῖσι δὲ |Greek
οἱ |watching by day ἰπὸ τῶν ἄκρων τῶν Εὐβοϊκῶν
|overrun; trash talk δευτέρῃ ἡμέρῃ ἀπ' ἧς ὁ |winter, ὁ
|storm
πρῶτος ἐγένετο, |give orders to; ἀντα τὰ γενόμενα περὶ
|show; mark
τὴν |shipwreck οἱ δὲ ὥς ἐπύθοντο, Ποσειδέωνι |savior
εὐξάμενοι καὶ |libation, |stream τὴν ταχίστην ὀπίσω
|treaty
|weigh upon, 'drive; Ἄρτεμίσιον, ἐλπίσαντες ὀλίγας τινὰς
(mid) hurry
σφι |opposed to ἔσεσθαι νέας.

7.193

οἱ μὲν δὴ τὸ δεύτερον ἐλθόντες περὶ τὸ Ἀρτεμίσιον
|lie in wait in, Ποσειδέωνος |savior |called, ἀπὸ
|a harbor |named
τούτου ἔτι καὶ ἐς τόδε νομίζοντες. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι,
ὥς ἐπαύσατό τε ὁ ἄνεμος καὶ τὸ κῦμα |smooth out
|pull down τὰς νέας ἔπλεον παρὰ τὴν |mainland,
|continent
|bend, bend in ἐπὶ τὴν |at the edge, extreme, |τῆς ἰθείας ἔπλεον ἐς
|exhaustion
τὸν |bosom, lap ἐπὶ Παγασέων φέροντα. ἔστι δὲ
|fold; gulf

7.192

The storm then had ceased on the fourth day; and meanwhile the day-watchers had run down from the heights of Euboea on the day after the first storm began, and were keeping the Hellenes informed of all that had happened as regards the shipwreck. They then, being informed of it, prayed first to Poseidon the Saviour and poured libations, and then they hastened to go back to Artemision, expecting that there would be but a very few ships of the enemy left to come against them.

7.193

They, I say, came for the second time and lay with their ships about Artemision: and from that time even to this they preserve the use of the surname “Saviour” for Poseidon. Meanwhile the Barbarians, when the wind had ceased and the swell of the sea had calmed down, drew their ships into the sea and sailed on along the shore of the mainland, and having rounded the extremity of Magnesia they sailed straight into the gulf which leads

vocabulary

ἀμάρτημα -τος (n, 3) failure, fault
ἀνακρεμάννυμι (ὑ) get snagged on
ἀνασταυρόω impale
βασιλεις kingly
δικάζω judge
εἰσπίπτω fall into, rush in
Ἑλληγν Greek
ἐνθεῦτεν thence
ἐξανάγω (mp) set sail
εὖς good, brave, noble
εὔτε when, as, since
καθοράω look down ~panorama
κόλπος bosom, lap-fold; gulf

κῶας κῶως (n, 3) fleece
λογίζομαι reckon, consider
ὄον οὐ type of fruit
ὄρμος cord, chain, anchorage
πέλαγος -ους (n, 3) the open sea
 ~pelagic
πεντεκαίδεκα 15
στρατηγέω be a general
σφέτερος their
τοιόσδε such
ὕδρεύω draw water ~hydrogen
ὑπαρχος subordinate
χῶρος place ~heir

χώρος ἐν τῷ κόλπῳ τούτῳ τῆς Μαγνησίας, ἔνθα λέγεται τὸν Ἡρακλέα καταλειφθῆναι ὑπὸ Ἰήσονος τε καὶ τῶν συνεταίρων ἐκ τῆς Ἀργοῦς ἐπ' ὕδωρ πεμφθέντα, εὐτ' ἐπὶ τὸ κῶας ἔπλεον ἐς Αἶαν τὴν Κολχίδα· ἐνθεῦτεν γὰρ ἔμελλον ὑδρευσάμενοι ἐς τὸ πέλαγος ἀφήσειν. ἐπὶ τούτου δὲ τῷ χώρῳ οὖνομα γέγονε Ἀφέται. ἐν τούτῳ ὦν ὄρμον οἱ Ξέρξεω ἐποιεῦντο.

7.194

πεντεκαίδεκα δὲ τῶν νεῶν τουτέων ἔτυχόν τε ὕσταται πολλὸν ἐξαναχθεῖσαι καὶ κως κατεῖδον τὰς ἐπ' Ἀρτεμισίῳ τῶν Ἑλλήνων νέας. ἔδοξάν τε δὴ τὰς σφετέρας εἶναι οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ πλείοντες ἐσέπεσον ἐς τοὺς πολεμίους· τῶν ἐστρατήγεε ὁ ἀπὸ Κύμης τῆς Αἰολίδος ὑπαρχος Σανδώκης ὁ Θαμασίου τὸν δὴ πρότερον τούτων βασιλεὺς Δαρεῖος ἐπ' αἰτίῃ τοιῇδε λαβὼν ἀνεσταύρωσε ἐόντα τῶν βασιληίων δικαστέων. ὁ Σανδώκης ἐπὶ χρήμασι ἄδικον δίκην ἐδίκασε. ἀνακρεμασθέντος ὦν αὐτοῦ, λογιζόμενος ὁ Δαρεῖος εὐρὲ οἱ πλέω ἀγαθὰ τῶν ἀμαρτημάτων

|place ἐν τῷ |bosom, lap- ἔτι τῆς Μαγνησίας, ἔνθα λέγεται
 |fold; gulf
 τὸν Ἡρακλέα καταλειφθῆναι ὑπὸ Ἰήσονος τε καὶ τῶν
 συνεταίρων ἐκ τῆς Ἀργούς ἐπ' ὕδωρ πεμφθέντα, |when, as, since
 |fleece ἔπλεον ἐς Αἶαν τὴν Κολχίδα· |thence γὰρ ἔμελλον
 |draw water ἐς τὸ |the open sea ἵήσιν. ἐπὶ τούτου δὲ τῷ
 |place οὖνομα γέγονε Ἀφέται. ἐν τούτῳ ὦν |cord, chain,
 |anchorage
 Ξέρξεω ἐποιεῦντο.

7.194

|15 δὲ τῶν νεῶν τουτέων ἔτυχόν τε ὕσταται
 πολλὸν ἐξαναχθεῖσαι καὶ κως |look down ἄς ἐπ' Ἀρτεμισίῳ
 τῶν |Greek νέας. ἔδοξάν τε δὴ τὰς |their εἶναι
 οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ πλέοντες |fall into, rush in ὥς πολεμίους·
 τῶν |be a general ὁ ἀπὸ Κύμης τῆς Αἰολίδος |subordinate
 Σανδώκης ὁ Θαμασίου τὸν δὴ πρότερον τούτων βασιλεὺς
 Δαρείος ἐπ' αἰτίῃ |such λαβὼν |impale ἐόντα τῶν
 |kingly δικαστέων. ὁ Σανδώκης ἐπὶ χρήμασι ἄδικον
 δίκην |judge |get snagged on ὦν αὐτοῦ, |reckon, ὁ
 |consider
 Δαρείος εὖρέ οἱ πλέω ἀγαθὰ τῶν |failure, fault

towards Pagasai. In this gulf of Magnesia there is a place where it is said that Heracles was left behind by Jason and his comrades, having been sent from the Argo to fetch water, at the time when they were sailing for the fleece to Aia in the land of Colchis: for from that place they designed, when they had taken in water, to loose their ship into the open sea; and from this the place has come to have the name Aphetai. Here then the fleet of Xerxes took up its moorings.

7.194

Now it chanced that fifteen of these ships put out to sea a good deal later than the rest, and they happened to catch sight of the ships of the Hellenes at Artemision. These ships the Barbarians supposed to be their own, and they sailed thither accordingly and fell among the enemy. Of these the commander was Sandokes the son of Thamasios, the governor of Kyme in Aiolia, whom before this time king Dareios had taken and crucified (he being one of the Royal Judges) for this reason, namely that Sandokes had pronounced judgment unjustly for money. So then after he was hung up, Dareios reckoned and found that more good services had been done by him

*vocabulary***ἀποβάλλω** throw away, lose**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp**βασίλειος** kingly**βασιλήιος** kingly**διαφεύγω** escape, survive**Ἑλληγν** Greek**ἐνδεκα** eleven ~decimal**ἐπανάγω** sit up, bring up; retreat; set sail**εὐπετής** coming out well; (adv) fortunately**ἰσθμός** narrow neck**καθαπλόω** spread over**καταπλέω** land ~float**καταπλώω** land**περιγίγνομαι** surpass; survive; attain ~genus**περίειμι** be superior to; be left over; still exist**προσπλέω** sail toward, against**σοφός** skilled, clever, wise**στρατιά** army ~strategy**τύραννος** tyrant**χειμών** -ος (m, 3) winter, storm

πεποιημένα ἐς οἶκον τὸν βασιλῆιον· εὐρών δὲ τοῦτο ὁ Δαρεῖος, καὶ γνοὺς ὡς ταχύτερα αὐτὸς ἢ σοφώτερα ἐργασμένος εἴη, ἔλυσε. βασιλέα μὲν δὴ Δαρεῖον οὕτω διαφυγὼν μὴ ἀπολέσθαι περιῆν, τότε δὲ ἐς τοὺς Ἕλληνας καταπλώσας ἔμελλε οὐ τὸ δεύτερον διαφυγὼν ἔσεσθαι· ὡς γὰρ σφέας εἶδον προσπλέοντας οἱ Ἕλληνες, μαθόντες αὐτῶν τὴν γινομένην ἀμαρτάδα, ἐπαναχθέντες εὐπετέως σφέας εἶλον.

7.195

ἐν τουτέων μὴ Ἀρίδωλις πλέων ἦλω, τύραννος Ἀλαβάνδων τῶν ἐν Καρίῃ, ἐν ἐτέρῃ δὲ ὁ Πάφιος στρατηγὸς Πενθύλος ὁ Δημονόου, ὃς ἦγε μὲν δυνάδεκα νέας ἐκ Πάφου, ἀποβαλὼν δὲ σφέων τὰς ἑνδεκα τῷ χειμῶνι τῷ γενομένῳ κατὰ Σηπιάδα, μὴ τῇ περιγενομένη καταπλέων ἐπ' Ἀρτεμίσιον ἦλω. τούτους οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐξιστορήσαντες τὰ ἐβούλοντο πυθέσθαι ἀπὸ τῆς Ξέρξεω στρατιῆς, ἀποπέμπουσι δεδεμένους ἐς τὸν Κορινθίων ἰσθμόν.

πεποιημένα ἐς οἶκον τὸν βασιλήιον· εὐρών δὲ τοῦτο ὁ

Δαρείος, καὶ γνούς ὡς ταχύτερα αὐτὸς ἦ skilled,
clever, wise

ἐργασμένος εἶη, ἔλυσε. βασιλέα μὲν δὴ Δαρεῖον οὕτω

escape,
survive μὴ ἀπολέσθαι be superior to; be left over;
still exist |Greek

καταπλώσας ἔμελλε οὐ τὸ δεύτερον escape,
survive ἔσεσθαι·

ὥς γὰρ σφέας εἶδον sail toward, against· |Greek , μαθόντες

αὐτῶν τὴν γινομένην ἀμαρτάδα, sit up, bring up;
retreat; set sail |coming out well; (adv)
|fortunately

σφέας εἶλον.

7.195

ἐν τουτέων μιῇ Ἀρίδωλις πλέων ἦλω, |tyrant

Ἀλαβάνδων τῶν ἐν Καρίῃ, ἐν ἐτέρῃ δὲ ὁ Πάφιος

στρατηγὸς Πενθύλος ὁ Δημονόου, ὃς ἦγε μὲν δυνάδεκα

νέας ἐκ Πάφου, |throw away, lose σφέων τὰς |eleven τῷ

|winter,
|storm τῷ γενομένῳ κατὰ Σηπιάδα, μιῇ τῇ περιγενομένῃ

καταπλέων ἐπ' Ἀρτεμίσιον ἦλω. τούτους οἱ |Greek

ἐξιστορήσαντες τὰ ἐβούλοντο πυθέσθαι ἀπὸ τῆς Ξέρξεω

στρατιῆς, |send away δεδεμένους ἐς τὸν Κορινθίων

|narrow neck

to the royal house than were equal to his offences; and having found this, and perceived that he had himself acted with more haste than wisdom, he let him go. Thus he escaped from king Dareios, and did not perish but survived; now, however, when he sailed in toward the Hellenes, he was destined not to escape the second time; for when the Hellenes saw them sailing up, perceiving the mistake which was being made they put out against them and captured them without difficulty.

7.195

Sailing in one of these ships Aridolis was captured, the despot of Alabanda in Caria, and in another the Paphian commander Penthylos son of Demonoös, who brought twelve ships from Paphos, but had lost eleven of them in the storm which had come on by Sepias, and now was captured sailing in towards Artemision with the one which had escaped. These men the Hellenes sent away in bonds to the Isthmus of the Corinthians, after having inquired of them that which they desired to learn of the army of Xerxes.

*vocabulary***ἄμιλλα** conflict**ἀντέχω** hold up as protection against

~ischemia

ἀποπειράομαι try, try out**ἀποχράω** suffice; abuse**ἀποχρέω** suffice; abuse**εἰσβάλλω** throw into ~ballistic**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἐξηγέομαι** lead forth; set out, describe

~hegemony

ἐπιχώριος native**καθηγεμών** leader, guide**πάρεξ** alongside, diverging from; (+ἢ or gen) except; (+acc) beyond, alongside**πεντεκαίδεκα** 15**ῥεῖθρον** stream ~rheostat**ῥέω** flow ~rheostat**στρατηγέω** be a general**στρατιά** army ~strategy**στρατός** common people/soldiers
~strategy**τρίταιος** on the third day**φλαῦρος** trifling

7.196

ὁ μὲν δὴ ναυτικὸς ὁ τῶν βαρβάρων στρατός, παρέξ τῶν πεντεκαίδεκα νεῶν τῶν εἶπον Σανδώκεα στρατηγέειν, ἀπίκοντο ἐς Ἀφέτας. Ξέρξης δὲ καὶ ὁ πεζὸς πορευθεὶς διὰ Θεσσαλίας καὶ Ἀχαιῆς ἐσβεβληκῶς ἦν καὶ δὴ τριταῖος ἐς Μηλιάς, ἐν Θεσσαλίῃ μὲν ἄμιλλαν ποιησάμενος ἵππων τῶν τε ἑωυτοῦ ἀποπειρώμενος καὶ τῆς Θεσσαλίας ἵππου, πυθόμενος ὥς ἀρίστη εἴη τῶν ἐν Ἑλλησι· ἔνθα δὲ αἱ Ἑλληνίδες ἵπποι ἐλείποντο πολλόν. τῶν μὲν νυν ἐν Θεσσαλίῃ ποταμῶν Ὀνόχωνος μούνος οὐκ ἀπέχρησε τῇ στρατιῇ τὸ ρέεθρον πινόμενος· τῶν δὲ ἐν Ἀχαιίῃ ποταμῶν ῥεόντων οὐδὲ ὅστις μέγιστος αὐτῶν ἐστι Ἡπιδανός, οὐδὲ οὗτος ἀντέσχε εἰ μὴ φλαύρως.

7.197

ἐς Ἄλον δὲ τῆς Ἀχαιῆς ἀπικομένῳ Ξέρξῃ οἱ κατηγεμόνες τῆς ὁδοῦ βουλόμενοι τὸ πᾶν ἐξηγέεσθαι ἔλεγον οἱ ἐπιχώριον λόγον, τὰ περὶ τὸ ἱρὸν τοῦ Λαφυστίου

7.196

ὁ μὲν δὴ ναυτικὸς ὁ τῶν βαρβάρων |army , παρέξ τῶν
 |15 νεῶν τῶν εἶπον Σανδώκεα |be a general ,
 ἀπίκοντο ἐς Ἀφέτας. Ξέρξης δὲ καὶ ὁ πεζὸς πορευθεὶς διὰ
 Θεσσαλίας καὶ Ἀχαιῆς ἐσβεβληκὼς ἦν καὶ δὴ |on the third day
 Μηλίας, ἐν Θεσσαλίῃ μὲν |conflict ποιησάμενος ἵππων
 τῶν τε ἑωυτοῦ |try, try out καὶ τῆς Θεσσαλίας ἵππου,
 πυθόμενος ὡς ἀρίστη εἴη τῶν ἐν |Greek ἔνθα δὴ αἱ
 Ἑλληνίδες ἵπποι ἐλείποντο πολλόν. τῶν μὲν νυν ἐν
 Θεσσαλίῃ ποταμῶν Ὀνόχωνος μῦνος οὐκ ἀπέχρησε τῇ
 στρατιῇ τὸ |stream πινόμενος· τῶν δὲ ἐν Ἀχαιίῃ ποταμῶν
 |flow οὐδὲ ὅστις μέγιστος αὐτῶν ἐστι Ἡπιδανός, οὐδὲ
 οὗτος |hold up as prò-|trifling
 |tection against

7.197

ἐς Ἄλον δὲ τῆς Ἀχαιῆς ἀπικομένῳ Ξέρξῃ οἱ |leader, guide
 τῆς ὁδοῦ βουλόμενοι τὸ πᾶν |lead forth; set
 |out, describe
 |native λόγον, τὰ περὶ τὸ ἶρόν τοῦ Λαφυστίου

7.196

The fleet of the Barbarians then, except the fifteen ships of which I said that Sandokes was in command, had arrived at Aphetai; and Xerxes meanwhile with the land-army, having marched through Thessalia and Achaia, had already entered the land of the Malians two days before, after having held in Thessaly a contest for his own horses, making trial also of the Thessalian cavalry, because he was informed that it was the best of all among the Hellenes; and in this trial the horses of Hellas were far surpassed by the others. Now of the rivers in Thessalia the Onochonos alone failed to suffice by its stream for the drinking of the army; but of the rivers which flow in Achaia even that which is the largest of them, namely Epidanos, even this, I say, held out but barely.

7.197

When Xerxes had reached Alos of Achaia, the guides who gave him information of the way, wishing to inform him fully of everything, reported to him a legend of the place, the things, namely, which have to do with the

*vocabulary***ἄθλος** ἀέθλου contest, trial ~athlete**αἶα** land ~geography**ἁλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix**ἀπόγονος** descended from**ἀποδιδράσκω** escape**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion**ἐξηγέομαι** lead forth; set out, describe
~hegemony**ἐπιγίγνομαι** succeed, come after
~genus**ἐπιτάσσω** enjoin; place near**θεοπρόπιον** prophecy ~theology**θύω** (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω**καθαρμός** cleansing, purification**κατέρχομαι** come down, out from**μετέπειτα** afterward, next**μῆνις** -ος (f) rage**μηχανάομαι** build, contrive
~mechanism**μίν** him, her, it**μόρος** portion, lot in life**πομπή** a sending, expedition ~pomp**πρόειμι** to have been before, earlier
~ion**προτίθημι** prefer, set out ~thesis**πρυτανήιον** town hall, law court**πυκάζω** cover**στέλλω** prepare, send, furl ~apostle**στέμμα** -τος (n, 3) headband or wreath**τοιόσδε** such

Διός, ὡς Ἀθάμας ὁ Αἰόλου ἐμηχανήσατο Φρίξῳ μόρον
 σὺν Ἴνοϊ βουλεύσας, μετέπειτα δὲ ὡς ἐκ θεοπροπίου
 Ἀχαιοὶ προτιθεῖσι τοῖσι ἐκείνου ἀπογόνοισι ἀέθλους
 τοιούσδε· ὃς ἂν ἦ τοῦ γένεος τούτου πρεσβύτατος,
 τούτῳ ἐπιτάξαντες ἔργεσθαι τοῦ λήιτου αὐτοὶ φυλακὰς
 ἔχουσι. λήιτον δὲ καλέουσι τὸ πρυτανήιον οἱ Ἀχαιοί.
 ἦν δὲ ἐσέλθῃ, οὐκ ἔστι ὅπως ἔξεισι πρὶν ἢ θύσεσθαι
 μέλλῃ· ὥς τ' ἔτι πρὸς τούτοις πολλοὶ ἤδη τούτων τῶν
 μελλόντων θύσεσθαι δείσαντες οἷχοντο ἀποδράντες ἐς
 ἄλλην χώραν, χρόνου δὲ προϊόντος ὀπίσω κατελθόντες
 ἦν ἀλίσκωνται ἐστέλλοντο ἐς τὸ πρυτανήιον· ὡς θύεταιί
 τε ἐξηγέοντο στέμμασι πᾶς πυκασθεὶς καὶ ὡς σὺν
 πομπῇ ἐξαχθεὶς. ταῦτα δὲ πάσχουσι οἱ Κυττισώρου
 τοῦ Φρίξου παιδὸς ἀπόγονοι, διότι καθαρμὸν τῆς χώρας
 ποιευμένων Ἀχαιῶν ἐκ θεοπροπίου Ἀθάμαντα τὸν Αἰόλου
 καὶ μελλόντων μιν θύειν ἀπικόμενος οὗτος ὁ Κυτίσσωρος
 ἐξ Αἴης τῆς Κολχίδος ἐρρύσατο, ποιήσας δὲ τοῦτο τοῖσι
 ἐπιγενομένοις ἐξ ἑωυτοῦ μῆνιν τοῦ θεοῦ ἐνέβαλε. Ξέρξης

Διός, ὡς Ἀθάμας ὁ Αἰόλου |build, contrive Φρίξω |portion, lot in life
 σὺν Ἴνοϊ βουλεύσας, |afterward, next ὡς ἐκ |prophecy
 Ἀχαιοὶ |prefer, set out τοῖσι ἐκείνου |descended from|contest,
 |trial
 |such ὅς ἂν ᾗ τοῦ γένεος τούτου πρεσβύτατος,
 τούτῳ |enjoin; place ἐργεσθαι τοῦ λήιτου αὐτοῖ φυλακὰς
 |near
 ἔχουσι. λήιτον δὲ καλέουσι τὸ |town hall, law court αἰοί.
 ἦν δὲ ἐσέλθῃ, οὐκ ἔστι ὅκως |go forth; ἰν ᾗ |rush; sacrifice
 |is possible
 μέλλῃ· ὥς τ' ἔτι πρὸς τούτοισι πολλοὶ ἤδη τούτων τῶν
 μελλόντων |rush; sacrifice ὅσους οἴχοντο |escape ἐς
 ἄλλην χώραν, χρόνου δὲ |to have been before,|come down, out from
 |earlier
 ἦν ἀλίσκωνται |prepare, send, furl ἵ |town hall, law court|rush; sacrifice
 τε |lead forth; set|wreath πᾶς |cover καὶ ὡς σὺν
 |out, describe
 |a sending, ἄχθεις. ταῦτα δὲ πάσχουσι οἱ Κυτισσώρου
 |expedition
 τοῦ Φρίξου παιδὸς |descended from ἵ |cleansing, τῆς χώρας
 |purification
 ποιευμένων Ἀχαιῶν ἐκ |prophecy Ἀθάμαντα τὸν Αἰόλου
 καὶ μελλόντων μιν |rush; sacrifice ἐνός οὗτος ὁ Κυτίσσωρος
 ἐξ |land τῆς Κολχίδος ἐρρύσατο, ποιήσας δὲ τοῦτο τοῖσι
 |succeed ἐξ ἐωυτοῦ |rage τοῦ θεοῦ ἐνέβαλε. Ξέρξης

temple of Zeus Laphystios; how Athamas the son of Aiolos contrived death for Phrixos, having taken counsel with Ino, and after this how by command of an oracle the Achaians propose to his descendants the following tasks to be performed: — whosoever is the eldest of this race, on him they lay an injunction that he is forbidden to enter the City Hall, and they themselves keep watch; now the City Hall is called by the Achaians the “Hall of the People”; and if he enter it, it may not be that he shall come forth until he is about to be sacrificed. They related moreover in addition to this, that many of these who were about to be sacrificed had before now run away and departed to another land, because they were afraid; and if afterwards in course of time they returned to their own land and were caught, they were placed in the City Hall: and they told how the man is sacrificed all thickly covered with wreaths, and with what form of procession he is brought forth to the sacrifice. This is done to the descendants of Kytissoros the son of Phrixos, because, when the Achaians were making of Athamas the son of Aiolos a victim to purge the sins of the land according to the command of an oracle, and were just about to sacrifice him, this Kytissoros coming from Aia of the Colchians rescued him; and having done so he brought the wrath of the gods upon his own

*vocabulary***ἄβατος** untrodden; impassable**ἄλσος** -εος (n, 3) grove, sacred place**ἄμπωτις** -εως (f) ebbing**ἀναφαίνω** reveal, shine ~phenomenon**ἀπόγονος** descended from**ἐκδίδωμι** hand over ~donate**ἔργω** bound, fend off; do ~ergonomics**κάρτα** very much ~κράτος**κόλπος** bosom, lap-fold; gulf**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage**πεδινός** flat**περικληίω** enclose, confine**ῥέω** flow ~rheostat**ῥηχίη** flood tide, breakers; rocky beach**ῥοά** pl: waters of a river ~rheostat**ῥόος** ῥοῦ stream, flow, current

~rheostat

σέβομαι feel shame, awe**σταδίη** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters**στρατιά** army ~strategy**τέμενος** -εος (n, 3) non-common land**χῶρος** place ~heir

δὲ ταῦτα ἀκούσας ὥς κατὰ τὸ ἄλσος ἐγίνετο, αὐτὸς τε ἔργετο αὐτοῦ καὶ τῇ στρατιῇ πάσῃ παρήγγειλε, τῶν τε Ἀθάμαντος ἀπογόνων τὴν οἰκίην ὁμοίως καὶ τὸ τέμενος ἐσέβετο.

7.198

ταῦτα μὲν τὰ ἐν Θεσσαλίῃ καὶ τὰ ἐν Ἀχαίῃ· ἀπὸ δὲ τούτων τῶν χώρων ἦγε ἐς τὴν Μηλίδα παρὰ κόλπον θαλάσσης, ἐν τῷ ἄμπωτίς τε καὶ ῥήχῃ ἀνὰ πᾶσαν ἡμέρην γίνεται. περὶ δὲ τὸν κόλπον τοῦτον ἐστὶ χώρος πεδινός, τῇ μὲν εὐρὺς τῇ δὲ καὶ κάρτα στεινός· περὶ δὲ τὸν χώρον ὄρεα ὑψηλὰ καὶ ἄβατα περικληίει πᾶσαν τὴν Μηλίδα γῆν, Τρηχίνιαι πέτραι καλεόμεναι. πρώτη μὲν νυν πόλις ἐστὶ ἐν τῷ κόλπῳ ἰόντι ἀπὸ Ἀχαΐης Ἀντικύρη, παρ' ἣν Σπερχειὸς ποταμὸς ῥέων ἐξ Ἐνιήνων ἐς θάλασσαν ἐκδιδοῖ. ἀπὸ δὲ τούτου διὰ εἴκοσί κου σταδίων ἄλλος ποταμὸς τῷ οὖνομα κεῖται Δύρας, τὸν βοηθέοντα τῷ Ἡρακλεί καιομένῳ λόγος ἐστὶ ἀναφανῆναι. ἀπὸ δὲ τούτου δι' ἄλλων εἴκοσι σταδίων ἄλλος ποταμὸς ἐστὶ ὃς καλεῖται Μέλας.

δὲ ταῦτα ἀκούσας ὥς κατὰ τὸ ^{|grove, sacred place} ἐγίνετο, αὐτός τε ^{|bound, fend off; do} τῇ στρατιῇ ^{|transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage} παύσῃ ^{|descended from} Ἀθάμαντος ^{|non-common land} οἰκίην ὁμοίως καὶ τὸ ἐσέβετο.

7.198

ταῦτα μὲν τὰ ἐν Θεσσαλίῃ καὶ τὰ ἐν Ἀχαΐῃ· ἀπὸ δὲ ^{|place} τούτων τῶν ἤγε ἐς τὴν Μηλίδα ^{|bosom, lap-fold; gulf} παρὰ θαλάσσης, ἐν τῷ ^{|ebbing} τε καὶ ^{|flood tide, breakers; rocky beach} ἡμέρην γίνεται. περὶ δὲ τὸν ^{|bosom, lap-fold; gulf} ὅτον ἐστὶ ^{|place} ^{|flat} τῇ μὲν εὐρὺς τῇ δὲ καὶ ^{|very much} ὥς· περὶ δὲ τὸν ^{|place} ὄρεα ὑψηλὰ καὶ ^{|untrodden; impassable} ἡ κληΐει πᾶσαν τὴν Μηλίδα γῆν, Τρηχίνιαι πέτραι καλεόμεναι. πρώτη μὲν νυν πόλις ἐστὶ ἐν τῷ ^{|bosom, lap-fold; gulf} ἀπὸ Ἀχαΐης Ἀντικύρη, παρ' ἣν Σπερχειὸς ποταμὸς ^{|hand over} ῥέων ἐξ Ἐνιήνων ἐς θάλασσαν ἡπὸ δὲ τούτου διὰ εἴκοσιν ἑκατοσίων ἄλλος ποταμὸς τῷ ὄνομα κεῖται Δύρας, τὸν βοηθέοντα τῷ Ἡρακλεί καιομένῳ λόγος ἐστὶ ^{|reveal, shine} ἀπὸ δὲ τούτου δι' ἄλλων εἴκοσι σταδίων ἄλλος ποταμὸς ἐστὶ ὃς καλεῖται Μέλας.

descendants. Having heard these things, Xerxes, when he came to the sacred grove, both abstained from entering it himself, and gave the command to his whole army to so likewise; and he paid reverence both to the house and to the sacred enclosure of the descendants of Athamas.

7.198

These then are the things which happened in Thessalia and in Achaia; and from these regions he proceeded to the Malian land, going along by a gulf of the sea, in which there is an ebb and flow of the tide every day. Round about this gulf there is a level space, which in parts is broad but in other parts very narrow; and mountains lofty and inaccessible surrounding this place enclose the whole land of Malis and are called the rocks of Trachis. The first city upon this gulf as one goes from Achaia is Antikyra, by which the river Spercheios flowing from the land of the Enianians runs out into the sea. At a distance of twenty furlongs or thereabouts from this river there is another, of which the name is Dyrras; this is said to have appeared that it might bring assistance to Heracles when he was burning: then again at a distance of twenty furlongs from this there is another river called Melas.

vocabulary

ἀμαξιτός road

ἀπέχω ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance

δισμύριοι (ὅ) 20,000

δισχίλιοι 2000 ~kilo-

ἐκδίδωμι hand over ~donate

κώμη village

μεσαμβρία midday; the south

μεταξύ between

πεντεκαίδεκα 15

περικληίω enclose, confine

πλέθρον 30 meters or its square

~plethora

πολίζω build a wall, city ~Minneapolis

ῥέω flow ~rheostat

ῥοά pl: waters of a river ~rheostat

ῥόος ῥοῦ stream, flow, current

~rheostat

στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)

στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm;

(pl noun) 200 meters

7.199

Τρηχίς δὲ πόλις ἀπὸ τοῦ Μέλανος τούτου ποταμοῦ πέντε στάδια ἀπέχει. ταύτῃ δὲ καὶ εὐρύτατον ἐστὶ πάσης τῆς χώρας ταύτης ἐκ τῶν ὀρέων ἐς θάλασσαν, κατ' ἃ Τρηχίς πεπόλιστα· δισχίλιά τε γὰρ καὶ δισμύρια πλέθρα τοῦ πεδίου ἐστί. τοῦ δὲ ὄρεος τὸ περικληίει τὴν γῆν τὴν Τρηκινίην ἐστὶ διασφὰξ πρὸς μεσαμβρίην Τρηχίνος, διὰ δὲ τῆς διασφάγος Ἄσωπὸς ποταμὸς ῥέει παρὰ τὴν ὑπωρείαν τοῦ ὄρεος.

7.200

ἔστι δὲ ἄλλος Φοῖνιξ ποταμὸς οὐ μέγας πρὸς μεσαμβρίην τοῦ Ἄσωπου, ὃς ἐκ τῶν ὀρέων τούτων ῥέων ἐς τὸν Ἄσωπὸν ἐκδιδού. κατὰ δὲ τὸν Φοίνικα ποταμὸν στευνότατον ἐστί· ἀμαξιτὸς γὰρ μούνη δέδμηται. ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ Φοίνικος ποταμοῦ πεντεκαῖδεκα στάδια ἐστὶ ἐς Θερμοπύλας. ἐν δὲ τῷ μεταξὺ Φοίνικος ποταμοῦ καὶ Θερμοπυλέων κώμῃ τε ἐστὶ τῇ οὐνομα Ἀνθήλῃ κείμεναι,

7.199

From this river Melas the city of Trachis is distant five furlongs; and here, in the parts where Trachis is situated, is even the widest portion of all this district, as regards the space from the mountains to the sea; for the plain has an extent of twenty-two thousand plethra. In the mountain-range which encloses the land of Trachis there is a cleft to the South of Trachis itself; and through this cleft the river Asopos flows, and runs along by the foot of the mountain.

7.200

There is also another river called Phoinix, to the South of the Asopos, of no great size, which flowing from these mountains runs out into the Asopos; and at the river Phoinix is the narrowest place, for here has been constructed a road with a single wheel-track only. Then from the river Phoinix it is a distance of fifteen furlongs to Thermopylai; and in the space between the river Phoinix and Thermopylai there is a village called Anthela, by which the river Asopos flows,

vocabulary

βορέας -οῦ (m, 1) north, north wind

δίοδος (f) passage, pass

ἔδρα (ᾱ) seat, seated group

~polyhedron

ἐκδίδωμι hand over ~donate

Ἕλληγν Greek

ἐπικρατέω rule over

ἐπιχώριος native

ἡμισυς half ~hemisphere

ἡπειρος (f) mainland, continent

ἰδρύω establish

μεσαμβρία midday; the south

νότος south, south wind

παραρρέω flow past, slip by

περίοικος dwelling around

Πέρσης Persian

στρατοπεδεύω encamp or take up
station ~strategy

τριηκόσιοι three hundred

ὑπομένω stay behind, await ~remain

χίλιοι (ιι) thousand ~kilo-

χώρος place ~heir

παρ' ἣν δὴ παραρρέων ὁ Ἄσωπὸς ἐς θάλασσαν ἐκδιδοί,
καὶ χώρος περὶ αὐτὴν εὐρύς, ἐν τῷ Δήμητρος τε ἱρὸν
Ἀμφικτυονίδος ἵδρυται καὶ ἔδραι εἰσὶ Ἀμφικτύοσι καὶ
αὐτοῦ τοῦ Ἀμφικτύονος ἱρόν.

7.201

βασιλεὺς μὲν δὴ Ξέρξης ἐστρατοπεδεύετο τῆς Μηλίδος ἐν
τῇ Τρηχινίῃ, οἱ δὲ δὴ Ἕλληνες ἐν τῇ διόδῳ. καλέεται
δὲ ὁ χώρος οὗτος ὑπὸ μὲν τῶν πλεόνων Ἑλλήνων
Θερμοπύλαι, ὑπὸ δὲ τῶν ἐπιχωρίων καὶ περιοίκων Πύλαι.
ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο μὲν νυν ἑκάτεροι ἐν τούτοις τοῖσι
χωρίοις, ἐπεκράτεε δὲ ὁ μὲν τῶν πρὸς βορέην ἄνεμον
ἐχόντων πάντων μέχρι Τρηχίνος, οἱ δὲ τῶν πρὸς νότον
καὶ μεσαμβρίην φερόντων τὸ ἐπὶ ταύτης τῆς ἡπείρου.

7.202

ἦσαν δὲ οἷδε Ἑλλήνων οἱ ὑπομένοντες τὸν Πέρσῃ ἐν
τούτῳ τῷ χώρῳ, Σπαρτιητέων τε τριηκόσιοι ὀπλίται καὶ
Τεγεητέων καὶ Μαντινέων χίλιοι, ἡμίσεες ἑκατέρων, ἐξ

παρ' ἣν δὴ |flow past, slip by ἄ.σωπὸς ἐς θάλασσαν |hand over
καὶ |place περὶ αὐτὴν εὐρύς, ἐν τῷ Δήμητρος τε ἱρὸν
Ἀμφικτυονίδος |establish καὶ |seat εἰς Ἀμφικτύοσι καὶ
αὐτοῦ τοῦ Ἀμφικτύονος ἱρόν.

7.201

βασιλεὺς μὲν δὴ Ξέρξης |encamp or take up |station τῆς Μηλίδος ἐν
τῇ Τρηχινίῃ, οἱ δὲ δὴ |Greek ἐν τῇ |passage, pass ἔεται
δὲ ὁ |place οὗτος ὑπὸ μὲν τῶν πλεόνων |Greek
Θερμοπύλαι, ὑπὸ δὲ τῶν |native καὶ |dwelling Πύλαι.
|around
|encamp or take up μὲν νυν ἑκάτεροι ἐν τούτοισι τοῖσι
|station
χωρίοισι, |rule over δὲ ὁ μὲν τῶν πρὸς |north, ἄνεμον
|north
ἐχόντων πάντων μέχρι Τρηχίνος, οἱ δὲ τῶν πρὸς |wind
|south,
καὶ |midday; the south. ἔντων τὸ ἐπὶ ταύτης τῆς |south
|wind
|mainland,
|continent

7.202

ἦσαν δὲ οἶδε |Greek οἱ |stay behind, await Πέρσῃν ἐν
τούτῳ τῷ |place , Σπαρτιητέων τε |three ὀπλίται καὶ
|hundred
Τεγεητέων καὶ Μαντινέων χίλιοι, |half ἑκατέρων, ἕξ

and so runs out into the sea; and about this village there is a wide space in which is set up a temple dedicated to Demeter of the Amphictyons, and there are seats for the Amphictyonic councillors and a temple dedicated to Amphictyon himself.

7.201

King Xerxes, I say, was encamped within the region of Trachis in the land of the Malians, and the Hellenes within the pass. This place is called by the Hellenes in general Thermopylai, but by the natives of the place and those who dwell in the country round it is called Pylai. Both sides then were encamped hereabout, and the one had command of all that lies beyond Trachis in the direction of the North Wind, and the others of that which tends towards the South Wind and the mid-day on this side of the continent.

7.202

These were the Hellenes who awaited the attack of the Persian in this place: — of the Spartans three hundred hoplites; of the men of Tegea and Mantinea a thousand, half from each place, from

*vocabulary***διακόσιοι** (ἄ) two hundred**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἐπικαλέω** call upon**ἐπικλητός** summoned, appointed**ἑπτακόσιοι** 700**εὖς** good, brave, noble**θάλλω** bloom, flourish, abound

~thallium

ὀγδώκοντα eighty**ὄον** οὓ type of fruit**ὀφείλω** owe, should, if only**πανστρατιῇ** with the whole army**πρόδρομος** running ahead**προσδόκιμος** expected**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

τετρακόσιοι 400**φρουρέω** keep watch**χίλιοι** (ι) thousand ~kilo-

Ὅρχομενοῦ τε τῆς Ἀρκαδίας εἴκοσι καὶ ἑκατόν, καὶ ἐκ τῆς
λοιπῆς Ἀρκαδίας χίλιοι· τοσοῦτοι μὲν Ἀρκάδων, ἀπὸ δὲ
Κορίνθου τετρακόσιοι καὶ ἀπὸ Φλειούντος διηκόσιοι καὶ
Μυκηναίων ὀγδώκοντα. οὗτοι μὲν ἀπὸ Πελοποννήσου
παρήσαν, ἀπὸ δὲ Βοιωτῶν Θεσπείων τε ἑπτακόσιοι καὶ
Θηβαίων τετρακόσιοι.

7.203

πρὸς τούτοισι ἐπὶ κλητοὶ ἐγένοντο Λοκροὶ τε οἱ Ὀπούντιοι
πανστρατιῇ καὶ Φωκέων χίλιοι. αὐτοὶ γὰρ σφέας οἱ
Ἕλληνες ἐπεκαλέσαντο, λέγοντες δι' ἀγγέλων ὥς αὐτοὶ
μὲν ἦκοιεν πρόδρομοι τῶν ἄλλων, οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ τῶν
συμμάχων προσδόκιμοι πᾶσαν εἶεν ἡμέρην, ἢ θάλασσά
τέ σφι εἴη ἐν φυλακῇ ὑπ' Ἀθηναίων τε φρουρεομένη καὶ
Αἰγινήτων καὶ τῶν ἐς τὸν ναυτικὸν στρατὸν ταχθέντων,
καὶ σφι εἴη δεινὸν οὐδέν· οὐ γὰρ θεὸν εἶναι τὸν ἐπιόντα ἐπὶ
τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἀλλ' ἄνθρωπον, εἶναι δὲ θνητὸν οὐδένα οὐδὲ
ἔσεσθαι τῷ κακὸν ἐξ ἀρχῆς γινομένῳ οὐ συνεμίχθη, τοῖσι
δὲ μεγίστοισι αὐτῶν μέγιστα. ὀφείλειεν ὦν καὶ τὸν

Ὅρχομενοῦ τε τῆς Ἀρκαδίας εἴκοσι καὶ ἑκατόν, καὶ ἐκ τῆς
 λοιπῆς Ἀρκαδίας χίλιοι· τοσοῦτοι μὲν Ἀρκάδων, ἀπὸ δὲ
 Κορίνθου |400 καὶ ἀπὸ Φλειοῦντος |two hundred ...
 Μυκηναίων |eighty οὔτοι μὲν ἀπὸ Πελοποννήσου
 παρήσαν, ἀπὸ δὲ Βοιωτῶν Θεσπιέων τε |700 καὶ
 Θηβαίων |400

7.203

πρὸς τούτοις |summoned, ἔγένοντο Λοκροὶ τε οἱ Ὀπούντιοι
 |appointed
 |with the whole army Ἰωκέων χίλιοι. αὐτοὶ γὰρ σφέας οἱ
 |Greek |call upon , λέγοντες δι' ἀγγέλων ὥς αὐτοὶ
 μὲν ἤκοιεν |running τῶν ἄλλων, οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ τῶν
 |ahead
 συμμάχων |expected πᾶσαν εἶεν ἡμέρην, ἣ |bloom, flour-
 |ish, abound
 τέ σφι εἴη ἐν φυλακῇ ὑπ' Ἀθηναίων τε |keep watch καὶ
 Αἰγινητέων καὶ τῶν ἐς τὸν ναυτικὸν |army ταχθέντων,
 καὶ σφι εἴη δεινὸν οὐδέν· οὐ γὰρ θεὸν εἶναι τὸν ἐπιόντα ἐπὶ
 τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἀλλ' ἄνθρωπον, εἶναι δὲ θνητὸν οὐδένα οὐδὲ
 ἔσσεσθαι τῷ κακὸν ἐξ ἀρχῆς γινομένῳ οὐ συνεμίχθη, τοῖσι
 δὲ μεγίστοις αὐτῶν μέγιστα. |owe, should, if only ἔν

Orchomenos in Arcadia a hundred and twenty, and from the rest of Arcadia a thousand,—of the Arcadians so many; from Corinth four hundred, from Phlius two hundred, and of the men of Mykene eighty: these were they who came from the Peloponnese; and from the Boeotians seven hundred of the Thespians, and of the Thebans four hundred.

7.203

In addition to these the Locrians of Opus had been summoned to come in their full force, and of the Phokians a thousand: for the Hellenes had of themselves sent a summons to them, saying by messengers that they had come as forerunners of the others, that the rest of the allies were to be expected every day, that their sea was safely guarded, being watched by the Athenians and the Eginetans and by those who had been appointed to serve in the fleet, and that they need fear nothing: for he was not a god, they said, who was coming to attack Hellas, but a man; and there was no mortal, nor would be any, with those fortunes evil had not been mingled at his very birth, and the greatest evils for the greatest men; therefore he also

*vocabulary***ἄπαις** childless**ἄπελάνω** expel, exclude, ward off;
(intrans) ride away**ἄπροσδόκητος** unexpected; unaware**διξός** double**ἐπελάνω** beat out ~elastic**ἔρσην** male**κτάομαι** acquire, possess**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**φροντίς** -τος (f) thought, care

ἐπελαύνοντα, ὥς ἐόντα θνητόν, ἀπὸ τῆς δόξης πεσεῖν ἄν.
οἱ δὲ ταῦτα πυνθανόμενοι ἐβοήθεον ἐς τὴν Τρηχίνα.

7.204

τούτοισι ἦσαν μὲν νυν καὶ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ κατὰ πόλιας
ἐκάστων, ὁ δὲ θωμαζόμενος μάλιστα καὶ παντὸς τοῦ
στρατεύματος ἡγεόμενος Λακεδαιμόνιος ἦν Λεωνίδης
ὁ Ἀναξανδρίδew τοῦ Λέοντος τοῦ Εὐρυκρατίδew τοῦ
Ἀναξάνδρου τοῦ Εὐρυκράτεος τοῦ Πολυδώρου τοῦ
Ἀλκαμένεος τοῦ Τηλέκλου τοῦ Ἀρχέλεω τοῦ Ἥγησίλεω
τοῦ Δορύσσου τοῦ Λεωβώτew τοῦ Ἐχεστράτου τοῦ Ἥγιος
τοῦ Εὐρυσθέneos τοῦ Ἀριστοδήμου τοῦ Ἀριστομάχου τοῦ
Κλεοδαίου τοῦ Ὑλλου τοῦ Ἡρακλέος, κτησάμενος τὴν
βασιληίην ἐν Σπάρτῃ ἐξ ἀπροσδοκίτου.

7.205

διζῶν γάρ οἱ ἐόντων πρεσβυτέρων ἀδελφεῶν, Κλεομένεός
τε καὶ Δωριέος, ἀπελήλατο τῆς φροντίδος περὶ τῆς
βασιληίης. ἀποθανόντος δὲ Κλεομένεος ἄπαιδος ἔρσηνος

|beat out , ὥς ἔοντα θνητόν, ἀπὸ τῆς δόξης πεσεῖν ἄν.

οἱ δὲ ταῦτα πυνθανόμενοι ἐβοήθεον ἐς τὴν Τρηχίνα.

7.204

τούτοισι ἦσαν μὲν νυν καὶ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ κατὰ πόλιας
ἐκάστων, ὁ δὲ θωμαζόμενος μάλιστα καὶ παντὸς τοῦ

|army ἡγεόμενος Λακεδαιμόνιος ἦν Λεωνίδης

ὁ Ἀναξανδρίδew τοῦ Λέοντος τοῦ Εὐρυκρατίδew τοῦ

Ἀναξάνδρου τοῦ Εὐρυκράτεος τοῦ Πολυδώρου τοῦ

Ἀλκαμένεος τοῦ Τηλέκλου τοῦ Ἀρχέλεω τοῦ Ἥγησίλεω

τοῦ Δορύσσου τοῦ Λεωβώτew τοῦ Ἐχεστράτου τοῦ Ἥγιος

τοῦ Εὐρυσθέneos τοῦ Ἀριστοδήμου τοῦ Ἀριστομάχου τοῦ

Κλεοδαίου τοῦ Ὑλλου τοῦ Ἡρακλέος, κτησάμενος τὴν

βασιληίην ἐν Σπάρτῃ ἐξ |unexpected;
|unaware .

7.205

διξῶν γάρ οἱ ἔοντων πρεσβυτέρων ἀδελφεῶν, Κλεομένεός

τε καὶ Δωριέος, |expel, exclude, ward|thought, care |ride
|off; (intrans) |ride

βασιληίης. ἀποθανόντος δὲ Κλεομένεος |childless |male

who was marching against them, being mortal, would be destined to fail of his expectation. They accordingly, hearing this, came to the assistance of the others at Trachis.

7.204

Of these troops, although there were other commanders also according to the State to which each belonged, yet he who was most held in regard and who was leader of the whole army was the Lacedemonian Leonidas son of Anaxandrides, son of Leon, son of Eurycratides, son of Anaxander, son of Eurycrates, son of Polydoros, son of Alcamenes, son of Teleclos, son of Archelaos, son of Hegesilaos, son of Doryssos, son of Leobotes, son of Echestratos, son of Agis, son of Eurysthenes, son of Aristodemos, son of Aristomachos, son of Cleodaios, son of Hyllos, son of Heracles; who had obtained the kingdom of Sparta contrary to expectation.

7.205

For as he had two brothers each older than himself, namely Cleomenes and Dorieos, he had been far removed from the thought of becoming king. Since however Cleomenes had died

vocabulary

ἄλλοφρονέω dazed, crushed ~frenzy
ἀπολέγω pick; decline
ἀποπέμπω send away ~pomp
ἀπουρέω urinate
ἀριθμός number
γόνος offspring ~genus
Ἑλλήν Greek
ἐμφανής visible
ἐπιλέγω say re, say also; choose; (mid)

think over
εὖς good, brave, noble
λογίζομαι reckon, consider
ὄον οὖ type of fruit
σπουδή zeal; (dat) with difficulty,
 hastily ~repudiate
στρατηγέω be a general
συμμαχία alliance
συμπέμπω send with ~pomp
τριακόσιοι three hundred

γόνου, Δωριέος τε οὐκέτι ἐόντος ἀλλὰ τελευτήσαντος καὶ τούτου ἐν Σικελίῃ, οὕτω δὴ ἐς Λεωνίδην ἀνέβαινε ἢ βασιληίῃ, καὶ διότι πρότερος ἐγγόνεε Κλεομβρότου· οὗτος γὰρ ἦν νεώτατος Ἀναξανδρίδew παῖς καὶ δὴ καὶ εἶχε Κλεομένεος θυγατέρα. ὃς τότε ἦι ἐς Θερμοπύλας ἐπιλεξάμενος ἄνδρας τε τοὺς κατεστεῶτας τριηκοσίους καὶ τοῖσι ἐτύγχανον παῖδες ἐόντες· παραλαβὼν δὲ ἀπίκετο καὶ Θηβαίων τοὺς ἐς τὸν ἀριθμὸν λογισάμενος εἶπον, τῶν ἐστρατήγεε Λεοντιάδης ὁ Εὐρυμάχου. τοῦδε δὲ εἵνεκα τούτους σπουδὴν ἐποιήσατο Λεωνίδης μούνους Ἑλλήνων παραλαβεῖν, ὅτι σφέων μεγάλως κατηγόρητο μηδίξειν· παρεκάλεε ὧν ἐς τὸν πόλεμον, θέλων εἰδέναι εἴτε συμπέμψουσι εἴτε καὶ ἀπερέουσι ἐκ τοῦ ἐμφανέος τὴν Ἑλλήνων συμμαχίην. οἳ δὲ ἀλλοφρονέοντες ἔπεμπον.

7.206

τούτους μὲν τοὺς ἀμφὶ Λεωνίδην πρῶτους ἀπέπεμψαν Σπαρτιῆται, ἵνα τούτους ὁρῶντες οἱ ἄλλοι σύμμαχοι στρατεύωνται μηδὲ καὶ οὗτοι μηδίσωσι, ἣν αὐτοὺς

|offspring Ἰωριέος τε οὐκέτι ἔοντος ἀλλὰ τελευτήσαντος
καὶ τούτου ἐν Σικελίῃ, οὕτω δὴ ἐς Λεωνίδην ἀνέβαινε
ἢ βασιληίῃ, καὶ διότι πρότερος ἐγγεγόνεε Κλεομβρότου·
οὗτος γὰρ ἦν νεώτατος Ἀναξανδρίδew παῖς καὶ δὴ καὶ
εἶχε Κλεομένεος θυγατέρα. ὃς τότε ἦι ἐς Θερμοπύλας

|say, choose, ἀνδρας τε τοὺς κατεστεῶτας |three
|think over |hundred
καὶ τοῖσι ἐτύγχανον παῖδες ἔόντες· παραλαβὼν δὲ
ἀπῖκετο καὶ Θηβαίων τοὺς ἐς τὸν |number |reckon,
|consider
εἶπον, τῶν |be a general Λεοντιάδης ὁ Εὐρυμάχου. τοῦδε
δὲ εἵνεκα τούτους |zeal; (dat) 'with' |sato Λεωνίδης μούρους
|difficulty, hastily
|Greek παραλαβεῖν, ὅτι σφέων μεγάλως κατηγόρητο
μηδίξειν· παρεκάλεε ὦν ἐς τὸν πόλεμον, θέλων εἰδέναι
εἴτε |συμπέμπω?: send with; 'or' |περέουσι ἐκ τοῦ |visible τὴν
|συμπέμπω?: send with
|Greek συμμαχίην. οἱ δὲ |dazed, crushed ἔπεμπον.

7.206

τούτους μὲν τοὺς ἀμφὶ Λεωνίδην πρώτους |send away
Σπαρτιῆται, ἵνα τούτους ὁρῶντες οἱ ἄλλοι σύμμαχοι
στρατεύωνται μηδὲ καὶ οὗτοι μηδίσωσι, ἣν αὐτοὺς

without male child, and Dorieos was then no longer alive, but he also had brought his life to an end in Sicily, thus the kingdom came to Leonidas, both because was of elder birth than Cleombrotos (for Cleombrotos was the youngest of the sons of Anaxandrides) and also because he had in marriage the daughter of Cleomenes. He then at this time went to Thermopylai, having chosen the three hundred who were appointed by law and men who chanced to have sons; and he took with him besides, before he arrived, those Thebans whom I mentioned when I reckoned them in the number of the troops, of whom the commander was Leontiades the son of Eurymachos: and for this reason Leonidas was anxious to take up these with him of all the Hellenes, namely because accusations had been strongly brought against them that they were taking the side of the Medes; therefore he summoned them to the war, desiring to know whether they would send troops with them or whether they would openly renounce the alliance of the Hellenes; and they sent men, having other thoughts in their mind the while.

7.206

These with Leonidas the Spartans had sent out first, in order that seeing them the other allies might join in the campaign, and for fear that they also might take the side of the Medes, if they heard that the Spartans were putting

*vocabulary***ἄλέξω** ward off; aid**ἀπαλλαγή** relief, escape**διακρίνω** (ι) separate, sort ~critic**εἰσβολή** -ωβόλης invasion, an entrance

~ballistic

Ἑλλην Greek**ἐμποδών** getting in the way**ἐπιβοηθέω** come to aid**καταρροδέω** fear, dread**ὀρτάζω** celebrate**οὐκω** no longer**πανδημεί** the masses**πέλας** near, close**πέρθω** sack, ravage, plunder**Πέρσης** Persian**πρόδρομος** running ahead**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

συμπίπτω fall together, happen**τάχος** -ους (n, 3) speed ~tachometer**ὑπερβάλλω** cause to go beyond; delay

~ballistic

ψηφίζω count, vote

πυνθάνωνται ὑπερβαλλομένους· μετὰ δέ, Κάρνεια γάρ σφι ἦν ἐμποδών, ἔμελλον ὀρτάσαντες καὶ φυλακὰς λιπόντες ἐν τῇ Σπάρτῃ κατὰ τάχος βοηθέειν πανδημεί. ὥς δὲ καὶ οἱ λοιποὶ τῶν συμμάχων ἐνένωντο καὶ αὐτοὶ ἕτερα τοιαῦτα ποιήσειν· ἦν γὰρ κατὰ τῶντὸ Ὀλυμπιάς τούτοις τοῖσι πρήγμασι συμπεσοῦσα· οὐκὼν δοκέοντες κατὰ τάχος οὕτω διακριθήσεσθαι τὸν ἐν Θερμοπύλῃσι πόλεμον ἔπεμπον τοὺς προδρόμους.

7.207

οὗτοι μὲν δὴ οὕτω διενένωντο ποιήσειν· οἱ δὲ ἐν Θερμοπύλῃσι Ἕλληνες, ἐπειδὴ πέλας ἐγένετο τῆς ἐσβολῆς ὁ Πέρσης, καταρρωδέοντες ἐβουλεύοντο περὶ ἀπαλλαγῆς. τοῖσι μὲν νυν ἄλλοις Πελοποννησίοις ἐδόκεε ἐλθοῦσι ἐς Πελοπόννησον τὸν Ἰσθμὸν ἔχειν ἐν φυλακῇ· Λεωνίδης δέ, Φωκέων καὶ Λοκρῶν περισπερχεόντων τῇ γνώμῃ ταύτῃ, αὐτοῦ τε μένειν ἐψηφίζετο πέμπειν τε ἀγγέλους ἐς τὰς πόλεις κελεύοντάς σφι ἐπιβοηθέειν, ὥς ἐόντων αὐτῶν ὀλίγων στρατὸν τὸν Μήδων ἀλέξασθαι.

πυνθάνωνται |cause to go beyond; delay |μετὰ δέ, Κάρνεια γάρ
 σφι ἦν |getting in the way |ον |celebrate καὶ φυλακὰς
 λιπόντες ἐν τῇ Σπάρτῃ κατὰ |speed βοηθείην |the masses.
 ὥς δὲ καὶ οἱ λοιποὶ τῶν συμμάχων ἐνένωντο καὶ αὐτοὶ
 ἕτερα τοιαῦτα ποιήσιν· ἦν γὰρ κατὰ τὸντὸ Ὀλυμπιάς
 τούτοις τοῖς πράγμασι |συμπίπτω?: |no longer ἰκέοντες
 κατὰ |speed οὕτω |separate, sort, happen; or
 |συμπίπτω?: fall |τῶν ἐν Θερμοπύλῃσι
 πόλεμον ἔπεμπον τοὺς |running ahead

7.207

οὗτοι μὲν δὴ οὕτω διενένωντο ποιήσιν· οἱ δὲ ἐν
 Θερμοπύλῃσι |Greek , ἐπειδὴ |near, close ἐγένετο τῆς |invasion, an entrance
 ὁ Πέρσης, |fear, dread ἐβουλεύοντο περὶ |relief, escape
 τοῖς μὲν νυν ἄλλοις Πελοποννησίοις ἐδόκεε ἐλθοῦσι ἐς
 Πελοπόννησον τὸν Ἰσθμὸν ἔχειν ἐν φυλακῇ· Λεωνίδης δέ,
 Φωκέων καὶ Λοκρῶν περισπερχεόντων τῇ γνώμῃ ταύτῃ,
 αὐτοῦ τε μένειν |count, vote πέμπειν τε ἀγγέλους ἐς τὰς
 πόλεις κελεύοντάς σφι |come to aid , ὥς ἐόντων αὐτῶν
 ὀλίγων |army τὸν Μήδων |ward off; aid

off their action. Afterwards, however, when they had kept the festival, (for the festival of the Carneia stood in their way), they intended then to leave a garrison in Sparta and to come to help in full force with speed: and just so also the rest of the allies had thought of doing themselves; for it chanced that the Olympic festival fell at the same time as these events. Accordingly, since they did not suppose that the fighting in Thermopylai would so soon be decided, they sent only the forerunners of their force.

7.207

These, I say, had intended to do thus: and meanwhile the Hellenes at Thermopylai, when the Persian had come near to the pass, were in dread, and deliberated about making retreat from their position. To the rest of the Peloponnesians then it seemed best that they should go to the Peloponnese and hold the Isthmus in guard; but Leonidas, when the Phokians and Locrians were indignant at this opinion, gave his vote for remaining there, and for sending at the same time messengers to the several States bidding them to come up to help them, since they were but few to repel the army of the Medes.

*vocabulary***ἀλίζω** gather, assemble**ἄλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix**ἄλογίη** disrespect, disregard; unreason**ἀνορθόω** rebuild, restore**ἄπελαύνω** expel, exclude, ward off;

(intrans) ride away

ἀτρεκής precise, certain**γυμνάζω** exercise, do training**ἡσυχία** peace and quiet**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider

~theater

θηέομαι look at, behold, consider

~theater

καθοράω look down ~panorama**κατάρα** curse**κατάσκοπος** spy, inspector**κομάω** have long hair**κόμη** hair ~comet**ὅπόσος** as many as, how many, how

great

προσελαύνω go to, approach ~elastic**στρατιά** army ~strategy

7.208

ταῦτα βουλευομένων σφέων, ἔπεμπε Ξέρξης κατάσκοπον
 ἱππέα ἰδέσθαι ὁκόσοι εἰσὶ καὶ ὅ τι ποιόειεν. ἀκηκόεε
 δὲ ἔτι ἔων ἐν Θεσσαλίῃ ὡς ἀλισμένη εἴη ταύτῃ στρατιῇ
 ὀλίγῃ, καὶ τοὺς ἡγεμόνας ὡς εἶησαν Λακεδαιμόνιοί τε
 καὶ Λεωνίδης ἔων γένος Ἡρακλείδης. ὡς δὲ προσήλασε
 ὁ ἱππεὺς πρὸς τὸ στρατόπεδον, ἐθηεῖτό τε καὶ κατώρα
 πᾶν μὲν οὐ τὸ στρατόπεδον· τοὺς γὰρ ἔσω τεταγμένους
 τοῦ τείχεος, τὸ ἀνορθώσαντες εἶχον ἐν φυλακῇ, οὐκ
 οἶά τε ἦν κατιδέσθαι· ὁ δὲ τοὺς ἔξω ἐμάνθανε, τοῖσι
 πρὸ τοῦ τείχεος τὰ ὄπλα ἔκειτο· ἔτυχον δὲ τοῦτον τὸν
 χρόνον Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἔξω τεταγμένοι. τοὺς μὲν δὴ
 ὥρα γυμναζομένους τῶν ἀνδρῶν, τοὺς δὲ τὰς κόμας
 κτενιζομένους. ταῦτα δὴ θεώμενος ἐθώμαζε καὶ τὸ πλήθος
 ἐμάνθανε. μαθὼν δὲ πάντα ἀτρεκέως ἀπήλανε ὀπίσω
 κατ' ἡσυχίην· οὔτε γάρ τις ἐδίωκε ἀλογίης τε ἐνεκύρησε
 πολλῆς· ἀπελθὼν τε ἔλεγε πρὸς Ξέρξην τά περ ὁπώπее
 πάντα.

7.208

ταῦτα βουλευομένων σφέων, ἔπεμπε Ξέρξης |spy, inspector
 ἱππέα ιδέσθαι |as/how many/great ὅ τι ποίειεν. ἀκηκόε
 δὲ ἔτι ἐὼν ἐν Θεσσαλίῃ ὡς ἀλισμένη εἴη ταύτῃ στρατιῇ
 ὀλίγη, καὶ τοὺς ἡγεμόνας ὡς εἶσαν Λακεδαιμόνιοί τε
 καὶ Λεωνίδης ἐὼν γένος Ἡρακλείδης. ὡς δὲ |go to, approach
 ὁ ἱππεὺς πρὸς τὸ στρατόπεδον, |look at, behold,|curse
 |consider
 πᾶν μὲν οὐ τὸ στρατόπεδον· τοὺς γὰρ ἔσω τεταγμένους
 τοῦ τείχεος, τὸ |rebuild, restore εἶχον ἐν φυλακῇ, οὐκ
 οἶά τε ἦν |look down ὁ δὲ τοὺς ἔξω ἐμάνθανε, τοῖσι
 πρὸ τοῦ τείχεος τὰ ὄπλα ἔκειτο· ἔτυχον δὲ τοῦτον τὸν
 χρόνον Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἔξω τεταγμένοι. τοὺς μὲν δὴ
 ὥρα |exercise, do train- τῶν ἀνδρῶν, τοὺς δὲ τὰς κόμας
 |ing
 κτενίζομένους. ταῦτα δὴ θεώμενος ἐθώμαζε καὶ τὸ πλῆθος
 ἐμάνθανε. μαθὼν δὲ πάντα |precise, |expel, exclude, 'ward off; (in-
 |certain |trans) ride away
 κατ' |peace and quiet γάρ τις ἐδίωκε |disrespect, disre- ὕρησε
 |gard; unreason
 πολλῆς· ἀπελθὼν τε ἔλεγε πρὸς Ξέρξην τά περ ὁπώπее
 πάντα.

7.208

As they were thus deliberating, Xerxes sent a scout on horseback to see how many they were in number and what they were doing; for he had heard while he was yet in Thessaly that there had been assembled in this place a small force, and that the leaders of it were Lacedemonians together with Leonidas, who was of the race of Heracles. And when the horseman had ridden up towards their camp, he looked upon them and had a view not indeed of the whole of their army, for of those which were posted within the wall, which they had repaired and were keeping a guard, it was not possible to have a view, but he observed those who were outside, whose station was in front of the wall; and it chanced at that time that the Lacedemonians were they who were posted outside. So then he saw some of the men practising athletic exercises and some combing their long hair: and as he looked upon these things he marvelled, and at the same time he observed their number: and when he had observed all exactly, he rode back unmolested, for no one attempted to pursue him and he found himself treated with much indifference. And when he returned he reported to Xerxes all that which he had seen.

*vocabulary***ἀσκέω** work on**γέλοιος** laughable; joking**γέλως** laughter**ἐκβαίνω** come forth, disembark ~basis**ἔσοδος** entrance**εὔτε** when, as, since**καταστρέφω** overturn, subdue

~catastrophe

κοσμέω marshal, array ~cosmos**μεταπέμπω** send; (mid) summon

~pomp

μίν him, her, it**συμβάλλω** pit against; compare; mp:

meet, fall in with ~ballistic

ὑπομένω stay behind, await ~remain**ᾠρος** year

7.209

ἀκούων δὲ Ξέρξης οὐκ εἶχε συμβαλέσθαι τὸ ἐόν, ὅτι
 παρασκευάζοντο ὥς ἀπολεόμενοί τε καὶ ἀπολέοντες
 κατὰ δύναμιν· ἀλλ' αὐτῷ γελοῖα γὰρ ἐφαίνοντο ποιεῖν,
 μετεπέμψατο Δημάρητον τὸν Ἀρίστωνος ἑόντα ἐν
 τῷ στρατοπέδῳ· ἀπικόμενον δέ μιν εἰρώτα Ξέρξης
 ἕκαστα τούτων, ἐθέλων μαθεῖν τὸ ποιούμενον πρὸς τῶν
 Λακεδαιμονίων. ὁ δὲ εἶπε «Ἦκουσας μὲν καὶ πρότερόν
 μευ, εὔτε ὀρμῶμεν ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, περὶ τῶν ἀνδρῶν
 τούτων, ἀκούσας δὲ γέλωτά με ἔθου λέγοντα τῇ περ ὥρων
 ἐκβησόμενα πρήγματα ταῦτα· ἐμοὶ γὰρ τὴν ἀληθείην
 ἀσκέειν ἀντὶα σεῦ βασιλεῦ ἀγὼν μέγιστος ἐστί. ἄκουσον
 δὲ καὶ νῦν· οἱ ἄνδρες οὗτοι ἀπικάται μαχησόμενοι ἡμῖν
 περὶ τῆς ἐσόδου, καὶ ταῦτα παρασκευάζονται. νόμος γάρ
 σφι ἔχων οὕτω ἐστί· ἐπεὰν μέλλωσι κινδυνεύειν τῇ ψυχῇ,
 τότε τὰς κεφαλὰς κοσμέονται. ἐπίστασο δέ, εἰ τούτους
 γε καὶ τὸ ὑπομένον ἐν Σπάρτῃ καταστρέψει, ἔστι οὐδὲν
 ἄλλο ἔθνος ἀνθρώπων τὸ σὲ βασιλεῦ ὑπομένει χεῖρας

7.209

ἀκούων δὲ Ξέρξης οὐκ εἶχε <sup>|pit against; compare; ἴν, ὅτι
|mp: meet, fall in with</sup>
 παρασκευάζονται ὥς ἀπολεόμενοι τε καὶ ἀπολέοντες
 κατὰ δύναμιν· ἀλλ' αὐτῷ <sup>|laughable; ῥ ἐφαίνοντο ποιέειν,
|joking</sup>
^{|send; (mid) summon,} ἀρήτον τὸν Ἀρίστωνος ἐόντα ἐν
 τῷ στρατοπέδῳ· ἀπικόμενον δέ μιν εἰρώτα Ξέρξης
 ἕκαστα τούτων, ἐθέλων μαθεῖν τὸ ποιούμενον πρὸς τῶν
 Λακεδαιμονίων. ὁ δὲ εἶπε «Ἦκουσας μὲν καὶ πρότερόν
 μεν, ^{|when, ἄς, since} ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, περὶ τῶν ἀνδρῶν
 τούτων, ἀκούσας δὲ ^{|laughter} με ἔθου λέγοντα τῇ περ ^{|year}
^{|come forth} πρήγματα ταῦτα· ἐμοὶ γὰρ τὴν ἀληθείην
^{|work on} ἀντία σεῦ βασιλεῦ ἀγὼν μέγιστος ἐστί. ἄκουσον
 δὲ καὶ νῦν· οἱ ἄνδρες οὗτοι ἀπίκονται μαχησόμενοι ἡμῖν
 περὶ τῆς ^{|entrance} καὶ ταῦτα παρασκευάζονται. νόμος γάρ
 σφι ἔχων οὕτω ἐστί· ἐπεὰν μέλλωσι κινδυνεύειν τῇ ψυχῇ,
 τότε τὰς κεφαλὰς <sup>|marshal,
|array</sup> ἐπίστασο δέ, εἰ τούτους
 γε καὶ τὸ ^{|stay behind, await} ἴρτη ^{|overturn, subdue}, ἔστι οὐδὲν
 ἄλλο ἔθνος ἀνθρώπων τὸ σὲ βασιλεῦ ^{|stay behind, await}

7.209

Hearing this Xerxes was not able to conjecture the truth about the matter, namely that they were preparing themselves to die and to deal death to the enemy so far as they might; but it seemed to him that they were acting in a manner merely ridiculous; and therefore he sent for Demaratos the son of Ariston, who was in his camp, and when he came, Xerxes asked him of these things severally, desiring to discover what this was which the Lacedemonians were doing: and he said: "Thou didst hear from my mouth at a former time, when we were setting forth to go against Hellas, the things concerning these men; and having heard them thou madest me an object of laughter, because I told thee of these things which I perceived would come to pass; for to me it is the greatest of all ends to speak the truth continually before thee, O king. Hear then now also: these men have come to fight with us for the passage, and this is it that they are preparing to do; for they have a custom which is as follows; — whenever they are about to put their lives in peril, then they attend to the arrangement of their hair. Be assured however, that if thou shalt subdue these and the rest of them which remain behind in Sparta, there is no other race of men which will await thy onset, O king, or will raise hands

vocabulary

ἀβουλία ill-advisedness
ἀναίδεια shamelessness
ἀνταείρω raise against
ἀνταίρω raise against
ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be freed, depart
ἀπελαύνω expel, exclude, ward off; (intrans) ride away
ἄπιστος not trusting, not trustworthy ~stand
διαχρέομαι use habitually; lend out; reveal
εἰσπίπτω fall into, rush in
ἐκβαίνω come forth, disembark ~basis

Ἑλλην Greek

ἐντέλλω (mp) command
ἐπειρωτάω consult, ask
ζωγρέω capture, give quarter; revive ~zoo
ἥκιστος least; above all
θυμώ (ῶ) anger
καίπερ even if
κάρτα very much ~κράτος
ὄψις ὄψεως (f) sight, view ~thanatopsis
πέμπτος fifth ~pentagon
προσπταίω batter; be set back
στρατιά army ~strategy
ψεύστης -ου (m, 1) liar ~pseudo-

ἀνταειρόμενον· νῦν γὰρ πρὸς βασιληίην τε καὶ καλλίστην πόλιν τῶν ἐν Ἑλλησι προσφέρειαι καὶ ἄνδρας ἀρίστους.» κάρτα τε δὴ Ξέρξῃ ἄπιστα ἐφαίνετο τὰ λεγόμενα εἶναι, καὶ δεύτερα ἐπειρώτα ὄντινα τρόπον τοσοῦτοι ἐόντες τῇ ἐωντοῦ στρατιῇ μαχήσονται. ὁ δὲ εἶπε «ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἐμοὶ χρᾶσθαι ὡς ἀνδρὶ ψεύσῃ, ἣν μὴ ταῦτά τοι ταύτῃ ἐκβῇ τῇ ἐγὼ λέγω.»

7.210

ταῦτα λέγων οὐκ ἔπειθε τὸν Ξέρξην τέσσερας μὲν δὴ παρεξῆκε ἡμέρας, ἐλπίζων αἰεὶ σφεας ἀποδρῆσεσθαι· πέμπτη δέ, ὡς οὐκ ἀπαλλάσσοντο ἀλλὰ οἱ ἐφαίνοντο ἀναιδείῃ τε καὶ ἀβουλίῃ διαχρεώμενοι μένειν, πέμπει ἐπ' αὐτοὺς Μήδους τε καὶ Κισσίους θυμωθεῖς, ἐντειλάμενος σφέας ζωγρήσαντας ἄγειν ἐς ὄψιν τὴν ἐωντοῦ. ὡς δ' ἐσέπεσον φερόμενοι ἐς τοὺς Ἑλληνας οἱ Μῆδοι, ἔπιπτον πολλοί, ἄλλοι δ' ἐπεσήσαν, καὶ οὐκ ἀπηλαύνοντο, καίπερ megάλως προσπταίοντες. δῆλον δ' ἐποίευν παντὶ τεῷ καὶ οὐκ ἦκιστα αὐτῷ βασιλεί, ὅτι πολλοὶ μὲν ἄνθρωποι εἶεν,

ἀνταειρόμενον· νῦν γὰρ πρὸς βασιληίην τε καὶ καλλίστην
 πόλιν τῶν ἐν |Greek προσφέρειαι καὶ ἄνδρας ἀρίστους.»
 |very much δὴ Ξέρξῃ ἄπιστα ἐφαίνετο τὰ λεγόμενα εἶναι,
 καὶ δεύτερα |consult, ask ὥντινα τρόπον τοσοῦτοι ἐόντες τῇ
 ἑωυτοῦ στρατιῇ μαχήσονται. ὁ δὲ εἶπε «ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἐμοὶ
 χρᾶσθαι ὡς ἀνδρὶ |liar , ἥν μὴ ταυτά τοι ταύτῃ |come forth
 ἐγὼ λέγω.»

7.210

ταῦτα λέγων οὐκ ἔπειθε τὸν Ξέρξην τέσσερας μὲν δὴ
 παρεξῆκε ἡμέρας, ἐλπίζων αἰεὶ σφεας ἀποδρῆσεσθαι·
 |fifth δέ, ὡς οὐκ |free from, remove; ἰλλά οἱ ἐφαίνοντο
 |be freed, depart
 |shamelessness αἰ |ill- |use habitually; μένειν, πέμπει ἐπ’
 |advisedness |send out; reveal
 αὐτοὺς Μῆδους τε καὶ Κισσίους |anger , ἐντειλάμενος
 σφέας |capture ἄγειν ἐς |sight τὴν ἑωυτοῦ. ὡς δ’
 |fall into, rush in ἵμενοι ἐς τοὺς |Greek οἱ Μῆδοι, ἔπιπτον
 πολλοί, ἄλλοι δ’ ἐπεσήσαν, καὶ οὐκ |expel, exclude, even if
 |ward off; (in-
 |trans) ride away
 μεγάλως |batter; be set back δῆλον δ’ ἐποיעὺν παντὶ τεῶ καὶ
 οὐκ |least; αὐτῷ βασιλεί, ὅτι πολλοὶ μὲν ἄνθρωποι εἶεν,
 |above
 |all

against thee: for now thou art about to fight against the noblest kingdom and city of those which are among the Hellenes, and the best men.” To Xerxes that which was said seemed to be utterly incredible, and he asked again a second time in what manner being so few they would fight with his host. He said; “O king, deal with me as with a liar, if thou find not that these things come to pass as I say.”

7.210

Thus saying he did not convince Xerxes, who let four days go by, expecting always that they would take to flight; but on the fifth day, when they did not depart but remained, being obstinate, as he thought, in impudence and folly, he was enraged and sent against them the Medes and the Kissians, charging them to take the men alive and bring them into his presence. Then when the Medes moved forward and attacked the Hellenes, there fell many of them, and others kept coming up continually, and they were not driven back, though suffering great loss: and they made it evident to every man, and to the king himself not least of all, that human beings

vocabulary

ἄλης crowded; all together
ἀναρίθμητος countless
ἀποδείκνυμι (ὁ) show, point out;
 appoint; (mid) declare
ἄτε as if; since
δάω learn ~didactic
δῆθεν strong form of δή
ἐκδέχομαι receive; succeed to a
 position
Ἑλλην Greek
ἐνθαῦτα there, here
ἐντρέπω heed ~trophy
ἐξεπίσταμαι know well
εὐπετής coming out well; (adv)
 fortunately
καταβάλλω throw down, cast off
 ~ballistic
καταλαμβάνω seize, understand, catch,

overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy
κατεργάζομαι achieve; cultivate; get;
 kill
μεταστρέφω turn around, change
 one's mind ~atrophy
νώτον back of the body; rear of an
 army; top of a box
πάταγος chatter, cracking, splash
περιέπω treat, handle
Πέρσης Persian
στρατιά army ~strategy
συμβολή encounter; contribution
συμμίγνυμι mix with ~mix
τραχύς (ἄ) rough ~trachea
ὑπέξειμι withdraw; go out
ὑποστρέφω turn around, go back
 ~atrophy
χώρος place ~heir

ὀλίγοι δὲ ἄνδρες. ἐγίνετο δὲ ἡ συμβολὴ δι' ἡμέρης.

7.211

ἐπεῖτε δὲ οἱ Μῆδοι τρηχέως περιείποντο, ἐνθαῦτα οὗτοι μὲν ὑπεξήισαν, οἱ δὲ Πέρσαι ἐκδεξάμενοι ἐπήισαν, τοὺς ἀθανάτους ἐκάλεε βασιλεύς, τῶν ἡρχε Ὑδάρνης, ὥς δὴ οὗτοί γε εὐπετέως κατεργασόμενοι. ὥς δὲ καὶ οὗτοι συνέμισγον τοῖσι Ἑλλησι, οὐδὲν πλέον ἐφέροντο τῆς στρατιῆς τῆς Μηδικῆς ἀλλὰ τὰ αὐτά, ἅτε ἐν στεينوπόρῳ τε χώρῳ μαχόμενοι καὶ δόρασι βραχυτέροισι χρεώμενοι ἢ περ οἱ Ἑλληνες, καὶ οὐκ ἔχοντες πλήθει χρήσασθαι. Λακεδαιμόνιοι δὲ ἐμάχοντο ἀξίως λόγου, ἄλλα τε ἀποδεικνύμενοι ἐν οὐκ ἐπισταμένοισι μάχεσθαι ἐξεπιστάμενοι, καὶ ὅκως ἐντρέψειαν τὰ νῶτα, ἀλέες φεύγεσκον δῆθεν, οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ὀρώντες φεύγοντας βοῇ τε καὶ πατάγῳ ἐπήισαν, οἱ δ' ἂν καταλαμβανόμενοι ὑπέστρεφον ἀντίοι εἶναι τοῖσι βαρβάροις, μεταστρεφόμενοι δὲ κατέβαλλον πλήθει ἀναριθμήτους τῶν Περσέων· ἐπιπτον δὲ καὶ

ὀλίγοι δὲ ἄνδρες. ἐγίνετο δὲ ἡ |encounter; | ἡμέρης.
|contribution

7.211

ἐπεῖτε δὲ οἱ Μῆδοι τρηχέως περιείποντο, |there, here ὕτοι
μὲν ὑπεξήσαν, οἱ δὲ Πέρσαι |receive; succeed |πήσαν,
|to a position
τοὺς ἀθανάτους ἐκάλεε βασιλεύς, τῶν ἦρχε Ὑδάρνης,
ὥς δὴ οὗτοί γε |coming out|achieve; cultivate; ὥς δὲ
|well; (adv)|get; kill
καὶ οὗτοι |mix with |τοῖσι |Greek, οὐδὲν πλέον
|fortunately
ἐφέροντο τῆς στρατιῆς τῆς Μηδικῆς ἀλλὰ τὰ αὐτά,
|as if; since |τεινοπόρῳ τε |place |μαχόμενοι καὶ δόρασι
|brauche
βραχυτέροισι χρεώμενοι ἢ περ οἱ |Greek, καὶ
οὐκ ἔχοντες πλήθει χρήσασθαι. Λακεδαιμόνιοι δὲ
ἐμάχοντο ἀξίως λόγου, ἀλλὰ τε |show, point out; ap- |
|point; (mid) declare
οὐκ ἐπισταμένοισι μάχεσθαι ἐξεπιστάμενοι, καὶ ὅκως
|heed τὰ |back |crowded; |
|all together
|barbarians
|barbarians ὁρῶντες φεύγοντας βοῇ τε καὶ |chatter, crack-
|ing, splash
ἐπήσαν, οἱ δ' ἂν |seize, understand, catch, |go back ἀντίοι
|overtake; (mp) happen
εἶναι τοῖσι βαρβάροισι, |turn around, change δὲ |throw down, cast off
|one's mind
πλήθει |countless τῶν Περσέων· ἐπιπτον δὲ καὶ

are many but men are few. This combat went on throughout the day:

7.211

And when the Medes were being roughly handled, then these retired from the battle, and the Persians, those namely whom the king called “Immortals,” of whom Hydarnes was commander, took their place and came to the attack, supposing that they at least would easily overcome the enemy. When however these also engaged in combat with the Hellenes, they gained no more success than the Median troops but the same as they, seeing that they were fighting in a place with a narrow passage, using shorter spears than the Hellenes, and not being able to take advantage of their superior numbers. The Lacedemonians meanwhile were fighting in a memorable fashion, and besides other things of which they made display, being men perfectly skilled in fighting opposed to men who were unskilled, they would turn their backs to the enemy and make a pretence of taking to flight; and the Barbarians, seeing them thus taking a flight, would follow after them with shouting and clashing of arms: then the Lacedemonians, when they were being caught up, turned and faced the Barbarians; and thus turning round they would slay innumerable multitudes of the Persians; and there fell

vocabulary

ἀγωνίζομαι contend, exert oneself
ἀθλέω toil ~athlete
ἄλλοῖος of another kind ~alien
ἀνατρέχω run/extend up/away
ἀνταίρω raise against
ἀνταίρω raise against
ἀπελαύνω expel, exclude, ward off;
 (intrans) ride away
ἅτε as if; since
ἀτραπός ἀταρπιτοῦ (f) trail
Ἑλλήν Greek
ἐνθαῦτα there, here
ἐνοράω look at, notice something in
ἔσοδος entrance
θέεομαι look at, behold, consider

~theater

κατατροματίζω wound, cripple
κοσμέω marshal, array ~cosmos
παντοῖος all kinds of
Πέρσης Persian
προσβάλλω hit, attack, approach;
 attach, offer ~ballistic
πρόσοδος (f) approach, procession; a
 rent
προτεραίος previous to
στρατιά army ~strategy
συμβάλλω pit against; compare; mp:
 meet, fall in with ~ballistic
τρίς 3 times
ὕστεραίος the next; later

αὐτῶν τῶν Σπαρτιητέων ἐνθαῦτα ὀλίγοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδὲν
ἐδυνέατο παραλαβεῖν οἱ Πέρσαι τῆς ἐσόδου πειρώμενοι
καὶ κατὰ τέλεα καὶ παντοίως προσβάλλοντες, ἀπήλαννον
ὀπίσω.

7.212

ἐν ταύτησι τῇσι προσόδοισι τῆς μάχης λέγεται βασιλέα
θηεύμενον τρὶς ἀναδραμεῖν ἐκ τοῦ θρόνου δείσαντα περὶ
τῇ στρατιῇ. τότε μὲν οὕτω ἡγωνίσαντο, τῇ δ' ὑστεραίῃ
οἱ βάρβαροι οὐδὲν ἄμεινον ἀέθλεον. ἅτε γὰρ ὀλίγων
ἐόντων, ἐλπίσαντες σφέας κατατετρωματίσθαι τε καὶ οὐκ
οἴους τε ἔσεσθαι ἔτι χεῖρας ἀνταείρασθαι συνέβαλλον. οἱ
δὲ Ἕλληνες κατὰ τάξιν τε καὶ κατὰ ἔθνεα κεκοσμημένοι
ἦσαν, καὶ ἐν μέρει ἕκαστοι ἐμάχοντο, πλὴν Φωκέων· οὗτοι
δὲ ἐς τὸ ὄρος ἐτάχθησαν φυλάξοντες τὴν ἀτραπὸν. ὥς
δὲ οὐδὲν εὗρισκον ἀλλοιότερον οἱ Πέρσαι ἢ τῇ προτεραίῃ
ἐνῶρων, ἀπήλαννον.

αὐτῶν τῶν Σπαρτιητέων |there, here ᾿λίγοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδὲν
 ἐδυνάετο παραλαβεῖν οἱ Πέρσαι τῆς |entrance πειρώμενοι
 καὶ κατὰ τέλεα καὶ |all kinds of |hit, attack, ap-|expel, exclude, ward off;
 |proach; attach|(intrans) ride away
 ὀπίσω.

7.212

ἐν ταύτῃσι τῇσι |approach, pro- ᾱς μάχης λέγεται βασιλέα
 |cession; a rent
 |look at,3 |run/extend up/away ᾱ θρόνου δείσαντα περὶ
 |behold, |times
 |consider
 τῇ στρατιῇ. τότε μὲν οὕτω |contend, exert, τῇ δ' |the next; later
 |oneself
 οἱ βάρβαροι οὐδὲν ἄμεινον |toil . |as if; since ᾱλίγων
 ἑόντων, ἐλπίσαντες σφέας |wound, cripple τε καὶ οὐκ
 οἷους τε ἔσεσθαι ἔτι χεῖρας ἀνταίρασθαι |pit against; compare; mp:
 |meet, fall in with
 δὲ |Greek κατὰ τάξεις τε καὶ κατὰ ἔθνεα |marshal, array
 ᾱσαν, καὶ ἐν μέρει ἕκαστοι ἐμάχοντο, πλὴν Φωκέων· οὗτοι
 δὲ ἐς τὸ ὄρος ἐτάχθησαν φυλάζοντες τὴν |trail ᾱς
 δὲ οὐδὲν εὗρισκον |of another kind ᾱ Πέρσαι ἢ τῇ |previous to
 ἐνώρων, |expel, exclude, ward off;
 |(intrans) ride away

also at these times a few of the Spartans themselves. So, as the Persians were not able to obtain any success by making trial of the entrance and attacking it by divisions and every way, they retired back.

7.212

And during these onsets it is said that the king, looking on, three times leapt up from his seat, struck with fear for his army. Thus they contended then: and on the following day the Barbarians strove with no better success; for because the men opposed to them were few in number, they engaged in battle with the expectation that they would be found to be disabled and would not be capable any longer of raising their hands against them in fight. The Hellenes however were ordered by companies as well as by nations, and they fought successively each in turn, excepting the Phokians, for these were posted upon the mountain to guard the path. So the Persians, finding nothing different from that which they had seen on the former day, retired back from the fight.

*vocabulary***ἀπορέω** be confused, distressed**ἀργύριον** small coin**ἀτραπός** ἀταρπιτοῦ (f) trail**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἐπιάλτης** nightmare**κατέρχομαι** come down, out from**ὀπισθεν** behind, hereafter**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark

~semaphore

συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion**ὑπομένω** stay behind, await ~remain

7.213

ἀπορέοντος δὲ βασιλέος ὃ τι χρήσεται τῷ παρόντι πρήγματι, Ἐπιάτης ὁ Εὐρυδήμου ἀνὴρ Μηλιεὺς ἦλθέ οἱ ἐς λόγους· ὃς μέγα τι παρὰ βασιλέος δοκέων οἴσεσθαι ἔφρασέ τε τὴν ἀτραπὸν τὴν διὰ τοῦ ὄρεος φέρουσιν ἐς Θερμοπύλας, καὶ διέφθειρε τοὺς ταύτῃ ὑπομείναντας Ἑλλήνων. ὕστερον δὲ δείσας Λακεδαιμονίους ἔφυγε ἐς Θεσσαλίην, καὶ οἱ φυγόντι ὑπὸ τῶν Πυλαγόρων τῶν Ἀμφικτυόνων ἐς τὴν Πυλαίην συλλεγομένων ἀργύριον ἐπεκηρύχθη. χρόνῳ δὲ ὕστερον, κατήλθε γὰρ ἐς Ἀντικύρην, ἀπέθανε ὑπὸ Ἀθηνάδεω ἀνδρὸς Τρηχινίου. ὁ δὲ Ἀθηνάδης οὗτος ἀπέκτεινε μὲν Ἐπιάτεια δι' ἄλλην αἰτίην, τὴν ἐγὼ ἐν τοῖσι ὀπισθε λόγοισι σημανέω, ἐτιμήθη μέντοι ὑπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων οὐδὲν ἥσσον.

7.214

Ἐπιάτης μὲν οὕτω ὕστερον τούτων ἀπέθανε, ἔστι δὲ ἕτερος λεγόμενος λόγος, ὡς Ὀνήτης τε ὁ Φαναγόρεω ἀνὴρ

7.213

|be confused, δὲ βασιλέος ὃ τι χρήσεται τῷ παρεόντι
 |distressed
 πρήγματι, |nightmare ὁ Εὐρυδήμου ἀνὴρ Μηλιεύς ἡλθέ οἱ
 ἐς λόγους· ὃς μέγα τι παρὰ βασιλέος δοκέων οἴσασθαι
 ἔφρασε τε τὴν |trail τὴν διὰ τοῦ ὄρεος φέρουσαν
 ἐς Θερμοπύλας, καὶ διέφθειρε τοὺς ταύτη |stay behind, await
 |Greek . ὕστερον δὲ δείσας Λακεδαιμονίους ἔφυγε ἐς
 Θεσσαλίην, καὶ οἱ φυγόντι ὑπὸ τῶν Πυλαγόρων τῶν
 Ἀμφικτυόνων ἐς τὴν Πυλαίην |collect, assemble |small coin
 ἐπεκηρύχθη. χρόνῳ δὲ ὕστερον, |come down, οὐτ' ἀπὸ
 Ἀντικύρην, ἀπέθανε ὑπὸ Ἀθηνάδεω ἀνδρὸς Τρηχινίου. ὁ
 δὲ Ἀθηνάδης οὗτος ἀπέκτεινε μὲν |nightmare δι' ἄλλην
 αἰτίην, τὴν ἐγὼ ἐν τοῖσι ὀπίσθε λόγοισι |give orders to; μήθη
 |show; mark
 μέντοι ὑπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων οὐδὲν ᾔσπον.

7.214

|nightmare μὲν οὕτω ὕστερον τούτων ἀπέθανε, ἔστι δὲ
 ἕτερος λεγόμενος λόγος, ὡς Ὀνήτης τε ὁ Φαναγόρεω ἀνὴρ

7.213

Then when the king was in a strait as to what he should do in the matter before him, Epialtes the son of Eurydemos, a Malian, came to speech with him, supposing that he would win a very great reward from the king; and this man told him of the path which leads over the mountain to Thermopylai, and brought about the destruction of those Hellenes who remained in that place. Afterwards from fear of the Lacedemonians he fled to Thessaly, and when he had fled, a price was proclaimed for his life by the Deputies, when the Amphictyons met for their assembly at Pylai. Then some time afterwards having returned to Antikyra he was slain by Athenades a man of Trachis. Now this Athenades killed Epialtes for another cause, which I shall set forth in the following part of the history, but he was honoured for it none the less by the Lacedemonians.

7.214

Thus Epialtes after these events was slain: there is however another tale told, that Onetes the son of Phanagoras, a man of Carystos,

vocabulary

ἀργύριον small coin
ἀρέσκω please, satisfy; make amends
ἀτραπός ἀταρπιτοῦ (f) trail
ἀτρεκής precise, certain
Ἑλλήν Greek
ἐξευρίσκω find; discover ~eureka
ἐπιάλτης nightmare
ἐπιχώριος native
ἐρέσσω to row ~row
καθηγέομαι lead
κατεργάζομαι achieve; cultivate; get;

kill

λύχνος lamp
ὁμιλέω (ι) associate with ~homily
οὐδαμὸς not anyone
πάντως by all means
περιχαρής very glad
Πέρσης Persian
σταθμόομαι judge, conclude
στρατηγέω be a general
ὕπexω promise; hold out one's hand;
 submit to

Καρύστιος καὶ Κορυδαλλὸς Ἀντικυρεὺς εἰσὶ οἱ εἵπαντες πρὸς βασιλέα τούτους τοὺς λόγους καὶ περιηγησάμενοι τὸ ὄρος τοῖσι Πέρσησι, οὐδαμῶς ἔμοιγε πιστός. τοῦτο μὲν γὰρ τῷδε χρὴ σταθμώσασθαι, ὅτι οἱ τῶν Ἑλλήνων Πυλαγόροι ἐπεκήρυξαν οὐκ ἐπὶ Ὀνήτῃ τε καὶ Κορυδαλλῷ ἀργύριον ἀλλ' ἐπὶ Ἐπιάλτῃ τῷ Τρηχινίῳ, πάντως κου τὸ ἀτρεκέστατον πυθόμενοι· τοῦτο δὲ φεύγοντα Ἐπιάλτην ταύτην τὴν αἰτίην οἶδαμεν. εἰδείη μὲν γὰρ ἂν καὶ ἐὼν μὴ Μηλιεὺς ταύτην τὴν ἀτραπὸν Ὀνήτης, εἰ τῇ χώρῃ πολλὰ ὠμιληκῶς εἶη· ἀλλ' Ἐπιάλτης γὰρ ἐστὶ ὁ περιηγησάμενος τὸ ὄρος κατὰ τὴν ἀτραπὸν, τοῦτον αἷτιον γράφω.

7.215

Ξέρξης δέ, ἐπεὶ ἤρεσε τὰ ὑπέσχετο ὁ Ἐπιάλτης κατεργάσασθαι, αὐτίκα περιχαρὴς γενόμενος ἔπεμπε Ὑδάρνεα καὶ τῶν ἐστρατήγεε Ὑδάρνης· ὁρμέατο δὲ περὶ λύχνων ἀφ' ἑκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου. τὴν δὲ ἀτραπὸν ταύτην ἐξεύρον μὲν οἱ ἐπιχώριοι Μηλιεῖς, ἐξευρόντες δὲ Θεσσαλοῖσι κατηγήσαντο ἐπὶ Φωκέας, τότε ὅτε οἱ

Καρύστιος καὶ Κορυδαλλὸς Ἀντικυρεὺς εἰσὶ οἱ εἵπαντες
 πρὸς βασιλέα τούτους τοὺς λόγους καὶ περιηγησάμενοι
 τὸ ὄρος τοῖσι Πέρσησι, |not anyone ἔμοιγε πιστός. τοῦτο
 μὲν γὰρ τῷδε χρὴ |judge, conclude , ὅτι οἱ τῶν |Greek
 Πυλαγόροι ἐπεκήρυξαν οὐκ ἐπὶ Ὀνήτη τε καὶ Κορυδαλλῷ
 |small coin ἀλλ' ἐπὶ |nightmare τῷ Τρηχινίῳ, |by all means - τὸ
 |precise, certain πυθόμενοι· τοῦτο δὲ φεύγοντα |nightmare
 ταύτην τὴν αἰτίην οἶδαμεν. εἰδείη μὲν γὰρ ἂν καὶ ἐὼν μὴ
 Μηλιεὺς ταύτην τὴν |trail Ὀνήτης, εἰ τῇ χώρῃ πολλὰ
 |associate with ἔλ' ἀλλ' |nightmare γὰρ ἐστὶ ὁ περιηγησάμενος
 τὸ ὄρος κατὰ τὴν |trail , τοῦτον αἴτιον γράφω.

7.215

Ξέρξης δέ, ἐπεὶ ἤρεσε τὰ |promise ὁ |nightmare
 |achieve; cultivate; αὐτίκα |very glad γενόμενος ἔπεμπε
 |get; kill Ὑδάρνεα καὶ τῶν |be a general Ὑδάρνης· ὀρμέατο δὲ περὶ
 |lamp ἀφὰς ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου. τὴν δὲ |trail
 ταύτην |find; μὲν οἱ |native Μηλιέες, |find; δὲ
 |discover |discover
 Θεσσαλοῖσι κατηγήσαντο ἐπὶ Φωκέας, τότε ὅτε οἱ

and Corydallos of Antikyra were those who showed the Persians the way round the mountain; but this I can by no means accept: for first we must judge by this fact, namely that the Deputies of the Hellenes did not proclaim a price for the lives of Onetes and Corydallos, but for that of Epialtes the Trachinian, having surely obtained the most exact information of the matter; and secondly we know that Epialtes was an exile from his country to avoid this charge. True it is indeed that Onetes might know of this path, even though he were not a Malian, if he had had much intercourse with the country; but Epialtes it was who led them round the mountain by the path, and him therefore I write down as the guilty man.

7.215

Xerxes accordingly, being pleased by that which Epialtes engaged to accomplish, at once with great joy proceeded to send Hydarnes and the men of whom Hydarnes was commander; and they set forth from the camp about the time when the lamps are lit. This path of which we speak had been discovered by the Malians who dwell in that land, and having discovered it they led the Thessalians by it against the Phokians, at the time when the Phokians

vocabulary

ἀκρωτήριο cape, extremity
ἀνοπαῖα upward? unseen?
ἀριστερός left-hand
ἀτραπός ἀταρπιτοῦ (f) trail
διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis
διαφαίνω seem, show through
 ~photon
ἔδρα (ᾱ) seat, seated group
 ~polyhedron
εἰσβολή -ωβόλης invasion, an entrance
 ~ballistic
καταδείκνυμι (ῑ) discover, make

known

λήγω cease, (+gen+ppl) cause to cease
 ~lax
Πέρσης Persian
ῥάχις -τος (f) spine, lower back
ῥέω flow ~rheostat
σκέπας -ως (n) shelter
σκέπη shelter, protection
σκέπω cover, seal
τείνω stretch, tend ~tense
φράσσω fence in, protect
χρηστός useful; brave, worthy

Φωκέες φράξαντες τείχεϊ τὴν ἐσβολὴν ἦσαν ἐν σκέπῃ τοῦ πολέμου· ἔκ τε τόσου δὴ κατεδέδεκτο ἐοῦσα οὐδὲν χρηστὴ Μηλιεῦσι.

7.216

ἔχει δὲ ὧδε ἡ ἀτραπὸς αὕτη· ἄρχεται μὲν ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἀσωποῦ ποταμοῦ τοῦ διὰ τῆς διασφάγος ῥέοντος, οὖνομα δὲ τῷ ὄρει τούτῳ καὶ τῇ ἀτραπῷ τῶντὸ κείμεναι, Ἀνόπαια· τείνει δὲ ἡ Ἀνόπαια αὕτη κατὰ ῥάχιν τοῦ ὄρους, λήγει δὲ κατὰ τε Ἀλπηνὸν πόλιν, πρώτην ἐοῦσαν τῶν Λοκρίδων πρὸς τῶν Μηλιέων, καὶ κατὰ Μελαμπύγου τε καλεόμενον λίθον καὶ κατὰ Κερκώπων ἔδρας, τῇ καὶ τὸ στενωτάτον ἐστί.

7.217

κατὰ ταύτην δὴ τὴν ἀτραπὸν καὶ οὕτω ἔχουσιν οἱ Πέρσαι, τὸν Ἀσωπὸν διαβάντες, ἐπορεύοντο πᾶσαν τὴν νύκτα, ἐν δεξιῇ μὲν ἔχοντες ὄρεα τὰ Οἰταίων, ἐν ἀριστερῇ δὲ τὰ Τρηχινίων. ἡὼς τε δὴ διέφαινε καὶ οἱ ἐγένοντο ἐπ' ἀκρωτηρίῳ τοῦ ὄρους. κατὰ δὲ τοῦτο

Φωκέες |fence in, protect ἥϊ τήν |invasion, ἀνίσταν ἐν σκέπη τοῦ
 |entrance
 πολέμου· ἔκ τε τόσου δὴ |discover, make known ὃδὲν |useful; brave,
 |worthy
 Μηλιεῦσι.

7.216

ἔχει δὲ ὧδε ἡ |trail αὕτη· ἄρχεται μὲν ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἀσωποῦ
 ποταμοῦ τοῦ διὰ τῆς διασφάγος |flow , οὖνομα δὲ τῷ
 ὄρει τούτῳ καὶ τῇ |trail τὸντο κείται, |upward? |stretch, tend
 |unseen?
 δὲ ἡ |upward? unseen? αὐτὰ |spine, τοῦ ὄρους, |cease δὲ κατὰ τε
 |lower
 Ἀλπηνὸν πόλιν, πρώτην εἰσὶν τῶν Λοκρίδων πρὸς τῶν
 |back
 Μηλιέων, καὶ κατὰ Μελαμπύγου τε καλεόμενον λίθον καὶ
 κατὰ Κερκώπων |seat , τῇ καὶ τὸ στεινότατον ἐστί.

7.217

κατὰ ταύτην δὴ τὴν |trail καὶ οὕτω ἔχουσιν οἱ Πέρσαι,
 τὸν Ἀσωπὸν |pass over, cross. ὁρεύοντο πᾶσαν τὴν νύκτα,
 ἐν δεξιῇ μὲν ἔχοντες ὄρεα τὰ Οἰταίων, ἐν |left-hand δὲ
 τὰ Τρηχινίων. ἡὼς τε δὴ |seem, show through, ἐνοντο ἐπ'
 |cape, extremity. οὗ ὄρους. κατὰ δὲ τοῦτο

had fenced the pass with a wall and thus were sheltered from the attacks upon them: so long ago as this had the pass been proved by the Malians to be of no value. And this path lies as follows:—it begins from the river Asopos, which flows through the cleft, and the name of this mountain and of the path is the same, namely Anopaia; and this Anopaia stretches over the ridge of the mountain and ends by the town of Alpenos, which is the first town of the Locrians towards Malis, and by the stone called Black Buttocks and the seats of the Kercopes, where is the very narrowest part.

7.217

By this path thus situated the Persians after crossing over the Asopos proceeded all through the night, having on their right hand the mountains of the Oitaians and on the left those of the Trachinians: and when dawn appeared, they had reached the summit of the

vocabulary

ἀντίξοος opposed to
ἀτραπός ἀταρπιτοῦ (f) trail
ἀτρεκής precise, certain
διατάσσω arrange, array
δρῦς -ός (f) tree, oak, lumber ~druid
ἐθελοντής -οῦ (m, 1) a volunteer
εἰσβολή -ωβόλης invasion, an entrance
 ~ballistic
ἐνδύνω (ῥ) go into, put on
ἐνδύω go into, put on
ἐνθαῦτα there, here
ἐπιάλτης nightmare
ἐπίπλεος very full
ἐπιπλέω sail on, over ~float
θῶμα a wonder, feeling of surprise
 ~theater
καταρρωδέω fear, dread

νηνέμιος still, windless ~anemometer
ὀποδαπός of what country
Πέρσης Persian
στρατός common people/soldiers
 ~strategy
στρατόω be on a campaign ~strategy
σφέτερος their
τρέχω run, spin
ὑποδείκνυμι (υῦ) show, trace out
ὑποδέχομαι welcome, accept, suffer
 ~doctrine
ὑποχέω spread under; (mp+dat) fill
 someone
φρουρέω keep watch
φύλλον leaf
χίλιοι (ιι) thousand ~kilo-
ψόφος noise

τοῦ ὄρεος ἐφύλασσον, ὥς καὶ πρότερόν μοι εἴρηται, Φωκέων χίλιοι ὀπλῖται, ῥυόμενοί τε τὴν σφετέρην χώραν καὶ φρουρέοντες τὴν ἀτραπὸν. ἡ μὲν γὰρ κάτω ἐσβολὴ ἐφυλάσσετο ὑπὸ τῶν εἴρηται· τὴν δὲ διὰ τοῦ ὄρεος ἀτραπὸν ἐθελονταὶ Φωκέες ὑποδεξάμενοι Λεωνίδῃ ἐφύλασσον.

7.218

ἔμαθον δὲ σφέας οἱ Φωκέες ὧδε ἀναβεβηκότας· ἀναβαίνοντες γὰρ ἐλάνθανον οἱ Πέρσαι τὸ ὄρος πᾶν ἐὼν δρυῶν ἐπίπλεον. ἦν μὲν δὴ νηνεμῖη, ψόφου δὲ γινομένου πολλοῦ, ὥς οἶκός ἦν φύλλων ὑποκεχυμένων ὑπὸ τοῖσι ποσί, ἀνά τε ἔδραμον οἱ Φωκέες καὶ ἐνέδυνον τὰ ὄπλα, καὶ αὐτίκα οἱ βάρβαροι παρήσαν. ὥς δὲ εἶδον ἄνδρας ἐνδυσμένους ὄπλα, ἐν θώματι ἐγένοντο· ἐλπόμενοι γὰρ οὐδένα σφι φανήσεσθαι ἀντίξοον ἐνεκύρησαν στρατῶ. ἐνθαῦτα Ὑδάρνης καταρρωδήσας μὴ οἱ Φωκέες ἔωσι Λακεδαιμόνιοι, εἴρετο Ἐπιάλτην ὁποδαπὸς εἴη ὁ στρατός, πυθόμενος δὲ ἀτρεκέως διέτασσε τοὺς

τοῦ ὄρεος ἐφύλασσον, ὥς καὶ πρότερόν μοι εἴρηται,
 Φωκέων χίλιοι ὀπλῖται, ῥυόμενοί τε τὴν |their χώραν
 καὶ |keep watch τὴν |trail . ἡ μὲν γὰρ κάτω
 |invasion, an' entrance ὑλάσσετο ὑπὸ τῶν εἴρηται· τὴν δὲ διὰ τοῦ
 ὄρεος |trail |a volunteer Φωκέες ὑποδεξάμενοι Λεωνίδῃ
 ἐφύλασσον.

7.218

ἔμαθον δὲ σφέας οἱ Φωκέες ὧδε ἀναβεβηκότας·
 ἀναβαίνοντες γὰρ ἐλάνθανον οἱ Πέρσαι τὸ ὄρος πᾶν
 ἐὸν |tree, oak, lumber γ. ἦν μὲν δὲ |still, |noise δὲ
 |windless
 γινομένου πολλοῦ, ὥς οἰκὸς ἦν |leaf |spread under; (mp+dat) fill
 |someone
 ὑπὸ τοῖσι ποσί, ἀνά τε |run, spin οἱ Φωκέες καὶ |go into, put on
 τὰ ὄπλα, καὶ αὐτίκα οἱ βάρβαροι παρήσαν. ὥς δὲ εἶδον
 ἄνδρας |go into, put on ὦπλα, ἐν |wonder, ἐγένοντο· ἐλπόμενοι
 |surprise
 γὰρ οὐδένα σφι φανήσεσθαι |opposed to ἐκέρησαν στρατῶ.
 |there, here Ὑδάρινης |fear, dread μὴ οἱ Φωκέες ἔωσι
 Λακεδαιμόνιοι, εἴρετο |nightmare |of what country ἡ |army
 πυθόμενος δὲ |precise, |arrange, τοὺς
 |certain |array

mountain. In this part of the mountain there were, as I have before shown, a thousand hoplites of the Phokians keeping guard, to protect their own country and to keep the path: for while the pass below was guarded by those whom I have mentioned, the path over the mountain was guarded by the Phokians, who had undertaken the business for Leonidas by their own offer.

7.218

While the Persians were ascending they were concealed from these, since all the mountain was covered with oak-trees; and the Phokians became aware of them after they had made the ascent as follows:—the day was calm, and not a little noise was made by the Persians, as was likely when leaves were lying spread upon the ground under their feet; upon which the Phokians started up and began to put on their arms, and by this time the Barbarians were close upon them. These, when they saw men arming themselves, fell into wonder, for they were expecting that no one would appear to oppose them, and instead of that they had met with an armed force. Then Hydarnes, seized with fear lest the Phokians should be Lacedemonians, asked Epialtes of what people the force was; and being

*vocabulary***ἄκρον** crest, extremity ~acute**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme ~acute**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be freed, depart**αὐτόμολος** deserting, defecting**διακρίνω** (ι) separate, sort ~critic**διασκεδάννυμι** (ι) scatter, disperse**διαφαίνω** seem, show through

~photon

εἰσείδω look at, behold ~wit**εἰσοράω** look at, see; treat with respect

~panorama

ἐκλείπω leave out, pass over

Ἑλλην Greek

ἐνθαῦτα there, here**ἐξαγγέλλω** bring news out ~angel**ἐπιάλτης** nightmare**ήμεροσκόπος** watching by day**κατατρέχω** overrun; trash talk**κόρυμβος** stern mast**μάντις** -ος (m) seer ~mantis**περίοδος** picket, circuit**Πέρσης** Persian**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark

~semaphore

σχίζω split ~schism**τάχος** -ους (n, 3) speed ~tachometer**τόξευμα** -τος (n, 3) arrow

Πέρσας ὥς ἐς μάχην. οἱ δὲ Φωκέες ὥς ἐβάλλοντο τοῖσι τοξεύμασι πολλοῖσί τε καὶ πυκνοῖσι, οἷχοντο φεύγοντες ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρεος τὸν κόρυμβον, ἐπιστάμενοι ὥς ἐπὶ σφέας ὀρμήθησαν ἀρχήν, καὶ παρεσκευάδατο ὥς ἀπολεόμενοι. οὗτοι μὲν δὴ ταῦτα ἐφρόνεον, οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Ἐπιάλτην καὶ Ὑδάρνεα Πέρσαι Φωκέων μὲν οὐδένα λόγον ἐποιεῦντο, οἱ δὲ κατέβαινον τὸ ὄρος κατὰ τάχος.

7.219

τοῖσι δὲ ἐν Θερμοπύλῃσι Ἑλλήνων πρῶτον μὲν ὁ μάντις Μεγιστίης ἐσιδὼν ἐς τὰ ἱρὰ ἔφρασε τὸν μέλλοντα ἔσεσθαι ἅμα ἡοὶ σφί θάνατον, ἐπὶ δὲ καὶ αὐτόμολοι ἦσαν οἱ ἐξαγγέλαντες τῶν Περσέων τὴν περίοδον. οὗτοι μὲν ἔτι νυκτὸς ἐσήμηναν, τρίτοι δὲ οἱ ἡμεροσκόποι καταδραμόντες ἀπὸ τῶν ἄκρων ἤδη διαφαινούσης ἡμέρης. ἐνθαῦτα ἐβουλεύοντο οἱ Ἕλληνες, καὶ σφῶν ἐσχίζοντο αἱ γνώμαι· οἱ μὲν γὰρ οὐκ ἔων τὴν τάξιν ἐκλιπεῖν, οἱ δὲ ἀντέτεινον. μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο διακριθέντες οἱ μὲν ἀπαλλάσσοντο καὶ διασκεδασθέντες κατὰ πόλιν

Πέρσας ὡς ἐς μάχην. οἱ δὲ Φωκέες ὡς ἐβάλλοντο τοῖσι
 |arrow πολλοῖσι τε καὶ πυκνοῖσι, οἷχοντο φεύγοντες
 ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρεος τὸν |stern mast , ἐπιστάμενοι ὡς ἐπὶ σφέας
 ὁρμήθησαν ἀρχήν, καὶ παρεσκευάδατο ὡς ἀπολεόμενοι.
 οὔτοι μὲν δὴ ταῦτα ἐφρόνουν, οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ |nightmare καὶ
 ὕδάρνεα Πέρσαι Φωκέων μὲν οὐδένα λόγον ἐποιεύντο, οἱ
 δὲ κατέβαινον τὸ ὄρος κατὰ |speed .

7.219

τοῖσι δὲ ἐν Θερμοπύλῃσι |Greek πρῶτον μὲν ὁ |seer
 Μεγιστίης ἐσιδὼν ἐς τὰ ἱρὰ ἔφρασε τὸν μέλλοντα ἔσεσθαι
 ἅμα ἡοῖ σφι θάνατον, ἐπὶ δὲ καὶ |deserting, ἦσαν
 |defecting
 οἱ |bring news out τῶν Περσέων τὴν |picket, οὔτοι
 |circuit
 μὲν ἔτι νυκτὸς |give orders to; ρίτοι δὲ οἱ |watching by day
 |show; mark
 |overrun; trash talk ἀπὸ τῶν ἄκρων ἤδη |seem, show through
 ἡμέρης. |there, here βουλευόντο οἱ |Greek , καί σφεων
 |split αἱ γινώμαι· οἱ μὲν γὰρ οὐκ ἔων τὴν τάξιν
 |leave out, pass over ἔτεινον. μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο |separate, sort οἱ
 μὲν |free from, remove; αἱ διασκεδασθέντες κατὰ πόλιν
 |be freed, depart

accurately informed he set the Persians in order for battle. The Phokians however, when they were hit by the arrows of the enemy, which flew thickly, fled and got away at once to the topmost peak of the mountain, fully assured that it was against them that the enemy had designed to come, and here they were ready to meet death. These, I say, were in this mind; but the Persians meanwhile with Epialtes and Hydarnes made no account of the Phokians, but descended the mountain with all speed.

7.219

To the Hellenes who were in Thermopylai first the soothsayer Megistias, after looking into the victims which were sacrificed, declared the death which was to come to them at dawn of day; and afterwards deserters brought the report of the Persians having gone round. These signified it to them while it was yet night, and thirdly came the day-watchers, who had run down from the heights when day was already dawning. Then the Hellenes deliberated, and their opinions were divided; for some urged that they should not desert their post, while others opposed this counsel. After this they departed from their assembly, and some went away and dispersed each to

vocabulary

ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be freed, depart

ἀποπέμπω send away ~pomp

ἀπρόθυμος (ὁ) not eager

ἐκλείπω leave out, pass over

ἑξάμετρος hexameter

εὐδαιμονία prosperity

εὐπρεπής comely, decent; specious

κῆδω distress, hurt; mp: care about (+gen) ~heinous

κλέος κλοῦς (n, 3) fame ~Euclid

ἕκαστοι ἐτράποντο, οἳ δὲ αὐτῶν ἅμα Λεωνίδῃ μένουν
αὐτοῦ παρεσκευάδατο.

7.220

λέγεται δὲ καὶ ὥς αὐτός σφεας ἀπέπεμψε Λεωνίδης,
μὴ ἀπόλωνται κηδόμενος· αὐτῷ δὲ καὶ Σπαρτιητέων
τοῖσι παρεούσι οὐκ ἔχειν εὐπρεπέως ἐκλιπεῖν τὴν τάξιν
ἐς τὴν ἦλθον φυλάζοντες ἀρχήν. ταύτῃ καὶ μᾶλλον
τὴν γνώμην πλείστος εἰμί, Λεωνίδην, ἐπεῖτε ἦσθετο
τοὺς συμμάχους ἐόντας ἀπροθύμους καὶ οὐκ ἐθέλοντας
συνδιακινδυνεύειν, κελεῦσαι σφέας ἀπαλλάσσεσθαι, αὐτῷ
δὲ ἀπιέναι οὐ καλῶς ἔχειν· μένοντι δὲ αὐτοῦ κλέος μέγα
εἰλείπετο, καὶ ἡ Σπάρτης εὐδαιμονίῃ οὐκ ἐξηλείφετο.
ἐκέχρηστο γὰρ ὑπὸ τῆς Πυθίης τοῖσι Σπαρτιήτησι
χρεωμένοισι περὶ τοῦ πολέμου τούτου αὐτίκα κατ'
ἀρχὰς ἐγειρομένου, ἢ Λακεδαίμονα ἀνάστατον γενέσθαι
ὑπὸ τῶν βαρβάρων ἢ τὴν βασιλέα σφέων ἀπολέσθαι.
ταῦτα δὲ σφι ἐν ἔπεισι ἑξαμέτροισι χρᾶ λέγοντα ᾧδε.

ἕκαστοι ἐτράποντο, οἱ δὲ αὐτῶν ἅμα Λεωνίδῃ μένειν αὐτοῦ παρεσκευάδατο.

7.220

λέγεται δὲ καὶ ὥς αὐτός σφεας |send away Λεωνίδης,
 μὴ ἀπόλωνται |distress αὐτῷ δὲ καὶ Σπαρτιητέων
 τοῖσι παρεοῦσι οὐκ ἔχειν |comely, de-|leave out, pass over, ^ν
 |cent; specious
 ἐς τὴν ἡλθον φυλάζοντες ἀρχήν. ταύτῃ καὶ μᾶλλον
 τὴν γνώμην πλεῖστος εἰμί, Λεωνίδην, ἐπεῖτε ἦσθετο
 τοὺς συμμάχους ἔοντας |not eager καὶ οὐκ ἐθέλοντας
 συνδιακινδυνεύειν, κελεύσαι σφέας |free from, remove; αὐτῷ
 |be freed, depart
 δὲ ἀπιέναι οὐ καλῶς ἔχειν· μένοντι δὲ αὐτοῦ |fame μέγα
 ἐλείπετο, καὶ ἡ Σπάρτης εὐδαιμονίῃ οὐκ ἐξηλείφετο.
 ἐκέχρηστο γὰρ ὑπὸ τῆς Πυθίης τοῖσι Σπαρτιήτησι
 χρεωμένοισι περὶ τοῦ πολέμου τούτου αὐτίκα κατ'
 ἀρχὰς ἐγειρομένου, ἢ Λακεδαίμονα ἀνάστατον γενέσθαι
 ὑπὸ τῶν βαρβάρων ἢ τὴν βασιλέα σφέων ἀπολέσθαι.
 ταῦτα δέ σφι ἐν ἔπεσι |hexameter χρᾶ λέγοντα ᾧδε.

their several cities, while others of them were ready to remain there together with Leonidas.

7.220

However it is reported also that Leonidas himself sent them away, having a care that they might not perish, but thinking that it was not seemly for himself and for the Spartans who were present to leave the post to which they had come at first to keep guard there. I am inclined rather to be of this latter opinion, namely that because Leonidas perceived that the allies were out of heart and did not desire to face the danger with him to the end, he ordered them to depart, but held that for himself to go away was not honourable, whereas if he remained, a great fame of him would be left behind, and the prosperity of Sparta would not be blotted out: for an oracle had been given by the Pythian prophetess to the Spartans, when they consulted about this war at the time when it was being first set on foot, to the effect that either Lacedemon must be destroyed by the Barbarians, or their king must lose his life. This reply the prophetess gave them in hexameter

*vocabulary***ἀνέκαθεν** from the start**ἀντιβίην** face to face**ἀντίβιος** hostile**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp**γενέθλα** race, stock ~genus**δατέομαι** divide into portions ~demon**ἐκβαίνω** come forth, disembark ~basis**ἐλάχιστος** smallest, shortest, fewest**ἐπιλέγω** say re, say also; choose; (mid)
think over**ἐρικυδής** (ῶ) very famous**εὐρύχορος** with broad dancing places**κατατίθημι** put down, deposit, lay
aside ~thesis**κλέος** κλοῦς (n, 3) fame ~Euclid**μάντις** -ος (m) seer ~mantis**μαρτύριον** testimony, proof**οἰκήτωρ** inhabitant**πενθέω** grieve ~Nepenthe**πέρθω** sack, ravage, plunder**στρατιά** army ~strategy**ταῦρος** bull ~steer

ὑμῖν δ', ὦ Σπάρτης οἰκήτορες εὐρυχόροιο, ἥ μέγα ἄστυ
 ἐρικυδὲς ὑπ' ἀνδράσι Περσεΐδῃσι πέρθεται, ἥ τὸ μὲν οὐχί,
 ἀφ' Ἡρακλέους δὲ γενέθλης πενθήσει βασιλῇ φθίμενον
 Λακεδαίμονος οὔρος. οὐ γὰρ τὸν ταύρων σχήσει μένος
 οὐδὲ λεόντων ἀντιβίην· Ζηνὸς γὰρ ἔχει μένος· οὐδέ ἐ φημί
 σχήσεσθαι, πρὶν τῶνδ' ἕτερον διὰ πάντα δάσῃται.

Ταῦτά τε δὴ ἐπιλεγόμενον Λεωνίδην, καὶ βουλόμενον
 κλέος καταθέσθαι μούνων Σπαρτιητέων, ἀποπέμψαι τοὺς
 συμμάχους μᾶλλον ἢ γνώμῃ διενειχθέντας οὕτω ἀκόσμως
 οἴχεσθαι τοὺς οἰχομένους.

7.221

μαρτύριον δέ μοι καὶ τόδε οὐκ ἐλάχιστον τούτου πέρι
 γέγονε, ὅτι καὶ τὸν μάντιν ὃς εἶπετο τῇ στρατιῇ
 ταύτῃ, Μεγιστήν τὸν Ἀκαρνῆνα, λεγόμενον εἶναι τὰ
 ἀνέκαθεν ἀπὸ Μελάμποδος, τοῦτον εἶπαντα ἐκ τῶν
 ἱρῶν τὰ μέλλοντά σφι ἐκβαίνειν, φανερός ἐστι Λεωνίδης
 ἀποπέμπων, ἵνα μὴ συναπόληταί σφι. ὁ δὲ

ὑμῶν δ', ὦ Σπάρτης |inhabitant |with broad", μέγα ἄστν
 |very famous.' ἀνδράσι Περσεΐδῃσι |sack , ἥ τὸ μὲν οὐχί,
 ἀφ' Ἡρακλέους δὲ γενέθλης |grieve βασιλῇ φθίμενον
 Λακεδαιμόνος οὔρος. οὐ γὰρ τὸν |bull σχήσει μένος
 οὐδὲ λεόντων ἀντιβίην· Ζηνὸς γὰρ ἔχει μένος· οὐδέ ἐ φημί
 σχήσεται, πρὶν τῶνδ' ἕτερον διὰ πάντα |divide into portions
 Ταῦτά τε δὴ |say, choose, Λεωνίδην, καὶ βουλόμενον
 |think over
 |fame |put down μούνων Σπαρτιητέων, |send away τοὺς
 συμμάχους μᾶλλον ἢ γνώμη διενειχθέντας οὕτω ἀκόσμως
 οἴχεσθαι τοὺς οἰχομένους.

7.221

|testimony, δέ μοι καὶ τόδε οὐκ |smallest, short- ἴτου πέρι
 |proof |est, fewest
 γέγονε, ὅτι καὶ τὸν |seer ὃς εἶπετο τῇ στρατιῇ
 ταύτῃ, Μεγιστήν τὸν Ἀκαρνῆνα, λεγόμενον εἶναι τὰ
 ἀνέκαθεν ἀπὸ Μελάμποδος, τοῦτον εἶπαντα ἐκ τῶν
 ἱρῶν τὰ μέλλοντά σφι |come forth, φανερός ἐστι Λεωνίδης
 |send away , ἵνα μὴ συναπόληταί σφι. ὁ δὲ

verses, and it ran thus:

“But as for you, ye men who in wide-spaced Sparta inhabit, Either your glorious city is sacked by the children of Perses, Or, if it be not so, then a king of the stock Heracleian Dead shall be mourned for by all in the boundaries of broad Lacedemon. Him nor the might of bulls nor the raging of lions shall hinder; For he hath might as of Zeus; and I say he shall not be restrained, Till one of the other of these he have utterly torn and divided.” I am of opinion that Leonidas considering these things and desiring to lay up for himself glory above all the other Spartans, dismissed the allies, rather than that those who departed did so in such disorderly fashion, because they were divided in opinion.

7.221

Of this the following has been to my mind a proof as convincing as any other, namely that Leonidas is known to have endeavoured to dismiss the soothsayer also who accompanied this army, Megistias the Acarnanian, who was said to be descended from Melampus, that he might not perish with them after he had declared from the victims that which was about to come to pass for them. He however when he was bidden to go would not

*vocabulary***ἄέκων** unwilling**ἀνατέλλω** cause to grow ~apostle**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be freed, depart**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp**έκών** willingly, on purpose; giving in too easily**έπέχω** hold, cover; offer; assail**επιάλτης** nightmare**επιστέλλω** send to, order**κατάβασις** -εως (f) way down**καταμένω** stay; not change**μονογενής** unique, the only member**ὄμηρος** insurance, hostage**πρόσοδος** (f) approach, procession; a rent**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous**στρατηγέω** be a general**συναποθνήσκω** die along with**σύντομος** truncated, concise**συστρατεύω** join in an expedition

ἀποπεμπόμενος αὐτὸς μὲν οὐκ ἀπέλιπε, τὸν δὲ παῖδα
 συστρατευόμενον, ἔόντα οἱ μουνογενέα, ἀπέπεμψε.

7.222

οἱ μὲν νυν σύμμαχοι οἱ ἀποπεμπόμενοι οἴχοντό τε
 ἀπιόντες καὶ ἐπείθοντο Λεωνίδῃ, Θεσπίες δὲ καὶ Θηβαῖοι
 κατέμειναν μῶνοι παρὰ Λακεδαιμονίοισι. τούτων δὲ
 Θηβαῖοι μὲν ἀέκοντες ἔμενον καὶ οὐ βουλόμενοι· κατεῖχε
 γὰρ σφέας Λεωνίδης ἐν ὁμήρων λόγῳ ποιούμενος·
 Θεσπίες δὲ ἐκόντες μάλιστα, οἳ οὐκ ἔφασαν ἀπολιπόντες
 Λεωνίδην καὶ τοὺς μετ' αὐτοῦ ἀπαλλάξεσθαι, ἀλλὰ
 καταμείναντες συναπέθανον. ἐστρατήγεε δὲ αὐτῶν
 Δημόφιλος Διαδρόμεω.

7.223

Ξέρξης δὲ ἐπεὶ ἡλίου ἀνατείλαντος σπονδὰς ἐποιήσατο,
 ἐπισχὼν χρόνον ἐς ἀγορῆς κου μάλιστα πληθώρην
 πρόσοδον ἐποιέετο· καὶ γὰρ ἐπέσταλτο ἐξ Ἐπιάλτεω
 οὕτω· ἀπὸ γὰρ τοῦ ὄρεος ἢ κατάβασις συντομωτέρη τε

|send away αὐτὸς μὲν οὐκ ἀπέλιπε, τὸν δὲ παῖδα

|join in an expedition, ἔόντα οἱ |unique, the|send away .
|only member

7.222

οἱ μὲν νυν σύμμαχοι οἱ |send away οἷχοντό τε

ἀπιόντες καὶ ἐπείθοντο Λεωνίδῃ, Θεσπιέες δὲ καὶ Θηβαῖοι

|stay; not change ἦνοι παρὰ Λακεδαιμονίοισι. τούτων δὲ

Θηβαῖοι μὲν |unwilling ἔμενον καὶ οὐ βουλόμενοι· κατεῖχε

γὰρ σφέας Λεωνίδης ἐν |insurance, λόγῳ ποιεύμενος·
|hostage

Θεσπιέες δὲ |willingly μάλιστα, οἱ οὐκ ἔφασαν ἀπολιπόντες

Λεωνίδην καὶ τοὺς μετ' αὐτοῦ |free from, remove; ἀλλὰ
|be freed, depart

|stay; not change |die along with . |be a general δὲ αὐτῶν

Δημόφιλος Διαδρόμεω.

7.223

Ξέρξης δὲ ἐπεὶ ἡλίου |cause to grow |libation, ἐποιήσατο,
|treaty

|hold, cover; χρόνον ἐς ἀγορῆς κου μάλιστα πληθώρην
|offer; assail

|approach, pro- ριέετο· καὶ γὰρ |send to, order ᾧ |nightmare
|cession; a rent

οὕτω· ἀπὸ γὰρ τοῦ ὄρεος ἢ |way down |truncated, τε
|concise

himself depart, but sent away his son who was with him in the army, besides whom he had no other child.

7.222

The allies then who were dismissed departed and went away, obeying the word of Leonidas, and only the Thespians and the Thebans remained behind with the Lacedemonians. Of these the Thebans stayed against their will and not because they desired it, for Leonidas kept them, counting them as hostages; but the Thespians very willingly, for they said that they would not depart and leave Leonidas and those with him, but they stayed behind and died with them. The commander of these was Demophilos the son of Diadromes.

7.223

Xerxes meanwhile, having made libations at sunrise, stayed for some time, until about the hour when the market fills, and then made an advance upon them; for thus it had been enjoined by Epialtes, seeing that the descent of the

vocabulary

ἀνάβασις -τος (f) going up, mounting,
 going inland
ἄτε as if; since
ἀτέω act rashly
αὐχὴν -ένος (m, 3) neck
εἰσπίπτω fall into, rush in
Ἑλλήν Greek
ἐξοδος (f) leaving, way out
ἐπέξειμι attack, prosecute
ἐποτρύνω (ῶ) urge, stir, dispatch
ἔρυμα -τος (n, 3) protection ~serve
ζωός alive ~zoo
καταπατέω trample

μάστιξ -γος (f) whip
ὀπισθεν behind, hereafter
περίειμι be superior to; be left over;
 still exist
περίοδος picket, circuit
πρόσειμι approach, draw near; add
 ~ion
πρόσω forward, in the future; far
ῥαπίζω thrash, slap, beat
ῥώμη strength, might
στεῖνος -εος (n, 3) a narrows, pass
συμμίγνυμι mix with ~mix
ὑπέξειμι withdraw; go out
χώρος place ~heir

ἐστὶ καὶ βραχύτερος ὁ χώρος πολλὸν ἢ περ ἢ περίοδος
 τε καὶ ἀνάβασις. οἳ τε δὴ βάρβαροι οἱ ἀμφὶ Ξέρξην
 προσήσαν, καὶ οἱ ἀμφὶ Λεωνίδην Ἕλληνες, ὥς τὴν
 ἐπὶ θανάτῳ ἔξοδον ποιεύμενοι, ἤδη πολλῶ μᾶλλον ἢ
 κατ' ἀρχὰς ἐπεξήσαν ἐς τὸ εὐρύτερον τοῦ αὐχένος. τὸ
 μὲν γὰρ ἔρυμα τοῦ τείχεος ἐφυλάσσετο, οἱ δὲ ἀνὰ τὰς
 προτέρας ἡμέρας ὑπεξιόντες ἐς τὰ στεινόπορα ἐμάχοντο.
 τότε δὲ συμμίσγοντες ἔξω τῶν στεινῶν ἔπιπτον πλήθει
 πολλοὶ τῶν βαρβάρων· ὅπισθε γὰρ οἱ ἡγεμόνες τῶν
 τελέων ἔχοντες μᾶστιγας ἐρράπιζον πάντα ἄνδρα, αἰεὶ
 ἐς τὸ πρόσω ἐποτρύνοντες. πολλοὶ μὲν δὴ ἐσέπιπτον
 αὐτῶν ἐς τὴν θάλασσαν καὶ διεφθείροντο, πολλῶ δ' ἔτι
 πλεῦνες κατεπατέοντο ζωοὶ ὑπ' ἀλλήλων· ἦν δὲ λόγος
 οὐδεὶς τοῦ ἀπολλυμένου. ἅτε γὰρ ἐπιστάμενοι τὸν
 μέλλοντα σφίσι ἔσσεσθαι θάνατον ἐκ τῶν περιόντων τὸ
 ὄρος, ἀπεδείκνυντο ῥώμης ὅσον εἶχον μέγιστον ἐς τοὺς
 βαρβάρους, παραχρεώμενοί τε καὶ ἀτέοντες.

ἐστὶ καὶ βραχύτερος ὁ |place πολλὸν ἢ περ ἢ |picket,
 |circuit
 τε καὶ |going up, mount- γε δὴ βάρβαροι οἱ ἀμφὶ Ξέρξην
 |ing, going inland
 |approach , καὶ οἱ ἀμφὶ Λεωνίδην |Greek , ὥς τὴν
 ἐπὶ θανάτῳ |leaving, way out νοι, ἤδη πολλῶ μᾶλλον ἢ
 κατ' ἀρχὰς |attack, ἐς τὸ εὐρύτερον τοῦ |neck τὸ
 |prosecute
 μὲν γὰρ |protection ὃ τείχεος ἐφυλάσσετο, οἱ δὲ ἀνὰ τὰς
 προτέρας ἡμέρας |withdraw; go out ὑπὸ στεινόπορα ἐμάχοντο.
 τότε δὲ συμμίσγοντες ἔξω τῶν |a narrows, pass ὅν πλῆθει
 πολλοὶ τῶν βαρβάρων ὅπισθε γὰρ οἱ ἡγεμόνες τῶν
 τελέων ἔχοντες |whip |thrash, slap, beat ἡ ἀνδρα, αἰεὶ
 ἐς τὸ |forward, |urge, stir πολλοὶ μὲν δὴ |fall into, rush in
 |in the
 αὐτῶν |future; ἐς τὴν θάλασσαν καὶ διεφθείροντο, πολλῶ δ' ἔτι
 |far
 πλεῖνες |καταπατέω?: |alive ὑπ' ἀλλήλων· ἣν δὲ λόγος
 |trample; or
 οὐδεὶς τῶν ἀπολλυμένων. |καταπατέω?: |as if; since ἐπιστάμενοι τὸν
 |trample
 μέλλοντα σφίσι ἔσσεσθαι θάνατον ἐκ τῶν |be superior to; be left over;
 |still exist
 ὅρος, ἀπεδείκνυντο |strength, ὅσον εἶχον μέγιστον ἐς τοὺς
 |might
 βαρβάρους, παραχρεώμενοί τε καὶ |act rashly .

mountain is shorter and the space to be passed over much less than the going round and the ascent. The Barbarians accordingly with Xerxes were advancing to the attack; and the Hellenes with Leonidas, feeling that they were going forth to death, now advanced out much further than at first into the broader part of the defile; for when the fence of the wall was being guarded, they on the former days fought retiring before the enemy into the narrow part of the pass; but now they engaged with them outside the narrows, and very many of the Barbarians fell: for behind them the leaders of the divisions with scourges in their hands were striking each man, ever urging them on to the front. Many of them then were driven into the sea and perished, and many more still were trodden down while yet alive by one another, and there was no reckoning of the number that perished: for knowing the death which was about to come upon them by reason of those who were going round the mountain, they displayed upon the Barbarians all the strength which they had, to its greatest extent, disregarding danger and acting as if possessed by a spirit of recklessness.

*vocabulary***διεργάζομαι** cultivate; kill, end**ἐκδίδωμι** hand over ~donate**ἐνθαῦτα** there, here**ἐπιδίδωμι** give, give with, give
reciprocally ~donate**ξίφος** -εος (n, 3) sword**ὄνομαστός** named ~name**Πέρσης** Persian**τηνικαῦτα** at that time, in that case**τρηκόσιοι** three hundred

7.224

δόρατα μὲν νυν τοῖσι πλέοσι αὐτῶν τηνικαῦτα ἤδη ἐτύγχανε κατεηγότα, οἳ δὲ τοῖσι ξίφεσι διεργάζοντο τοὺς Πέρσας. καὶ Λεωνίδης τε ἐν τούτῳ τῷ πόνῳ πίπτει ἀνὴρ γενόμενος ἄριστος καὶ ἕτεροι μετ' αὐτοῦ ὀνομαστοὶ Σπαρτιητέων, τῶν ἐγὼ ὡς ἀνδρῶν ἀξίων γενομένων ἐπυθόμην τὰ οὐνόματα, ἐπυθόμην δὲ καὶ ἀπάντων τῶν τριηκοσίων. καὶ δὴ Περσέων πίπτουσι ἐνθαῦτα ἄλλοι τε πολλοὶ καὶ ὀνομαστοί, ἐν δὲ δὴ καὶ Δαρείου δύο παῖδες Ἀβροκόμης τε καὶ Ὑπεράνθης, ἐκ τῆς Ἀρτάνεω θυγατρὸς Φραταγούνης γεγονότες Δαρεῖω. ὁ δὲ Ἀρτάνης Δαρείου μὲν τοῦ βασιλέως ἦν ἀδελφεός, Ὑστάσπεος δὲ τοῦ Ἀρσάμεος παῖς· ὃς καὶ ἐκδιδούς τὴν θυγατέρα Δαρεῖω τὸν οἶκον πάντα τὸν ἑωυτοῦ ἐπέδωκε, ὡς μούνης οἱ εἰούσης ταύτης τέκνου.

7.225

Ξέρξῳ τε δὴ δύο ἀδελφοὶ ἐνθαῦτα πίπτουσι μαχόμενοι,

7.224

δόρατα μὲν νυν τοῖσι πλέοσι αὐτῶν |at that time, ἤδη
 |in that case
 ἐτύγχανε κατεηγότα, οἱ δὲ τοῖσι |sword |cultivate; kill, end
 Πέρσας. καὶ Λεωνίδης τε ἐν τούτῳ τῷ πόνῳ πίπτει
 ἀνὴρ γενόμενος ἄριστος καὶ ἕτεροι μετ' αὐτοῦ |named
 Σπαρτιητέων, τῶν ἐγὼ ὡς ἀνδρῶν ἀξίων γενομένων
 ἐπυθόμην τὰ οὐνόματα, ἐπυθόμην δὲ καὶ ἀπάντων τῶν
 |three . καὶ δὴ Περσέων πίπτουσι |there, here ἄλλοι
 |hundred
 τε πολλοὶ καὶ |named , ἐν δὲ δὴ καὶ Δαρείου δύο
 παῖδες Ἀβροκόμης τε καὶ Ὑπεράνθης, ἐκ τῆς Ἀρτάνεω
 θυγατρὸς Φραταγούνης γεγονότες Δαρείῳ. ὁ δὲ Ἀρτάνης
 Δαρείου μὲν τοῦ βασιλέως ἦν ἀδελφεός, Ὑστάσπεος δὲ τοῦ
 Ἀρσάμεος παῖς· ὃς καὶ |hand over ἦν θυγατέρα Δαρείῳ τὸν
 οἶκον πάντα τὸν ἐωυτοῦ |give, give with, οὔνης οἱ ἐούσης
 |give reciprocally
 ταύτης τέκνου.

7.225

Ξέρξῳ τε δὴ δύο ἀδελφοὶ |there, here πίπτουσι μαχόμενοι,

7.224

Now by this time the spears of the greater number of them were broken, so it chanced, in this combat, and they were slaying the Persians with their swords; and in this fighting fell Leonidas, having proved himself a very good man, and others also of the Spartans with him, men of note, of whose names I was informed as of men who had proved themselves worthy, and indeed I was told also the names of all the three hundred. Moreover of the Persians there fell here, besides many others of note, especially two sons of Dareios, Abrocomes and Hyperanthes, born to Dareios of Phratagune the daughter of Artanes: now Artanes was the brother of king Dareios and the son of Hystaspes, the son of Arsames; and he in giving his daughter in marriage to Dareios gave also with her all his substance, because she was his only child.

7.225

Two brothers of Xerxes, I say, fell here fighting; and meanwhile over

vocabulary

ἀλέξω ward off; aid
 ἀλής crowded; all together
 ἀναχωρέω return, retreat ~heir
 Ἑλλήν Greek
 ἐνθεῦτεν thence
 ἐπιάλτης nightmare
 ἔρυμα -τος (n, 3) protection ~serve
 ἔσοδος entrance
 ἑτεροιοῶ alter
 ἐφέπω drive, meet, follow ~sequel
 ἵζω to seat ~sit
 καταχώννυμι (ῶ) bury
 κολωνός hill, mound

λίθινος made of stone
 μάχαιρα knife, dagger
 νεῖκος -εος (n, 3) quarrel, battle
 πάντοθεν from all directions
 παραμείβω pass by ~amoeba
 περίειμι be superior to; be left over;
 still exist
 περιέρχομαι go around; come next to
 περισταδόν standing around ~station
 Πέρσης Persian
 συγχόω cover with dirt
 τετράκις four times ~trapezoid
 χώρος place ~heir
 ὤθισμός thrusting, jostling

καὶ ὑπὲρ τοῦ νεκροῦ τοῦ Λεωνίδεω Περσέων τε καὶ
 Λακεδαιμονίων ὠθισμὸς ἐγένετο πολλός, ἐς ὃ τοῦτόν
 τε ἀρετῇ οἱ Ἕλληνες ὑπεξείρυσαν καὶ ἐτρέψαντο τοὺς
 ἐναντίους τετράκισ. τοῦτο δὲ συνεστήκει μέχρι οὗ οἱ σὺν
 Ἐπιάτῃ παρεγένοντο. ὥς δὲ τούτους ἤκειν ἐπύθοντο οἱ
 Ἕλληνες, ἐνθεῦτεν ἤδη ἑτεροιοῦτο τὸ νείκος· ἔς τε γὰρ τὸ
 στενὸν τῆς ὁδοῦ ἀνεχώρεον ὀπίσω, καὶ παραμειψάμενοι
 τὸ τεῖχος ἐλθόντες ἴζοντο ἐπὶ τὸν κολωνὸν πάντες ἀλέες οἱ
 ἄλλοι πλὴν Θηβαίων. ὁ δὲ κολωνὸς ἐστὶ ἐν τῇ ἐσόδῳ, ὅκου
 νῦν ὁ λίθινος λέων ἔστηκε ἐπὶ Λεωνίδῃ. ἐν τούτῳ σφέας
 τῷ χώρῳ ἀλεξομένους μαχαίρησι, τοῖσι αὐτῶν ἐτύγχανον
 ἔτι περιεοῦσαι, καὶ χερσὶ καὶ στόμασι κατέχωσαν οἱ
 βάρβαροι βάλλοντες, οἳ μὲν ἐξ ἐναντίας ἐπισπόμενοι καὶ
 τὸ ἔρυμα τοῦ τεύχεος συγχώσαντες, οἳ δὲ περιελθόντες
 πάντοθεν περισταδόν.

7.226

Λακεδαιμονίων δὲ καὶ Θεσπείων τοιούτων γενομένων
 ὁμῶς λέγεται ἀνὴρ ἄριστος γενέσθαι Σπαρτιήτης

καὶ ὑπὲρ τοῦ νεκροῦ τοῦ Λεωνίδεω Περσέων τε καὶ
 Λακεδαιμονίων |thrusting, ἐγένετο πολλός, ἐς ὃ τοῦτόν
 |jostling
 τε ἀρετῇ οἱ |Greek ὑπεξείρυσαν καὶ ἐτρέψαντο τοὺς
 ἐναντίους |four times τοῦτο δὲ συνεστήκει μέχρι οὗ οἱ σὺν
 |nightmare παρεγένοντο. ὥς δὲ τούτους ἤκειν ἐπύθοντο οἱ
 |Greek , |thence ἤδη |alter τὸ |quarrel, ἔς τε γὰρ τὸ
 |battle
 στεινὸν τῆς ὁδοῦ |return, ὀπίσω, καὶ |pass by
 |retreat
 τὸ τείχος ἐλθόντες |to seat ἐπὶ τὸν |hill, πάντες |crowded;
 |mound |all together
 ἄλλοι πλὴν Θηβαίων. ὁ δὲ |hill, ἐστὶ ἐν τῇ |entrance ἵκου
 |mound
 νῦν ὁ |made of stone ἔστηκε ἐπὶ Λεωνίδῃ. ἐν τούτῳ σφέας
 τῷ |place |ward off; aid |knife , τοῖσι αὐτῶν ἐτύγχανον
 ἔτι |be superior to; be χερσὶ καὶ στόμασι κατέχωσαν οἱ
 |left over; still exist
 βάρβαροι βάλλοντες, οἱ μὲν ἐξ ἐναντίας |drive, meet, follow.
 τὸ |protection ἢ τείχεος συγχώσαντες, οἱ δὲ |go around;
 |come next to
 |from all di-|standing
 |rections |around

7.226

Λακεδαιμονίων δὲ καὶ Θεσπιέων τοιούτων γενομένων
 ὅμως λέγεται ἀνὴρ ἄριστος γενέσθαι Σπαρτιήτης

the body of Leonidas there arose a great struggle between the Persians and the Lacedemonians, until the Hellenes by valour dragged this away from the enemy and turned their opponents to flight four times. This conflict continued until those who had gone with Epialtes came up; and when the Hellenes learnt that these had come, from that moment the nature of the combat was changed; for they retired backwards to the narrow part of the way, and having passed by the wall they went and placed themselves upon the hillock, all in a body together except only the Thebans: now this hillock is in the entrance, where now the stone lion is placed for Leonidas. On this spot while defending themselves with daggers, that is those who still had them left, and also with hands and with teeth, they were overwhelmed by the missiles of the Barbarians, some of these having followed directly after them and destroyed the fence of the wall, while others had come round and stood about them on all sides.

7.226

Such were the proofs of valour given by the Lacedemonians and Thespians; yet the Spartan Dienekes is said to have proved himself the best

*vocabulary***ἄγγέλλω** carry a message, announce

~angel

ἄλογίη disrespect, disregard; unreason**ἀποκρύπτω** hide away ~cryptic**ἀριστεύω** be the best ~aristocrat**διθύραμβος** (ι) dithyramb**ἐκπλήσσω** panic, be knocked out

~plectrum

εὐδοκιμέω be esteemed**θάπτω** bury ~epitaph**θέσπις** -εως (m) divine, inspired**μνημόσυνον** memorial**ὀιστός** arrow**σκιά** shadow ~shadow**τόξευμα** -τος (n, 3) arrow

Διηνέκης· τὸν τόδε φασὶ εἰπεῖν τὸ ἔπος πρὶν ἢ συμμῖξαι σφέας τοῖσι Μήδοισι, πυθόμενον πρὸς τευ τῶν Τρηχινίων ὥς ἐπεὰν οἱ βάρβαροι ἀπίωσι τὰ τοξεύματα, τὸν ἥλιον ὑπὸ τοῦ πλήθους τῶν ὀιστῶν ἀποκρύπτουσι· τοσοῦτο πλῆθος αὐτῶν εἶναι. τὸν δὲ οὐκ ἐκπλαγέντα τούτοις εἰπεῖν ἐν ἀλογίῃ ποιούμενον τὸ Μήδων πλῆθος, ὥς πάντα σφί ἀγαθὰ ὁ Τρηχίνιος ξεῖνος ἀγγέλλοι, εἰ ἀποκρυπτόντων τῶν Μήδων τὸν ἥλιον ὑπὸ σκιῇ ἔσοιτο πρὸς αὐτοὺς ἡ μάχη καὶ οὐκ ἐν ἡλίῳ.

7.227

ταῦτα μὲν καὶ ἄλλα τοιουτότροπα ἔπεα φασὶ Διηνέκεα τὸν Λακεδαιμόνιον λιπέσθαι μνημόσυνα· μετὰ δὲ τοῦτον ἀριστεύσαι λέγονται Λακεδαιμόνιοι δύο ἀδελφεοί, Ἀλφεός τε καὶ Μάρων Ὀρσιφάντου παῖδες. Θεσπιέων δὲ εὐδοκίμει μάλιστα τῷ οὔνομα ἦν Διθύραμβος Ἀρματίδew.

7.228

θαφθεῖσι δὲ σφί αὐτοῦ ταύτῃ τῇ περ ἔπεσον, καὶ τοῖσι

Διηνέκης· τὸν τότε φασὶ εἰπεῖν τὸ ἔπος πρὶν ἢ συμμῖξαι
 σφέας τοῖσι Μήδοισι, πυθόμενον πρὸς τευ τῶν Τρηχινίων
 ὥς ἐπεὰν οἱ βάρβαροι ἀπίωσι τὰ |arrow , τὸν ἥλιον
 ὑπὸ τοῦ πλήθους τῶν |arrow |hide away τοσοῦτο
 πλήθος αὐτῶν εἶναι. τὸν δὲ οὐκ |panic, be |knocked out τούτοις
 εἰπεῖν ἐν |disrespect...disre- |gurd; unreason |gurd; unreason τὸ Μήδων πλήθος, ὥς
 πάντα σφί ἀγαθὰ ὁ Τρηχίνιος ξείνος |carry a message, |announce
 |hide away τῶν Μήδων τὸν ἥλιον ὑπὸ |shadow οἱτο
 πρὸς αὐτοὺς ἢ μάχη καὶ οὐκ ἐν ἡλίῳ.

7.227

ταῦτα μὲν καὶ ἄλλα τοιουτότροπα ἔπεα φασὶ Διηνέκεα
 τὸν Λακεδαιμόνιον λιπέσθαι |memorial μετὰ δὲ τοῦτον
 |be the best λέγονται Λακεδαιμόνιοι δύο ἀδελφεοί, Ἀλφεός
 τε καὶ Μάρων Ὀρσιφάντου παῖδες. |divine, |inspired δὲ |be esteemed
 μάλιστα τῷ οὔνομα ἦν |dithyramb Ἄρματίδew.

7.228

|bury δέ σφί αὐτοῦ ταύτῃ τῇ περ ἔπεσον, καὶ τοῖσι

man of all, the same who, as they report, uttered this saying before they engaged battle with the Medes:—being informed by one of the men of Trachis that when the Barbarians discharged their arrows they obscured the light of the sun by the multitude of the arrows, so great was the number of their host, he was not dismayed by this, but making small account of the number of the Medes, he said that their guest from Trachis brought them very good news, for if the Medes obscured the light of the sun, the battle against them would be in the shade and not in the sun.

7.227

This and other sayings of this kind they report that Dienekes the Lacedemonian left as memorials of himself; and after him the bravest they say of the Lacedemonians were two brothers Alpheos and Maron, sons of Orsiphantos. Of the Thespians the man who gained most honour was named Dithyrambos son of Harmatides.

7.228

The men were buried where they fell; and for these, as well as for those who were

vocabulary

ἄγγέλλω carry a message, announce
 ~angel

ἀποπέμπω send away ~pomp

γράμμα -τος (n, 3) writing, letter

ἐπίγραμμα -τος (n, 3) inscription, title,
 maker's signature

ἐπιγράφω scratch, graze ~photograph

ἐπικοσμέω decorate; celebrate

κῆρ doom, death, fate

κλεινός famous

μάντις -ος (m) seer ~mantis

μνημα -τος (n, 3) reminder, memorial
 ~mnemonic

μυριάς -δος (ῥ, f, 3) countless, myriad

πότε when?

προλείπω abandon, withdraw ~eclipse

σάφα with full understanding

στήλη post, column

τλάω take upon oneself ~talent

χιλιάς -δος (ι, f, 3) 1000

πρότερον τελευτήσασι ἢ ὑπὸ Λεωνίδεω ἀποπεμφθέντας
οἷχεσθαι, ἐπιγέγραπται γράμματα λέγοντα τάδε.

Μυριάσιν ποτὲ τῇδε τριηκοσίαις ἐμάχοντο ἐκ
Πελοποννάσου χιλιάδες τέτορες.

ταῦτα μὲν δὴ τοῖσι πᾶσι ἐπιγέγραπται, τοῖσι δὲ
Σπαρτιήτησι ἰδίῃ.

Ὡ ξεῖν', ἀγγέλλειν Λακεδαιμονίοις ὅτι τῇδε κείμεθα τοῖς
κείνων ῥήμασι πειθόμενοι.

Λακεδαιμονίοισι μὲν δὴ τοῦτο, τῷ δὲ μάντι τόδε.

Μνημα τόδε κλεινοῖο Μεγιστία, ὃν ποτε Μῆδοι Σπερχειὸν
ποταμὸν κτεῖναν ἀμειψάμενοι, μάντιος, ὃς τότε κῆρας
ἐπερχομένης σάφα εἰδώς οὐκ ἔτλη Σπάρτης ἡγεμόνα
προλιπεῖν.

ἐπιγράμμασι μὲν νυν καὶ στήλῃσι, ἔξω ἢ τὸ τοῦ μάντιος
ἐπίγραμμα, Ἀμφικτύονες εἰσὶ σφέας οἱ ἐπικοσμήσαντες·
τὸ δὲ τοῦ μάντιος Μεγιστίῳ Σιμωνίδῃς ὁ Λεωπρέπεος

πρότερον τελευτήσασι ἢ ὑπὸ Λεωνίδεω |send away

οἷχεται, |graze |writing, λέγοντα τάδε.
|letter

|countless, ποτὲ τῇδε τριηκοσίαις ἐμάχοντο ἐκ
|myriad

Πελοποννάσου |1000 τέτορες.

ταῦτα μὲν δὴ τοῖσι πᾶσι |graze , τοῖσι δὲ
Σπαρτιήτησι ἰδίῃ.

᾽Ω ξεῖν', |carry a message, κεδαιμονίοις ὅτι τῇδε κείμεθα τοῖς
|announce
κείνων ῥήμασι πειθόμενοι.

Λακεδαιμονίοισι μὲν δὴ τοῦτο, τῷ δὲ |seer τόδε.

|reminder, ἴδε |famous Μεγιστία, ὃν ποτε Μῆδοι Σπερχεῖον
|memorial

ποταμὸν κτεῖναν ἀμειψάμενοι, |seer , ὃς τότε |doom

ἐπερχομένας |clearly εἰδώς οὐκ |take upon oneself ἡγεμόνα

|abandon,
|withdraw

|inscription, title, ἵνυ καὶ |post, , ἔξω ἢ τὸ τοῦ |seer
|maker's signature |column

|inscription, title, ῥικτύονες εἰσὶ σφέας οἱ |decorate; celebrate
|maker's signature

τὸ δὲ τοῦ |seer Μεγιστίω Σιμωνίδης ὁ Λεωπρέπεος

slain before being sent away by Leonidas, there is an inscription which runs thus:

“Here once, facing in fight three hundred myriads of foemen, Thousands four did contend, men of the Peloponnese.”

This is the inscription for the whole body; and for the Spartans separately there is this:

“Stranger, report this word, we pray, to the Spartans, that lying Here in this spot we remain, faithfully keeping their laws.” This, I say, for the Lacedemonians; and for the soothsayer as follows:

“This is the tomb of Megistias renowned, whom the Median foemen, Where Sperchios doth flow, slew when they forded the stream; Soothsayer he, who then knowing clearly the fates that were coming, Did not endure in the fray Sparta’s good leaders to leave.”

The Amphictyons it was who honoured them with inscriptions and memorial pillars, excepting only in the case of the inscription to the soothsayer; but that of the soothsayer Megistias was inscribed by Simonides the

*vocabulary***ἀλγέω** suffer ~analgesic**ἀπονοστέω** go home**ἀποσώζω** save from**εἰσπίπτω** fall into, rush in**ἐνδύω** go into, put on**ἐπιγράφω** scratch, graze ~photograph**ἔσχατος** farthest, last**κατάκειμαι** lie down**κομιδὴ** care, tending, providing for**νοστέω** go home**ξεῖνιος** of hospitality**ὄμιλος** (ἶ) crowd, throng ~homily**ὁμός** same ~homoerotic**ὁμοῦ** together**ὁμοφρονέω** sympathize, agree**ὁμόω** unite ~homoerotic**περίοδος** picket, circuit**Πέρσης** Persian**τριηκόσιοι** three hundred

ἐστὶ κατὰ ξεινίην ὁ ἐπιγράψας.

7.229

δύο δὲ τούτων τῶν τριηκοσίων λέγεται Εὐρυτόν τε καὶ Ἀριστόδημον, παρὸν αὐτοῖσι ἀμφοτέροισι κοινῶ λόγω χρησαμένοισι ἢ ἀποσωθῆναι ὁμοῦ ἐς Σπάρτην, ὥς μεμετιμένοι γε ἦσαν ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου ὑπὸ Λεωνίδεω καὶ κατεκέατο ἐν Ἀλπηνοῖσι ὀφθαλμιῶντες ἐς τὸ ἔσχατον, ἢ εἴ γε μὴ ἐβούλοντο νοστήσαι, ἀποθανεῖν ἅμα τοῖσι ἄλλοισι, παρεόν σφι τούτων τὰ ἕτερα ποιεῖν οὐκ ἐβελῆσαι ὁμοφρονέειν, ἀλλὰ γνώμη διενειχθέντας Εὐρυτον μὲν, πυθόμενον τῶν Περσέων τὴν περίοδον, αἰτήσαντά τε τὰ ὅπλα καὶ ἐνδύντα ἄγειν ἑωυτὸν κελεῦσαι τὸν εἴλωτα ἐς τοὺς μαχομένους, ὅκως δὲ αὐτὸν ἦγαγε, τὸν μὲν ἀγαγόντα οἴχεσθαι φεύγοντα, τὸν δὲ ἐσπεσόντα ἐς τὸν ὄμιλον διαφθαρῆναι, Ἀριστόδημον δὲ λιποψυχέοντα λειφθῆναι. εἰ μὲν νυν ἢ μούνον Ἀριστόδημον ἀλγήσαντα ἀπονοστήσαι ἐς Σπάρτην ἢ καὶ ὁμοῦ σφεων ἀμφοτέρων τὴν κομιδὴν γενέσθαι, δοκέειν

ἐστὶ κατὰ ξεινίην ὁ |graze

7.229

δύο δὲ τούτων τῶν |three λέγεται Εὐρυτόν τε
 |hundred
 καὶ Ἀριστόδημον, παρεὸν αὐτοῖσι ἀμφοτέροισι κοινῶ
 λόγῳ χρησαμένοισι ἢ |save from ὁμοῦ ἐς Σπάρτην, ὡς
 μεμετιμένοι γε ἦσαν ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου ὑπὸ Λεωνίδεω
 καὶ |lie down ἐν Ἀλπηνοῖσι ὀφθαλμιῶντες ἐς τὸ |farthest ,
 ἢ εἴ γε μὴ ἐβούλοντο |go home , ἀποθανεῖν ἅμα τοῖσι
 ἄλλοις, παρεόν σφι τούτων τὰ ἕτερα ποίειν οὐκ ἐθέλησαι
 |sympathize, , ἀλλὰ γνώμῃ διενειχθέντας Εὐρυτον μὲν,
 |agree
 πυθόμενον τῶν Περσέων τὴν |picket, , αἰτήσαντά τε τὰ
 |circuit
 ὄπλα καὶ |go into, put on . ἑωυτὸν κελεῦσαι τὸν εἴλωτα ἐς
 τοὺς μαχομένους, ὅκως δὲ αὐτὸν ἦγαγε, τὸν μὲν ἀγαγόντα
 οἴχεσθαι φεύγοντα, τὸν δὲ |fall into, rush in τὸν |crowd
 διαφθαρῆναι, Ἀριστόδημον δὲ λιποψυχέοντα λειφθῆναι. εἰ
 μὲν νυν ἢ μούνον Ἀριστόδημον |suffer |go home
 ἐς Σπάρτην ἢ καὶ ὁμοῦ σφῶν ἀμφοτέρων τὴν |care,
 |tending
 γενέσθαι, δοκέειν

son of Leoprepes on account of guest-friendship.

7.229

Two of these three hundred, it is said, namely Eurystos and Aristodemos, who, if they had made agreement with one another, might either have come safe home to Sparta together (seeing that they had been dismissed from the camp by Leonidas and were lying at Alpenoi with disease of the eyes, suffering extremely), or again, if they had not wished to return home, they might have been slain together with the rest, — when they might, I say, have done either one of these two things, would not agree together; but the two being divided in opinion, Eurystos, it is said, when he was informed that the Persians had gone round, asked for his arms and having put them on ordered his Helot to lead him to those who were fighting; and after he had led him thither, the man who had led him ran away and departed, but Eurystos plunged into the thick of the fighting, and so lost his life: but Aristodemos was left behind fainting. Now if either Aristodemos had been ill alone, and so had returned home to Sparta, or the men had both of them come back together,

vocabulary

ἀναγκασίως coerced, coercing, slavery
ἀναλαμβάνω take up, recover, resume
ἀπονοστέω go home
ἀτιμία (τι) dishonor
ἀτιμόω (τι) punish, dishonor
διαλέγω go through, debate ~legion
ἔξιμι go forth; is possible ~ion
ἐπιφέρω bestow, impute ~bear
καταλαμβάνω seize, understand, catch,
 overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy

μῆνις -ος (f) rage
μηνίω be enraged at
ναύω flow
ὄνειδος -εος (n, 3) blame; insult
περιγίγνομαι surpass; survive; attain
 ~genus
πρόφασις -εως (f) pretext; motive;
 prediction ~fame
τοιόσδε such
τρέω flee in fear ~tremor
ὑπομένω stay behind, await ~remain

ἐμοί, οὐκ ἄν σφι Σπαρτιήτας μῆνιν οὐδεμίαν προσθέσθαι·
 νυνὶ δὲ τοῦ μὲν αὐτῶν ἀπολομένου, τοῦ δὲ τῆς μὲν αὐτῆς
 ἐχομένου προφάσιος οὐκ ἐθελήσαντος δὲ ἀποθνήσκειν,
 ἀναγκαίως σφι ἔχειν μνηῖσαι μεγάλως Ἀριστοδήμῳ.

7.230

οἱ μὲν νυν οὕτω σωθῆναι λέγουσι Ἀριστόδημον ἐς
 Σπάρτην καὶ διὰ πρόφασιν τοιήνδε, οἱ δὲ ἄγγελον
 πεμφθέντα ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου, ἐξέον αὐτῷ καταλαβεῖν
 τὴν μάχην γινομένην οὐκ ἐθελῆσαι, ἀλλ' ὑπομείναντα
 ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ περιγενέσθαι, τὸν δὲ συνάγγελον αὐτοῦ
 ἀπικόμενον ἐς τὴν μάχην ἀποθανεῖν.

7.231

ἀπονοστήσας δὲ ἐς Λακεδαίμονα ὁ Ἀριστόδημος εἶχε
 ὄνειδός τε καὶ ἀτιμίην· πάσχων δὲ τοιάδε ἡτίμωτο· οὔτε
 οἱ πῦρ οὐδείς ἔναυε Σπαρτιητέων οὔτε διελέγετο. ὄνειδος
 δὲ εἶχε ὁ τρέσας Ἀριστόδημος καλεόμενος. ἀλλ' ὁ μὲν ἐν
 τῇ ἐν Πλαταιῇσι μάχῃ ἀνέλαβε πᾶσαν τὴν ἐπενειχθεῖσαν

ἐμοί, οὐκ ἄν σφι Σπαρτιήτας |rage οὐδεμίαν προσθέσθαι·

νυνὶ δὲ τοῦ μὲν αὐτῶν ἀπολομένου, τοῦ δὲ τῆς μὲν αὐτῆς

ἐχομένου |pretext; motive; ἵκ ἐθελήσαντος δὲ ἀποθνήσκειν,
|prediction

|coerced, coerc- |ἔχειν |be enraged at ἕως Ἀριστοδήμου.
|ing, slavery

7.230

οἱ μὲν νυν οὕτω σωθῆναι λέγουσι Ἀριστόδημον ἐς

Σπάρτην καὶ διὰ |pretext; mo-|such , οἱ δὲ ἄγγελον

πεμφθέντα ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου, |go forth; . |is|seize, understand, catch,
|possible |overtake; (mp) happen

τὴν μάχην γινομένην οὐκ ἐθελῆσαι, ἀλλ' |stay behind, await

ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ |surpass; sur-, τὸν δὲ συνάγγελον αὐτοῦ
|vive; attain

ἀπικόμενον ἐς τὴν μάχην ἀποθανεῖν.

7.231

|go home δὲ ἐς Λακεδαίμονα ὁ Ἀριστόδημος εἶχε

|blame; τε καὶ ἀτιμῆν· πάσχων δὲ |such |punish, οὔτε
|insult |dishonor

οἱ πῦρ οὐδεὶς |flow Σπαρτιητέων οὔτε |go through, |blame;
|debate |insult

δὲ εἶχε ὁ |flee Ἀριστόδημος καλεόμενος. ἀλλ' ὁ μὲν ἐν

τῇ ἐν Πλαταιῇσι μάχῃ |take up, .rē- αν τὴν |bestow, impute
|cover, resume

I do not suppose that the Spartans would have displayed any anger against them; but in this case, as the one of them had lost his life and the other, clinging to an excuse which the first also might have used, had not been willing to die, it necessarily happened that the Spartans had great indignation against Aristodemos.

7.230

Some say that Aristodemos came safe to Sparta in this manner, and on a pretext such as I have said; but others, that he had been sent as a messenger from the camp, and when he might have come up in time to find the battle going on, was not willing to do so, but stayed upon the road and so saved his life, while his fellow-messenger reached the battle and was slain.

7.231

When Aristodemos, I say, had returned home to Lacedemon, he had reproach and dishonour; and that which he suffered by way of dishonour was this,—no one of the Spartans would either give him light for a fire or speak with him, and he had reproach in that he was called Aristodemos the

*vocabulary***ἄγχι** near, nigh ~angina**αἶσσω** dart, glance**ἀναγκαίη** of necessity, by force**ἀναγκαῖος** coerced, coercing, slavery**ἀπάγχω** throttle**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp**ἀποσχίζω** sever**ἄσσω** dart, glance**ἀτιμόω** (ι) punish, dishonor**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἐπείγω** weigh upon, drive; (mid) hurry**κατυπέρτερος** having the upper hand**κολωνός** hill, mound**νοστέω** go home**περιγίγνομαι** surpass; survive; attain

~genus

Πέρσης Persian**προτείνω** hold out, offer**στρατηγέω** be a general**στρατιά** army ~strategy**τρηιχόσιοι** three hundred

αἰτίην·

7.232

λέγεται δὲ καὶ ἄλλον ἀποπεμφθέντα ἄγγελον εἰς
Θεσσαλίην τῶν τριηκοσίων τούτων περιγενέσθαι, τῷ
οὖνομα εἶναι Παντίτην· νοστήσαντα δὲ τοῦτον εἰς
Σπάρτην, ὥς ἡτίμωτο, ἀπάγξασθαι.

7.233

οἱ δὲ Θηβαῖοι, τῶν ὁ Λεοντιάδης ἐστρατήγεε, τέως
μὲν μετὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐόντες ἐμάχοντο ὑπ' ἀναγκαίης
ἐχόμενοι πρὸς τὴν βασιλέος στρατιήν· ὥς δὲ εἶδον
κατυπέρτερα τῶν Περσέων γινόμενα τὰ πρήγματα, οὕτω
δή, τῶν σὺν Λεωνίδῃ Ἑλλήνων ἐπειγομένων ἐπὶ τὸν
κολωνόν, ἀποσχισθέντες τούτων χεῖράς τε προέτεινον καὶ
ἤισαν ἄσσον τῶν βαρβάρων, λέγοντες τὸν ἀληθέστατον
τῶν λόγων, ὥς καὶ μηδίζουσι καὶ γῆν τε καὶ ὕδωρ ἐν
πρώτοισι ἔδοσαν βασιλεί, ὑπὸ δὲ ἀναγκαίης ἐχόμενοι εἰς
Θερμοπύλας ἀπικοίατο καὶ

αἰτίην·

7.232

λέγεται δὲ καὶ ἄλλον |send away ἄγγελον ἐς
 Θεσσαλίην τῶν |three τούτων |surpass; sur-, τῷ
 |hundred |vive; attain
 οὐνομα εἶναι Παντίτην· |go home δὲ τοῦτον ἐς
 Σπάρτην, ὡς |punish, |throttle
 |dishonor

7.233

οἱ δὲ Θηβαῖοι, τῶν ὁ Λεοντιάδης |be a general , τέως
 μὲν μετὰ τῶν |Greek ἐόντες ἐμάχοντο ὑπ' ἀναγκαίης
 ἐχόμενοι πρὸς τὴν βασιλέως στρατιήν· ὡς δὲ εἶδον
 |having the up- τῶν Περσέων γινόμενα τὰ πρήγματα, οὕτω
 |per hand
 δῆ, τῶν σὺν Λεωνίδῃ |Greek |weigh upon, drive; τὸν
 |(mid) hurry
 |hill, |sever τούτων χεῖράς τε |hold out, offer ἢ
 |mound
 ἥσαν ἄσσον τῶν βαρβάρων, λέγοντες τὸν ἀληθέστατον
 τῶν λόγων, ὡς καὶ μηδίζουσι καὶ γῆν τε καὶ ὕδωρ ἐν
 πρώτοισι ἔδωσαν βασιλεί, ὑπὸ δὲ ἀναγκαίης ἐχόμενοι ἐς
 Θερμοπύλας ἀπικοίατο καὶ

coward.

7.232

He however in the battle at Plataia repaired all the guilt that was charged against him: but it is reported that another man also survived of these three hundred, whose name was Pantites, having been sent as a messenger to Thessaly, and this man, when he returned back to Sparta and found himself dishonoured, is said to have strangled himself.

7.233

The Thebans however, of whom the commander was Leontiades, being with the Hellenes had continued for some time to fight against the king's army, constrained by necessity; but when they saw that the fortunes of the Persians were prevailing, then and not before, while the Hellenes with Leonidas were making their way with speed to the hillock, they separated from these and holding out their hands came near to the Barbarians, saying at the same time that which was most true, namely that they were on the side of the Medes and that they had been among the first to give earth and water to the king; and moreover that they had come to Thermopylai constrained by necessity, and were blameless

vocabulary

ἄγωνίζομαι contend, exert oneself
 ἀναίτιος blameless ~etiology
 βασιλείος kingly
 Ἕλληγν Greek
 ἐνθένδε hence
 εὐτυχέω be lucky, prosper, succeed
 κόσος how many, much, far?
 μάρτυς witness
 μετέπειτα afterward, next
 ὅπόσος as many as, how many, how
 great

περιγίγνομαι surpass; survive; attain
 ~genus
 πρόσσειμι approach, draw near; add
 ~ion
 προσίημι be allowed near
 στίγμα -τος (n, 3) tattoo
 στίζω tattoo
 στρατηγέω be a general
 τεκμαίρομαι conclude, declare from
 evidence
 τετρακόσιοι 400
 φονεύω kill

ἀναίτιοι εἶεν τοῦ τρώματος τοῦ γεγονότος βασιλεί.
 ὥστε ταῦτα λέγοντες περιεγίνοντο· εἶχον γὰρ καὶ
 Θεσσαλοὺς τούτων τῶν λόγων μάρτυρας· οὐ μέντοι τά
 γε πάντα εὐτύχησαν· ὥς γὰρ αὐτοὺς ἔλαβον οἱ βάρβαροι
 ἐλθόντας, τοὺς μὲν τινὰς καὶ ἀπέκτειναν προσιόντας,
 τοὺς δὲ πλεῖνας αὐτῶν κελεύσαντος Ξέρξεω ἔστιζον
 στίγματα βασιλήια, ἀρξάμενοι ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ
 Λεοντιάδεω· τοῦ τὸν παῖδα Εὐρύμαχον χρόνῳ μετέπειτα
 ἐφόνευσαν Πλαταιέες στρατηγήσαντα ἀνδρῶν Θηβαίων
 τετρακοσίων καὶσχόντα τὸ ἄστυ τὸ Πλαταιέων.

7.234

οἱ μὲν δὴ περὶ Θερμοπύλας Ἕλληνες οὕτω ἡγωνίσαντο,
 Ξέρξης δὲ καλέσας Δημάρητον εἰρώτα ἀρξάμενος ἐνθένδε.
 «Δημάρητε, ἀνὴρ εἰς ἀγαθός. τεκμαίρομαι δὲ τῇ ἀληθείῃ·
 ὅσα γὰρ εἶπας, ἅπαντα ἀπέβη οὕτω. νῦν δέ μοι εἰπέ, κόσοι
 τινὲς εἰσὶ οἱ λοιποὶ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, καὶ τούτων ὁκόσοι
 τοιοῦτοι τὰ πολέμα εἴτε καὶ ἅπαντες.» ὁ δ' εἶπε «ὦ
 βασιλεῦ, πλῆθος μὲν πολλὸν πάντων

|blameless εἶεν τοῦ τρώματος τοῦ γεγονότος βασιλεί.
 ὥστε ταῦτα λέγοντες περιεγίνοντο· εἶχον γὰρ καὶ
 Θεσσαλοὺς τούτων τῶν λόγων |witness οὐ μέντοι τά
 γε πάντα |be lucky, prosper γὰρ αὐτοὺς ἔλαβον οἱ βάρβαροι
 |per, succeed ἔλθοντας, τοὺς μὲν τινὰς καὶ ἀπέκτειναν προσιόντας,
 τοὺς δὲ πλεῦνας αὐτῶν κελεύσαντος Ξέρξεω |tattoo
 |tattoo |kingly , ἀρξάμενοι ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ
 Λεοντιάδεω· τοῦ τὸν παῖδα Εὐρύμαχον χρόνῳ |afterward, next
 |kill Πλαταιέες |be a general ἀνδρῶν Θηβαίων
 |400 καὶσχόντα τὸ ἄστυ τὸ Πλαταιέων.

7.234

οἱ μὲν δὴ περὶ Θερμοπύλας |Greek οὕτω |contend, exert,
 |oneself Ξέρξης δὲ καλέσας Δημάρητον εἰρώτα ἀρξάμενος |hence .
 «Δημάρητε, ἀνὴρ εἰς ἀγαθός. |conclude, declare τῇ ἀληθείᾳ·
 |from evidence ὅσα γὰρ εἶπας, ἅπαντα ἀπέβη οὕτω. νῦν δέ μοι εἰπέ, |how many, much,
 |far? τινὲς εἰσὶ οἱ λοιποὶ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, καὶ τούτων |as/how many/great
 τοιοῦτοι τὰ πολέμια εἴτε καὶ ἅπαντες.» ὁ δ' εἶπε «ὦ
 βασιλεῦ, πλῆθος μὲν πολλὸν πάντων

for the loss which had been inflicted upon the king: so that thus saying they preserved their lives, for they had also the Thessalians to bear witness to these words. However, they did not altogether meet with good fortune, for some had even been slain as they had been approaching, and when they had come and the Barbarians had them in their power, the greater number of them were branded by command of Xerxes with the royal marks, beginning with their leader Leontiades, the same whose son Eurymachos was afterwards slain by the Plataians, when he had been made commander of four hundred Thebans and had seized the city of the Plataians.

7.234

Thus did the Hellenes at Thermopylai contend in fight; and Xerxes summoned Demaratos and inquired of him, having first said this: “Demaratos, thou art a good man; and this I conclude by the truth of thy words, for all that thou saidest turned out so as thou didst say. Now, however, tell me how many in number are the remaining Lacedemonians, and of them how many are like these in matters of war; or are they so even all of them?” He said: “O king, the number of

*vocabulary***ἀπόνητος** without toil or trouble**βούλευμα** -τος (n, 3) resolution, purpose**διέξοδος** διαξόδου (f) outlet, path; narrative**ἐκμανθάνω** know by heart**ἐπίκειμαι** impose; shut a door**ἐπικρατέω** rule over**καταδύω** enter, sink**κέρδος** -ους (n, 3) advantage, cunning**πρόθυμος** (ο) willing, eager ~fume**προσδοκάω** expect**προσδοκέω** be thought besides**σοφός** skilled, clever, wise**στρατιά** army ~strategy**συμβουλεύω** give advice; (mid) consult ~volunteer**τριηκόσιοι** three hundred**ὑπερέχω** be over; protect**χίλιοι** (ι) thousand ~kilo-

τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων καὶ πόλεις πολλαί· τὸ δὲ θέλεις ἐκμαθεῖν, εἰδήσεις. ἔστι ἐν τῇ Λακεδαίμονι Σπάρτη πόλις ἀνδρῶν ὀκτακισχιλίων μάλιστα, καὶ οὗτοι πάντες εἰσὶ ὅμοιοι τοῖσι ἐνθάδε μαχεσαμένοισι· οἳ γε μὲν ἄλλοι Λακεδαιμόνιοι τούτοις μὲν οὐκ ὅμοιοι, ἀγαθοὶ δέ.» εἶπε πρὸς ταῦτα Ξέρξης «Δημάρητε, τέω τρόπῳ ἀπονητότατα τῶν ἀνδρῶν τούτων ἐπικρατήσομεν; ἴθι ἐξηγέο· σὺ γὰρ ἔχεις αὐτῶν τὰς διεξόδους τῶν βουλευμάτων οἷα βασιλεὺς γενόμενος.»

7.235

ὁ δ' ἀμείβετο «ὦ βασιλεῦ, εἰ μὲν δὴ συμβουλεύεαί μοι προθύμως, δίκαιόν με σοί ἐστι φράζειν τὸ ἄριστον· εἰ τῆς ναυτικῆς στρατιῆς νέας τριηκοσίας ἀποστείλειαι ἐπὶ τὴν Λάκαιναν χώραν. ἔστι δὲ ἐπ' αὐτῇ νῆσος ἐπικειμένη τῇ οὐνομα ἐστὶ Κύθηρα, τὴν Χίλων ἀνὴρ παρ' ἡμῖν σοφώτατος γενόμενος κέρδος μέζον ἂν ἔφη εἶναι Σπαρτιήτησι κατὰ τῆς θαλάσσης καταδεδυκέναι μᾶλλον ἢ ὑπερέχειν, αἰεὶ τι προσδοκῶν ἀπ' αὐτῆς

τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων καὶ πόλεις πολλαί· τὸ δὲ θέλεις
 |know by heart ᾗσεις. ἔστι ἐν τῇ Λακεδαίμονι Σπάρτῃ
 πόλις ἀνδρῶν ὀκτακισχιλίων μάλιστα, καὶ οὗτοι πάντες
 εἰσὶ ὅμοιοι τοῖσι ἐνθάδε μαχεσαμένοισι· οἳ γε μὲν ἄλλοι
 Λακεδαιμόνιοι τούτοις μὲν οὐκ ὅμοιοι, ἀγαθοὶ δέ.» εἶπε
 πρὸς ταῦτα Ξέρξης «Δημάρητε, τέω τρόπῳ |without toil or
 |trouble
 τῶν ἀνδρῶν τούτων |rule over , ἔθι ἐξηγέο· σὺ γὰρ
 ἔχεις αὐτῶν τὰς |outlet, path; nār-|resolution, οἷα βασιλεὺς
 |rative |purpose
 γενόμενος.»

7.235

ὁ δ' ἀμείβετο «ὦ βασιλεῦ, εἰ μὲν δὴ |give advice; μοι
 |(mid) consult
 |willing, , δίκαιόν με σοί ἐστι φράζειν τὸ ἄριστον· εἰ
 |eager
 τῆς ναυτικῆς στρατιῆς νέας |three ἀποστείλειας
 |hundred
 ἐπὶ τὴν Λάκαιναν χώραν. ἔστι δὲ ἐπ' αὐτῇ νῆσος
 |impose; shut a door -μα ἐστὶ Κύθηρα, τὴν Χίλων ἀνὴρ παρ'
 ἡμῶν |skilled, clever, γενόμενος |advantage, ἕζον ἃν ἔφη εἶναι
 |wise |cunning
 Σπαρτιῆται κατὰ τῆς θαλάσσης |enter, sink μάλλον
 ἢ |be over; protect ἴ τι προσδοκῶν ἀπ' αὐτῆς

all the Lacedemonians is great and their cities are many, but that which thou desirest to learn, thou shalt know. There is in Lacedemon the city of Sparta, having about eight thousand men; and these are all equal to those who fought here: the other Lacedemonians are not equal to these, but they are good men too.” To this Xerxes said: “Demaratos, in what manner shall we with least labour get the better of these men? Come set forth to us this; for thou knowest the courses of their counsels, seeing that thou wert once their king.”

7.235

He made answer: “O king, if thou dost in very earnest take counsel with me, it is right that I declare to thee the best thing. What if thou shouldest send three hundred ships from thy fleet to attack the Laconian land? Now there is lying near it an island named Kythera, about which Chilon, who was a very wise man among us, said that it would be a greater gain for the Spartans that it should be sunk under the sea than that it should remain above it; for he always anticipated that something would happen from it of

*vocabulary***ἄλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix**ἄμαχητί** without a fight**ἀναγιγνώσκω** recognize, read,
understand, persuade**ἀσθενής** weak**ἐξηγέομαι** lead forth; set out, describe
~hegemony**ἰσθμός** narrow neck**καταδουλόω** enslave**οὔτις** nobody, nothing**παρατυγχάνω** happen to be present**πάροιχος** neighboring; foreign**πρόοιδα** foresee**προσδέχομαι** await, expect; suppose**προσδοκάω** expect**προσχωρέω** go to, join, support**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

στρατόω be on a campaign ~strategy**συνόμνυμι** (υῦ) join in league**χῶρος** place ~heir

τοιούτο ἔσεσθαι οἶόν τοι ἐγὼ ἐξηγέομαι, οὔτι τὸν σὸν στόλον προειδώς, ἀλλὰ πάντα ὁμοίως φοβεόμενος ἀνδρῶν στόλον. ἐκ ταύτης τῆς νήσου ὀρμώμενοι φοβεόντων τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους. παροίκου δὲ πολέμου σφι ἐόντος οἰκήιου, οὐδὲν δεινοὶ ἔσονται τοι μὴ τῆς ἄλλης Ἑλλάδος ἀλISCOμένης ὑπὸ τοῦ πεζοῦ βοηθέωσι ταύτῃ. καταδουλωθείσης δὲ τῆς ἄλλης Ἑλλάδος ἀσθενὲς ἤδη τὸ Λακωνικὸν μῦνον λείπεται. ἦν δὲ ταῦτα μὴ ποιήης, τάδε τοι προσδόκα ἔσεσθαι. ἔστι τῆς Πελοποννήσου ἰσθμὸς στενός· ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χώρῳ πάντων Πελοποννησίων συνομοσάντων ἐπὶ σοὶ μάχας ἰσχυροτέρας ἄλλας τῶν γενομένων προσδέκεο ἔσεσθαι τοι. ἐκείνο δὲ ποιήσαντι ἀμαχητὶ ὅ τε ἰσθμὸς οὗτος καὶ αἱ πόλεις προσχωρήσουσι.»

7.236

λέγει μετὰ τοῦτον Ἀχαιμένης, ἀδελφεός τε ἐὼν Ξέρξῳ καὶ τοῦ ναυτικοῦ στρατοῦ στρατηγός, παρατυχῶν τε τῷ λόγῳ καὶ δείσας μὴ ἀναγνωσθῇ Ξέρξης ποιεῖν ταῦτα, «ὦ

τοιοῦτο ἔσεσθαι οἷόν τοι ἐγὼ |lead forth; set|nobody, ἵν
 |out, describe|nothing
 σὸν στόλον |foresee , ἀλλὰ πάντα ὁμοίως φοβεόμενος
 ἀνδρῶν στόλον. ἐκ ταύτης τῆς νήσου ὀρμώμενοι
 φοβεόντων τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους. |neighboring; ἵν' πολέμου
 |foreign
 σφι ἐόντος οἰκείου, οὐδὲν δεινοὶ ἔσονται τοι μὴ τῆς
 ἄλλης Ἑλλάδος |be captured ὑπὸ τοῦ πεζοῦ βοηθέωσι
 ταύτη. |enslave δὲ τῆς ἄλλης Ἑλλάδος |weak
 ἤδη τὸ Λακωνικὸν μῦνον λείπεται. ἦν δὲ ταῦτα
 μὴ ποιέης, τάδε τοι |expect ἔσεσθαι. ἔστι τῆς
 Πελοποννήσου |narrow neck ἡνός· ἐν τούτῳ τῷ |place
 πάντων Πελοποννησίων |join in league ἐπὶ σοὶ μάχας
 ἰσχυροτέρας ἄλλας τῶν γενομένων |await, expect; ἔσεσθαι
 |suppose
 τοι. ἐκεῖνο δὲ ποιήσαντι |without a fight |narrow neck ἡνός καὶ αἱ
 πόλεις |go to, join, support...

7.236

λέγει μετὰ τοῦτον Ἀχαιμένης, ἀδελφεός τε ἐὼν Ξέρξεω
 καὶ τοῦ ναυτικοῦ στρατοῦ στρατηγός, |happen to be present
 λόγῳ καὶ δείσας μὴ ἀναγνωσθῇ Ξέρξης ποιέειν ταῦτα, «ὦ

such a kind as I am now setting forth to thee: not that he knew of thy armament beforehand, but that he feared equally every armament of men. Let thy forces then set forth from this island and keep the Lacedemonians in fear; and while they have a war of their own close at their doors, there will be no fear for thee from them that when the remainder of Hellas is being conquered by the land-army, they will come to the rescue there. Then after the remainder of Hellas has been reduced to subjection, from that moment the Lacedemonian power will be left alone and therefore feeble. If however thou shalt not do this, I will tell thee what thou must look for. There is a narrow isthmus leading to the Peloponnese, and in this place thou must look that other battles will be fought more severe than those which have taken place, seeing that all the Peloponnesians have sworn to a league against thee: but if thou shalt do the other thing of which I spoke, this isthmus and the cities within it will come over to thy side without a battle."

7.236

After him spoke Achaimenes, brother of Xerxes and also commander of the fleet, who chanced to have been present at this discourse and was afraid lest Xerxes should be persuaded to do this: "O king," he said,

vocabulary

ἀκέομαι heal, fix
 ἅλῃς crowded; all together
 ἀντίπαλος rival; balanced
 ἀξιόμαχος well matched for war
 ἀποπέμπω send away ~pomp
 ἀρήγω succor; prevent ~right
 διασπάω tear apart ~spatula
 Ἕλληγν Greek
 ἐνδέχομαι accept, admit, be possible
 ἐπιλέγω say re, say also; choose; (mid)
 think over
 εὐτύχέω be lucky, prosper, succeed
 ναυηγέω be shipwrecked
 ὁμός same ~homoerotic

ὁμοῦ together
 ὁμόω unite ~homoerotic
 περιπλέω sail around ~float
 Πέρσης Persian
 προδίδωμι betray
 στρατός common people/soldiers
 ~strategy
 στυγέω dread, shrink from ~Styx
 τετρακόσιοι 400
 τριηκόσιοι three hundred
 φθονέω envy
 φροντίζω consider, ponder
 χρήσιμος useful
 ὡσαύτως in the same way

βασιλεῦ, ὁρῶ σε ἀνδρὸς ἐνδεκόμενον λόγους ὃς φθονέει τοι
 εὖ πρήσσοντι ἢ καὶ προδιδοῖ πρήγματα τὰ σά. καὶ γὰρ
 δὴ καὶ τρόποισι τοιούτοιςι χρεώμενοι Ἕλληνες χαίρουσι·
 τοῦ τε εὐτυχέειν φθονέουσι καὶ τὸ κρέσσον στυγέουσι. εἰ
 δ' ἐπὶ τῇσι παρεούσῃσι τύχῃσι, τῶν νέες νεναυηγῆκασι
 τετρακόσiai, ἄλλας ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου τριηκοσίας
 ἀποπέμψεις περιπλέειν Πελοπόννησον, ἀξιόμαχοί τοι
 γίνονται οἱ ἀντίπαλοι· ἀλῆς δὲ ἔων ὁ ναυτικὸς στρατὸς
 δυσμεταχειρίστός τε αὐτοῖσι γίνεται, καὶ ἀρχὴν οὐκ
 ἀξιόμαχοί τοι ἔσονται, καὶ πᾶς ὁ ναυτικὸς τῷ πεζῷ
 ἀρήξει καὶ ὁ πεζὸς τῷ ναυτικῷ ὁμοῦ πορευόμενος· εἰ δὲ
 διασπάσεις, οὔτε σὺ ἔσσαι ἐκείνοισι χρήσιμος οὔτε ἐκείνοι
 σοί. τὰ σεωτοῦ δὲ τιθέμενον εὖ γνώμην ἔχω τὰ τῶν
 ἀντιπολέμων μὴ ἐπιλέγεσθαι πρήγματα, τῇ τε στήσονται
 τὸν πόλεμον τά τε ποιήσουσι ὅσοι τε πλῆθος εἰσὶ. ἱκανοὶ
 γὰρ ἐκείνοί γε αὐτοὶ ἑωυτῶν πέρι φροντίζειν εἰσὶ, ἡμεῖς δὲ
 ἡμέων ὡσαύτως. Λακεδαιμόνιοι δὲ ἦν ἴωσι ἀντὶα Πέρσῃσι
 ἐς μάχην, οὐδὲν τὸ παρεὸν τρῶμα ἀκεῦνται.»

βασιλεῦ, ὁρῶ σε ἀνδρὸς |accept, admit, λόγους ὃς |envy τοι
 |be possible
 εἶ πρήσσοντι ἢ καὶ |betray πρήγματα τὰ σά. καὶ γὰρ
 δὴ καὶ τρόποισι τοιούτοισι χρεώμενοι |Greek χαίρουσι·
 τοῦ τε |be lucky;envy καὶ τὸ κρέσσον |dread εἰ
 |prosper,
 |succeed
 δ' ἐπὶ τῇσι παρεούσησι τύχησι, τῶν νέες |be shipwrecked
 |400 , ἄλλας ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου |three
 |hundred
 ἀποπέμψεις |sail around Πελοπόννησον, |well matched for war
 γίνονται οἱ |rival; |crowded; ὅν ὁ ναυτικὸς |army
 |balanced |all together
 δυσμεταχειρίστός τε αὐτοῖσι γίνεται, καὶ ἀρχὴν οὐκ
 |well matched for wār...ται, καὶ πᾶς ὁ ναυτικὸς τῷ πεζῷ
 |succor; καὶ ὁ πεζὸς τῷ ναυτικῷ ὁμοῦ πορευόμενος· εἰ δέ
 |prevent
 διασπάσεις, οὔτε σὺ ἔσειαι ἐκείνοισι |useful οὔτε ἐκείνοι
 σοί. τὰ σεωτοῦ δὲ τιθέμενον εἶ γνώμην ἔχω τὰ τῶν
 ἀντιπολέμων μὴ |say, choose, πρήγματα, τῇ τε στήσονται
 |think over
 τὸν πόλεμον τά τε ποιήσουσι ὅσοι τε πλῆθος εἰσί. ἱκανοὶ
 γὰρ ἐκεῖνοί γε αὐτοὶ ἐνωτῶν πέρι |consider, εἰσί, ἡμεῖς δὲ
 |ponder
 ἡμέων |in the same way...δαϊμόνιοι δὲ ἦν ἵωσι ἀντία Πέρσης
 ἐς μάχην, οὐδὲν τὸ παρεὸν τρώμα ἀκεύνται.»

“I see that thou art admitting the speech of a man who envies thy good fortune, or is even a traitor to thy cause: for in truth the Hellenes delight in such a temper as this; they envy a man for his good luck, and they hate that which is stronger than themselves. And if, besides other misfortunes which we have upon us, seeing that four hundred of our ships have suffered wreck, thou shalt send away another three hundred from the station of the fleet to sail round Peloponnese, then thy antagonists become a match for thee in fight; whereas while it is all assembled together our fleet is hard for them to deal with, and they will not be at all a match for thee: and moreover the whole sea-force will support the land-force and be supported by it, if they proceed onwards together; but if thou shalt divide them, neither wilt thou be of service to them nor they to thee. My determination is rather to set thy affairs in good order and not to consider the affairs of the enemy, either where they will set on foot the war or what they will do or how many in number they are; for it is sufficient that they should themselves take thought for themselves, and we for ourselves likewise: and if the Lacedemonians come to stand against the Persians in fight, they will assuredly not heal the wound from which they are now suffering.”

vocabulary

ἀνήκω reach up to; belong
ἀστός townsman; citizen
διέξειμι pass through; recount ~ion
δυσμενής hostile, enemy
ἐνδείκνυμι (ἵ) address, consider
ἐνδέχομαι accept, admit, be possible
ἐσσόομαι (pass) be weaker, be
 overcome; (active) defeat
εὐμενής kind
εὖς good, brave, noble

ὄον ὄϊ type of fruit
πρόσω forward, in the future; far
σιγά silence
σιγάω (ἱ) be silent
σπάνιος rare, scanty
σταθμάομαι judge, conclude
συμβουλεύω give advice; (mid) consult
 ~volunteer
ὑποτίθημι suggest, advise ~hypothesis
φθονέω envy

7.237

ἀμείβεται Ξέρξης τοῖσιδε. «Ἀχαίμενες, εὖ τε μοι δοκέεις λέγειν καὶ ποιήσω ταῦτα. Δημάρητος δὲ λέγει μὲν τὰ ἄριστα ἔλπεται εἶναι ἐμοί, γνώμη μέντοι ἐσσοῦται ὑπὸ σεῦ. οὐ γὰρ δὴ κείνῳ γε ἐνδέξομαι ὅπως οὐκ εὐνοέει τοῖσι ἐμοῖσι πρήγμασι, τοῖσί τε λεγομένοισι πρότερον ἐκ τούτου σταθμώμενος καὶ τῷ ἔοντι, ὅτι πολίτης μὲν πολίτη εὖ πρήσσοντι φθονέει καὶ ἔστι δυσμενὴς τῇ σιγῇ, οὐδ' ἂν συμβουλευομένου τοῦ ἀστοῦ πολίτης ἀνὴρ τὰ ἄριστα οἱ δοκέοντα εἶναι ὑποθέοιτο, εἰ μὴ πρόσω ἀρετῆς ἀνήκοι· σπάνιοι δὲ εἰσὶ οἱ τοιοῦτοι· ξείνος δὲ ξείνῳ εὖ πρήσσοντι ἐστὶ εὐμενέστατον πάντων, συμβουλευομένου τε ἂν συμβουλεύσειε τὰ ἄριστα. οὕτω ὦν κακολογίης τῆς ἐς Δημάρητον, ἔοντος ἐμοὶ ξείνου πέρι, ἔχεσθαι τινὰ τοῦ λοιποῦ κελεύω.»

7.238

ταῦτα εἶπας Ξέρξης διεξήιε διὰ τῶν νεκρῶν, καὶ

7.237

ἀμείβεται Ξέρξης τοῖσιδε. «Ἀχαίμενες, εὖ τε μοι δοκέεις
λέγειν καὶ ποιήσω ταῦτα. Δημάρητος δὲ λέγει μὲν τὰ
ἄριστα ἔλπεται εἶναι ἐμοί, γνώμη μέντοι (pass) be weaker, be over-
come; (active) defeat
σεῦ. οὐ γὰρ δὴ κείνῳ γε ἐνδέξομαι ὅπως οὐκ εὐνοέει
τοῖσι ἐμοῖσι πρήγμασι, τοῖσί τε λεγομένοισι πρότερον
ἐκ τούτου σταθμώμενος καὶ τῷ ἐόντι, ὅτι πολίτης μὲν
πολίτη εὖ πρήσονται |envy καὶ ἔστι |hostile, enemy τῇ σιγῇ,
οὐδ' ἂν |give advice; (mid) του |townsman; ἰότης ἀνὴρ τὰ
consult |citizen
ἄριστα οἱ δοκέοντα εἶναι ὑποθέοιτο, εἰ μὴ |forward, in the |s
future; far
|reach up|rare, δὲ εἰς οἱ τοιοῦτοι· ξείνος δὲ ξείνῳ εὖ
|to; belong|scanty
πρήσονται ἐστὶ |kind πάντων, |give advice; (mid)
consult
τε ἂν |give advice; τὰ ἄριστα. οὕτω ὦν κακολογίης τῆς
(mid) consult
ἐς Δημάρητον, ἐόντος ἐμοὶ ξείνου πέρι, ἔχεσθαι τινὰ τοῦ
λοιποῦ κελεύω.»

7.238

ταῦτα εἶπας Ξέρξης διεξήιε διὰ τῶν νεκρῶν, καὶ

7.237

To him Xerxes made answer as follows: “Achaimenes, I think that thou speakest well, and so will I do; but Demaratos speaks that which he believes to be best for me, though his opinion is defeated by thine: for I will not certainly admit that which thou saidest, namely that he is not well-disposed to my cause, judging both by what was said by him before this, and also by that which is the truth, namely that though one citizen envies another for his good fortune and shows enmity to him by his silence, nor would a citizen when a fellow-citizen consulted him suggest that which seemed to him the best, unless he had attained to a great height of virtue, and such men doubtless are few; yet guest-friend to guest-friend in prosperity is well-disposed as nothing else on earth, and if his friend should consult him, he would give him the best counsel. Thus then as regards the evil-speaking against Demaratos, that is to say about one who is my guest-friend, I bid every one abstain from it in the future.”

7.238

Having thus said Xerxes passed in review the bodies of the dead;

vocabulary

ἀνασταυρόω impale
ἄνειμι go up, inland, to, back ~ion
ἀποπέμπω send away ~pomp
ἀποτέμνω cut off, sever ~tonsure
εἰκάζω liken; conjecture
ἐκεῖσε thither
ἐκλείπω leave out, pass over
ἐπιτάσσω enjoin; place near

εὖνοος kindly; favorable
ἥκιστος least; above all
θαυμάσιος wonderful
θυμός (ῶ) anger
Πέρσης Persian
στέλλω prepare, send, furl ~apostle
συμμάχομαι fight with
τεκμήριον sign; proof
 χρηστήριον oracle, response

Λεωνίδεω, ἀκηκοὺς ὅτι βασιλεὺς τε ἦν καὶ στρατηγὸς
 Λακεδαιμονίων, ἐκέλευσε ἀποταμόντας τὴν κεφαλὴν
 ἀνασταυρῶσαι. δηλὰ μοι πολλοῖσι μὲν καὶ ἄλλοισι
 τεκμηρίοισι, ἐν δὲ καὶ τῷδε οὐκ ἤκιστα γέγονε, ὅτι
 βασιλεὺς Ξέρξης πάντων δὴ μάλιστα ἀνδρῶν ἐθυμώθη
 ζῶντι Λεωνίδῃ· οὐ γὰρ ἂν κοτε ἐς τὸν νεκρὸν ταῦτα
 παρενόμησε, ἐπεὶ τιμᾶν μάλιστα νομίζουσι τῶν ἐγὼ οἶδα
 ἀνθρώπων Πέρσαι ἄνδρας ἀγαθοὺς τὰ πολέμια. οἱ μὲν δὴ
 ταῦτα ἐποίουν, τοῖσι ἐπετέτακτο ποιέειν.

7.239

ἄνειμι δὲ ἐκείσε τοῦ λόγου τῇ μοι τὸ πρότερον ἐξέλιπε.
 ἐπύθοντο Λακεδαιμόνιοι ὅτι βασιλεὺς στέλλοιτο ἐπὶ
 τὴν Ἑλλάδα πρῶτοι, καὶ οὕτω δὴ ἐς τὸ χρηστήριον
 τὸ ἐς Δελφοὺς ἀπέπεμψαν, ἔνθα δὴ σφί ἐχρήσθη τὰ
 ὀλίγω πρότερον εἶπον· ἐπύθοντο δὲ τρόπῳ θαυμασίῳ.
 Δημάρητος γὰρ ὁ Ἀρίστωνος φυγὰν ἐς Μήδους, ὥς μὲν
 ἐγὼ δοκέω καὶ τὸ οἶκος ἐμοὶ συμμάχεται, οὐκ ἦν εὖνοος
 Λακεδαιμονίοισι, πάρεστι δὲ εἰκάζειν εἵτε

Λεωνίδεω, ἀκηκοὺς ὅτι βασιλεύς τε ἦν καὶ στρατηγὸς
 Λακεδαιμονίων, ἐκέλευσε |cut off, sever τὴν κεφαλὴν
 |impale . δῆλά μοι πολλοῖσι μὲν καὶ ἄλλοισι
 |sign; proof , ἐν δὲ καὶ τῷδε οὐκ |least; above γέγονε, ὅτι
 βασιλεὺς Ξέρξης πάντων δὴ μάλιστα |all ἀνδρῶν |anger
 ζῶντι Λεωνίδῃ· οὐ γὰρ ἂν κοτε εἰς τὸν νεκρὸν ταῦτα
 παρενόμησε, ἐπεὶ τιμᾶν μάλιστα νομίζουσι τῶν ἐγὼ οἶδα
 ἀνθρώπων Πέρσαι ἄνδρας ἀγαθοὺς τὰ πολέμα. οἱ μὲν δὲ
 ταῦτα ἐποίουν, τοῖσι |enjoin; place ποιέειν.
 |near

7.239

|go ὑπ',thither τοῦ λόγου τῇ μοι τὸ πρότερον |leave out, pass over
 |inland, to,
 |back ἐπύθοντο Λακεδαιμόνιοι ὅτι βασιλεὺς |prepare, send, furl
 τὴν Ἑλλάδα πρῶτοι, καὶ οὕτω δὲ εἰς τὸ |oracle,
 |response
 τὸ εἰς Δελφοὺς |send away , ἔνθα δὲ σφι ἐχρήσθη τὰ
 ὀλίγω πρότερον εἶπον· ἐπύθοντο δὲ τρόπῳ θωμασίῳ.
 Δημάρητος γὰρ ὁ Ἀρίστωνος φυγῶν εἰς Μήδους, ὥς μὲν
 ἐγὼ δοκέω καὶ τὸ οἶκος ἐμοὶ |fight with , οὐκ ἦν |kindly;
 |favorable
 Λακεδαιμονίοισι, πάρεστι δὲ |liken; ᾧτε
 |conjecture

and as for Leonidas, hearing that he had been the king and commander of the Lacedemonians he bade them cut off his head and crucify him. And it has been made plain to me by many proofs besides, but by none more strongly than by this, that king Xerxes was enraged with Leonidas while alive more than with any other man on earth; for otherwise he would never have done this outrage to his corpse; since of all the men whom I know, the Persians are accustomed most to honour those who are good men in war. They then to whom it was appointed to do these things, proceeded to do so.

7.239

I will return now to that point of my narrative where it remained unfinished. The Lacedemonians had been informed before all others that the king was preparing an expedition against Hellas; and thus it happened that they sent to the Oracle at Delphi, where that reply was given them which I reported shortly before this. And they got this information in a strange manner; for Demaratos the son of Ariston after he had fled for refuge to the Medes was not friendly to the Lacedemonians, as I am of opinion and as likelihood suggests supporting my opinion; but it is open to any man to make conjecture whether he did this

vocabulary

γράφμα -τος (n, 3) writing, letter

δελτίον little tablet

δίπτυχος twice-folded

Ἑλληγν Greek

ἐξαγγέλλω bring news out ~angel

ἐπικίνδυνος (ῶ) in danger, dangerous

ἐπιλέγω say re, say also; choose; (mid)
think over

ἐπιφράζω realize, think of ~frenzy

εὐνοια good will, gift

καταχαίρω exult over, greatly

κενός empty, vain

κηρός wax

λάμπω shine ~lamp

μηχανάομαι build, contrive

~mechanism

σημαίνω give orders to; show; mark

~semaphore

σοῦσον lily

στρατηλατέω lead an army

συμβάλλω pit against; compare; mp:

meet, fall in with ~ballistic

τοιόσδε such

ὑποτίθημι suggest, advise ~hypothesis

εὐνοίῃ ταῦτα ἐποίησε εἴτε καὶ καταχαίρων. ἐπεῖτε γὰρ
 Ξέρξης ἔδοξε στρατηλατέειν ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ἔων ἐν
 Σούσοισι ὁ Δημάρητος καὶ πυθόμενος ταῦτα ἠθέλησε
 Λακεδαιμονίοισι ἐξαγγείλαι. ἄλλως μὲν δὴ οὐκ εἶχε
 σημῆναι· ἐπικίνδυνον γὰρ ἦν μὴ λαμφθείη· ὁ δὲ μηχανᾶται
 τοιάδε· δελτίον δίπτυχον λαβὼν τὸν κηρὸν αὐτοῦ
 ἐξέκνησε, καὶ ἔπειτα ἐν τῷ ξύλῳ τοῦ δελτίου ἔγραψε
 τὴν βασιλέως γνώμην, ποιήσας δὲ ταῦτα ὀπίσω ἐπέτηξε
 τὸν κηρὸν ἐπὶ τὰ γράμματα, ἵνα φερόμενον κεινὸν τὸ
 δελτίον μηδὲν πρήγμα παρέχοι πρὸς τῶν ὁδοφυλάκων.
 ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ἀπῖκετο εἰς τὴν Λακεδαίμονα, οὐκ εἶχον
 συμβαλέσθαι οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, πρὶν γε δὴ σφι, ὥς ἐγὼ
 πυνθάνομαι, Κλεομένεος μὲν θυγάτηρ Λεωνίδεω δὲ γυνὴ
 Γοργῶ ὑπέθετο ἐπιφρασθεῖσα αὐτή, τὸν κηρὸν κνᾶν
 κελεύουσα, καὶ εὐρήσειν σφέας γράμματα ἐν τῷ ξύλῳ.
 πειθόμενοι δὲ εὗρον καὶ ἐπελέξαντο, ἔπειτα δὲ τοῖσι
 ἄλλοισι Ἑλλησι ἐπέστειλαν. ταῦτα μὲν δὴ οὕτω λέγεται
 γενέσθαι.

|good will, gift . . . ἐποίήσε εἴτε καὶ |exult over, greatly . . . εἴτε γὰρ

Ξέρξῃ ἔδοξε |lead an army ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ἐὼν ἐν

|lily ὁ Δημάριτος καὶ πυθόμενος ταῦτα ἠθέλησε

Λακεδαιμονίοισι |bring news out ἄλλως μὲν δὴ οὐκ εἶχε

|give orders|in danger, dangerous, μὴ |shine ὁ δὲ |build,
|to; show; |contrive
|mark
|such |little |twice-folded λαβὼν τὸν |wax αὐτοῦ
|tablet

ἐξέκνησε, καὶ ἔπειτα ἐν τῷ ξύλῳ τοῦ |little ἔγραψε
|tablet

τὴν βασιλέος γνώμην, ποιήσας δὲ ταῦτα ὀπίσω ἐπέτηξε

τὸν |wax ἐπὶ τὰ |writing, ἵνα φερόμενον κεινὸν τὸ
|letter

|little μὴδὲν πρῆγμα παρέχοι πρὸς τῶν ὁδοφυλάκων.
|tablet

ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ἀπύκετο ἐς τὴν Λακεδαίμονα, οὐκ εἶχον

|pit against; compare; κεδαιμόνιοι, πρίν γε δὴ σφι, ὥς ἐγὼ
|mp: meet, fall in with

πυνθάνομαι, Κλεομένεος μὲν θυγάτηρ Λεωνίδεω δὲ γυνὴ

Γοργῷ |suggest |realize, think of αὐτή, τὸν |wax κνᾶν

κελεύουσα, καὶ εὐρήσειν σφέας |writing, ἐν τῷ ξύλῳ.
|letter

πειθόμενοι δὲ εὗρον καὶ |say, choose, ἔπειτα δὲ τοῖσι
|think over

ἄλλοισι |Greek ἐπέστειλαν. ταῦτα μὲν δὴ οὕτω λέγεται

γενέσθαι.

thing which follows in a friendly spirit or in malicious triumph over them. When Xerxes had resolved to make a campaign against Hellas, Demaratos, being in Susa and having been informed of this, had a desire to report it to the Lacedemonians. Now in no other way was he able to signify it, for there was danger that he should be discovered, but he contrived thus, that is to say, he took a folding tablet and scraped off the wax which was upon it, and then he wrote the design of the king upon the wood of the tablet, and having done so he melted the wax and poured it over the writing, so that the tablet (being carried without writing upon it) might not cause any trouble to be given by the keepers of the road. Then when it had arrived at Lacedemon, the Lacedemonians were not able to make conjecture of the matter; until at last, as I am informed, Gorgo, the daughter of Cleomenes and wife of Leonidas, suggested a plan of which she had herself thought, bidding them scrape the wax and they would find writing upon the wood; and doing as she said they found the writing and read it, and after that they sent notice to the other Hellenes. These things are said to have come to pass in this manner.